

Workshop Manual Audi TT 2007 ➤

General body repairs, interior

Edition 07.2010



Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

List of Workshop Manual Repair Groups

Repair Group

- 00 - Technical data
- 68 - Interior equipment
- 69 - Passenger protection
- 70 - Trim, insulation
- 72 - Seat frames
- 74 - Seat - padding, covers



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Technical information should always be available to the foremen and mechanics, because their careful and constant adherence to the instructions is essential to ensure vehicle road-worthiness and safety. In addition, the normal basic safety precautions for working on motor vehicles must, as a matter of course, be observed.

All rights reserved.
No reproduction without prior agreement from publisher.

Contents

00 - Technical data	1
1 Routing and attaching pipes/hoses and wiring	1
2 Contact corrosion	2
68 - Interior equipment	3
1 Shelves / trim panels	3
1.1 Exploded view of shelves / trim panels	3
1.2 Exploded view of dash panel trim (driver side)	4
1.3 Removing and installing dash panel trim (driver side)	5
1.4 Exploded view of trim for steering column switch	6
1.5 Removing and installing trim cover for instrument cluster	6
1.6 Removing and installing upper trim for steering column switch	7
1.7 Removing and installing trim (bottom) for steering column switch	8
1.8 Exploded view of glove box	9
1.9 Manually releasing the glove box lid	9
1.10 Removing and installing trim panel for glove box lid	10
1.11 Removing and installing glove box opening mechanism with lock	11
1.12 Removing and installing glove box	12
1.13 Removing and installing cushioning element for glove box lid	12
1.14 Removing and installing storage net	12
2 Centre console	14
2.1 Exploded view of centre console	14
2.2 Removing and installing side trim for centre console	17
2.3 Removing and installing bracket for side trim	17
2.4 Removing and installing centre console trim - vehicles with manual gearbox	17
2.5 Removing and installing centre console trim - vehicles with dual clutch gearbox	18
2.6 Removing and installing trim frame - vehicles with manual gearbox	19
2.7 Removing and installing trim frame - vehicles with dual clutch gearbox	20
2.8 Removing and installing button module in centre console trim	20
2.9 Installation position of convertible roof actuation button E137 and cabrio windbreak switch E278	20
2.10 Removing and installing grip moulding for handbrake lever	21
2.11 Removing and installing ashtray	21
2.12 Removing and installing ashtray lid	21
2.13 Removing and installing trim for ashtray lid	22
2.14 Removing and installing centre console (front)	22
2.15 Removing and installing centre console (rear)	23
2.16 Removing and installing brackets for centre console	24
3 Trim for handbrake grip	25
3.1 Exploded view of trim for handbrake grip	25
3.2 Removing and installing trim for handbrake grip - vehicles with no centre armrest	26
3.3 Removing and installing trim for handbrake grip - vehicles with centre armrest	26
3.4 Removing and installing handbrake trim panels (left and right) - vehicles with centre armrest	26
4 Centre armrest	27
4.1 Exploded view of centre armrest	27
4.2 Removing and installing centre armrest padding	27
4.3 Removing and installing holder for padding	28
5 Interior mirror	29
5.1 Safety regulations for interior mirror	29
5.2 General notes on interior mirror	29
5.3 Switching automatic anti-dazzle function on and off	30
5.4 Switching compass display on and off	30

5.5	Setting magnetic deflection zone	30
5.6	Calibrating digital compass	31
5.7	Adjusting automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror Y7 for right-hand drive or left-hand drive vehicles	32
5.8	Selecting the applicable deflection zone from the map	33
5.9	Checking operation of automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror	38
5.10	Removing and installing interior mirror	39
5.11	Removing and installing rain and light sensor G397	40
69	- Passenger protection	42
1	Safety regulations and test methods for pyrotechnic, electrical and mechanical components of the restraint system	42
1.1	General safety regulations	42
1.2	Storing, transporting and disposing of airbag units, belt tensioner units and battery isolation units (pyrotechnic components)	43
1.3	Additional safety regulations for side airbags	44
1.4	Additional safety regulations for curtain airbags	45
1.5	Safety regulations for crash sensors (pressure sensors) for side airbag (front)	45
1.6	Additional safety regulations for working on seat occupied sensor controlling deactivation of front passenger airbag - country-specific version	46
1.7	Procedure for dealing with seat occupied sensor controlling deactivation of front passenger airbag following an accident - country-specific version	46
1.8	Renewing pyrotechnic, electrical and mechanical components of the restraint system following an accident	47
1.9	Checking airbag mounting components following an accident	49
1.10	Accident in which no airbag was triggered	49
1.11	Checking seat belts	49
1.12	Checking belt webbing	50
1.13	Checking automatic belt retractor (locking action)	50
1.14	Visual inspection of belt buckle	51
1.15	Functional check of belt buckle	51
1.16	Checking guide fittings and latch plate	51
1.17	Checking securing components and anchorage points following an accident	52
1.18	Checking child seat restraint function for additional child seats (not for driver's seat belt) - country-specific version	52
1.19	Checking child seat anchors following an accident	52
2	Seat belts (Coupé)	53
2.1	Overview of seat belts and anchorage points	53
2.2	Exploded view of three-point seat belt (front)	54
2.3	Removing and installing three-point seat belt with belt tensioner / pressure limiter	55
2.4	Removing and installing outer belt end fitting (front)	56
2.5	Removing and installing belt guide fitting anchorage point	57
2.6	Exploded view of belt buckle anchorage point (front)	58
2.7	Removing and installing front buckle anchorage point	58
2.8	Exploded view of three-point seat belt (rear)	61
2.9	Removing and installing three-point seat belt (rear)	61
2.10	Removing and installing outer belt end fitting (rear)	62
2.11	Exploded view of belt buckle (rear)	63
2.12	Removing and installing belt buckle	64
3	Seat belts (Roadster)	65
3.1	Overview of seat belts and anchorage points	65
3.2	Exploded view of three-point seat belt	66
3.3	Removing and installing three-point seat belt with belt tensioner / pressure limiter	67
3.4	Removing and installing outer belt end fitting	71
3.5	Removing and installing belt guide anchorage point	72
3.6	Overview of buckle anchorage point	72
3.7	Removing and installing front buckle anchorage point	73

4	Child seat anchors (ISOFIX, Top Tether)	75
4.1	Exploded view of child seat anchors (ISOFIX) for front seat	75
4.2	Removing and installing child seat anchor (ISOFIX)	76
4.3	Exploded view of child seat anchors (ISOFIX) for rear seats	79
4.4	Exploded view of child seat anchor (Top Tether) - country-specific version	80
4.5	Removing and installing child seat mounting (Top Tether)	80
5	Servicing airbags	82
5.1	Overview of fitting locations	82
5.2	Exploded view of airbag control unit J234	83
5.3	Removing and installing airbag control unit J234	83
5.4	Exploded view of battery isolation igniter N253	86
5.5	Removing and installing battery isolation igniter N253	86
6	Servicing airbag (driver side)	89
6.1	Exploded view of airbag unit (driver side)	89
6.2	Removing and installing airbag igniter on driver side N95 and airbag igniter 2 on driver side N250	89
6.3	Renewing connector at airbag unit	92
7	Servicing airbag (front passenger side)	94
7.1	Exploded view of airbag unit (front passenger side)	94
7.2	Removing and installing airbag unit (front passenger side)	95
7.3	Removing and installing brackets for airbag unit (front passenger side)	97
7.4	Removing and installing key-operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side E224	97
7.5	Removing and installing warning lamp for airbag deactivated on front passenger side K145	98
8	Servicing side airbag (front)	99
8.1	Exploded view of side airbag (front)	99
8.2	Removing and installing side airbag	100
9	Servicing knee airbag	102
9.1	Exploded view of knee airbag unit (driver and passenger side)	102
9.2	Removing and installing knee restraint (dash panel trim, driver side)	104
9.3	Removing and installing knee airbag (driver side)	104
9.4	Removing and installing supports (left and right) for knee airbag (driver side)	106
9.5	Removing and installing retaining bracket (above knee airbag, driver side)	107
9.6	Removing and installing glove box (on vehicles with knee airbag)	108
9.7	Removing and installing knee airbag (front passenger side)	110
9.8	Removing and installing supports (left and right) for knee airbag (front passenger side) ..	112
10	Servicing crash sensors for airbags	115
10.1	Overview of fitting locations	115
10.2	Removing and installing crash sensor for front airbag	116
10.3	Removing and installing crash sensor for side airbag	118
11	Belt-fastened recognition	122
11.1	Removing and installing seat occupied sensor (front passenger side) G128	122
12	Seat position sensor - country-specific version	124
12.1	Exploded view of seat position sensor	124
12.2	Removing and installing seat position sensor	125
13	Servicing seat occupied recognition system for front passenger's airbag - country-specific version	127
13.1	Exploded view of seat occupied sensor for front passenger airbag - country-specific version	128
13.2	Removing and installing seat occupied recognition system - country-specific version	129
70	Trim, insulation	133
1	Door trim	133
1.1	Exploded view of door trim	133

1.2	Removing and installing mid-range loudspeaker trim	135
1.3	Removing and installing bass loudspeaker trim	135
1.4	Removing and installing trim panel for BOSE sound system	136
1.5	Removing and installing trim for door puller	136
1.6	Removing and installing door trim	137
1.7	Removing and installing inner cover panel	139
1.8	Removing and installing interior door handle	140
1.9	Removing and installing door puller	140
1.10	Removing and installing armrest	141
1.11	Removing and installing mounting for mirror adjustment switch	141
1.12	Removing and installing mounting for window regulator switch	142
2	Dash panel	143
2.1	Overview of dash panel	143
2.2	Exploded view of dash panel	144
2.3	Removing and installing dash panel end trim	146
2.4	Removing and installing dash panel vent	146
2.5	Removing and installing side loudspeaker trim	147
2.6	Removing and installing centre loudspeaker trim	147
2.7	Removing and installing trim cover for centre console	147
2.8	Removing and installing cover for instrument cluster	148
2.9	Removing and installing mounting frame for radio navigation system	149
2.10	Removing and installing dash panel	149
2.11	Removing and installing side defroster vents	152
2.12	Removing and installing defroster vent (centre)	152
3	Central tube	153
3.1	Exploded view of central tube	153
3.2	Removing and installing central tube	156
4	Trim panels (Coupé)	162
4.1	Overview of trim panels	162
4.2	Exploded view of A-pillar trim (top)	164
4.3	Removing and installing A-pillar trim (top)	164
4.4	Exploded view of A-pillar trim (bottom)	166
4.5	Removing and installing A-pillar trim (bottom)	166
4.6	Exploded view of foot rest cover and bracket	168
4.7	Removing and installing foot rest cover	169
4.8	Removing and installing foot rest bracket	169
4.9	Exploded view of sill panel trim	170
4.10	Removing sill panel trim	170
4.11	Exploded view of C-pillar trim	172
4.12	Removing and installing C-pillar trim	172
4.13	Exploded view of rear side trim	175
4.14	Removing and installing rear side trim	175
4.15	Removing and installing bracket for C-pillar trim, rear side trim and luggage compartment side trim	177
4.16	Removing and installing belt exit point trim	178
4.17	Exploded view of roof end trim	179
4.18	Removing and installing roof end trim	179
4.19	Exploded view of floor covering	181
4.20	Removing and installing floor covering	181
4.21	Exploded view of rear lid trim panels	183
4.22	Removing and installing rear lid trim (top)	183
4.23	Removing and installing rear lid trim (bottom)	184
4.24	Removing and installing trim for rear lid lock	185
4.25	Exploded view of rear shelf	186
4.26	Removing and installing front section of rear shelf	186
4.27	Removing and installing rear section of rear shelf	187

4.28	Exploded view of rear cross panel trim	187
4.29	Removing and installing rear cross panel trim	188
4.30	Exploded view of luggage compartment side trim	189
4.31	Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim	189
4.32	Removing and installing fastening ring	190
4.33	Exploded view of luggage compartment floor covering	191
4.34	Removing and installing luggage compartment floor covering	191
5	Trim panels (Roadster)	192
5.1	Overview of trim panels	192
5.2	Exploded view of locking element trim	194
5.3	Exploded view of trim for windscreen frame	195
5.4	Removing and installing trim for windscreen frame	195
5.5	Exploded view of sun visor	197
5.6	Exploded view of A-pillar trim (top)	198
5.7	Removing and installing A-pillar trim (top)	198
5.8	Exploded view of A-pillar trim (bottom)	200
5.9	Removing and installing A-pillar trim (bottom)	200
5.10	Exploded view of foot rest cover and bracket	203
5.11	Removing and installing foot rest cover	203
5.12	Removing and installing foot rest bracket	204
5.13	Exploded view of sill panel trim	205
5.14	Removing and installing sill panel trim	205
5.15	Exploded view of floor covering	206
5.16	Removing and installing floor covering	207
5.17	Exploded view of back panel side trim	208
5.18	Removing and installing back panel side trim	209
5.19	Exploded view of storage compartments (left and right)	210
5.20	Exploded view of centre storage compartment	211
5.21	Removing and installing centre storage compartment	211
5.22	Exploded view of back panel cover	213
5.23	Removing and installing back panel cover	214
5.24	Exploded view of roll-over bar trim	215
5.25	Removing and installing roll-over bar trim	215
5.26	Exploded view of windbreak	217
5.27	Removing and installing windbreak (or mount for windbreak)	217
5.28	Exploded view of convertible roof compartment trim (front)	218
5.29	Removing and installing convertible roof compartment trim (front)	218
5.30	Exploded view of convertible roof compartment trim (rear)	219
5.31	Exploded view of luggage compartment floor covering	221
5.32	Exploded view of rear cross panel trim	222
5.33	Removing and installing rear cross panel trim	223
5.34	Exploded view of luggage compartment side trim	224
5.35	Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim	224
5.36	Exploded view of luggage compartment trim (front and top)	225
5.37	Exploded view of centre storage compartment (bottom)	228
5.38	Removing and installing centre storage compartment (bottom)	228
5.39	Exploded view of rear lid trim panels	229
5.40	Removing and installing rear lid trim	229
5.41	Removing and installing trim for rear lid lock	230
6	Roof trim (Coupé)	231
6.1	Exploded view of moulded headliner	231
6.2	Removing and installing moulded headliner	231
6.3	Exploded view of sun visors	234
6.4	Removing and installing sun visors	235
6.5	Exploded view of centre bracket for sun visor	236
6.6	Removing and installing centre bracket for sun visor	236

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless the copyright owner has given their consent in writing. No liability is accepted with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG



72 - Seat frames	238
1 Overview of seat versions	238
1.1 Moving front seats to service position	239
1.2 Attaching front seat to seat repair stand VAS 6136	240
2 Front seats with manual adjustment	242
2.1 Exploded view of front seat	242
2.2 Removing and installing front seat	243
2.3 Unplugging and plugging in connectors	245
2.4 Connecting airbag adapter	246
2.5 Connector point connectors	246
2.6 Exploded view of modular wire routing	246
2.7 Modular wire routing versions	247
2.8 Modular wire routing with corrugated tube at front seat	247
2.9 Removing and installing seat rail covers	250
2.10 Removing and installing stop for longitudinal seat adjustment	250
2.11 Exploded view of trim (sill side and tunnel side)	251
2.12 Removing and installing backrest adjuster	251
2.13 Removing and installing trim (sill side)	252
2.14 Exploded view of lumbar support adjustment switch E176 / E177	254
2.15 Removing and installing lumbar support adjustment switch E176 / E177	255
2.16 Removing and installing trim (tunnel side)	255
2.17 Exploded view of retaining bracket for trim (sill side)	256
2.18 Removing and installing retaining bracket for trim (sill side)	256
2.19 Exploded view of seat height adjustment unit and seat height adjuster	257
2.20 Removing and installing seat height adjuster	258
2.21 Removing and installing seat height adjustment unit	259
2.22 Removing and installing seat longitudinal adjustment handle	260
2.23 Exploded view of front seat backrest	261
2.24 Removing and installing front seat backrest	262
2.25 Exploded view of backrest cover panel	265
2.26 Removing and installing backrest cover panel	266
2.27 Exploded view of spring mat	266
2.28 Removing and installing spring mat	267
2.29 Exploded view of four-way lumbar support	268
2.30 Removing and installing four-way lumbar support	268
2.31 Exploded view of Easy Entry facility (Coupé only)	269
2.32 Removing and installing trim with Easy Entry handle (Coupé only)	269
2.33 Removing and installing retainer for Easy Entry facility (Coupé only)	269
2.34 Removing and installing Bowden cables, left and right (Coupé only)	269
2.35 Adjusting Bowden cables for Easy Entry facility (Coupé only)	269
2.36 Exploded view of head restraints	270
2.37 Removing and installing head restraints with slide-in locking mechanism	270
2.38 Removing and installing head restraint guides without and with release button	270
2.39 Exploded view of seat pan	270
2.40 Renewing seat pan	271
2.41 Exploded view of storage compartment	272
2.42 Removing and installing storage compartment	272
2.43 Exploded view of storage compartment components	272
2.44 Dismantling and assembling storage compartment	272
3 Front seats with electric adjustment (electrically operated seats)	273
3.1 Exploded view of front seat	273
3.2 Removing and installing front seat	274
3.3 Removing front seat if seat longitudinal adjustment motor V288 is defective	277
3.4 Unplugging and plugging in connectors	280
3.5 Connecting airbag adapter	283

3.6	Connector point connectors	286
3.7	Exploded view of modular wire routing	286
3.8	Modular wire routing versions	286
3.9	Modular wire routing with corrugated tube at front seat	286
3.10	Removing and installing spindle covers and seat rail covers	286
3.11	Exploded view of trim (sill side and tunnel side)	289
3.12	Removing and installing trim (sill side)	289
3.13	Removing and installing trim (tunnel side)	291
3.14	Exploded view of retaining bracket for trim (sill side)	293
3.15	Removing and installing retaining bracket for trim (sill side)	293
3.16	Exploded view of seat and backrest adjustment actuators	294
3.17	Removing and installing seat adjustment actuator	294
3.18	Removing and installing backrest adjustment actuator	295
3.19	Exploded view of front seat backrest	297
3.20	Removing and installing front seat backrest	298
3.21	Exploded view of backrest cover panel	301
3.22	Removing and installing backrest cover panel	302
3.23	Exploded view of four-way lumbar support	306
3.24	Removing and installing four-way lumbar support	307
3.25	Exploded view of Easy Entry facility (Coupé only)	311
3.26	Removing and installing trim with Easy Entry handle (Coupé only) up to 10.2006	312
3.27	Removing and installing trim with Easy Entry handle (Coupé only) from 11.2006 onwards	313
3.28	Removing and installing retainer for Easy Entry facility (Coupé only)	314
3.29	Removing and installing Bowden cables, left and right (Coupé only)	315
3.30	Adjusting Bowden cables for Easy Entry facility (Coupé only)	318
3.31	Exploded view of head restraints	321
3.32	Removing and installing head restraints with slide-in locking mechanism	321
3.33	Removing and installing head restraint guides without and with release button	322
3.34	Exploded view of seat pan	325
3.35	Dismantling and assembling seat pan	326
3.36	Exploded view of storage compartment	329
3.37	Removing and installing storage compartment	329
3.38	Exploded view of storage compartment components	332
3.39	Dismantling and assembling storage compartment	332
3.40	Overview of electrical and electronic components	335
3.41	Exploded view of seat rake adjustment motor V243 / V244	336
3.42	Removing and installing seat rake adjustment motor V243 / V244	337
3.43	Exploded view of seat longitudinal adjustment motor V288	339
3.44	Removing and installing seat longitudinal adjustment motor V288	339
3.45	Exploded view of backrest adjustment motor V45 / V46	342
3.46	Removing and installing backrest adjustment motor V45 / V46	343
3.47	Exploded view of limit switch E69 / E70	345
3.48	Removing and installing limit switch E69 / E70	346
3.49	Exploded view of lumbar support longitudinal and height adjustment motors	348
3.50	Removing and installing lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor V125 / V126	349
3.51	Removing and installing lumbar support height adjustment motor V129 / V130	351
3.52	Exploded view of seat height adjustment motor V245 / V246	354
3.53	Removing and installing seat height adjustment motor V245 / V246	354
3.54	Removing and installing toothed segment for seat height adjustment	356
3.55	Exploded view of lumbar support adjustment switch E176 / E177	359
3.56	Removing and installing lumbar support adjustment switch E176 / E177	360
3.57	Exploded view of switches for seat longitudinal adjustment, rake adjustment, seat height adjustment and backrest adjustment (E418 , E421 , E424 , E425)	361
3.58	Removing and installing seat longitudinal adjustment button, rake adjustment button, seat height adjustment button and backrest adjustment button (E418 , E421 , E424 , E425)	362



4	Front bucket seat	363
4.1	Removing and installing seat	363
4.2	Stop for longitudinal seat adjustment	364
4.3	Removing and installing seat rail cover	364
4.4	Unplugging electrical connectors	365
4.5	Removing and installing side trim panels	366
4.6	Removing and installing backrest adjuster knob	368
4.7	Removing and installing seat height adjuster	368
4.8	Removing and installing backrest and seat pan (front)	369
4.9	Removing and installing seat height adjustment unit	372
4.10	Removing and installing backrest cover panels	373
4.11	Exploded view of operating cable for locking backrest	376
4.12	Removing and installing operating cable for locking backrest	377
4.13	Adjusting operating cables for locking backrest	380
5	Rear seats (Coupé only)	381
5.1	Exploded view of rear seats	381
5.2	Exploded view of seat bench	382
5.3	Removing and installing seat bench	383
5.4	Exploded view of seat frame	384
5.5	Removing and installing seat frame	385
5.6	Exploded view of 1/2 section of backrest (left and right)	385
5.7	Removing and installing backrest	386
5.8	Removing and installing cap for centre mounting	389
5.9	Exploded view of belt buckle	391
5.10	Removing and installing belt buckle	391
5.11	Exploded view of release mechanism (left-side/right-side)	391
5.12	Removing and installing release mechanism (left-side/right-side)	391
5.13	Removing and installing trim (left-side/right-side)	395
5.14	Removing and installing button for release mechanism	396
5.15	Removing and installing outer filler piece (left-side/right-side)	398
5.16	Removing and installing inner filler piece (left-side/right-side)	398
5.17	Exploded view of child seat mounting (Top Tether) - country-specific version	399
5.18	Removing and installing child seat mounting (Top Tether)	399
5.19	Exploded view of backrest frame and backrest pan	399
5.20	Removing and installing backrest frame	399
5.21	Removing and installing backrest pan	400
74	Seat - padding, covers	401
1	Covers and padding on front seat	401
1.1	Exploded view of seat pan cover and padding	401
1.2	Removing and installing seat pan cover and padding	401
1.3	Detaching seat cover from padding (seat pan)	404
1.4	Exploded view of backrest cover and padding	406
1.5	Removing and installing backrest cover and padding	407
1.6	Detaching seat cover from padding (backrest)	409
1.7	Overview of seat heating element	410
1.8	Removing and installing seat heating element	411
1.9	Overview of backrest heating element	412
1.10	Removing and installing backrest heating element	412
1.11	Exploded view of cover and padding for head restraint	413
1.12	Removing and installing cover and padding for head restraint with slide-in locking mechanism	414
2	Covers and padding on front bucket seat	416
2.1	Removing and installing seat pan cover and padding	416
2.2	Removing and installing backrest cover and padding	417
2.3	Removing and installing seat heating element	419

2.4	Removing and installing backrest heating element	420
3	Covers and padding on rear seats (Coupé only)	421
3.1	Exploded view of cover and padding for seat bench	421
3.2	Removing and installing cover and padding for seat bench	421
3.3	Detaching seat cover from padding (seat bench)	422
3.4	Exploded view of backrest cover and padding	423
3.5	Removing and installing backrest cover and padding	424
3.6	Detaching seat cover from padding (backrest)	425



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

00 – Technical data

1 Routing and attaching pipes/hoses and wiring

Make sketches or take photographs when unfastening or removing and installing hydraulic and pneumatic pipes or wires. This ensures re-installation at the original location.



Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



2 Contact corrosion

Contact corrosion can occur if unsuitable fasteners (bolts, nuts, washers etc.) are used on the vehicle.

For this reason, only fasteners with a special surface coating are fitted.

In addition, all rubber and plastic parts and all adhesives are made of non-conductive materials.

Should you have any doubts whether certain parts can be re-used, use new parts ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .

Important:

- ◆ We recommend using genuine replacement parts only, as these have been checked and are compatible with aluminium.
- ◆ We recommend using Audi Genuine Accessories.
- ◆ Damage caused by contact corrosion is not covered by the warranty.



Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

68 – Interior equipment

1 Shelves / trim panels

1.1 Exploded view of shelves / trim panels

1 - Centre console

- Exploded view
⇒ [page 14](#)
- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 22](#)


2 - Dash panel trim (driver side)

- Vehicles without knee airbag:
- ◆ Exploded view
⇒ [page 4](#)
- ◆ Removing and installing dash panel trim (driver side) ⇒ [page 5](#)
- Vehicles with knee airbag:
- ◆ Exploded view
⇒ [page 102](#)
- ◆ Removing and installing dash panel trim (driver side) ⇒ [page 104](#)

3 - Trim for steering column switch

- Exploded view
⇒ [page 6](#)
- Removing and installing upper trim for steering column switch
⇒ [page 7](#)
- Removing and installing trim (bottom) for steering column switch
⇒ [page 8](#)

4 - Dash panel

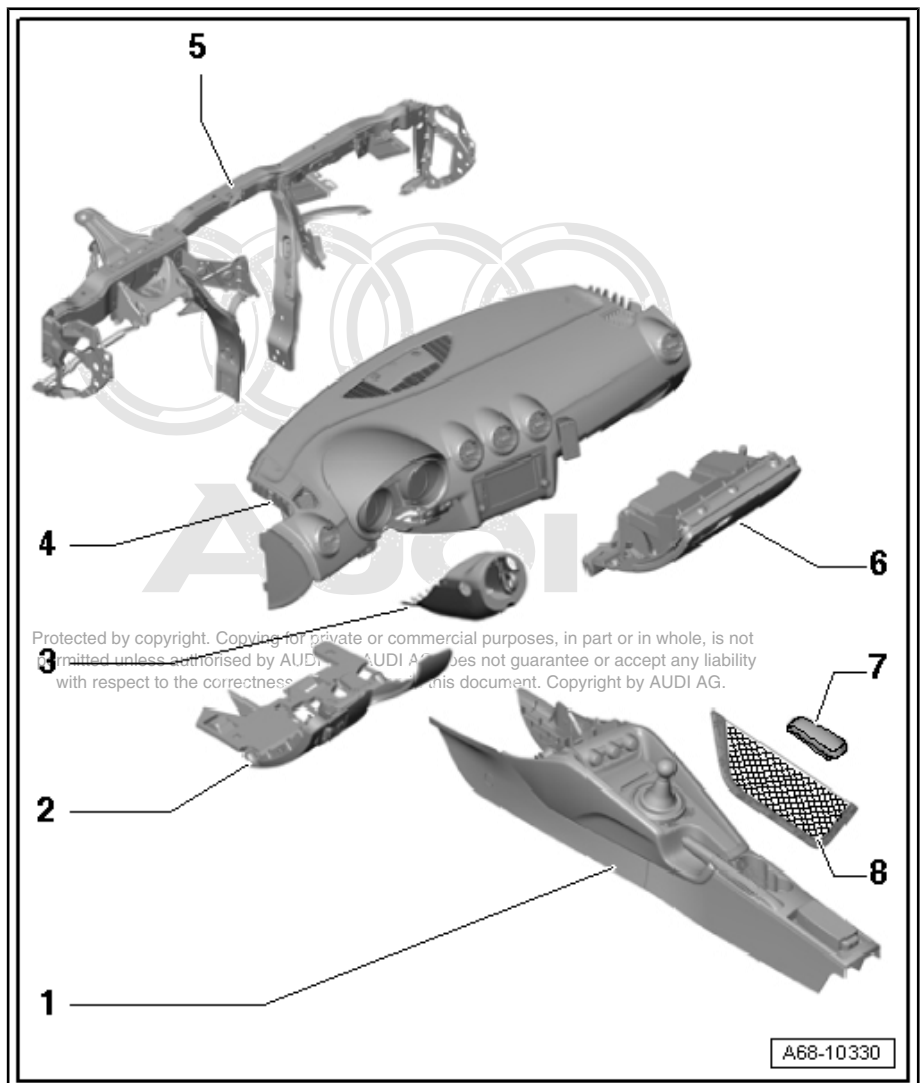


WARNING
Observe safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ [page 42](#).

- Exploded view ⇒ [page 144](#)
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 149](#)

5 - Central tube

- Exploded view ⇒ [page 153](#)
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 156](#)



6 - Glove box

- Vehicles without knee airbag:
- ◆ Exploded view ⇒ [page 9](#)
- ◆ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 12](#)
- Vehicles with knee airbag:
- ◆ Exploded view ⇒ [page 102](#)
- ◆ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 108](#)

7 - Padding for centre armrest

- Exploded view ⇒ [page 27](#)
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 27](#)
- Removing and installing holder for padding ⇒ [page 28](#)

8 - Storage net

- Depending on equipment version
- Attached to floor covering on passenger side in area of centre console
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 12](#)

1.2 Exploded view of dash panel trim (driver side)

1 - Dash panel end trim

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 146](#)

2 - Bolt

- 2.5 Nm

3 - 16-pin connector -T16-

- Diagnostic connector

4 - Spring clip

- For dash panel trim (bottom) on driver side

5 - Spring clip

- For upper dash panel trim (driver side)

6 - Dash panel trim (driver side)

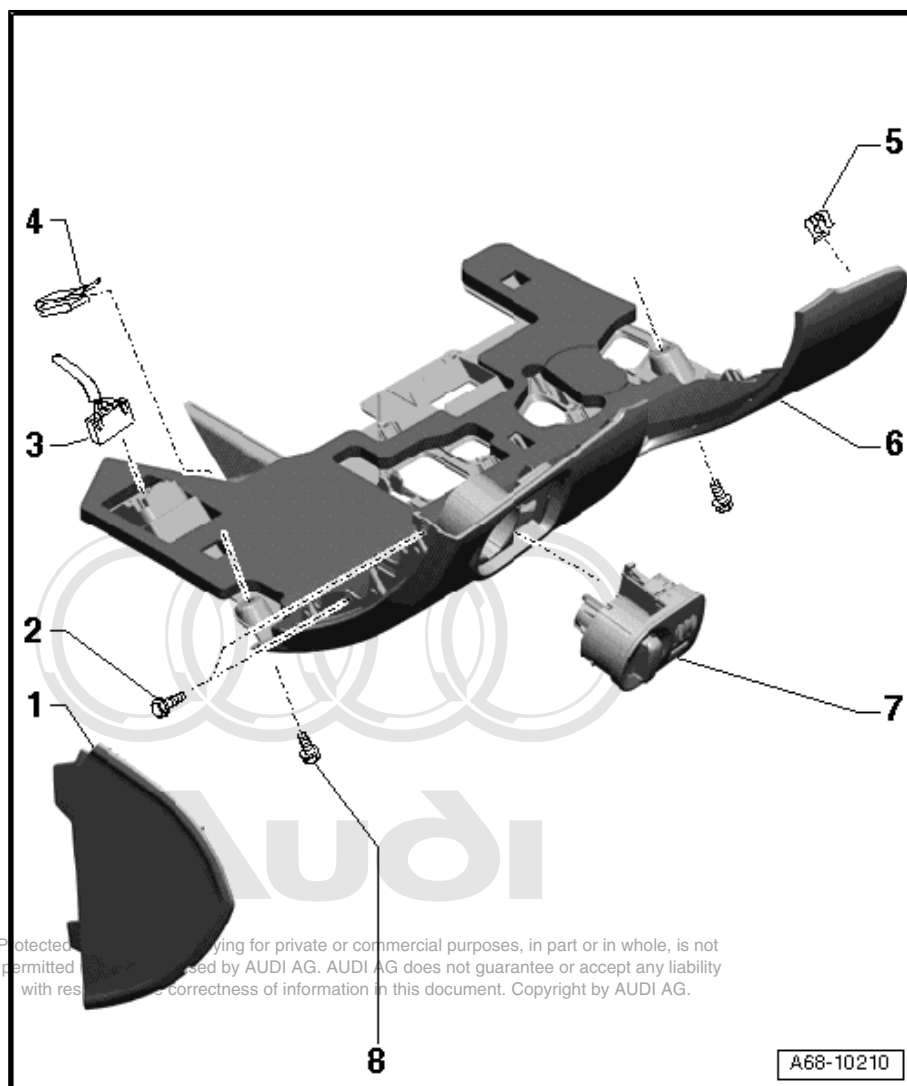
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 5](#)

7 - Light switch

- Removing and installing ⇒ Rep. gr. 96

8 - Bolt

- 2.5 Nm



1.3 Removing and installing dash panel trim (driver side)

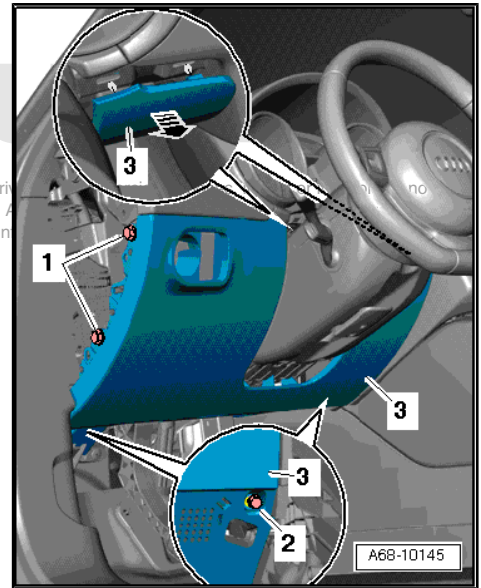
Removing

- Remove light switch ⇒ Rep. gr. 96 .
- Remove dash panel end trim ⇒ [page 146](#) .
- Remove bolts -1- and -2-.
- Apply small screwdriver to top edge of dash panel trim (driver side) -3- and unclip it from dash panel -arrow-.
- Unclip 16-pin connector -T16- .
- Detach dash panel trim (driver side).

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening torque ⇒ [page 4](#)



1.4 Exploded view of trim for steering column switch

1 - Trim cover

- ❑ For instrument cluster
- ❑ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 6](#)

2 - Trim (top) for steering column switch

- ❑ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 7](#)

3 - Bolts

- ❑ 2.5 Nm

4 - Lower trim for steering column switch

- ❑ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 8](#)

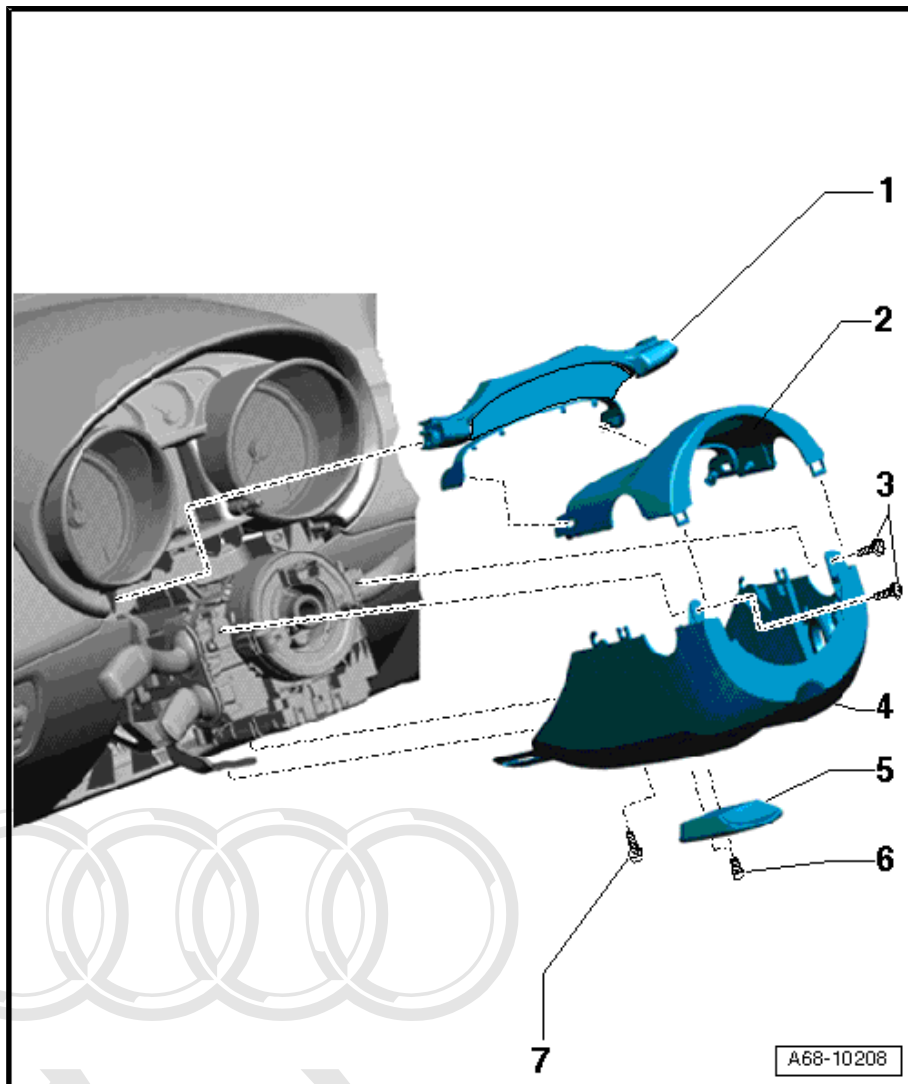
5 - Steering column adjustment handle

6 - Bolts

- ❑ 3 Nm

7 - Bolt

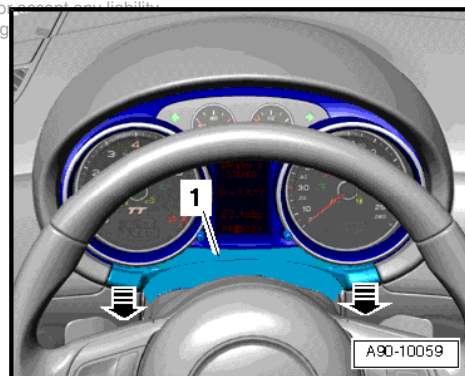
- ❑ 2.5 Nm



1.5 Removing and installing trim cover for instrument cluster

Removing

- Move steering wheel down and towards rear as far as it will go, using full range of steering column adjuster.
- Pull off trim cover -1- in direction of -arrow-.



- Use a small flat screwdriver to carefully prise trim cover -2- off upper trim -3- for steering column switch.

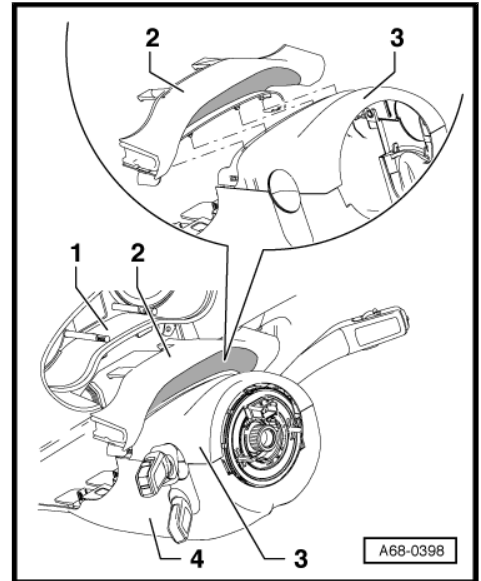
 **Note**

Disregard items -1- and -4-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

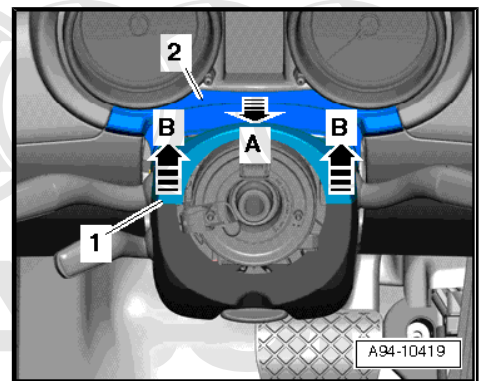
- Make sure that trim cover engages audibly in trim (top).



1.6 Removing and installing upper trim for steering column switch

Removing

- Move steering wheel down and towards rear as far as it will go, using full range of steering column adjuster.
- Detach trim cover -2- in direction of -arrow A-.
- Lift off upper trim -1- for steering column switch -arrows B-.
- Disengage upper trim for steering column switch at lower trim.



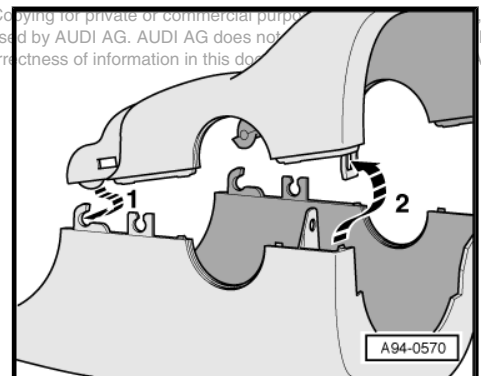
Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- First engage upper trim in lower trim -arrow 1-.
- Make sure that lug of lower trim engages in recess at retaining tab of upper trim -arrow 2-.

 **Note**

Shown in the illustration with the steering column switch trim removed.



- Engage trim cover at instrument cluster.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

1.7 Removing and installing trim (bottom) for steering column switch

Removing

- Remove upper trim for steering column switch ⇒ [page 7](#) .
- Unscrew bolts -5- and remove handle -4- for adjusting steering column.
- Starting from straight ahead position, turn steering wheel 90° and remove bolts -1- and -2-.



Note

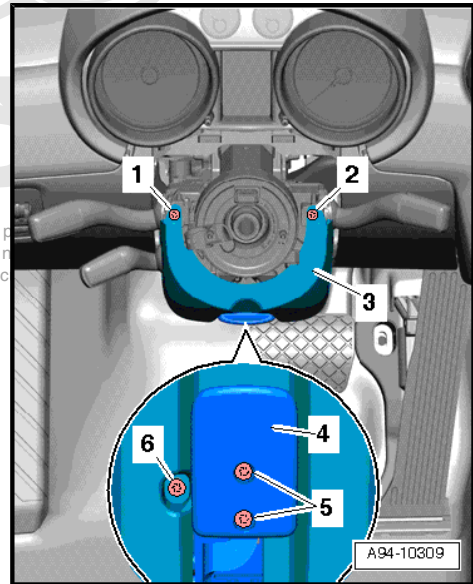
If bolts -1- and -2- are not accessible, steering wheel must be removed before performing remaining work steps ⇒ Rep. gr. 48 .

- Remove bolt -6- and detach lower trim -3- for steering column switch.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening torque ⇒ [page 6](#)



1.8 Exploded view of glove box

1 - Glove box light

- Removing and installing
 ⇒ Rep. gr. 96

2 - Hinge pin

- For securing glove box lid

3 - Glove box

- Removing and installing
 ⇒ [page 12](#)

4 - Wiring harness for glove box

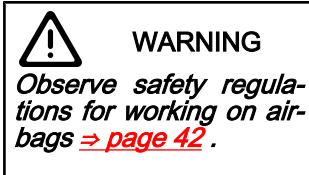
5 - Cushioning element

- With glove box light switch -E26-
- Removing and installing
 ⇒ [page 12](#)

6 - Hinge pin

7 - Mounting for striker pin

8 - Key-operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side -E224-



- Removing and installing
 ⇒ [page 97](#)

9 - Bolt

- 2.5 Nm

10 - Glove box lid

- Manually releasing the glove box lid ⇒ [page 9](#)
- Cannot be renewed as a separate unit

11 - Trim panel for glove box lid

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 10](#)

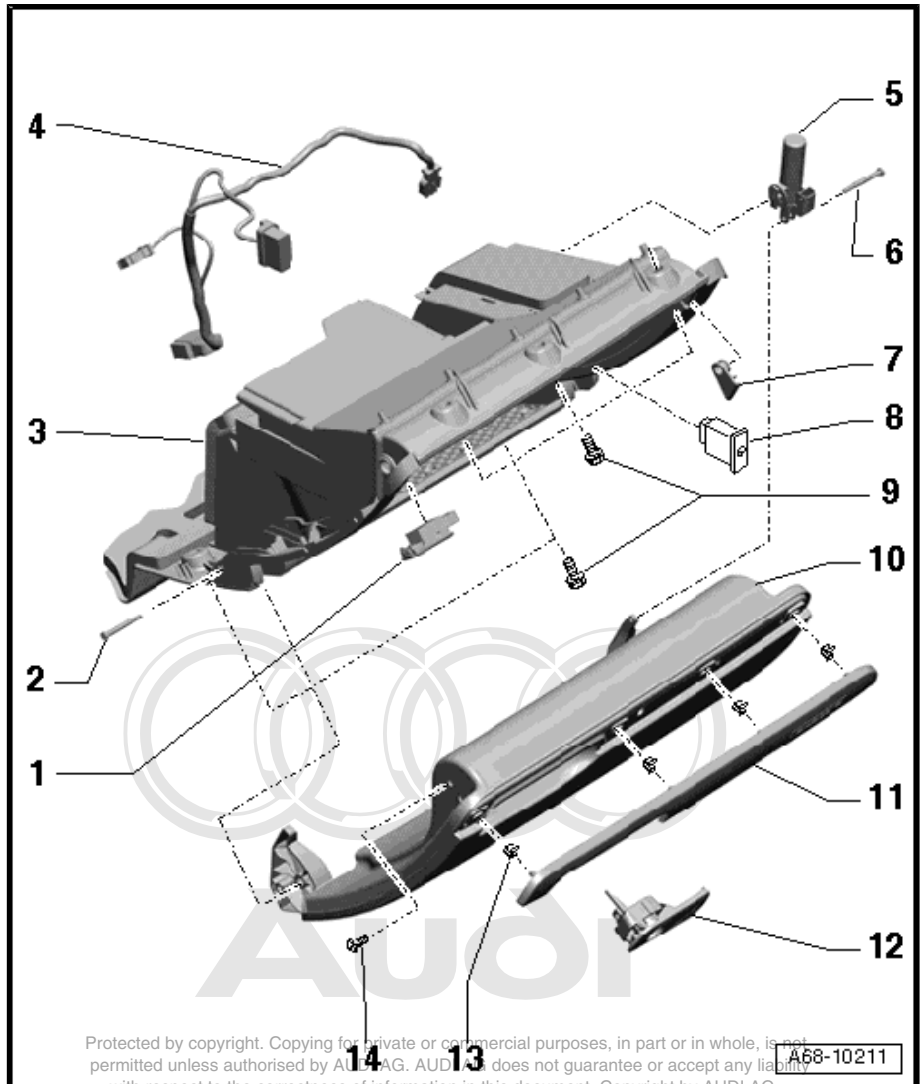
12 - Glove box opening mechanism with lock

- Manually releasing the glove box lid ⇒ [page 9](#)
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 11](#)

13 - Clip

14 - Bolt

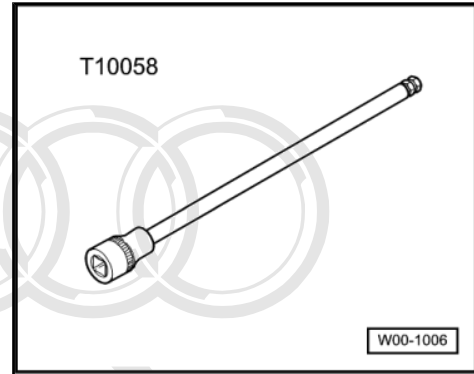
- 1.6 Nm



1.9 Manually releasing the glove box lid

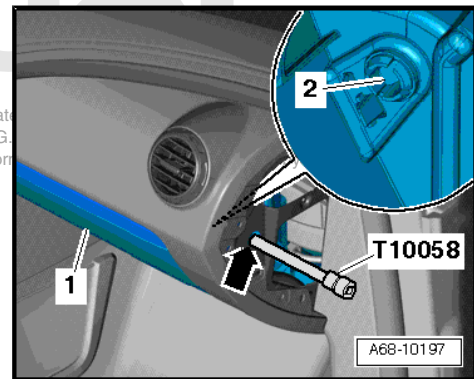
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Allen key, long reach -T10058-



Procedure

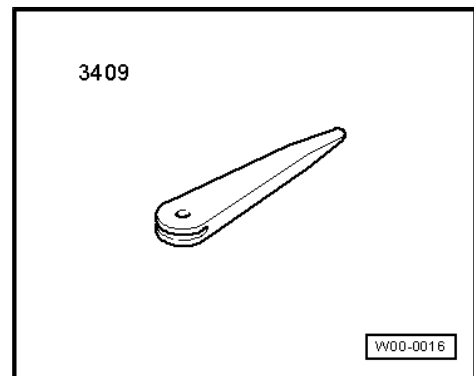
- Remove dash panel end trim => [page 146](#) .
- Insert Allen key -T10058- (or similar suitable tool with a length of 115 mm) through opening -arrow- in dash panel (passenger side).
- Open glove box lid -1- by pressing down locking pin -2-.



1.10 Removing and installing trim panel for glove box lid

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal wedge -3409-



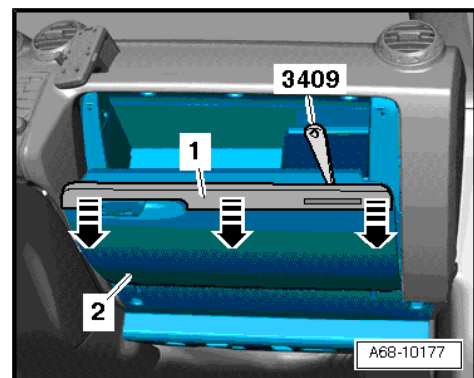
Removing

- Open glove box.
- Use removal wedge -3409- to carefully unclip trim panel -1- from glove box lid -2- -arrows-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

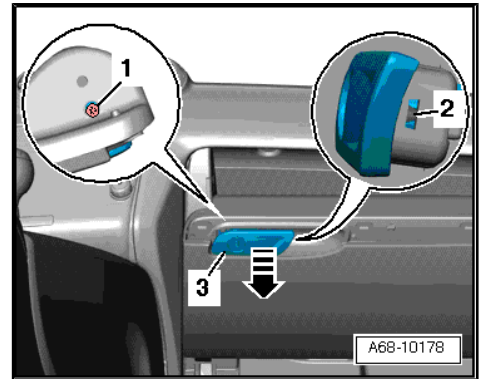
- Make sure trim panel engages audibly.



1.11 Removing and installing glove box opening mechanism with lock

Removing

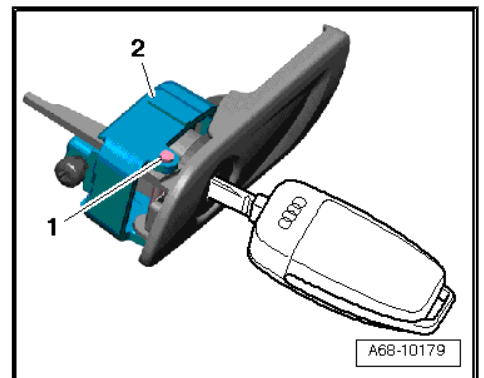
- Remove trim panel for glove box lid ⇒ [page 10](#) .
- Remove bolt -1-.
- Use a screwdriver to press down catch -2- on side of glove box opening mechanism.
- Take out glove box opening mechanism -3- with lock -arrow-.



Note

The lock cylinder can only be removed with the key inserted.

- Use a drift punch to knock out pin -1-.
- Detach cap -2-.



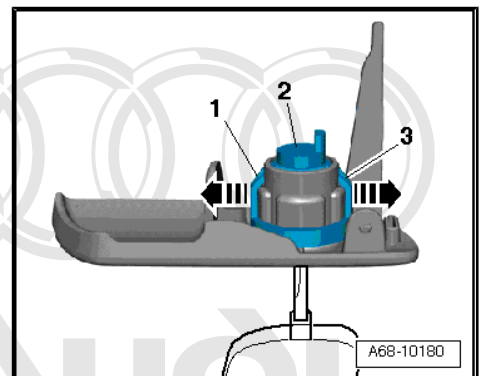
- Use screwdriver to carefully prise retainers -1- and -3- in direction of -arrow- and at the same time pull lock cylinder -2- out of glove box opening mechanism.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- With key inserted, press in lock cylinder until it engages audibly in all retainers.

Tightening torque ⇒ [page 9](#)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.12 Removing and installing glove box

Removing



WARNING

On vehicles with key-operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side -E224-, observe safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ [page 42](#).

- Open glove box lid.



Note

If the glove box lid cannot be opened in the normal way, you can release it manually ⇒ [page 9](#).

- If fitted, remove CD changer ⇒ Rep. gr. 91 .
- Unscrew bolts -arrows- and detach glove box.

All vehicles:

- Unplug electrical connector at main connector.

Installing



WARNING

On vehicles with key-operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side -E224-, observe safety regulations for working on airbags ⇒ [page 42](#).

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- Make sure connectors engage audibly.

Tightening torque ⇒ [page 9](#)

1.13 Removing and installing cushioning element for glove box lid

Removing

- Remove dash panel end trim (passenger side) ⇒ [page 146](#) .
- If fitted, remove aerial amplifier for mobile telephone -R86- ⇒ Rep. gr. 91 .
- Unplug electrical connector -1-.
- Pull out hinge pin -3-.
- Release cushioning element -2- in anti-clockwise direction -arrow- and detach.

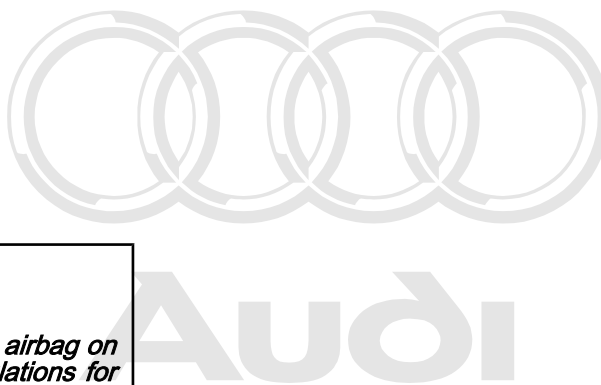
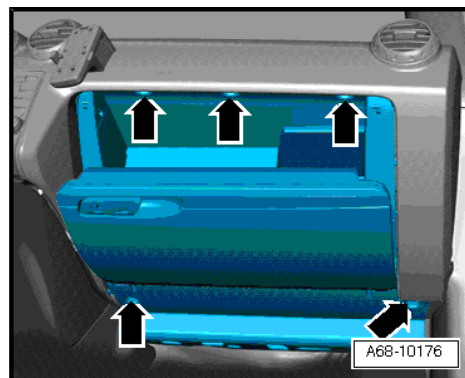
Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

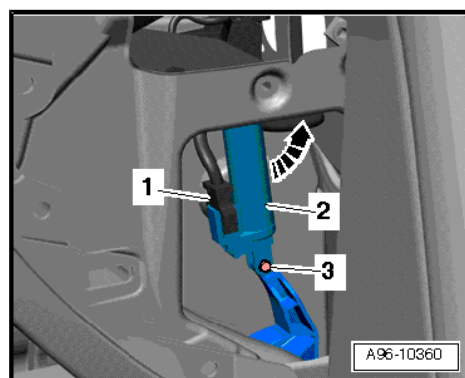
1.14 Removing and installing storage net

Removing

- Remove front passenger's seat:



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



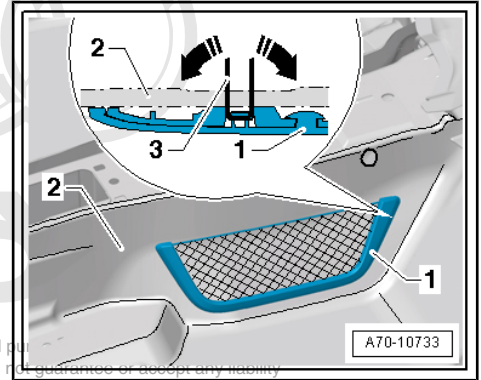
- ◆ Removing and installing front seats (with manual adjustment)
 => [page 243](#)
- ◆ Removing and installing front seats (with electric adjustment)
 => [page 274](#)
- Remove centre console side trim (passenger side)
 => [page 17](#) .
- Disengage floor covering from bracket at tunnel.
- Fold over floor covering -2- in area of front passenger's foot-well.
- Bend back clips -3- securing storage net -1- (on back of floor covering -2-) by 90° (in opposite direction of -arrows-).
- Detach net from floor covering.

Installing



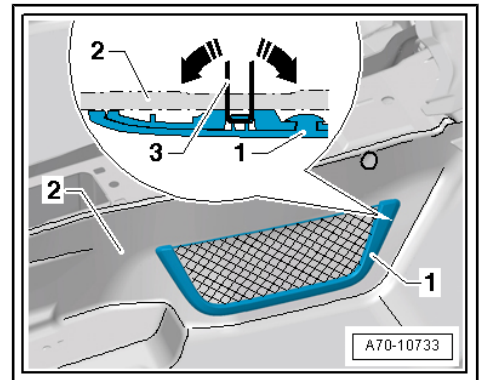
Note

When installing a new floor covering, make perforations for the storage net where they were made in the old floor covering.



- Insert net -1- into perforations in floor covering -2-.
- Bend back clips -3- on back of floor covering in direction of -arrows- until they touch the covering. To do so, hold the net from the front.

Perform remaining installation in reverse order of removal.

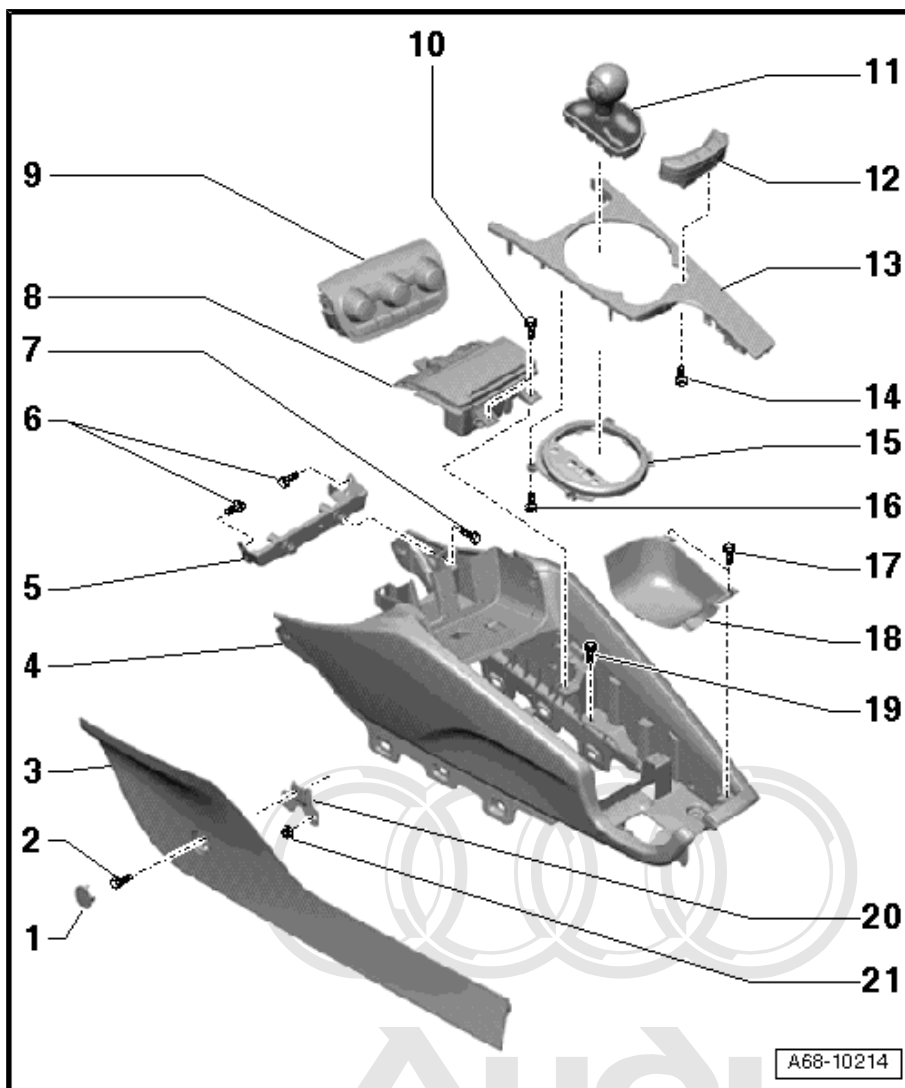


2 Centre console

2.1 Exploded view of centre console

Part 1 (front)

- 1 - Cap
- 2 - Bolt
 - 2.5 Nm
- 3 - Centre console side trim
 - Removing and installing ⇒ [page 17](#)
- 4 - Centre console (front)
 - Removing and installing ⇒ [page 22](#)
- 5 - Bracket for centre console
 - With adjuster
- 6 - Bolt
 - 3.5 Nm
- 7 - Bolt
 - 3.5 Nm
- 8 - Ashtray
 - Removing and installing ⇒ [page 21](#)
- 9 - Climatronic control unit - J255-
 - Removing and installing ⇒ Rep. gr. 87
- 10 - Bolt
 - 2.5 Nm
- 11 - Selector lever/gear lever
 - Removing and installing selector lever/gear lever ⇒ Rep. gr. 34
- 12 - Button module
 - In centre console trim
 - Removing and installing ⇒ [page 20](#)
- 13 - Centre console trim
 - Different versions
 - Removing and installing:
 - Vehicles with manual gearbox ⇒ [page 17](#)
 - Vehicles with dual clutch gearbox ⇒ [page 18](#)
 - Installation position of convertible roof actuation button -E137- and cabrio windbreak switch -E278- ⇒ [page 20](#)
- 14 - Bolt
 - 1 Nm



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

15 - Trim frame

- Different versions
- Removing and installing:

Vehicles with manual gearbox ⇒ [page 19](#)

Vehicles with dual clutch gearbox ⇒ [page 20](#)

16 - Bolt

- 1 Nm

17 - Bolt

- 2.5 Nm

18 - Grip moulding for handbrake lever

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 21](#)

19 - Bolt

- 3.5 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

20 - Bracket for side trim

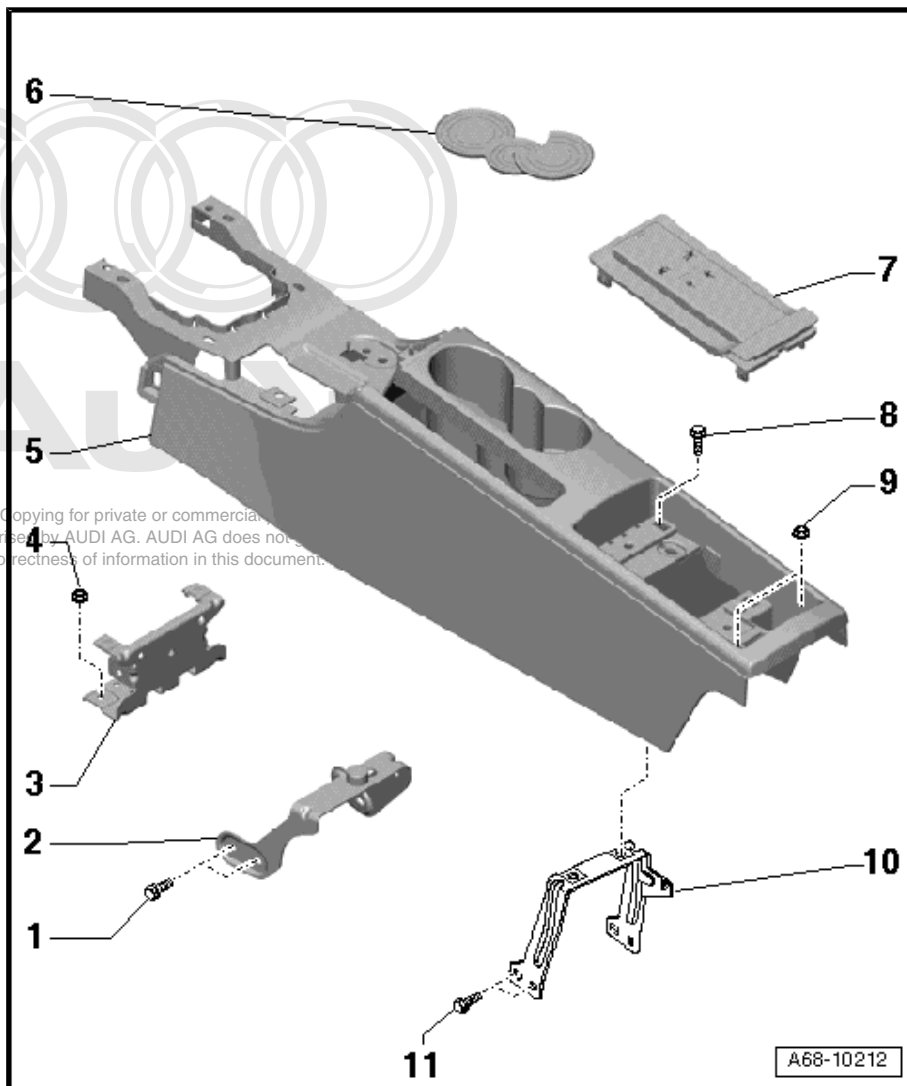
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 17](#)

21 - Nut

- 3.5 Nm

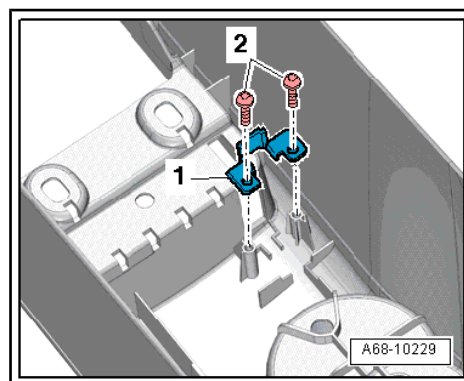
Part 2 (rear)

- 1 - Bolt**
 - 3.5 Nm
- 2 - Retainer**
- 3 - Bracket for centre console**
 - Removing and installing
=> [page 24](#)
- 4 - Nut**
 - 8 Nm
- 5 - Centre console (rear)**
 - Different versions
 - Removing and installing
=> [page 23](#)
- 6 - Lining mat**
- 7 - Telephone bracket - R126- / storage compartment**
 - Removing and installing
telephone bracket -
R126- => Rep. gr. 91
- 8 - Bolt**
 - 2.5 Nm
 - For Roadster only
- 9 - Nut**
 - 3.5 Nm
- 10 - Bracket for centre console**
 - For Roadster only
- 11 - Bolt**
 - 3.5 Nm
 - For Roadster only



Tightening torque for dummy cover for AUX socket

- 1 - Dummy cover for AUX socket
- 2 - Bolts, 1.5 Nm



2.2 Removing and installing side trim for centre console

Removing



Note

Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.

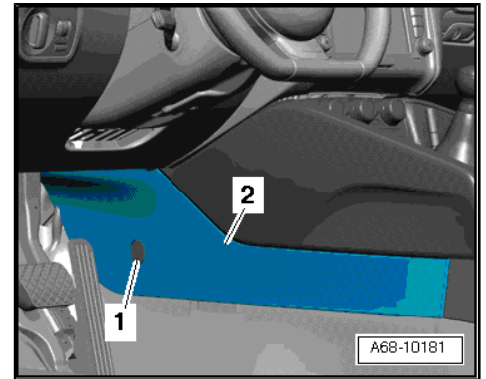
- Use a screwdriver to prise off cap -1- and unscrew bolt.
- Reach beneath the side trim -2- and carefully detach it from the centre console.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- Make sure side trim engages audibly.

Tightening torque ⇒ [page 14](#)



2.3 Removing and installing bracket for side trim

Removing



Note

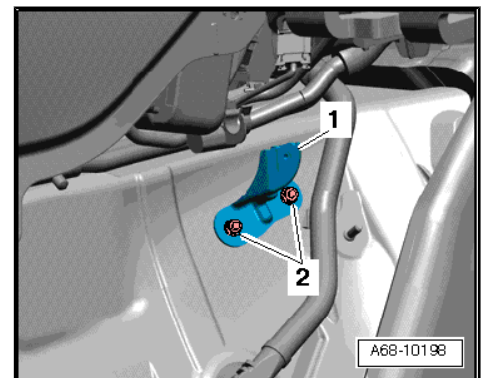
Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.

- Remove centre console side trim ⇒ [page 17](#).
- Fold back floor covering in area of bracket -1-.
- Unscrew nuts -2- and detach bracket from centre tunnel.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

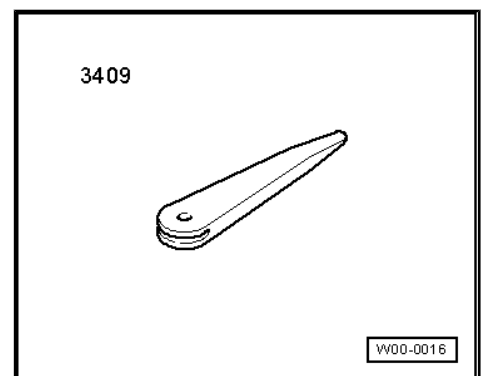
Tightening torque ⇒ [page 14](#)



2.4 Removing and installing centre console trim - vehicles with manual gearbox

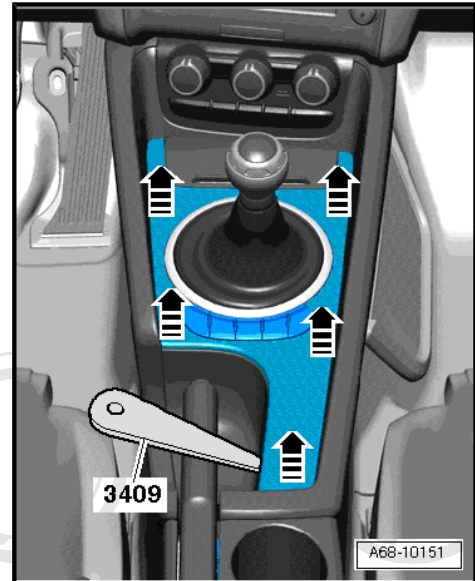
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal wedge -3409-



Removing

- Use removal wedge -3409- to prise centre console trim out of centre console -arrows-.
- Unplug electrical connectors.

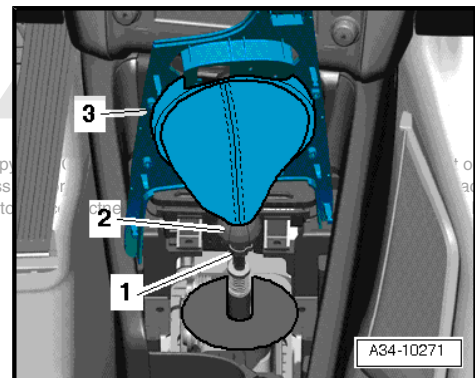


- Fold centre console trim together with gear lever boot upwards over gear knob.
- Unfasten hose clamp -1- and lift off gear knob -2- together with centre console trim -3-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following

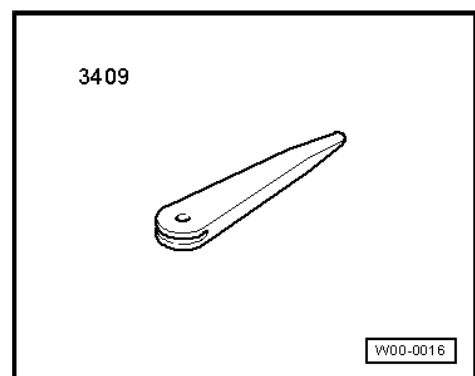
- Make sure trim engages audibly in centre console.



2.5 Removing and installing centre console trim - vehicles with dual clutch gearbox

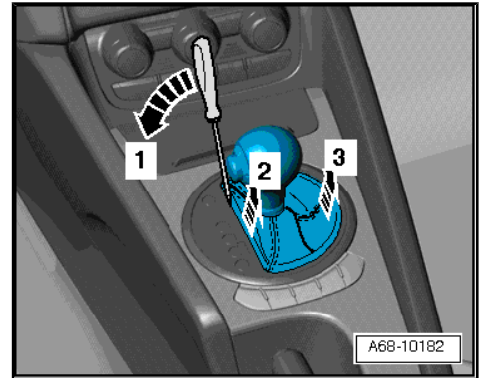
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal wedge -3409-



Removing

- Use a small screwdriver to carefully prise out the selector lever boot at the side -arrow 1-.
- Lift off the selector lever boot on both sides -arrows 2 and 3-.

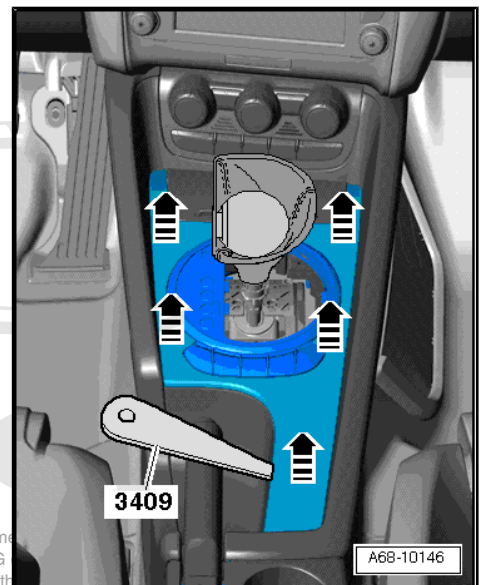


- Use removal wedge -3409- to prise centre console trim out of centre console -arrows-.
- Unplug electrical connectors.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- Make sure trim engages audibly in centre console.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial use is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG is not liable with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

2.6 Removing and installing trim frame - vehicles with manual gearbox

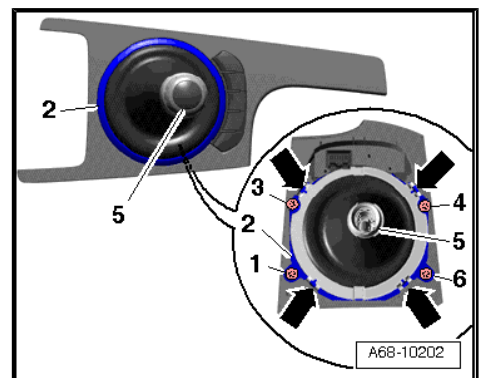
Removing

- Remove centre console trim ⇒ [page 17](#) .
- Release gear lever boot -arrows- and detach it from trim frame together with gear knob -5-.
- Remove bolts -1, 3, 4, 6- and detach trim frame -2-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening torque ⇒ [page 14](#)



2.7 Removing and installing trim frame - vehicles with dual clutch gearbox

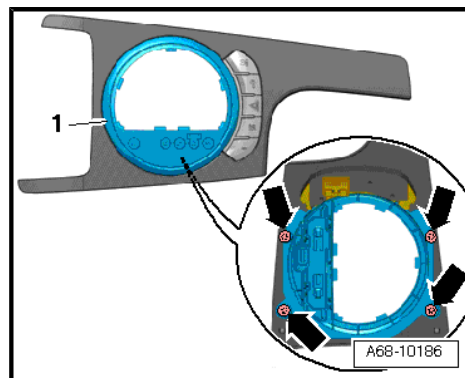
Removing

- Remove centre console trim ⇒ [page 18](#) .
- Unscrew bolts -arrows- and detach trim frame -1- with selector lever position display -Y26- .

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening torque ⇒ [page 14](#)



2.8 Removing and installing button module in centre console trim

Removing



Note

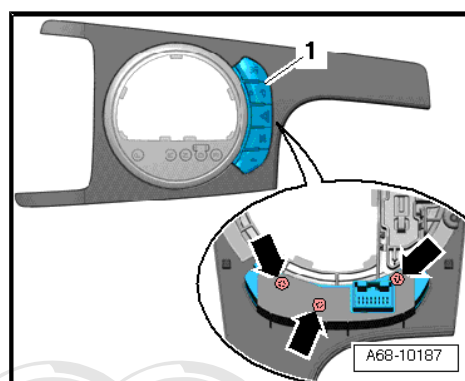
The illustration shows a vehicle with dual clutch gearbox.

- Remove centre console trim: vehicles with manual gearbox ⇒ [page 17](#) , vehicles with dual clutch gearbox ⇒ [page 18](#) .
- Remove bolts -arrows- and detach button module -1-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening torque ⇒ [page 14](#)



2.9 Installation position of convertible roof actuation button -E137- and cabrio windbreak switch -E278-

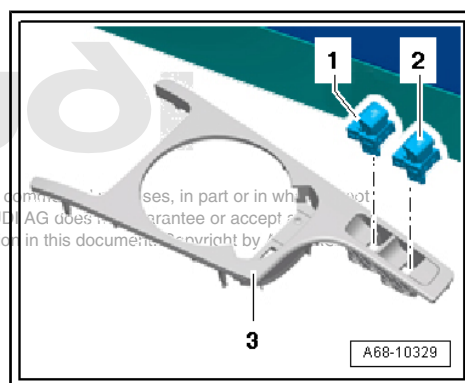
- 1 - Convertible roof actuation button -E137-
- 2 - Cabrio windbreak switch -E278-
- 3 - Centre console trim

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept responsibility with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Audi AG.



Note

Removing and installing convertible roof actuation button -E137- and cabrio windbreak switch -E278- ⇒ *Electrical System; Rep. gr. 96*



2.10 Removing and installing grip moulding for handbrake lever

Removing

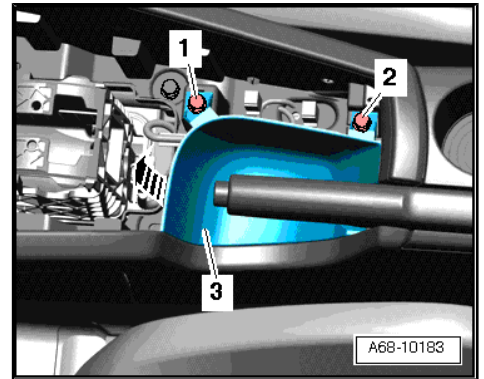
- Remove centre console trim: vehicles with manual gearbox ⇒ [page 17](#) , vehicles with dual clutch gearbox ⇒ [page 18](#) .
- Apply handbrake.
- Remove bolts -1- and -2-.
- Lift the grip moulding for the handbrake lever -3- at the front -arrow- and remove it to the front out of the centre console.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- Make sure the grip moulding for the handbrake lever is properly inserted in the spring clip.

Tightening torque ⇒ [page 14](#)



2.11 Removing and installing ashtray

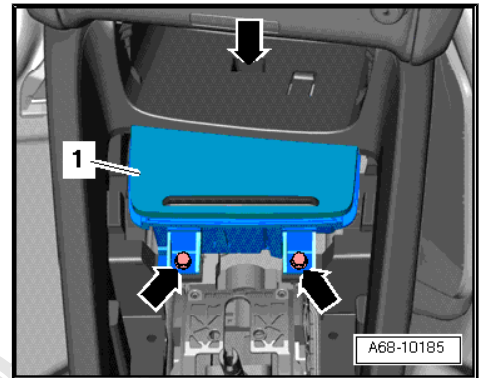
Removing

- Remove Climatronic control unit -J255- ⇒ Rep. gr. 87 .
- Remove centre console trim: vehicles with manual gearbox ⇒ [page 17](#) , vehicles with dual clutch gearbox ⇒ [page 18](#) .
- Unscrew bolts -arrows- and carefully take out ashtray -1- towards rear.
- Unplug cigarette lighter connector at ashtray.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening torque ⇒ [page 14](#)



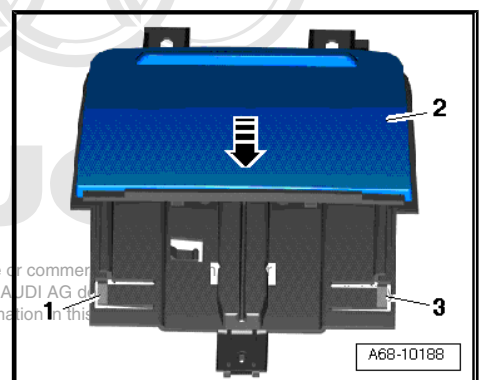
2.12 Removing and installing ashtray lid

Removing

- Remove ashtray ⇒ [page 21](#) .
- Press down retaining tabs -1- and -3- (left and right) and slide lid -2- off ashtray -arrow-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial use is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

2.13 Removing and installing trim for ashtray lid

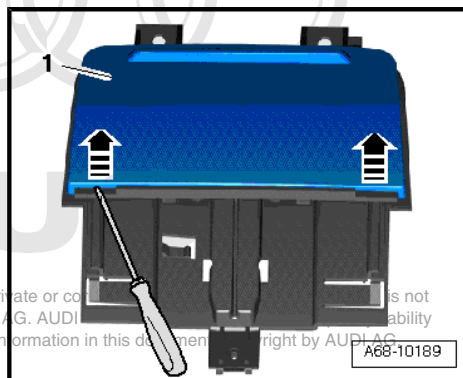
Removing

- Remove ashtray => [page 21](#) .
- Use a screwdriver to carefully prise trim -1- off ashtray lid -arrows- (left and right).

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- Make sure trim for ashtray lid engages audibly.



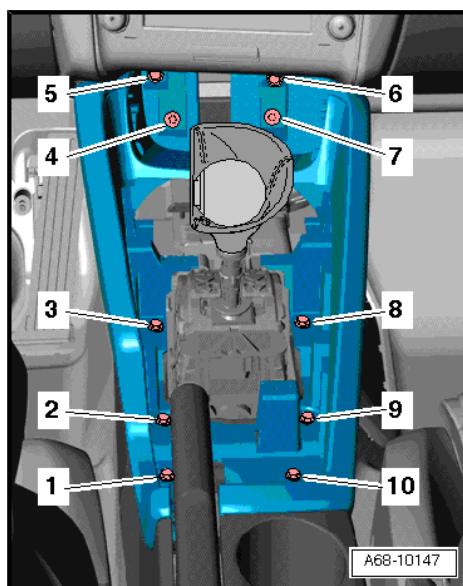
2.14 Removing and installing centre console (front)

Removing

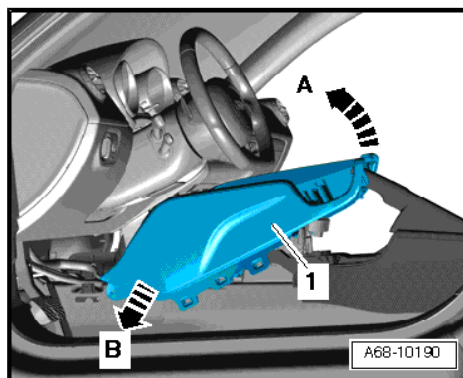
- Remove centre console side trim panels => [page 17](#) .
- Remove centre console trim: vehicles with manual gearbox => [page 17](#) , vehicles with dual clutch gearbox => [page 18](#) .
- Remove grip moulding for handbrake lever => [page 21](#) .
- Remove ashtray => [page 21](#) .
- Unscrew bolts -1 ... 10-

Note

The illustration shows a vehicle with dual clutch gearbox.



- Apply handbrake as firmly as possible.
- Pull the rear centre console upwards -arrow A- and guide it past the handbrake lever. To do so, slide the centre console forwards as far as possible -arrow B-
- Remove centre console to the rear over selector lever or gear lever.



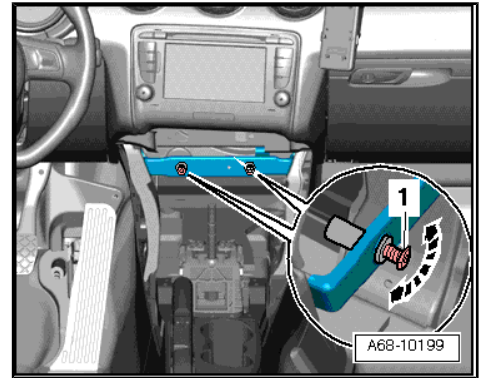
Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- Check freedom of movement of adjuster nut -1- of adjuster -arrows-.
- Screw in adjuster nuts as far as they will go, but do not tighten.

Note

When tightening the bolts, the nuts of the adjusters automatically turn towards the mounting points of the centre console to lock it in place.

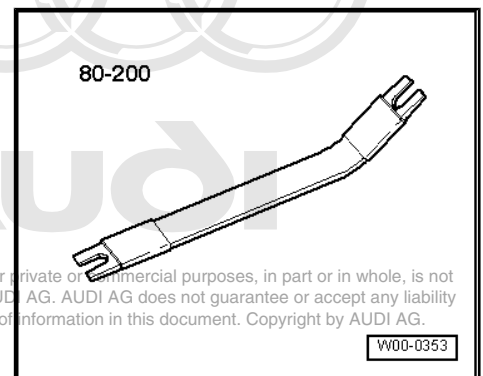


Tightening torque ⇒ [page 14](#)

2.15 Removing and installing centre console (rear)

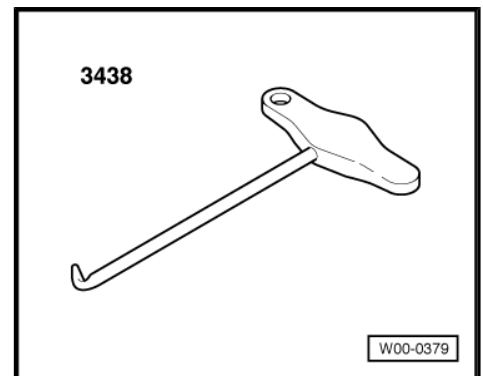
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal lever -80 - 200-



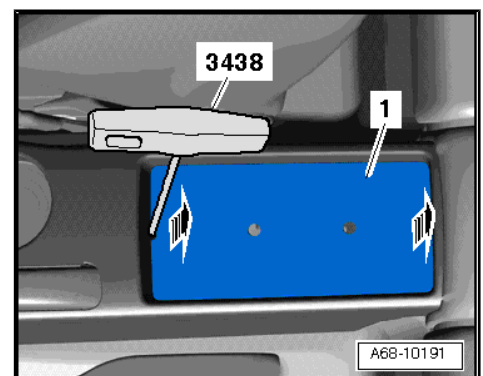
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- ◆ Hook -3438-



Removing

- Remove centre console (front) ⇒ [page 22](#) .
- If fitted, remove holder for padding ⇒ [page 28](#) .
- If fitted, remove telephone bracket -R126- ⇒ Rep. gr. 91 .
- Take out lining mat.
- Pull the storage compartment -1- with the hook -3438- out of the centre console -arrows-.
- Unplug electrical connector from AUX socket.





- Press clip -arrow- off centre console using removal lever -80 - 200- .



Note

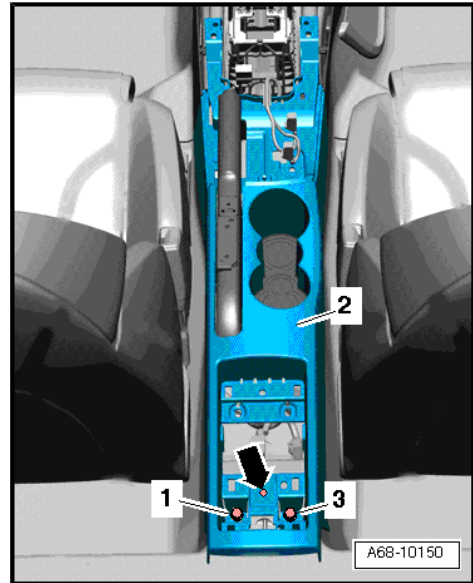
Use silicone-free lubricant spray to facilitate removal of the clip if necessary.

- Unscrew nuts -1- and -3-.
- Pull centre console -2- upwards and guide it out over hand-brake lever.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

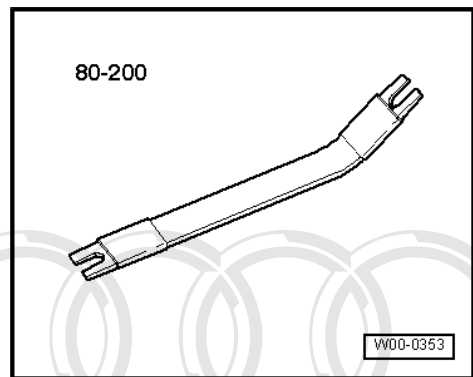
Tightening torque => [page 15](#)



2.16 Removing and installing brackets for centre console

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal lever -80 - 200-



Removing

- Remove centre console (rear) => [page 22](#) .
- Press clips -arrows- off bracket using removal lever -80 - 200- .



Note

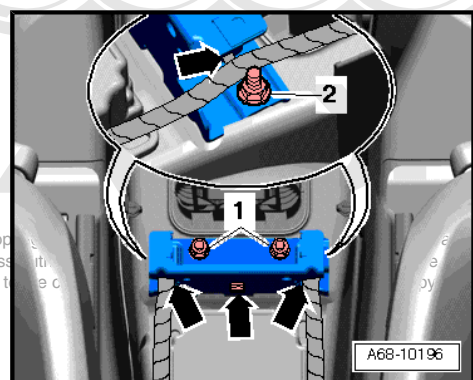
Use silicone-free lubricant spray to facilitate removal of the clips if necessary.

- Unscrew nuts -1- and -2- and detach bracket.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening torque => [page 15](#)



Protected by copyright. All rights reserved. This document is not to be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or by any information storage and retrieval system, without the prior written permission of Audi AG.

3 Trim for handbrake grip

3.1 Exploded view of trim for handbrake grip

1 - Trim for handbrake grip

- For vehicles with no centre armrest
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 26](#)

2 - Stud

- Detach after removing trim for handbrake grip

3 - Handbrake trim (left-side)

- For vehicles with centre armrest
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 26](#)

4 - Trim for handbrake grip

- For vehicles with centre armrest
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 26](#)

5 - Pushbutton

- Detach after removing trim for handbrake grip

6 - Cap

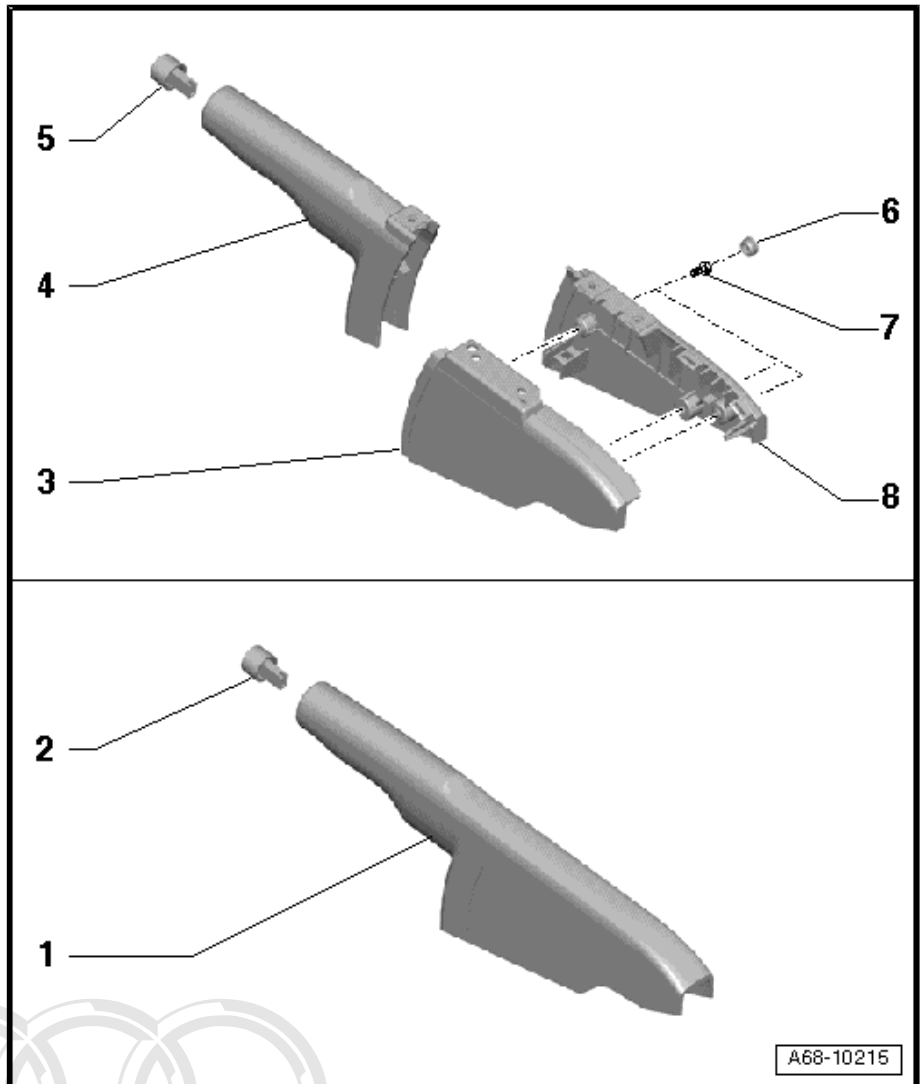
- For vehicles with centre armrest

7 - Bolt

- For vehicles with centre armrest
- 2.5 Nm
- 3x

8 - Handbrake trim (right-side)

- For vehicles with centre armrest
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 26](#)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.2 Removing and installing trim for handbrake grip - vehicles with no centre armrest

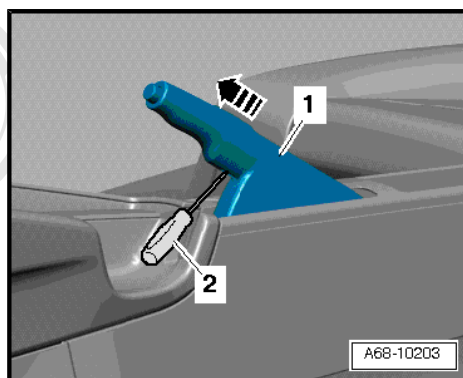
Removing

- Apply handbrake as firmly as possible.
- Release retaining clip through recess at bottom of handbrake grip using a small screwdriver -2-.
- Detach trim for handbrake grip -1- to the front -arrow-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- Make sure trim for handbrake grip engages audibly.



3.3 Removing and installing trim for handbrake grip - vehicles with centre armrest

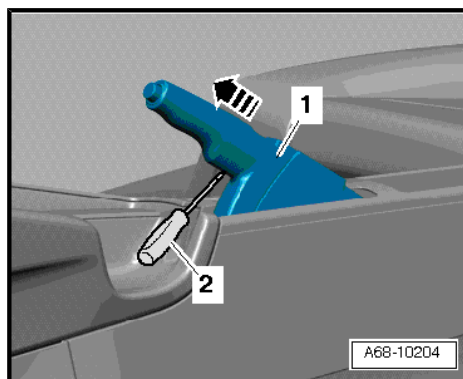
Removing

- Remove holder for padding ⇒ [page 28](#) .
- Apply handbrake as firmly as possible.
- Use a small screwdriver -2- to pierce seam of handbrake grip at position shown in illustration.
- Release retaining clip beneath it and detach trim for handbrake grip -1- to the front -arrow-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- Make sure trim for handbrake grip engages audibly.



3.4 Removing and installing handbrake trim panels (left and right) - vehicles with centre armrest

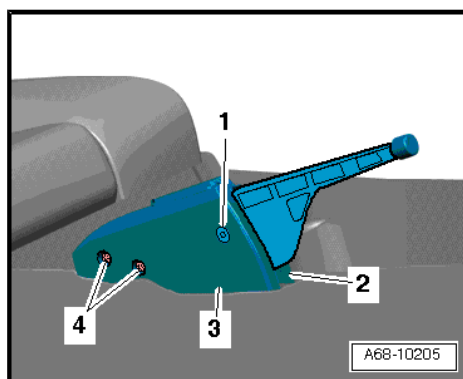
Removing

- Remove centre console (rear) ⇒ [page 23](#) .
- Remove trim for handbrake grip ⇒ [page 26](#) .
- Unscrew bolts -4-.
- Use a screwdriver to prise off cap -1- and unscrew bolt.
- Detach trim panels -2 and 3- for handbrake lever.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order, note the following.

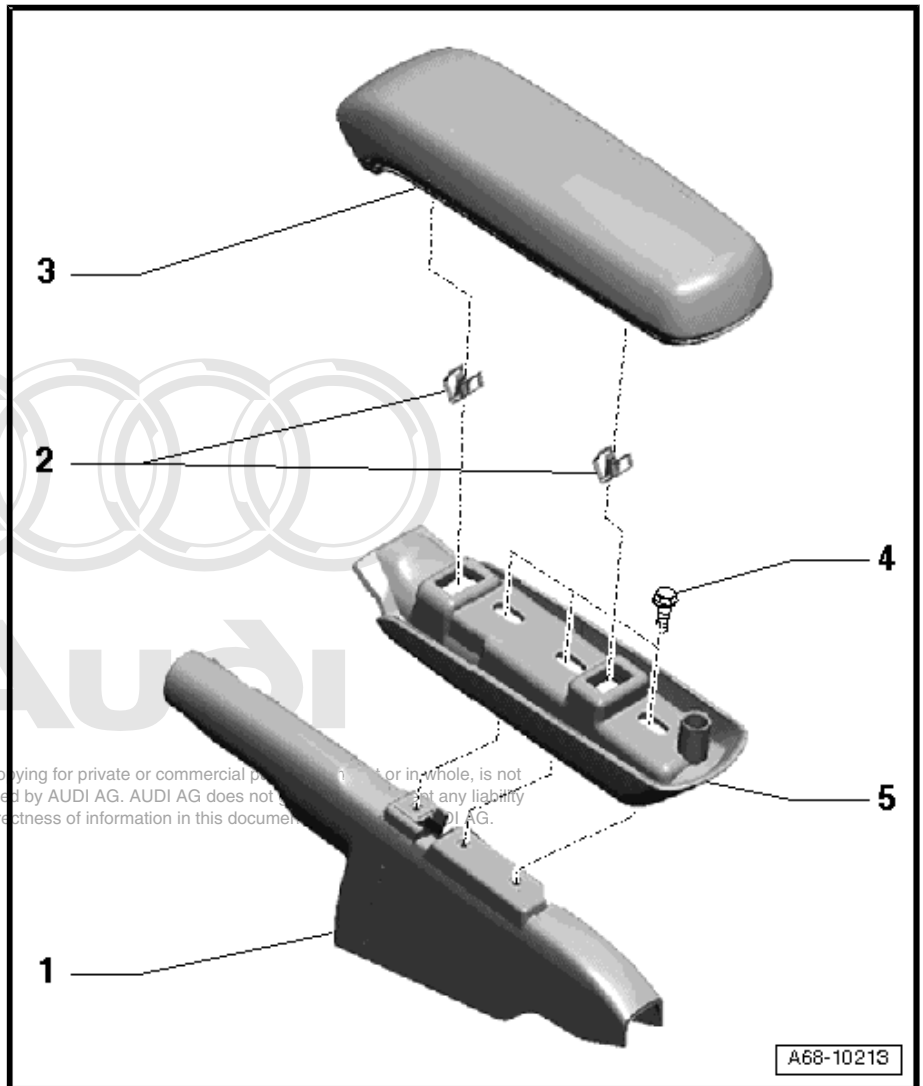
Tightening torque ⇒ [page 25](#)



4 Centre armrest

4.1 Exploded view of centre armrest

- 1 - Trim for handbrake lever
- 2 - Retaining spring
- 3 - Padding for centre armrest
 - Removing and installing
=> [page 27](#)
 - Cannot be dismantled
- 4 - Bolt
 - 2.5 Nm
 - 3x
- 5 - Holder for padding
 - Removing and installing
=> [page 28](#)



4.2 Removing and installing centre armrest padding

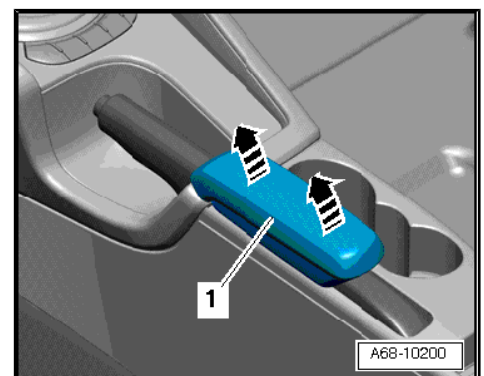
Removing

- Lift the centre armrest padding -1- out of the spring clips -arrows-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- Make sure centre armrest padding engages audibly in spring clips.



4.3 Removing and installing holder for padding

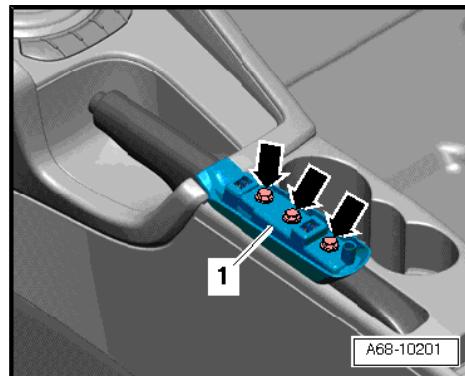
Removing

- Remove centre armrest padding ⇒ [page 27](#) .
- Remove bolts -arrows- and detach holder -1-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening torque ⇒ [page 27](#)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5 Interior mirror

5.1 Safety regulations for interior mirror



WARNING

- ◆ *The interior mirror glass consists of several layers and contains an electrolyte which gives the mirror its properties. Beware of liquid electrolyte escaping from a broken mirror.*
- ◆ *Liquid electrolyte can cause irritation to skin, eyes and respiratory organs.*
- ◆ *Should liquid electrolyte make contact with your skin or eyes rinse it off immediately with lots of water. If the irritation does not go away visit a doctor without delay.*



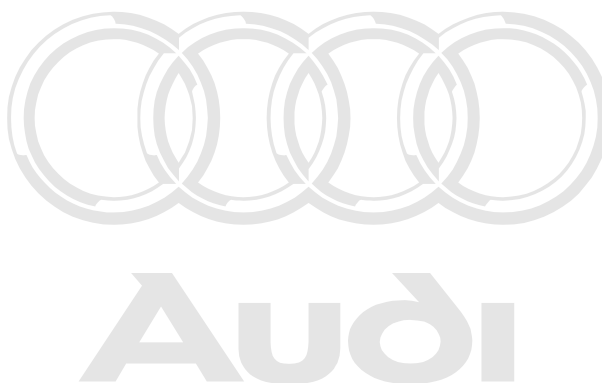
Caution

If liquid electrolyte escapes from a broken mirror glass it will damage all plastic surfaces with which it comes into contact. Make sure you clean away any leaked electrolyte immediately using clean water and a sponge.

5.2 General notes on interior mirror

There are different types of interior mirrors with different functions:

- ◆ Manual anti-dazzle interior mirror
- ◆ Automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror -Y7-
- ◆ Interior mirror with digital compass
- ◆ Interior mirror with rain and light sensor -G397-
- ◆ Interior mirror with humidity sender -G355-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.3 Switching automatic anti-dazzle function on and off

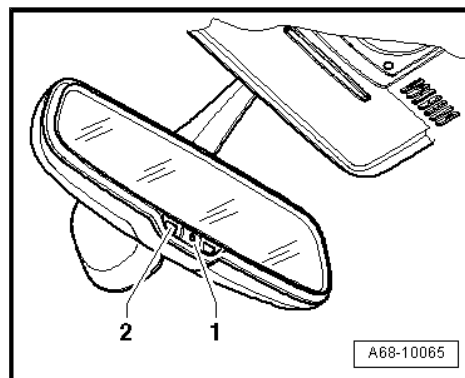
Switching automatic anti-dazzle function on and off:

- Press button -1- briefly (up to 3 seconds) to switch automatic anti-dazzle function on or off.

Automatic anti-dazzle function „On“: Indicator lamp -2- lights up.

Automatic anti-dazzle function „Off“: Indicator lamp -2- goes out.

- ◆ The automatic anti-dazzle function is activated every time the ignition is switched on.
- ◆ If you deactivate the automatic anti-dazzle function for the interior mirror this will also deactivate the anti-dazzle function for the exterior mirrors.
- ◆ When in anti-dazzle mode, the mirror will become lighter as soon as the interior light is switched on or reverse gear is engaged.
- ◆ Please note that the automatic anti-dazzle function for the interior mirror can only function correctly if the rear sun blind is retracted.



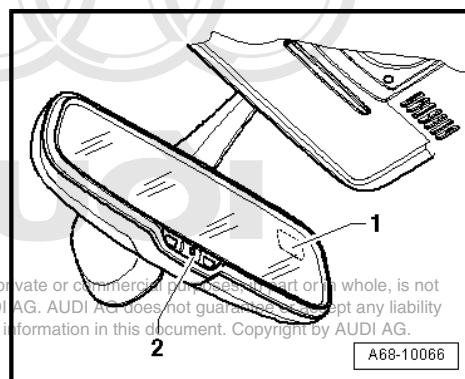
5.4 Switching compass display on and off

Switching compass display on and off:

- Press button -2- for 3 to 6 seconds. The compass display will be switched „on“ or „off“.

Compass display -1- „on“ - direction is indicated.

Compass display -1- „off“ - direction is not indicated.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.5 Setting magnetic deflection zone

It is necessary to set the magnetic deflection zone if:

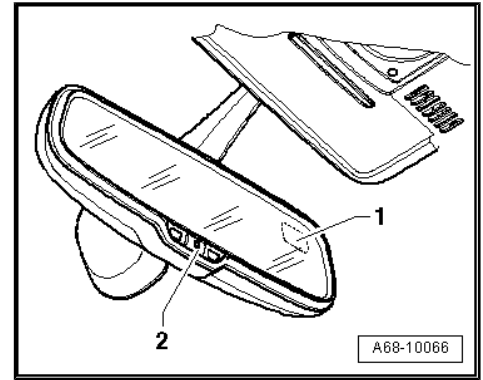
- ◆ A new automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror -Y7- is installed.
- ◆ You should set a different magnetic deflection zone if you have reached a distance more than two zones away from the pre-set reference zone after travelling long distances.

Setting magnetic deflection zone:

- Press and hold button -2- for 6 to 9 seconds until compass display shows „Z“ and a number for the magnetic deflection zone.
- Press button -2- repeatedly until the number of the desired magnetic deflection zone appears.
- Refer to the maps to select the applicable deflection zone:
 - ◆ Europe ⇒ [page 33](#)
 - ◆ North America ⇒ [page 33](#)
 - ◆ South America ⇒ [page 34](#)
 - ◆ Asia ⇒ [page 35](#)
 - ◆ Africa ⇒ [page 36](#)
 - ◆ Australia ⇒ [page 37](#)

After a few seconds the compass display will switch from the magnetic deflection zone to the current direction/point of the compass.

- Make sure you switch the anti-dazzle function of the interior mirror back on ⇒ [page 30](#) after setting the magnetic deflection zone.



5.6 Calibrating digital compass

It is necessary to calibrate the digital compass if:

- ◆ The directions the digital compass shows are inaccurate.
- ◆ The compass display shows a „C“ instead of a point of the compass, or if the display remains blank.
- ◆ A new automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror -Y7- is installed.

In exceptional circumstances, the digital compass may also have to be calibrated, for example if:

- ◆ The vehicle battery is reconnected after being disconnected for a long period,
- ◆ A new audio system or audio system components has/have been fitted

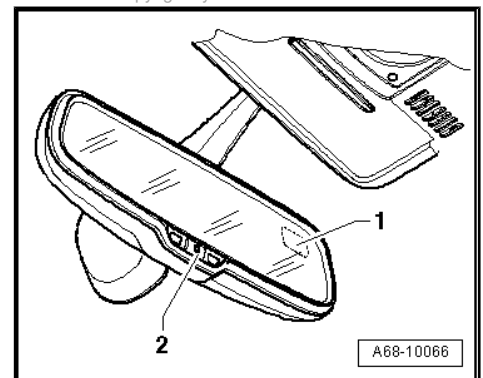
Calibrating digital compass:

- Switch on ignition.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Compass display -1- should show „C“.

- If display does not show „C“, press and hold button -2- for 9 to 12 seconds until letter „C“ appears in compass display -1-.
- Drive the vehicle in a circle two or three times at a speed of approx. 5 mph (10 km/h) until a direction is indicated on the compass display -1-.
- Make sure you switch the anti-dazzle function of the interior mirror back on ⇒ [page 30](#) after completing the calibration process.



5.7 Adjusting automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror -Y7- for right-hand drive or left-hand drive vehicles

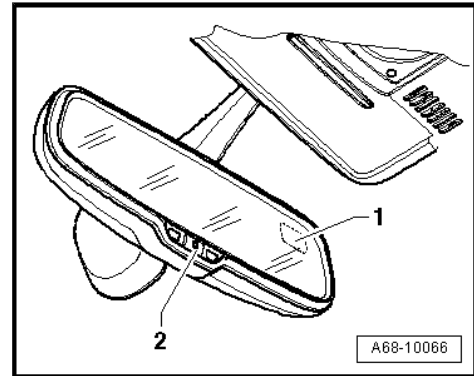
It is necessary to adjust the mirror to right-hand or left-hand drive if:

- ◆ A new automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror -Y7- is installed.



Note

- ◆ *On recently manufactured automatic anti-dazzle interior mirrors -Y7-, the sensor for the magnetic deflection zone is no longer fitted in the mirror base, but in the mirror housing. Only these mirrors can and MUST be adjusted to right-hand or left-hand drive.*
 - ◆ *Recently manufactured automatic anti-dazzle interior mirrors -Y7- can be identified by pressing and holding button -2- for longer than 12 seconds; „L“ or „A“ will appear on the display of these mirrors.*
- Press and hold button -2- for 12 to 15 seconds until display shows „L“ (for left-hand drive vehicles) or „A“ (for right-hand drive vehicles).
 - Press button -2- again briefly to change the setting for right-hand or left-hand drive.
 - After a short while, the display will automatically show „C“ (for calibration). The digital compass must now be calibrated ⇒ [page 31](#) .
 - Make sure you switch the anti-dazzle function of the interior mirror back on ⇒ [page 30](#) after adjusting the mirror for right-hand or left-hand drive.

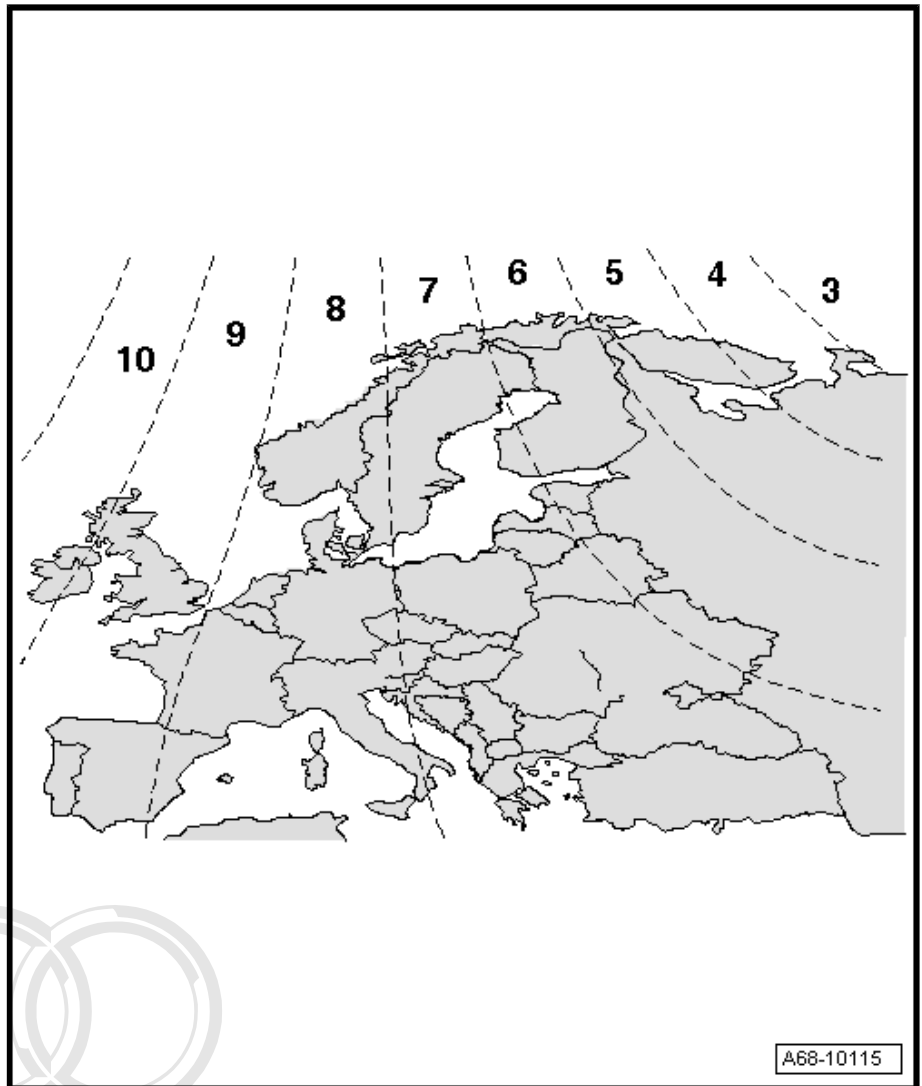


Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.8 Selecting the applicable deflection zone from the map

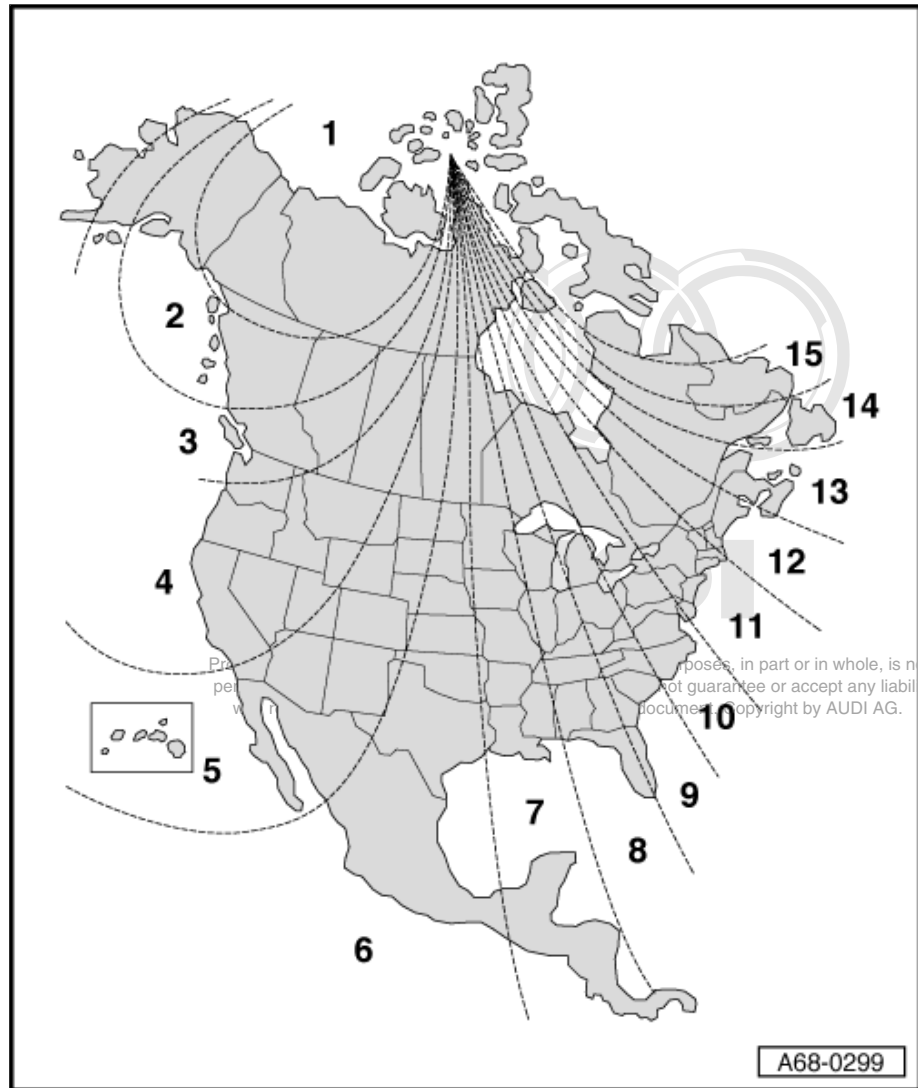
Europe



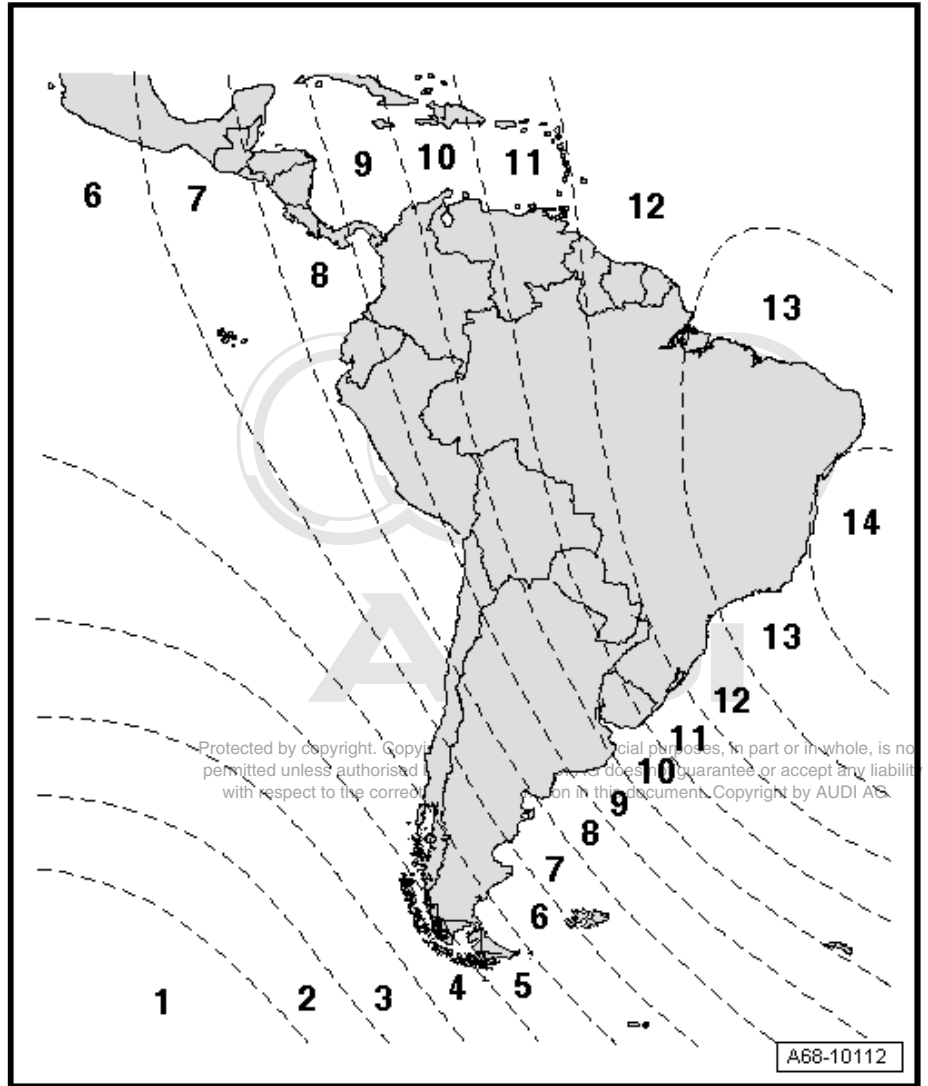
North America



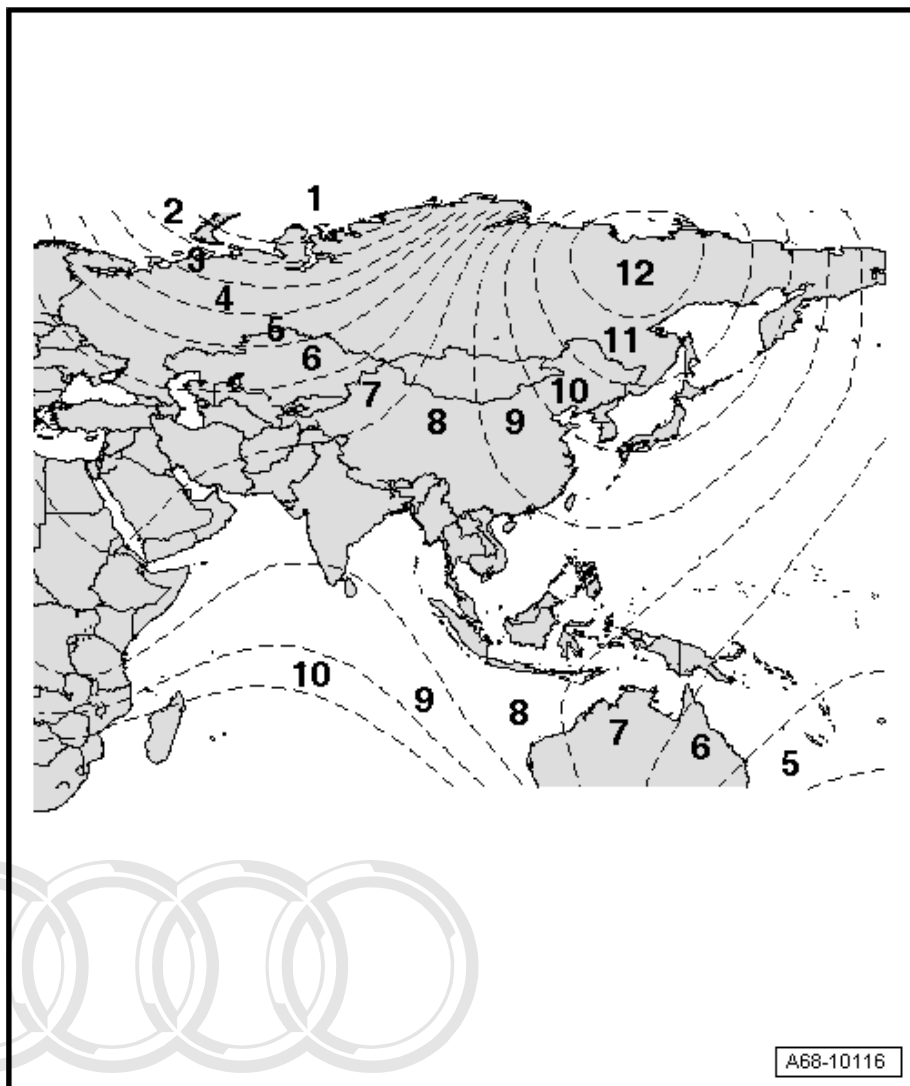
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



South America



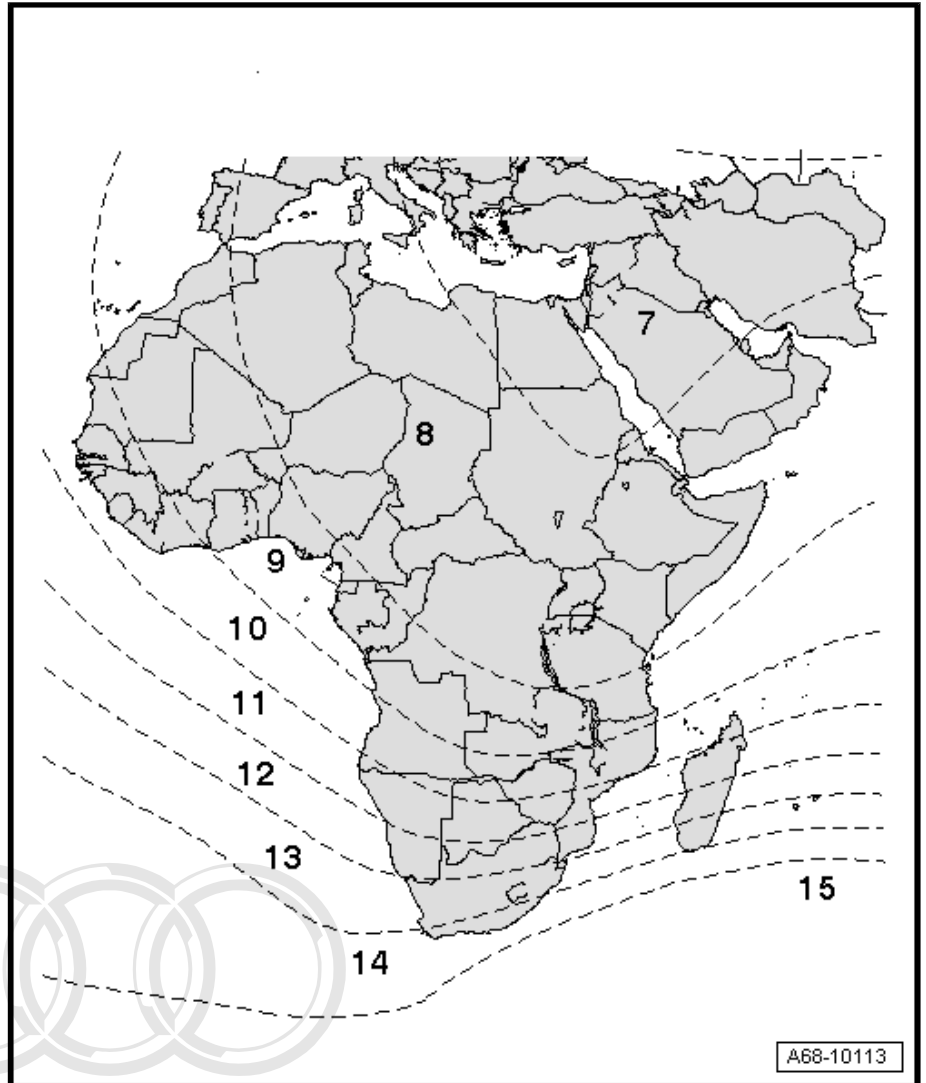
Asia



Africa



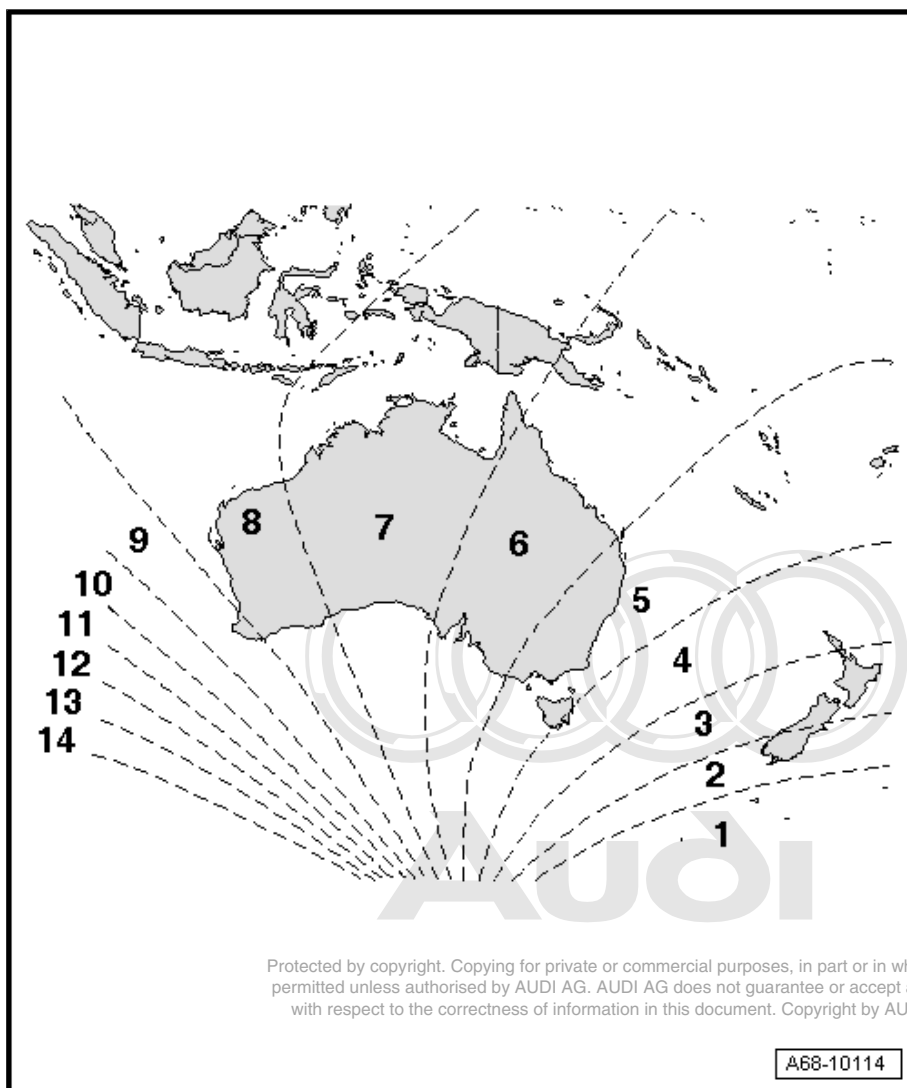
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Australia

Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



5.9 Checking operation of automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror

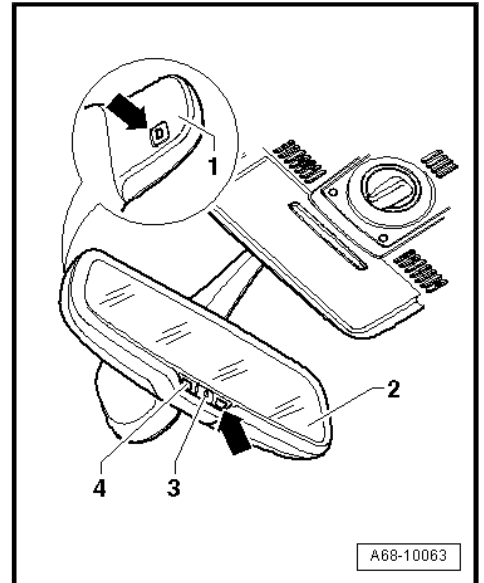
The test can only be carried out if the following conditions are met:

- Interior mirror is fitted.
- Ignition is switched on.
- Reverse gear is not engaged.
- Automatic anti-dazzle function is switched on, indicator lamp must be lit.

Test sequence

- Cover or mask photosensor -arrow- on housing side -1-.
- Aim beam of a torch (or similar) at photosensor -arrow- on mirror side -2-.

Interior mirror should darken quickly.



5.10 Removing and installing interior mirror

When removing and installing the mirror observe the safety regulations ⇒ [page 29](#) and the general notes ⇒ [page 29](#).



Note

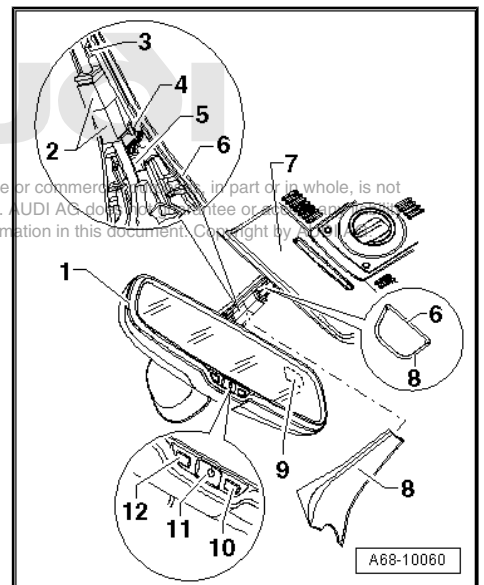
The following procedure for installing and removing refers to the automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror -Y7-. The other types of interior mirrors are removed and installed in a similar manner.

Removing

- Unclip cover -8- from cable guide -6-.
- Unplug connector -5- from rain and light sensor -G397-.
- Unclip wiring from brackets -3- and -4-.

Vehicles with automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror -Y7-

- Unplug connector -2-.
- 1 - Interior mirror
 7 - Interior light (roof module)
 9 - Compass display
 10 - Photosensor for automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror
 11 - Switch with two functions:
- ◆ To switch automatic anti-dazzle function on and off
 - ◆ To activate and calibrate digital compass



All vehicles (continued)

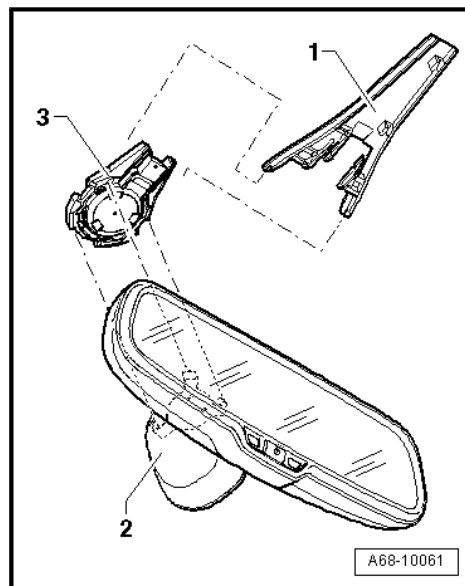
- Detach cable guide -1- from retaining plate -3-.
- Turn interior mirror -2- approx. 20° turn in anti-clockwise direction.
- Detach interior mirror -2- from retaining plate -3-.

**Note**

Under no circumstances detach interior mirror from mirror base.

Installing

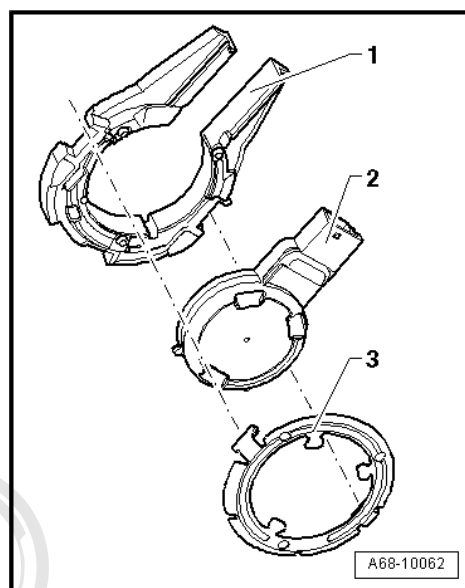
- Install in reverse order of removal.



5.11 Removing and installing rain and light sensor -G397-

Removing

- Remove interior mirror ⇒ [page 39](#) .
- Unclip retaining spring -3- from retaining plate -1-.
- Detach rain and light sensor -G397- -2- from retaining plate -1-.



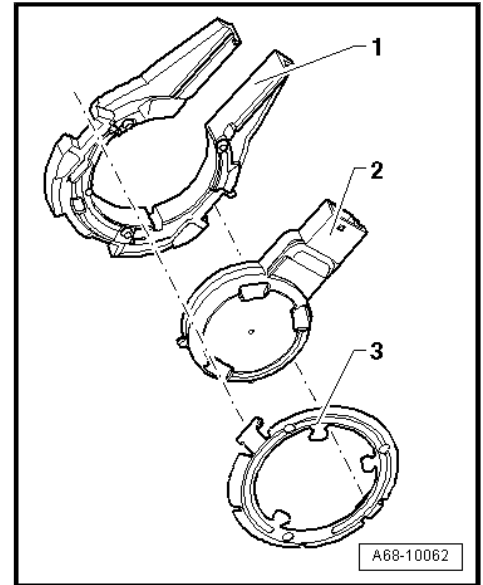
Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

- Make sure that retaining spring -3- engages correctly on retaining plate -1-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

69 – Passenger protection

1 Safety regulations and test methods for pyrotechnic, electrical and mechanical components of the restraint system

1.1 General safety regulations



Note

Pyrotechnic components are:

- ◆ Airbag units
- ◆ Belt tensioners
- ◆ Belt force limiters (depending on equipment version)
- ◆ Battery isolation elements (depending on equipment version)

General notes

- ◆ Testing, removing, installing and repair work may only be performed by qualified personnel.
- ◆ There are no specified intervals for renewing airbag units.
- ◆ Never perform tests with a test lamp, voltmeter or ohmmeter.
- ◆ Only check pyrotechnic components when they are installed in the vehicle and always use suitable vehicle diagnostic, testing and information systems which have been approved by the manufacturer.
- ◆ When working on pyrotechnic components and on the airbag control unit -J234- always disconnect the battery earth strap with the ignition SWITCHED ON. Subsequently cover negative terminal.
- ◆ After disconnecting the battery, you must wait for 10 seconds.
- ◆ The battery must be connected with the ignition SWITCHED ON. Make sure there is no one in the vehicle. Exception: Vehicles on which the battery is in the passenger compartment; in this case, please keep away from the operating range of the seat belts and airbags.
- ◆ Observe measures to be taken after connecting the battery ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .
- ◆ Before handling pyrotechnic components of the restraint system (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity, for example by briefly touching grounded metal components such as the door striker plate.
- ◆ Always wash hands after handling pyrotechnic components of the restraint system which have been triggered.
- ◆ Pyrotechnic components must not be opened or repaired; always use new parts (risk of injury).
- ◆ Pyrotechnic components which have been dropped onto a hard surface or which show signs of damage must not be used.

- ◆ Pyrotechnic components should be installed immediately after removing them from their packaging.
- ◆ If the work is interrupted, the pyrotechnic component should again be placed in its packaging.
- ◆ The pyrotechnic component must never be left unattended.
- ◆ When connecting pyrotechnic components of the restraint system, there should be no-one in the vehicle other than the person performing the work.
- ◆ Pyrotechnic components must never be treated with grease, cleaning agents or similar.
- ◆ Always renew airbag unit if fabric is contaminated by oil, grease, paint, solvent or similar.
- ◆ Pyrotechnic components must not be exposed to temperatures higher than 100 °C even for brief periods of time.

Special notes for driver's and front passenger's airbags

- ◆ Following removal, driver's and front passenger's airbag units must be stored with the cushioned side facing upwards.

Always keep to the following sequence when renewing airbag units:

- 1 - Remove old airbag unit and set it down with cushioned side facing upwards.
- 2 - Take new airbag unit out of packaging and set it down with cushioned side facing upwards.
- 3 - Immediately place old airbag unit in packaging.
- 4 - Install new airbag unit in vehicle.

This document is not to be used for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Special notes for belt tensioners

- ◆ When removing and installing belt tensioners, proceed very carefully. If belt tensioner units are not handled correctly, there is an increased danger and injury risk.
- ◆ Belt tensioner units which are mechanically damaged (dents, fractures) must always be renewed.
- ◆ Never point the open end of a belt tensioner at another person.
- ◆ When connecting the belt tensioner unit, all mechanical components (including those of the three-point seat belt) must be secured properly. Should there not be enough space to connect the belt tensioner unit, the belt must be retracted completely before connecting the tensioner unit. In this case, there is no increased safety risk if you observe the safety precautions, i.e. most importantly the mechanic must disconnect the battery and discharge static electricity before connecting the belt tensioner unit.
- ◆ Depending on the accident, the belt tensioner might have been triggered WITHOUT the belt force limiter being triggered. These components must be handled in the same way as non-ignited components.

1.2 Storing, transporting and disposing of airbag units, belt tensioner units and battery isolation units (pyrotechnic components)

- ◆ Storage must be in accordance with the statutory regulations of the countries in question.



- ◆ Transportation must be in accordance with the national and international guidelines which regulate the details of the packaging, marking, labelling and accompanying documents.
- ◆ Non-ignited pyrotechnic components must be disposed of in their original packaging and in accordance with national regulations. Please contact your importer if you require further information.
- ◆ Only pyrotechnic components that have been triggered completely may be disposed of with commercial refuse.

**WARNING**

- ◆ *This does not apply to belt tensioners which are Wankel-powered. These must be treated in the same manner as non-ignited pyrotechnic components (for example airbags, seat belts, pyrotechnic battery isolators).*
- ◆ *Reason: The workshop does not have the means to check whether the Wankel-type belt tensioners have ignited fully (in all ignition stages).*

1.3 Additional safety regulations for side airbags

- ◆ We recommend using genuine seat covers (same as original equipment).
- ◆ It is NOT permissible to use seat covers or protective covers which have not been approved for use on Audi seats with side airbags.
- ◆ The backrest foam fill must not be cut away in the area of the side airbag.
- ◆ When installing, **make sure seam for side airbag is straight**.
- ◆ All upholstery clips (metal and plastic clips) must be renewed.
- ◆ We recommend using only genuine upholstery clips (same as original equipment).
- ◆ When installing, all new upholstery clips must be fitted in the same positions as the original ones.
- ◆ For safety reasons, the cover should always be renewed if it is damaged (tears, burn marks, etc.) in the area of the side airbag, as otherwise the side airbag will not inflate properly.
- ◆ Never repair backrest cover in area of side airbag (due to special thread and precisely defined seam).
- ◆ Always renew backrest padding after side airbags have been triggered.
- ◆ All damaged components must be renewed after an accident. The original airbag unit can still be used if no signs of damage are found.
- ◆ If side airbag units are renewed, remove sticker with airbag number from new side airbag unit and stick it over old sticker on seat pan.
- ◆ Never pierce the seat cover fabric with upholstery needles or other sharp objects in the vicinity of the airbag, seat occupied sensor (front passenger side) -G128- and the seat occupied sensor mat.

1.4 Additional safety regulations for curtain airbags

- ◆ Before carrying out any installation work always visually inspect trim for damage.
- ◆ Trim repairs (A-pillar trim (top), B-pillar trim, C-pillar trim and D-pillar trim) are not permitted.
- ◆ When installing, make sure that trim panels are fitted securely.
- ◆ When carrying out repairs behind the curtain airbag always remove the complete unit.
- ◆ When removing and installing curtain airbag units, proceed very carefully to prevent possible damage.
- ◆ After removal, store old curtain airbag units in their transport containers or on a clean, level surface (on a blanket).
- ◆ After performing body repairs in area of curtain airbag, check body for welding spatter, deformation and abrasion by comparing with opposite side.
- ◆ It is important that you hold the gas generator at all times when handling it (during transportation, removing and installing etc.) until it has been bolted on.
- ◆ Never twist, turn, knot, throw, pull, hang, pinch, press or clamp curtain airbag unit.
- ◆ It might be possible to fold it, as long as you are careful not to damage it (and in particular its protective cover).

1.5 Safety regulations for crash sensors (pressure sensors) for side airbag (front)

The crash sensors for side airbags are very sensitive to pressure changes and must therefore be handled with great care. Please note the following:

- ◆ Always observe correct installation position: ONLY install in correct fitting location in door.
- ◆ Protect crash sensor from jolts and knocks. Crash sensors which have been dropped must NOT be used. Remove crash sensor to perform body repairs at door.
- ◆ The crash sensor is adapted to the air volume inside the door: If the door is deformed, causing the air volume in the door to be reduced, the function of the crash sensor will be impaired.
- ◆ Make sure the crash sensor is not badly soiled: Do not use compressed air near the crash sensor. Protect the crash sensor against filings or drilling swarf (e.g. on service installation of door loudspeakers). Do not use cavity sealant or oil sprays near crash sensor.
- ◆ Protect against heat and cold: Protect crash sensor against heat, e.g. when painting or carrying out other body work. Crash sensors should never be exposed to temperatures of less than -40°C (e.g. in non-air-conditioned aircraft cargo holds).
- ◆ The crash sensor must be protected against moisture, both during storage and when installing.

Make sure that the door is properly sealed when it is installed; otherwise the crash sensor may not function correctly. Please note the following:

- ◆ Make sure that all components (e.g. cover panel, loudspeaker, door trim) are fitted correctly.

- ◆ The retaining clips for the door trim provide a seal for the system. Renew retaining clips if necessary.

1.6 Additional safety regulations for working on seat occupied sensor controlling deactivation of front passenger airbag - country-specific version

- ◆ Following any repair work on the front passenger's seat during which the seat and/or backrest cover are/is disengaged, the basic setting for the seat occupied recognition control unit must always be performed ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system VAS 5051.
- ◆ The mat for the seat occupied sensor must not be bent or kinked.
- ◆ The mat must be renewed if it is damaged (service kit).
- ◆ The pressure hose for the seat occupied sensor must not be bent or kinked.
- ◆ Make sure that the components of the seat occupied recognition system (service kit) do not fall onto hard surfaces, do not come into contact with grease and cannot be damaged by sharp objects.
- ◆ Make sure that the mat, the fleece and all covers are not creased when they are installed.
- ◆ Make sure that the seat padding and seat cover are in the correct installation position.
- ◆ Renew all staples/clips and make sure they are correctly positioned on the seat.
- ◆ The system's basic setting is only possible at temperatures between 0°C and + 40°C if airbag units 8.R and 9.* are installed, and only between 5°C and 35°C if airbag unit 10.* is installed.
- ◆ Make sure there are no objects lying on the seat before or while you are performing the basic setting.
- ◆ The use of loose seat covers - such as cushions or similar - impairs the function of the seat occupied recognition system and thus the function of the airbag system.

1.7 Procedure for dealing with seat occupied sensor controlling deactivation of front passenger airbag following an accident - country-specific version

- ◆ The basic setting for the seat occupied recognition control unit must be performed whenever the airbag and/or front passenger's belt tensioner has/have been triggered ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system VAS 5051.
- ◆ If the seat rail and/or seat pan has/have to be renewed after a crash due to deformation, the seat occupied sensor must be renewed using the „seat occupied recognition service kit“. The „basic setting“ for the seat occupied recognition control unit must then be performed ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system VAS 5051.

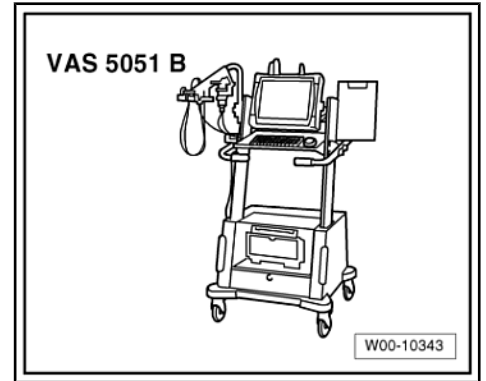


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.8 Renewing pyrotechnic, electrical and mechanical components of the restraint system following an accident

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Use a suitable vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system such as the vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B- .



Note

- ◆ *The airbag control unit can be used with airbag generation 8.* »not 8.R« for up to two side airbag and/or belt tensioner triggering operations.*
- ◆ *The airbag control unit can be used with airbag generation 9.* , 10.* and 8.R for up to two triggering operations of the side airbags, driver's airbag, front passenger's airbag and/or belt tensioners.*
- ◆ *After the third activation the fault display will show „Control unit defective“.*

Airbag control unit must be renewed:

- ◆ If driver's/front passenger's airbag has been triggered (however not with airbag generation 9.* , 10.* and 8.R) ⇒ [page 47](#)
- ◆ After three side airbag, driver's airbag, front passenger's airbag or belt tensioner triggering operations
- ◆ If housing is damaged
- ◆ In the event of a tunnel deformation within 200 mm radius of control unit

Always renew the following:

- ◆ All triggered airbag units
- ◆ Battery isolation igniter -N253-

If front passenger's airbag has been triggered, also renew:

- ◆ Dash panel
- ◆ Supports for front passenger's airbag unit which have become deformed (must not be bent back into shape)
- ◆ All front airbag sensors at front end
- ◆ Remaining lateral acceleration sensors (if anchorage points around sensor have become deformed)

If driver's airbag has been triggered, also renew:

- ◆ Return ring with slip ring
- ◆ All front airbag sensors at front end



- ◆ Remaining lateral acceleration sensors (if anchorage points around sensor have become deformed)

If side airbag(s) has/have been triggered, also renew:

- ◆ Pressure sensors on the side on which the airbag was triggered
- ◆ Lateral acceleration sensors on the side on which airbag was triggered
- ◆ Cover
- ◆ Padding
- ◆ Folding rear seat backrest: side padding (if fitted)
- ◆ Remaining lateral acceleration sensors (if anchorage points around sensor have become deformed)

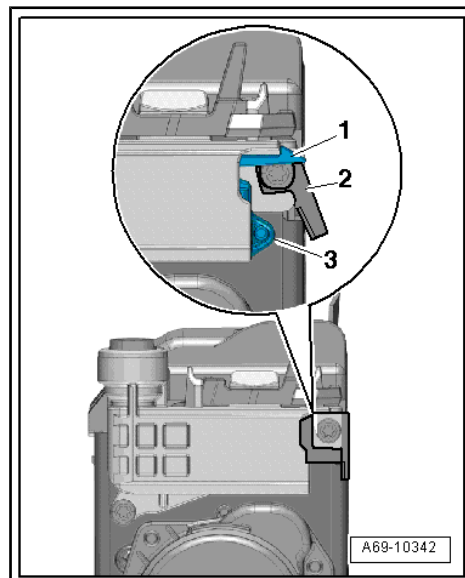
Additionally:

- ◆ All automatic belt retractors with belt tensioners which have been triggered
- ◆ All automatic belt retractors with belt force limiters (depending on equipment version) which have been triggered
- If you suspect that belt tensioner(s) and/or belt force limiter(s) has/have been triggered, connect a suitable vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system such as the vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B- .
- In „15 - Airbag“ of the »Guided Fault Finding« function, check whether there is an entry recording a crash in the airbag control unit.
- Check whether at the same time the fault „Resistance too high“ is entered for belt tensioner(s) and/or belt force limiter(s). Belt tensioner(s) and/or belt force limiter(s) which have been triggered must fulfil both conditions. Condition: The airbag control unit has not yet been renewed.



Note

- ◆ The fault „Resistance too high“ can also be entered if there is an open circuit. In this case, there should usually be no crash entry.
- ◆ Depending on the accident, the belt tensioner might have been triggered without the belt force limiter being triggered. In this case, observe the disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 43](#) .
- ◆ Also observe the notes on checking seat belts ⇒ [page 49](#) .
- ◆ Triggered belt force limiters can be identified by the following characteristics:
 - ◆ The pin -1- and the lug -3- have come out of the housing of the belt force limiter on the automatic belt retractor.
 - ◆ The tab -2- is no longer in a vertical position, but is facing outwards at an angle.
- If components of the belt system are removed following an accident, renew the bolts for the belt system.
- In addition, the following must also be renewed if necessary (visual check): all damaged components



1.9 Checking airbag mounting components following an accident

It is essential to always renew all damaged mounting components - it is not permissible to »reshape« or rework damaged components.

The following components must be checked after an airbag has been triggered.

If front passenger's airbag has been triggered:

- ◆ Central tube for dash panel; it must be possible to install front passenger's airbag supports and front passenger's airbag unit so that they are free of stress. Otherwise central tube should also be renewed.
- ◆ Check glove box for damage. Renew glove box if it is damaged.

If driver's airbag has been triggered:

- ◆ Steering wheel: Remove steering wheel and place it on a level surface (resting on rim). The full area of the rim must lie flat. If it does not, the steering wheel has to be renewed.
- ◆ Check steering wheel for smoke marks. Renew steering wheel if such marks are found.

1.10 Accident in which no airbag was triggered

- ◆ Pyrotechnic components do not have to be renewed if airbag warning lamp -K75- does not indicate a fault. The seat belts must be checked separately.

1.11 Checking seat belts



WARNING

A systematic check of the seat belt system must be carried out after every accident. If any damage is identified (see section on points to check), the customer must be informed that one or more of the seat belts have to be renewed.

Points to check:

- ◆ Check belt webbing ⇒ [page 50](#) .
- ◆ Check automatic belt retractor (locking action) ⇒ [page 50](#) .
- ◆ Visual inspection of belt buckle ⇒ [page 51](#) .
- ◆ Functional check of belt buckle ⇒ [page 51](#) .
- ◆ Check guide fittings and latch plate ⇒ [page 51](#) .
- ◆ Check securing components and anchorage points ⇒ [page 52](#) .
- ◆ Check child seat restraint function for additional child seats (not for driver's seat belt) - country-specific version ⇒ [page 52](#) .



Caution

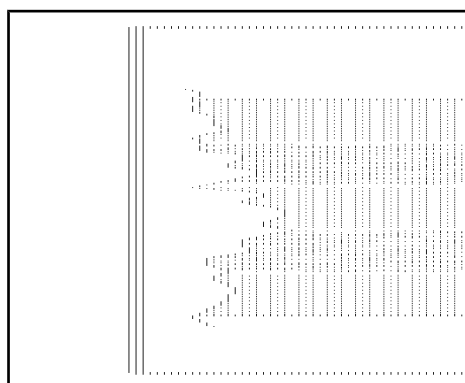
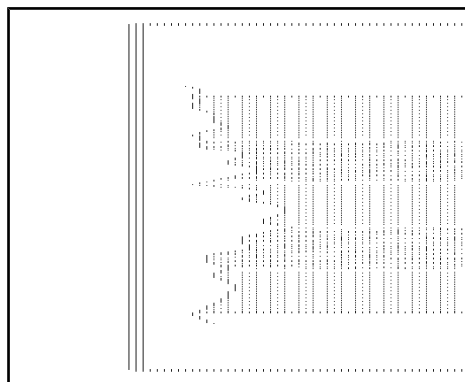
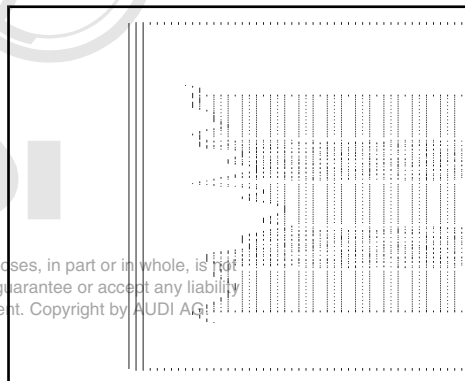
If customers refuse to have damaged seat belts renewed, this must be noted accordingly in the Service Schedule.

1.12 Checking belt webbing

Procedure

- Pull belt as far as it will go out of automatic belt retractor or lap belt adjuster.
- Inspect belt for dirt and, if necessary, wash it with mild soap solution ⇒ Owner's Manual .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG!



- If the following type of damage (shown in illustrations 1 and 2) is identified on a vehicle following an accident you must renew the complete seat belt including the belt buckle.
- If damage as shown in illustrations 1, 2 or 3 is identified on a vehicle which has not been involved in an accident, it is sufficient to only renew the damaged belt.
- 1 – Belt is cut, torn or chafed
- 2 – Frayed fabric at edge of belt
- 3 – Burn marks caused by cigarettes or similar

1.13 Checking automatic belt retractor (locking action)

The automatic belt retractor has two locking functions.


- ◆ The first locking function is triggered by pulling the belt quickly out of the automatic belt retractor.

First check

- Pull belt out of automatic belt retractor in a sharp quick movement.
- No locking effect - renew complete seat belt including belt buckle.

- If you encounter difficulties when pulling belt out or retracting it, first check whether position of automatic belt retractor has changed.
- The second locking function is triggered if vehicle motion changes (vehicle-dependent locking function).

Second check



WARNING

For safety reasons, test drive must be performed on a road with no traffic to avoid putting other road users at risk.

- Fasten seat belt.
- Accelerate vehicle to 20 km/h and then press foot brake firmly (emergency braking).
- If braking does not activate seat belt locking mechanism, renew complete seat belt including belt buckle.

1.14 Visual inspection of belt buckle

- Inspect belt buckle for cracks and fracturing.
- If you identify any damage, renew complete seat belt including belt buckle.

1.15 Functional check of belt buckle


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability for the accuracy of the information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Checking belt buckle

- Push latch plate into belt buckle until you hear it engage. Pull belt firmly to check whether locking mechanism has engaged.
- Carry out test at least 5 times. If latch plate does not engage properly in belt buckle in one or more of the tests, renew complete seat belt including belt buckle.

Checking release function:

- Release seat belt by pressing button on belt buckle. Latch plate must be automatically ejected from belt buckle when belt is slack.
- Carry out test at least 5 times. If latch plate is not ejected in one or more of these tests, renew complete seat belt including belt buckle.



WARNING

Under no circumstances apply lubricant to belt buckle to eliminate noises or to stop buttons sticking.

1.16 Checking guide fittings and latch plate

When a seat belt has been under strain in an accident the plastic-covered guides will show fine parallel scoring. (By contrast, a guide fitting which is worn because of frequent use will have a smoothly worn surface, but no scoring).

- Inspect for deformation, fracturing and cracks in the plastic.
- If you identify any scoring and/or damage, renew the complete seat belt including the belt buckle.

1.17 Checking securing components and anchorage points following an accident

- ◆ Latch plate deformed (strained)
- ◆ Height adjustment not functioning
- ◆ Anchorage points (seat, pillar, vehicle floor) deformed or thread damaged
- If you identify any damage on these parts, renew complete seat belt including belt buckle.
- If components of the belt system are removed following an accident, renew the securing bolts for the belt system.
- Renew anchorage points.



Note

In the event of damage not resulting from an accident (for example wear) only the corresponding damaged part must be renewed.

1.18 Checking child seat restraint function for additional child seats (not for driver's seat belt) - country-specific version

To check this function fit the complete belt assembly (including side panel trim).

Activating locking function of retractor mechanism:

- ◆ Pull out belt as far as it will go.

Correct function:

- ◆ The belt should retract with an audible clicking sound.
- ◆ Once you stop the belt retracting any further, it should no longer be possible to pull the belt out.

Deactivating

- ◆ Allow the belt to retract as far as the last approx. 100 mm.
- ◆ The locking function of the retractor mechanism should be deactivated at the latest by the time the belt has been retracted as far as the last 100 mm. The belt then functions as "normal" again.

If child seat restraint function of seat belt is not operating properly, seat belt must be renewed.

1.19 Checking child seat anchors following an accident

Points to check:

- ◆ After an accident, child seat anchors must be checked for damage and deformation.
- ◆ Child seat anchors welded or bolted to body or seats/backrests must not be repaired or straightened.
- ◆ Child seat anchors bolted to the body or seats/backrests must be renewed if they are damaged or deformed.
- ◆ Bolts for securing child seat anchors must be renewed if retainer is damaged.

2 Seat belts (Coupé)



WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components*
⇒ [page 42](#).
- ◆ *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components*
⇒ [page 43](#).
- ◆ *Note checks for seat belts* ⇒ [page 49](#).

2.1 Overview of seat belts and anchorage points

1 - Belt reel / belt tensioner / switchable pressure limiter

- For three-point seat belt (front)
- Switchable pressure limiter: only for country-specific version
- Exploded view:
- ◆ Belt reel with belt tensioner ⇒ [page 54](#)
- ◆ Belt reel with belt tensioner and switchable pressure limiter (country-specific version) ⇒ [page 54](#)

2 - Anchorage point for belt guide fitting (front)

- Removing ⇒ [page 55](#)

3 - Belt reel

- For three-point seat belt (rear)
- Exploded view ⇒ [page 61](#)

4 - Anchorage point for belt guide fitting (rear)

- Removing ⇒ [page 61](#)

5 - Three-point seat belt (rear)

- Exploded view ⇒ [page 61](#)

6 - Outer belt end fitting (rear)

- Removing ⇒ [page 62](#)

7 - Centre belt end fitting

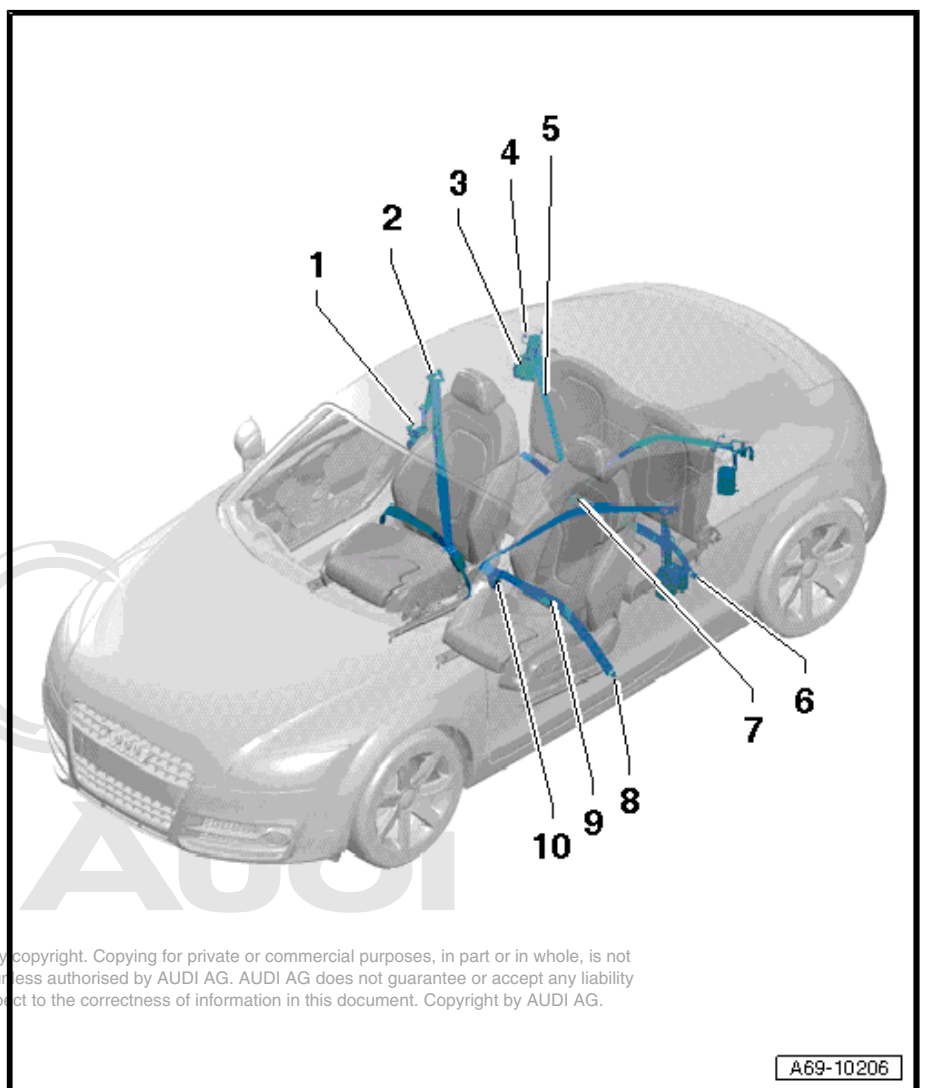
- Removing ⇒ [page 58](#)

8 - Outer belt end fitting (front)

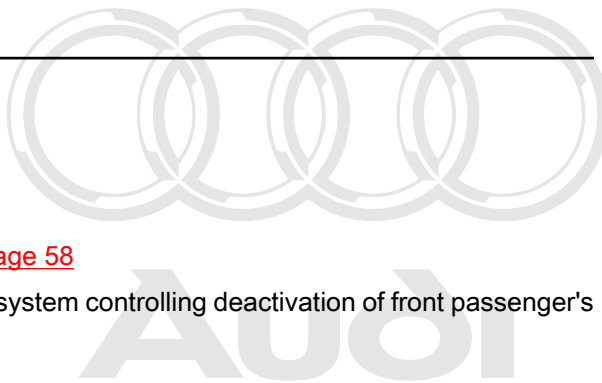
- Removing ⇒ [page 56](#)

9 - Three-point seat belt (front)

- Exploded view of three-point seat belt:
- ◆ With belt tensioner ⇒ [page 54](#)
- ◆ With belt tensioner and switchable pressure limiter (country-specific version) ⇒ [page 54](#)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



10 - Belt buckle anchorage point (front)

- On front seat
- Exploded view ⇒ [page 58](#)
- ◆ Removing and installing without belt buckle sensor ⇒ [page 58](#)
- ◆ Removing and installing with seat occupied recognition system controlling deactivation of front passenger's airbag (country-specific version) ⇒ [page 58](#)

2.2 Exploded view of three-point seat belt (front)

Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Three-point seat belt

- Without switchable pressure limiter
- ◆ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 55](#)
- With switchable pressure limiter (country-specific version)
- ◆ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 55](#)

2 - Connector for switchable pressure limiter

- Country-specific version
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 56](#)

3 - Connector for belt tensioner

- Unplugging and plugging in ⇒ [page 55](#)

4 - Bolt

- 4.5 Nm
- 2x

5 - Bracket

6 - Belt

7 - Belt guide fitting

8 - Bolt

- 45 Nm
- 2x

9 - Belt end fitting

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 56](#)

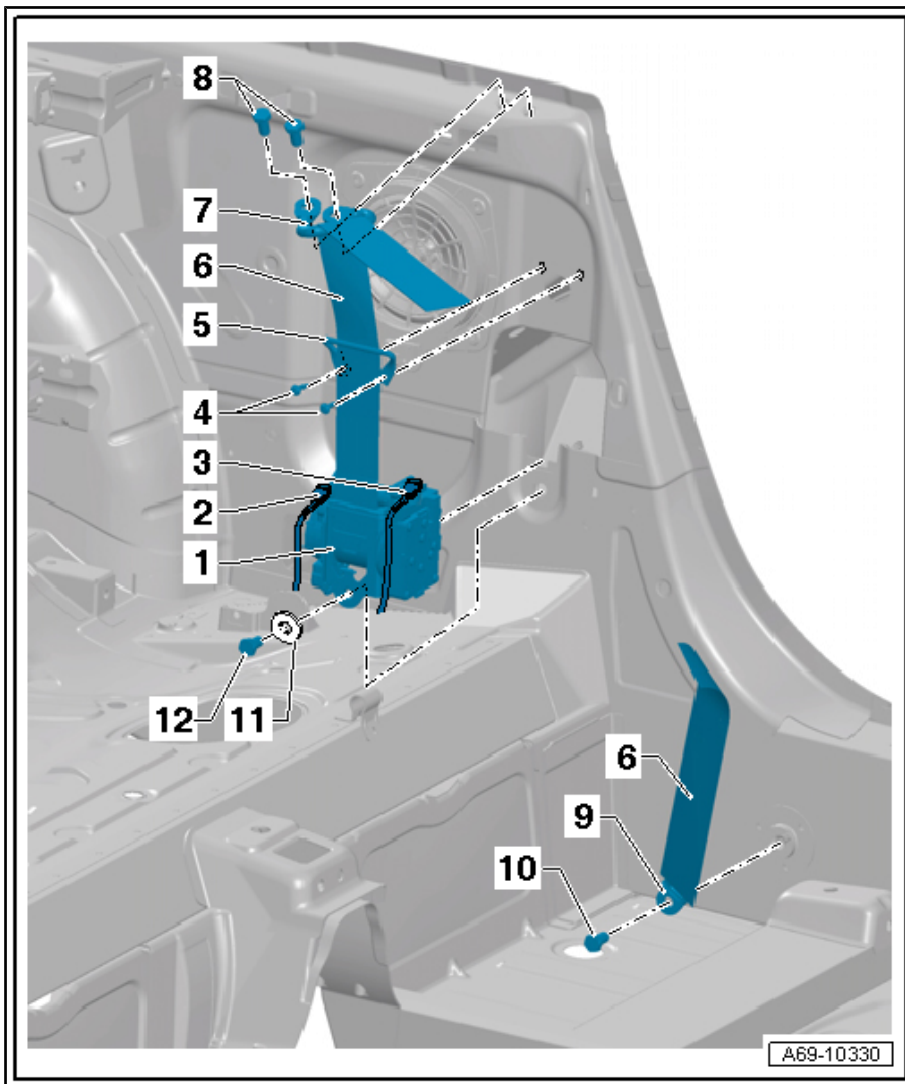
10 - Bolt

- 55 Nm

11 - Washer

12 - Bolt

- 45 Nm



A69-10330

2.3 Removing and installing three-point seat belt with belt tensioner / pressure limiter

Removing



WARNING

- ◆ **Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components**
⇒ [page 42](#).
- ◆ **Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components**
⇒ [page 43](#).

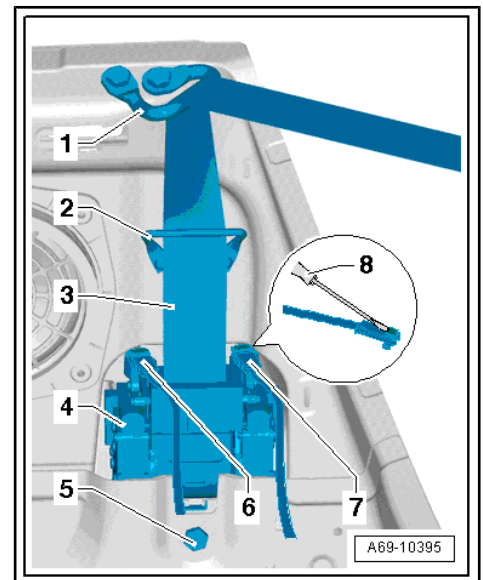
- Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted without authorisation by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.
- Switch off ignition.
 - Disconnect the battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27.
 - Unscrew outer belt end fitting (front) ⇒ [page 56](#).
 - Remove side trim ⇒ [page 175](#).
 - Remove subwoofer (equipment-specific) on left side ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91.
 - Unscrew belt guide fitting anchorage point -1-.
 - Thread webbing -3- out of bracket -2-.



WARNING

- ◆ **Before handling the belt tensioner units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.**

- Use a screwdriver -8- to release connector -7- at belt tensioner.
- Unplug connector at belt tensioner.



Vehicles with switchable pressure limiter (country-specific version)

- Use a screwdriver -8- to release connector -6- at pressure limiter.
- Unplug connector at pressure limiter.

All vehicles (continued)

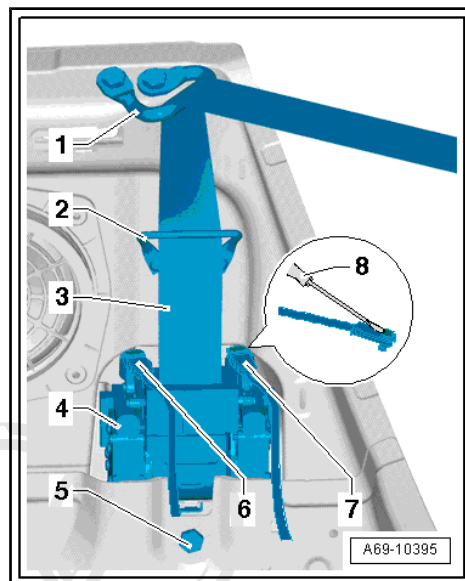
- Remove bolt -5-.
- Take three-point seat belt -4- out of mounting.

Installing



WARNING

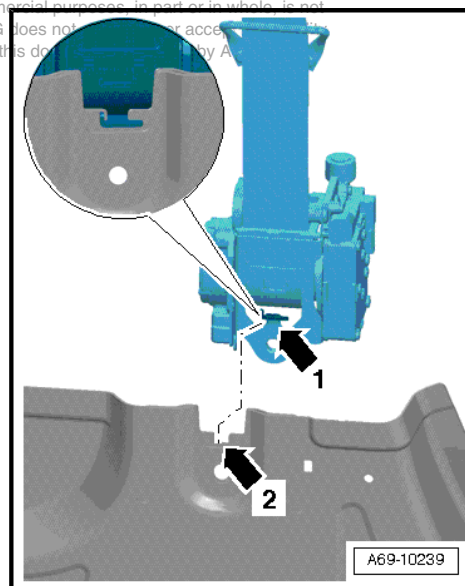
- ◆ **Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components** ⇒ [page 42](#) .
- ◆ **Before handling the belt tensioner units (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.**
- ◆ **Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.**



Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

- Insert belt tensioner with locking element -arrow 1- into mounting -arrow 2-.
- After fitting three-point seat belt (front passenger side), check belt operation for child seat (country-specific version) ⇒ [page 52](#) .
- Connect battery earth wire with ignition switched on ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .

Tightening torque ⇒ [page 54](#)



2.4 Removing and installing outer belt end fitting (front)

Removing

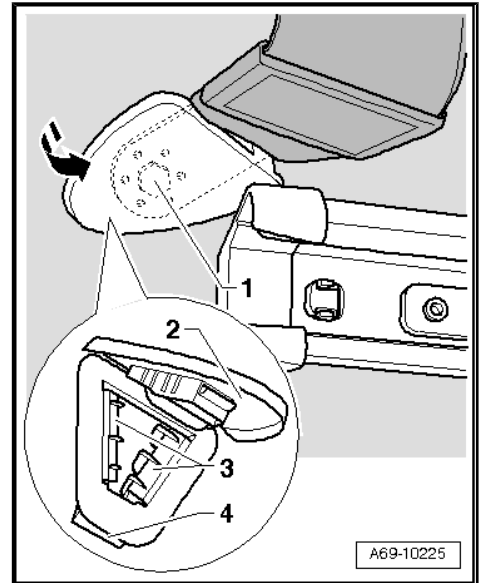
- Move front seat forwards as far as it will go.

- Open lid of cover -2- by pulling in direction of -arrow-.
- Lift cover -2- out of floor covering.
- Remove bolt -1-.

Installing

- Screw in bolt -1-.
- When fitting, slide tab -4- underneath floor covering.
- Close lid -2- to press tabs -3- underneath floor covering.

Tightening torque ⇒ [page 54](#)



2.5 Removing and installing belt guide fitting anchorage point

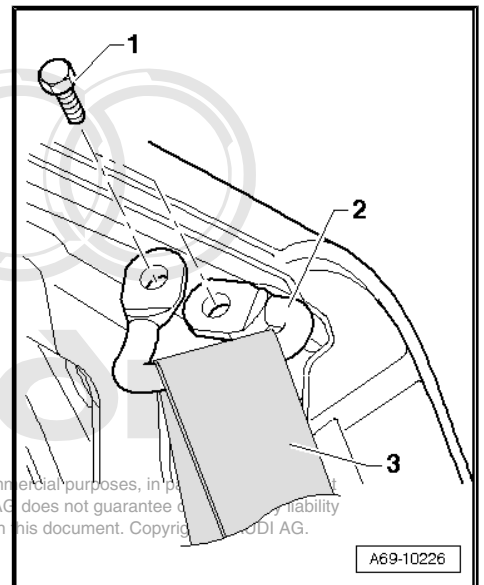
Removing

- Remove rear side trim ⇒ [page 175](#) .
- Remove bolts -1- and detach belt guide fitting -2-.
- Thread belt -3- out of belt guide fitting -2-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening torque ⇒ [page 54](#)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in full, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee the accuracy or reliability of the information in this document. Copyright © 2010 AUDI AG.

2.6 Exploded view of belt buckle anchorage point (front)

1 - Belt buckle

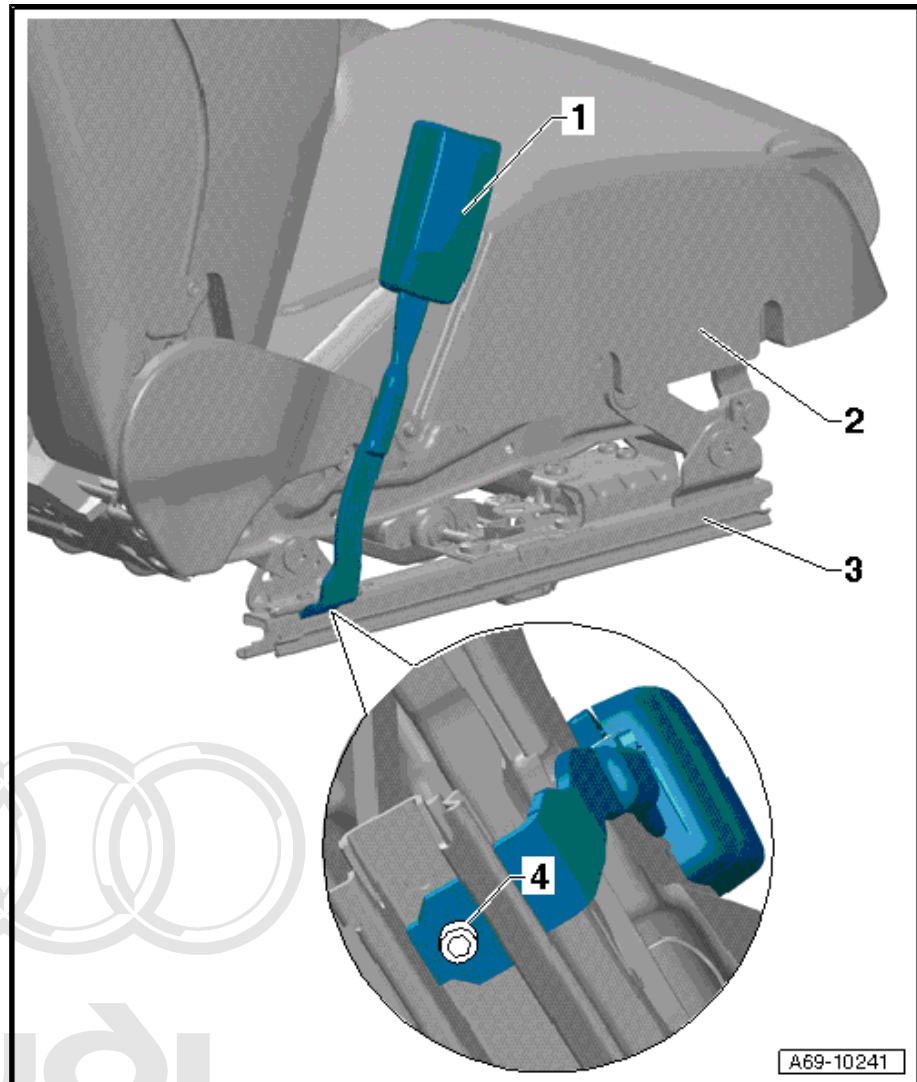
- Removing and installing belt buckle without buckle sensor
⇒ [page 58](#)
- Removing and installing belt buckle for seat occupied recognition system controlling deactivation of front passenger's airbag (country-specific version)
⇒ [page 58](#) (belt buckle version not shown in illustration)

2 - Front seat

3 - Seat frame

4 - Bolt

- ONLY on bucket seat: 22 Nm
- All other seats: 34 Nm
- Renew



2.7 Removing and installing front buckle anchorage point

Removing

- Move front seat as far as possible to the rear and upwards.
- Remove front seat:
 - ◆ Removing and installing front seats (with manual adjustment)
⇒ [page 243](#)
 - ◆ Removing and installing front seats (with electric adjustment)
⇒ [page 274](#)
 - ◆ Removing and installing bucket seat ⇒ [page 363](#)

Vehicles with seat occupied recognition system controlling deactivation of front passenger's airbag (country-specific version)

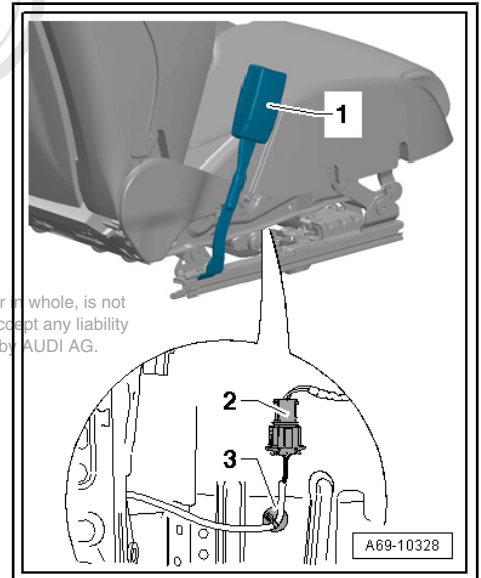


WARNING

The belt buckle for the seat occupied recognition system controlling the deactivation of the front passenger's airbag must ALWAYS be renewed when the front passenger's belt tensioner has been triggered.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Unplug connector 2.
- 1 - Belt buckle for seat occupied recognition system controlling deactivation of front passenger's airbag (country-specific version)
- Unfasten cable tie clip -3-.



All vehicles (continued)

- Unscrew bolt -2- and detach belt buckle -1-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

Vehicles with seat occupied recognition system controlling deactivation of front passenger's airbag (country-specific version)

- If the belt buckle for the seat occupied recognition system controlling the deactivation of the front passenger's airbag is renewed, you must complete the form for the seat occupied recognition system stating the serial number and including the bar code sticker of the new belt buckle, and then send the form to the importer.

All vehicles (continued)

- Remove bolt from belt buckle.

**Note**

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

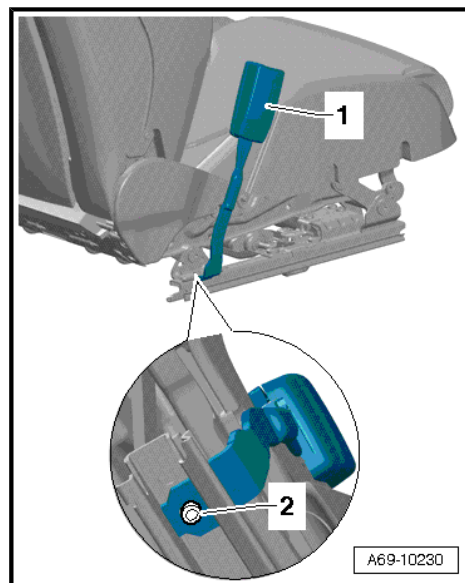
- Switch on ignition.

**WARNING**

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

- Connect battery earth wire with ignition switched on => Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .
- If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following the installation, the fault memory must be interrogated, erased and interrogated again => Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B- .

Tightening torque => [page 58](#)



2.8 Exploded view of three-point seat belt (rear)

1 - Cover

- For automatic belt retractor

2 - Bolt

- 45 Nm

3 - Automatic belt retractor

- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 61](#)

4 - Bolt

- 45 Nm
- Not installed on all versions

5 - Bolt

- 45 Nm
- 2x

6 - Belt guide fitting

- Different versions

7 - Bracket

8 - Bolt

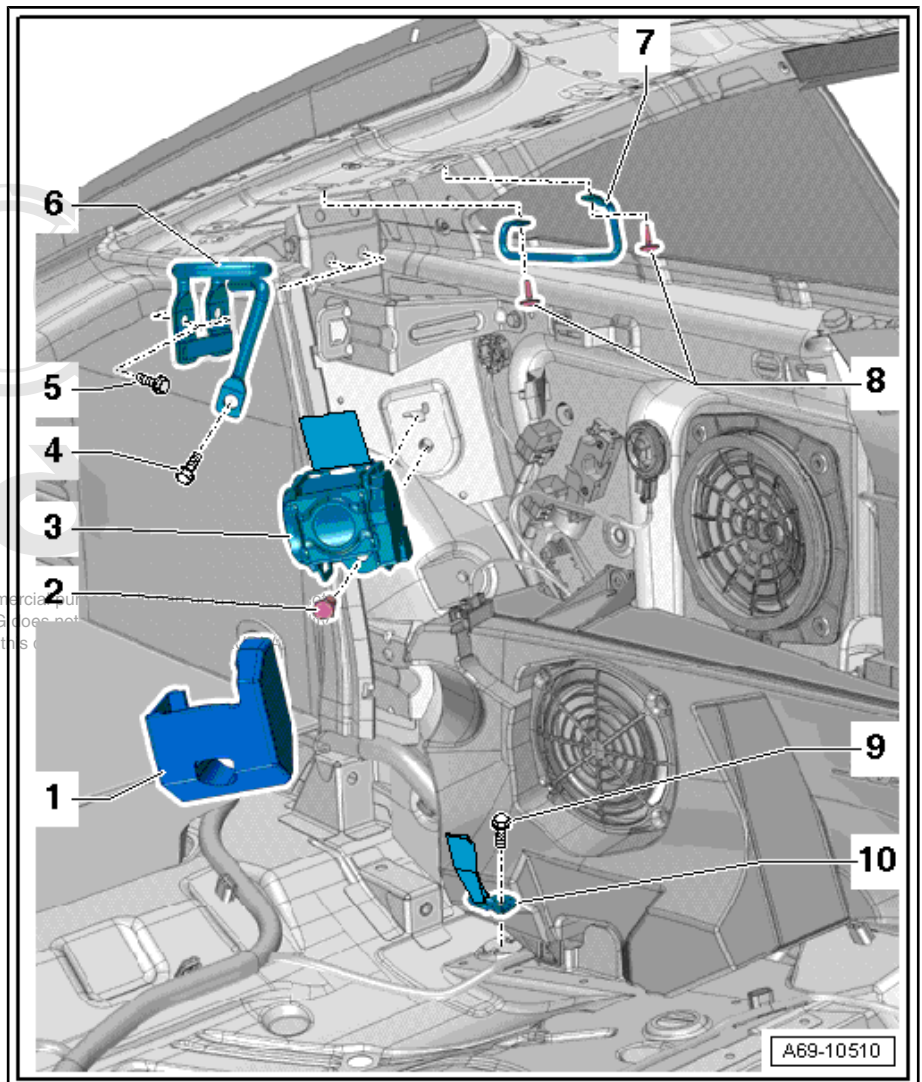
- 4.5 Nm
- 2x

9 - Bolt

- 55 Nm

10 - Belt end fitting

- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 61](#)



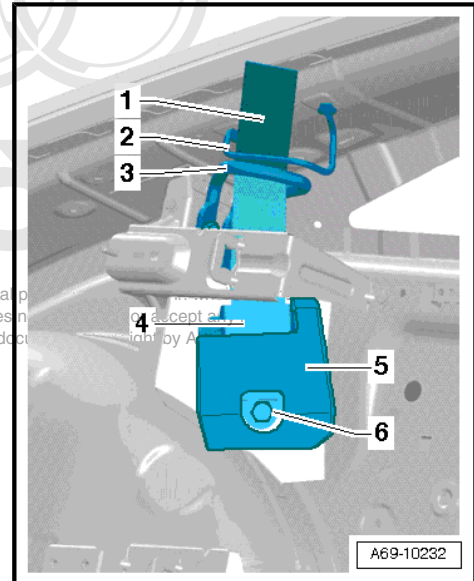
2.9 Removing and installing three-point seat belt (rear)

Removing

- Remove side trim ⇒ [page 175](#) .
- Remove subwoofer (equipment-specific) on left side ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 .
- Unscrew outer belt end fitting (rear) ⇒ [page 62](#) .

- Thread belt -1- out of bracket -2- and belt guide fitting -3-.
- Pull trim cover -5- off downwards.
- Remove bolt -6- and detach three-point seat belt -4-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

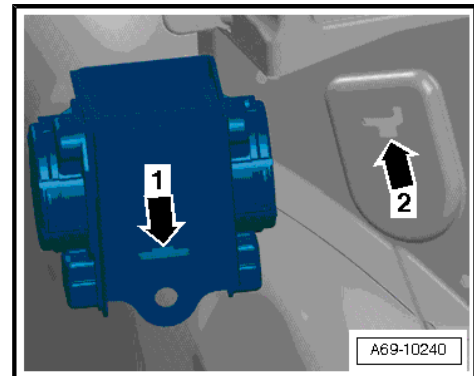


Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

- Insert three-point seat belt with locking element -arrow 1- into mounting -arrow 2-.

Tightening torque ⇒ [page 61](#)



2.10 Removing and installing outer belt end fitting (rear)

Removing

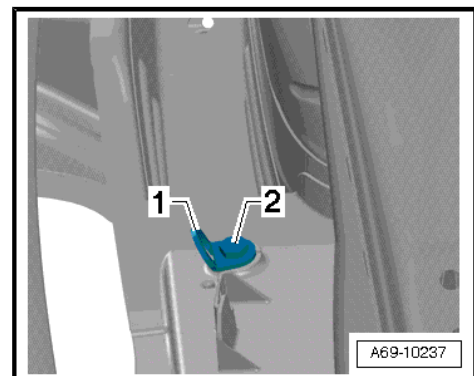
- Remove side trim ⇒ [page 175](#) .
- Remove subwoofer (equipment-specific) on left side ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 .
- Remove bolt -2- of belt end fitting -1-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

- The groove of the belt end fitting must rest on the lugs of the floor panel such that the end of the belt faces towards the inside of the vehicle.

Tightening torque ⇒ [page 61](#)



2.11 Exploded view of belt buckle (rear)

1 - Cover

- Not installed on all versions
- Installing ⇒ [page 64](#)

2 - Belt buckle

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 64](#)

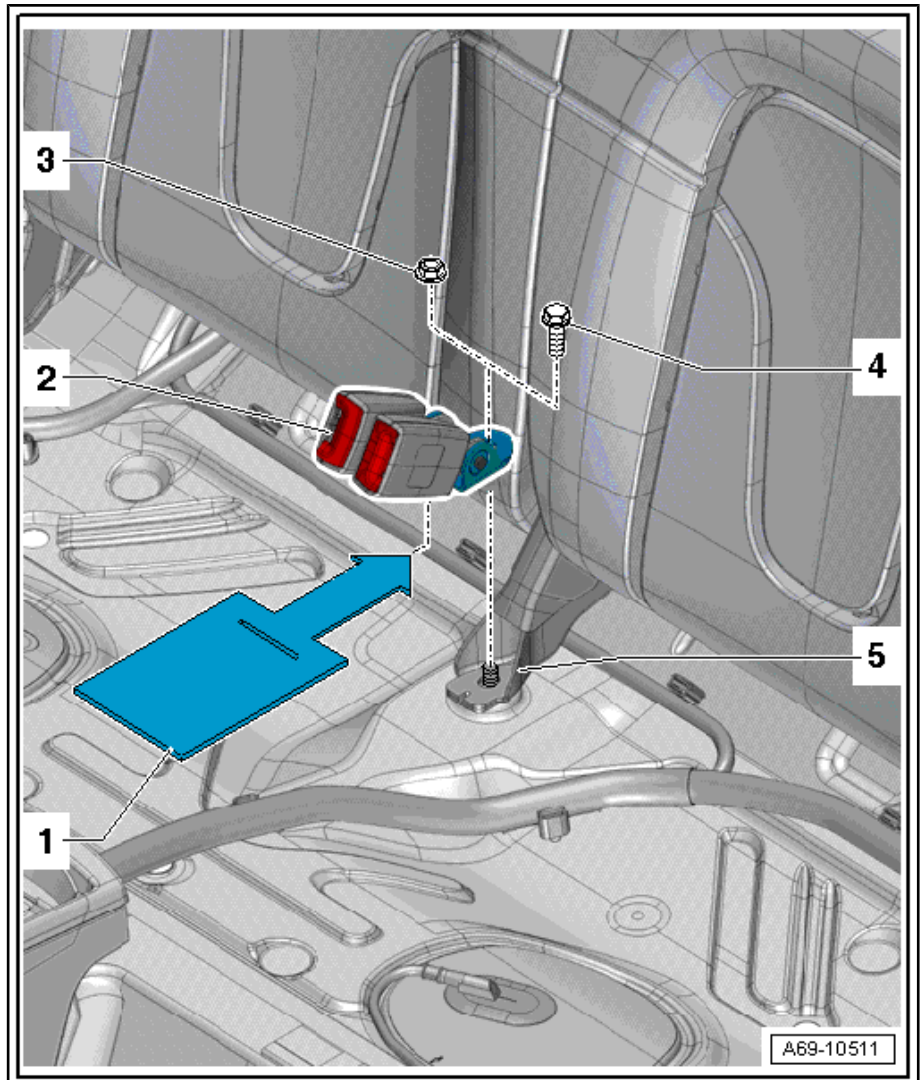
3 - Nut

- Depending on equipment version
- 55 Nm

4 - Bolt

- Depending on equipment version
- 55 Nm

5 - Centre mounting for back-rest

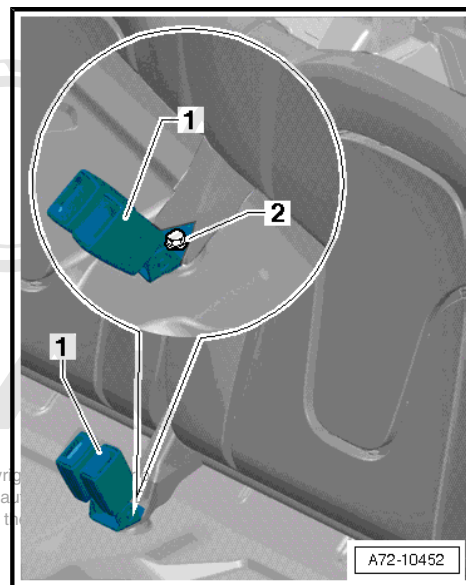


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.12 Removing and installing belt buckle

Removing

- Remove seat bench => [page 383](#) .
- Remove bolt or nut -2-.
- Detach belt buckle -1-.



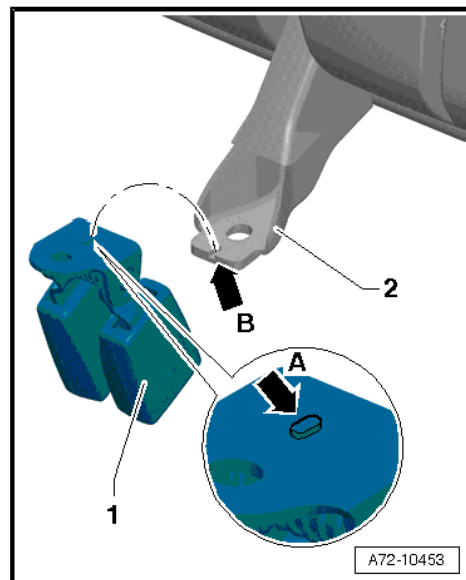
Protected by copyright
permitted unless all
with respect to the

whole, is not
cept any liability
AUDI AG.

Installing

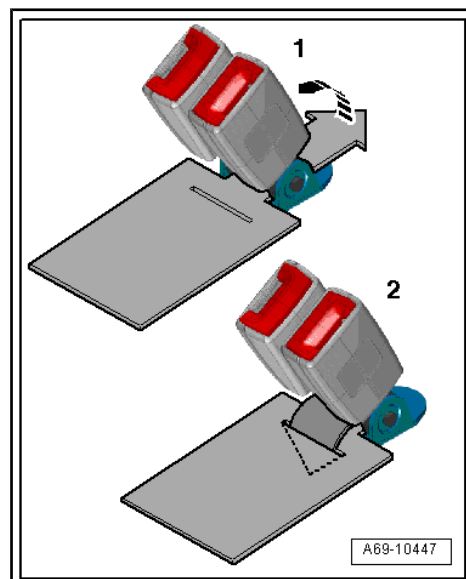
Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

- Make sure locking element -arrow A- on underside of belt buckle -1- is inserted in recess -arrow B- of centre mounting -2-.



- Pull lug of cover through underneath belt buckle shaft and swivel upwards -1-.
- If fitted, slide lug of cover into slit in cover and engage -2-.

Tightening torque => [page 63](#)



3 Seat belts (Roadster)



WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components*
⇒ [page 42](#).
- ◆ *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components*
⇒ [page 43](#).
- ◆ *Note checks for seat belts* ⇒ [page 49](#).

3.1 Overview of seat belts and anchorage points

1 - Belt reel / belt tensioner / switchable pressure limiter

- For three-point seat belt
- Switchable pressure limiter: only for country-specific version
- Exploded view:

- ◆ Belt reel with belt tensioner ⇒ [page 66](#)
- ◆ Belt reel with belt tensioner and switchable pressure limiter (country-specific version) ⇒ [page 66](#)

2 - Holder

- For three-point seat belt
- Attached to seat

3 - Outer belt end fitting

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 71](#)

4 - Three-point seat belt

- Exploded view of three-point seat belt:

- ◆ With belt tensioner ⇒ [page 66](#)
- ◆ With belt tensioner and switchable pressure limiter (country-specific version) ⇒ [page 66](#)

5 - Anchorage point (belt buckle)

- Exploded view

⇒ [page 72](#)

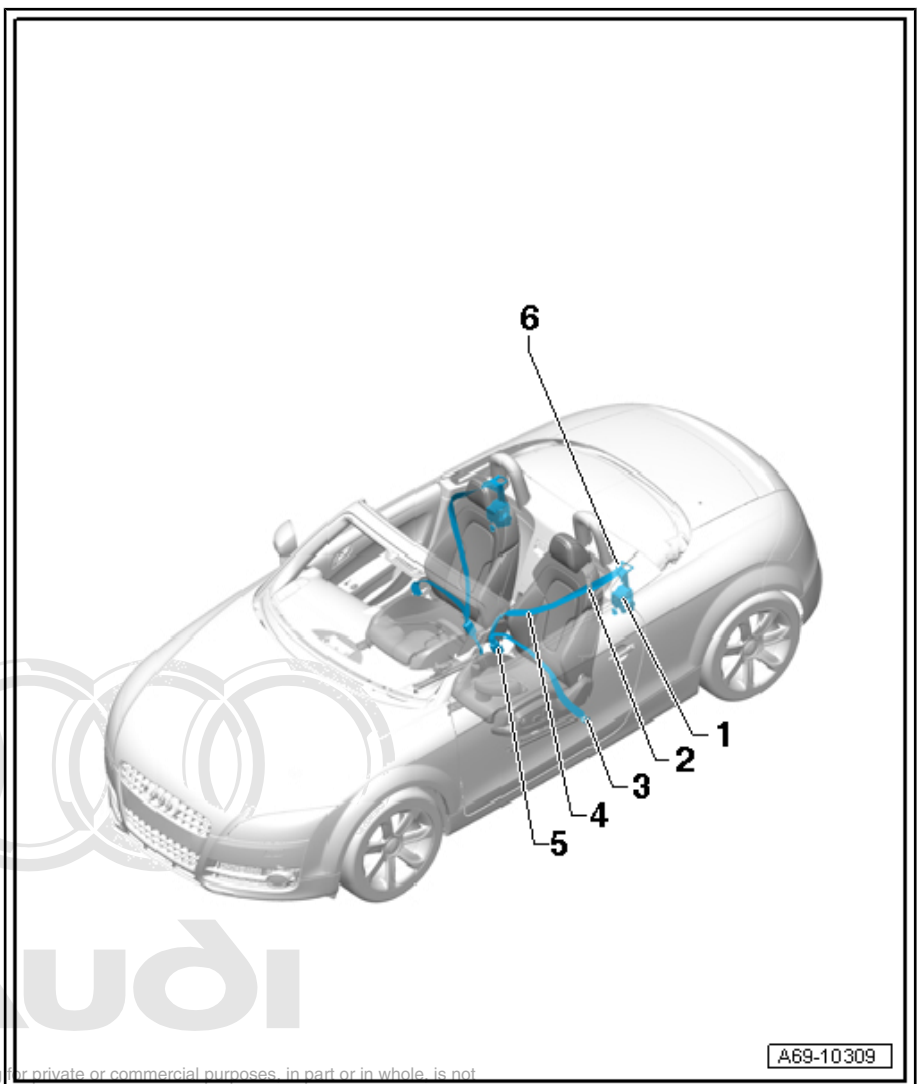
- On front seat

- ◆ Removing and installing without belt buckle sensor ⇒ [page 73](#)

- ◆ Removing and installing with seat occupied recognition system controlling deactivation of front passenger's airbag (country-specific version) ⇒ [page 73](#)

6 - Belt guide

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 72](#)



A69-10309

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability for the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.2 Exploded view of three-point seat belt

1 - Three-point seat belt

- Without switchable pressure limiter
- ◆ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 67](#)
- With switchable pressure limiter (country-specific version)
- ◆ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 67](#)

2 - Connector for belt tensioner

- Unplugging and plugging in ⇒ [page 67](#)

3 - Belt

4 - Connector for switchable pressure limiter

- Country-specific version
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 67](#)

5 - Coupling unit

- Left-side: For switchable pressure limiter
- Right-side: For belt tensioner
- Clipped to vehicle body

6 - Bolt

- 45 Nm

7 - Belt guide

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 72](#)

8 - Bolt

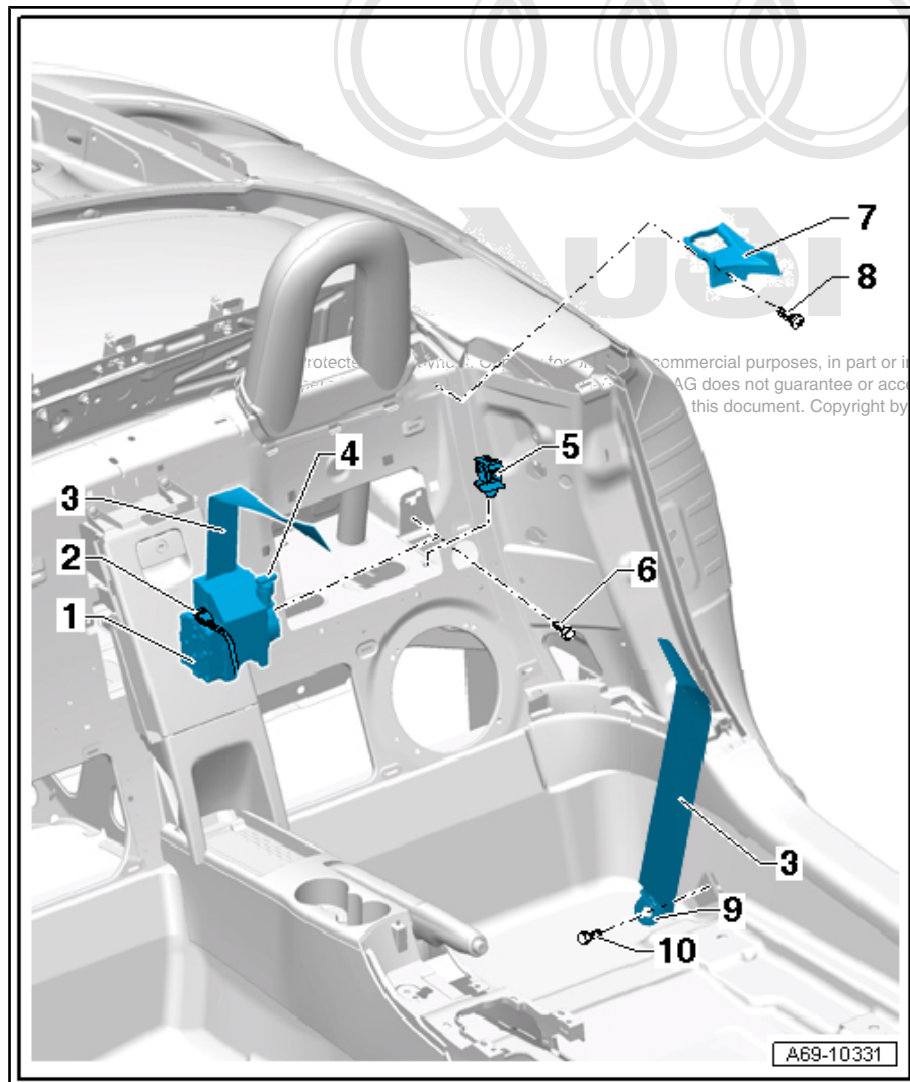
- 6 Nm
- Renew

9 - Belt end fitting

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 71](#)


10 - Bolt

- 55 Nm




3.3 Removing and installing three-point seat belt with belt tensioner / pressure limiter

Removing

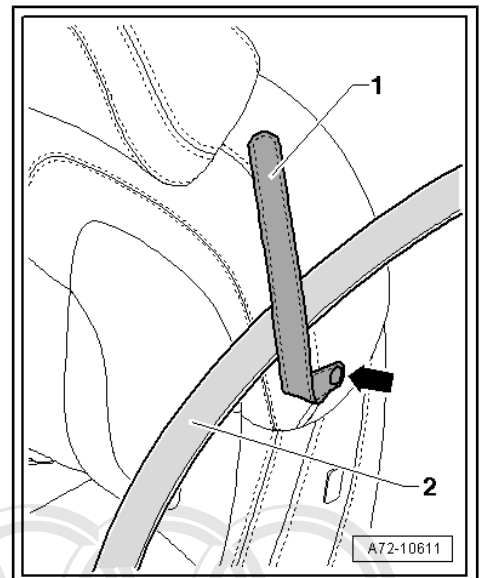
 **WARNING**

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 42](#).*
- ◆ *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 43](#).*

- Move both seats forwards and fold backrest forwards.
- Switch off ignition.
- Disconnect the battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .
- Release stud -arrow- and open seat belt holder -1-.
- Remove seat belt -2- from seat belt holder.
- Remove belt end fitting ⇒ [page 71](#) .
- Remove back panel cover ⇒ [page 214](#) .
- Remove back panel side trim ⇒ [page 209](#) .
- Storage compartments (left and right) must be removed if fitted in back panel ⇒ [page 210](#) .

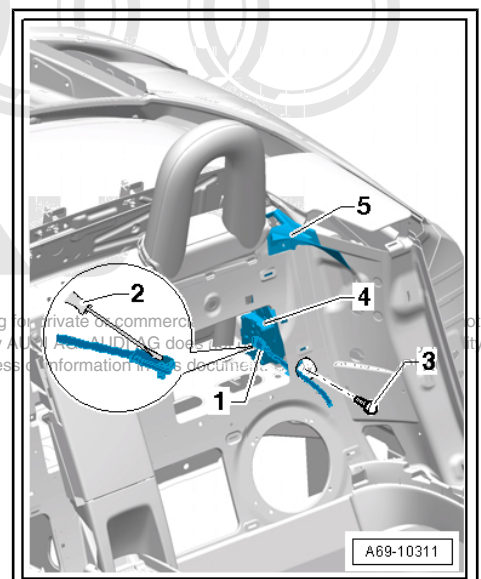
 **WARNING**

◆ *Before handling the belt tensioner units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*



Driver side (left side of vehicle)

- Use a screwdriver -2- to release connector -1- at belt tensioner.
- Unplug connector at belt tensioner.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial use is not permitted unless authorised by Audi AG. AUDI AG does not accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

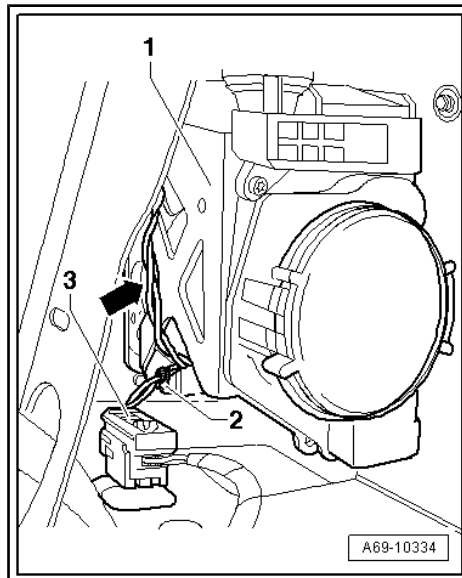


Vehicles with switchable pressure limiter (country-specific version)

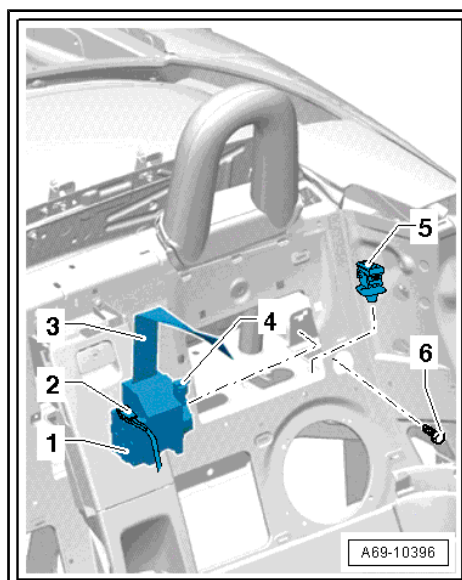


Note

Never remove cable tie -2- securing wiring from pyrotechnic belt tensioner or switchable pressure limiter -arrow- to coupling -3-.



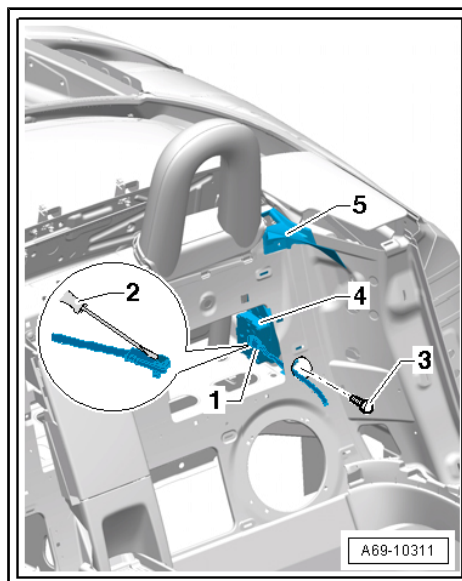
- Unplug pressure limiter connector from coupling -5-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted without the written permission of AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

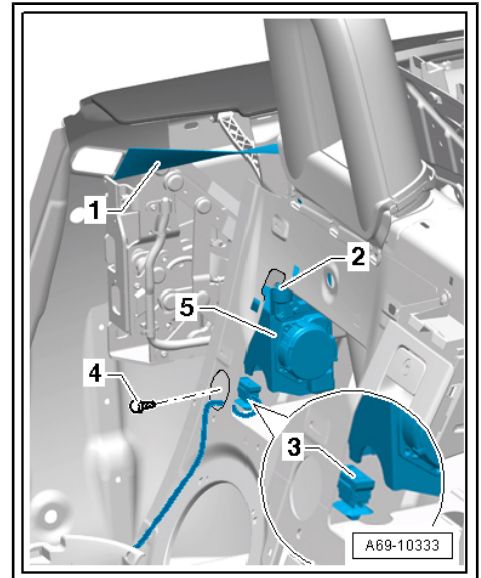
All vehicles (continued)

- Remove bolt -3-.
- Take three-point seat belt -4- out of mounting on body.
- At the same time, thread belt out of belt guide -5-.



Passenger side (right side of vehicle)

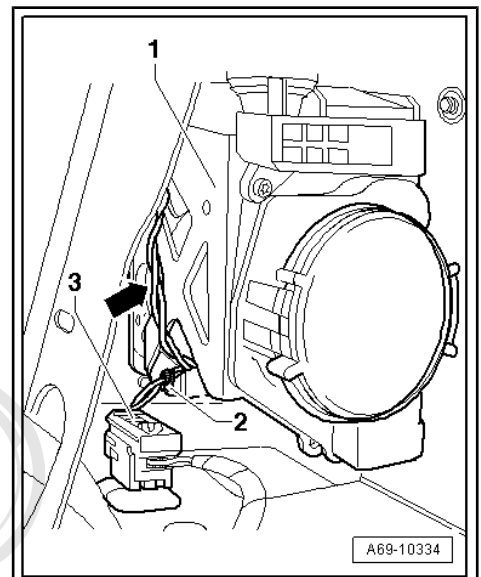
- Unplug electrical connector for belt tensioner at coupling -3-.



Vehicles with switchable pressure limiter (country-specific version)

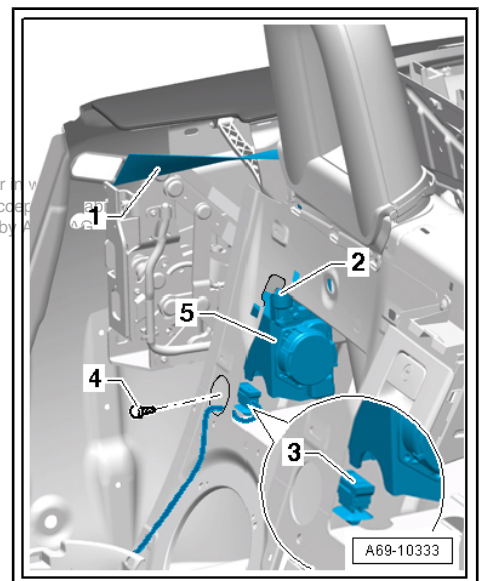


Never remove cable tie -2- securing wiring from pyrotechnic belt tensioner or switchable pressure limiter -arrow- to coupling -3-.



- Unplug connector -2- at switchable pressure limiter.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in full, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Audi AG



All vehicles (continued)

- Remove bolt -3-.
- Take three-point seat belt -4- out of mounting on body.
- At the same time, thread belt -5- out of belt guide.

Installing**WARNING**

- ◆ **Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components**
=> page 42.
- ◆ **Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.**

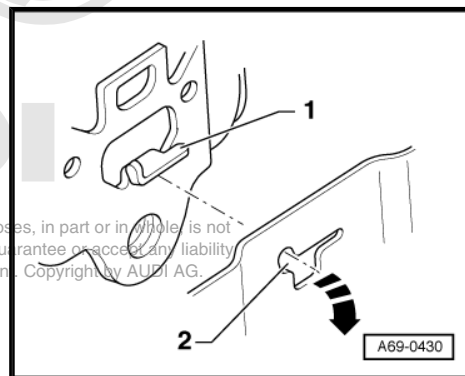
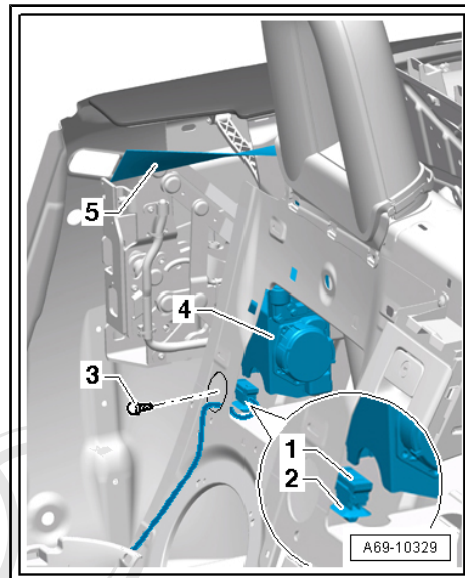
Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

- Insert belt reel / belt tensioner / pressure limiter with locating element -1- in mounting -2- on body in direction of -arrow-.

**Note**

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



- Make sure that wiring -arrow- leading to coupling -3- is additionally secured to belt reel housing -1- using a cable tie -2-.



Caution

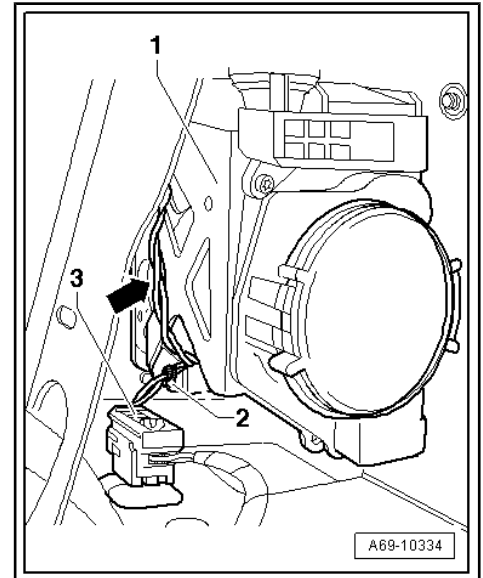
If this cable tie securing the wiring to the belt reel housing is missing, the wiring can become abraded, and this could result in the failure of the pyrotechnic belt tensioner or the switchable pressure limiter.

- Switch on ignition.



WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.



- Connect battery earth wire with ignition switched on => Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .
- If airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the fault memory => Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system VAS 5051.
- After fitting three-point seat belt (front passenger side), check belt operation for child seat (country-specific version) => [page 52](#) .

Tightening torque => [page 66](#)

3.4 Removing and installing outer belt end fitting

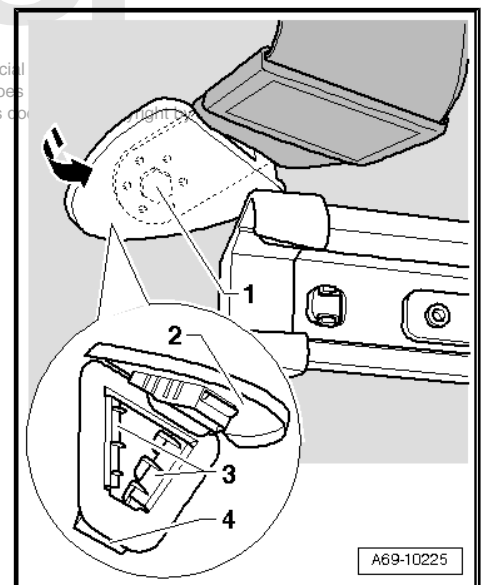
Removing

- Move seat forwards and fold backrest forwards.
- Open lid of cover -2- by pulling in direction of arrow.
- Lift cover -2- out of floor covering.
- Remove bolt -1-.

Installing

- Screw in bolt -1-.
- When fitting, slide tab -4- underneath floor covering.
- Close lid -2- to press tabs -3- underneath floor covering.

Tightening torque => [page 66](#)



3.5 Removing and installing belt guide anchorage point

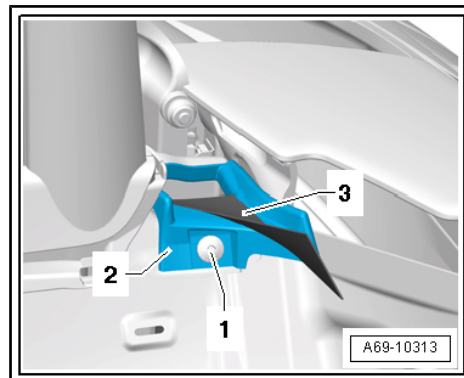
Removing

- Remove belt end fitting ⇒ [page 71](#) .
- Remove back panel cover ⇒ [page 214](#) .
- Remove bolt -1- and detach belt guide -2-.
- Thread belt -3- out of belt guide -2-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening torque ⇒ [page 66](#)



3.6 Overview of buckle anchorage point

1 - Belt buckle

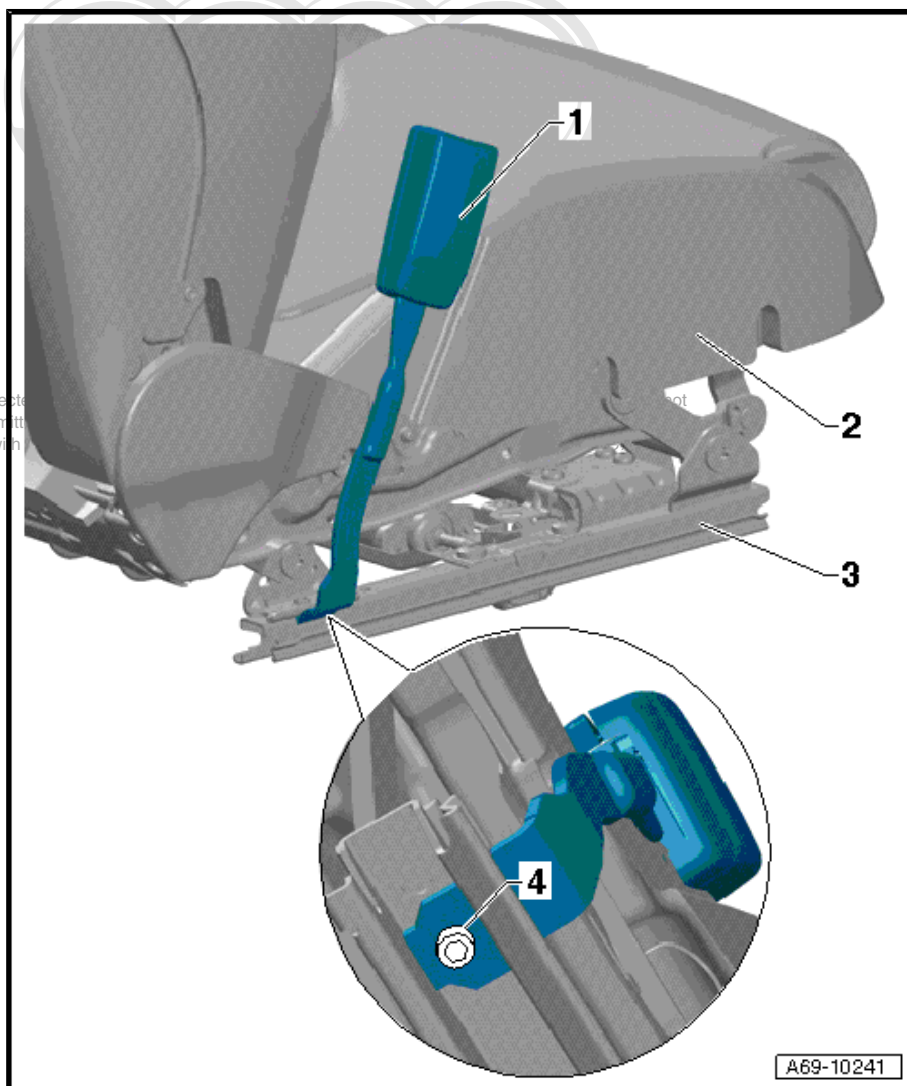
- Removing and installing belt buckle without buckle sensor ⇒ [page 73](#)
- Removing and installing belt buckle for seat occupied recognition system controlling deactivation of front passenger's airbag (country-specific version) ⇒ [page 73](#) (belt buckle version not shown in illustration)

2 - Seat

3 - Seat frame

4 - Bolt

- ONLY on bucket seat: 22 Nm
- All other seats: 34 Nm
- Renew




3.7 Removing and installing front buckle anchorage point

Removing

- Move the seat as far as possible to the rear and upwards.
- Remove front seat:
- ◆ Removing and installing front seats (with manual adjustment) ⇒ [page 243](#)
- ◆ Removing and installing front seats (with electric adjustment) ⇒ [page 274](#)
- ◆ Removing and installing bucket seat ⇒ [page 363](#)

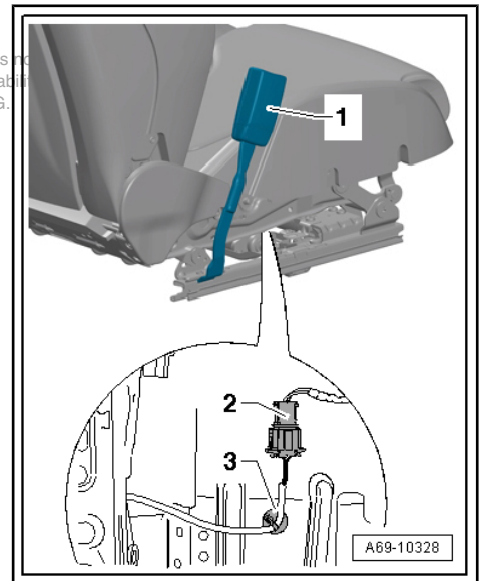
Vehicles with seat occupied recognition system controlling deactivation of front passenger's airbag (country-specific version)



WARNING

The belt buckle for the seat occupied recognition system controlling the deactivation of the front passenger's airbag must ALWAYS be renewed when the front passenger's belt tensioner has been triggered.

- Unplug connector -2-.
- 1 - Belt buckle for seat occupied recognition system controlling deactivation of front passenger's airbag (country-specific version)
- Unfasten cable tie clip -3-.



All vehicles (continued)

- Unscrew bolt -2- and detach belt buckle -1-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

Vehicles with seat occupied recognition system controlling deactivation of front passenger's airbag (country-specific version)

- If the belt buckle for the seat occupied recognition system controlling the deactivation of the front passenger's airbag is renewed, you must complete the form for the seat occupied recognition system stating the serial number and including the bar code sticker of the new belt buckle, and then send the form to the importer.

All vehicles (continued)

- Remove bolt from belt buckle.

**Note**

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

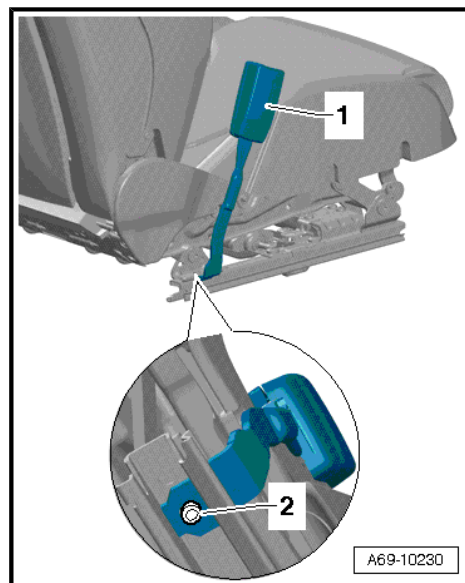
- Switch on ignition.

**WARNING**

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

- Connect battery earth wire with ignition switched on ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .
- If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following the installation, the fault memory must be interrogated, erased and interrogated again ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B- .

Tightening torque ⇒ [page 72](#)



4 Child seat anchors (ISOFIX, Top Tether)

4.1 Exploded view of child seat anchors (ISOFIX) for front seat



Note

For greater clarity cover is not shown in illustration.

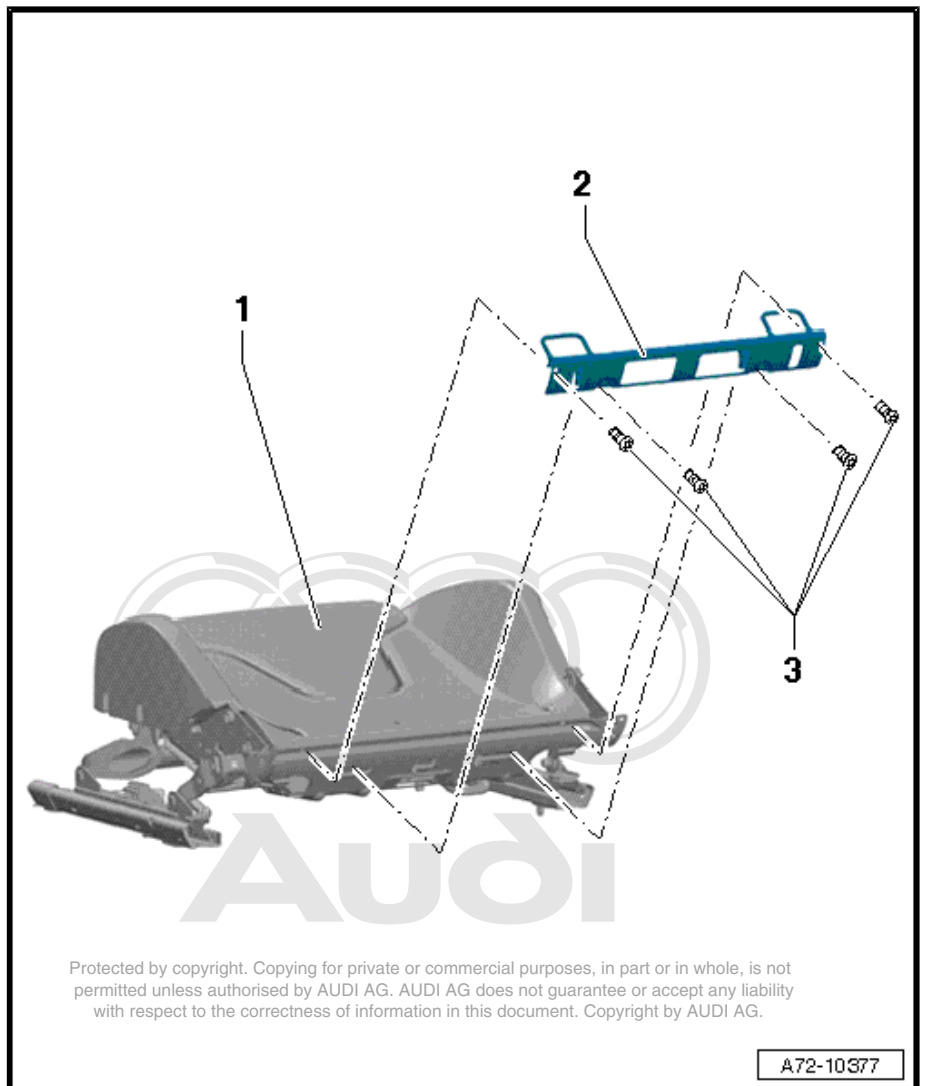
1 - Seat pan

2 - Retainer

- Front passenger's seat only
- Attached to seat pan and bolted on
- Checking after an accident ⇒ [page 52](#)
- Renew if damaged
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 76](#)

3 - Bolt

- 12 Nm
- 4x
- Renew if retainer is damaged



4.2 Removing and installing child seat anchor (ISOFIX)

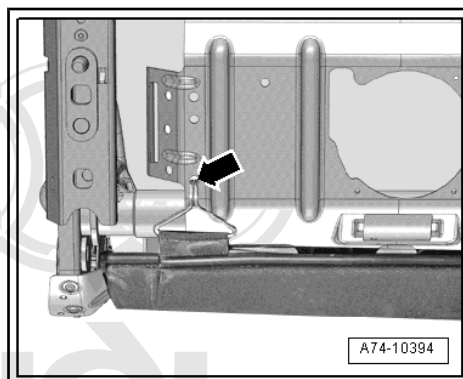
Removing



WARNING

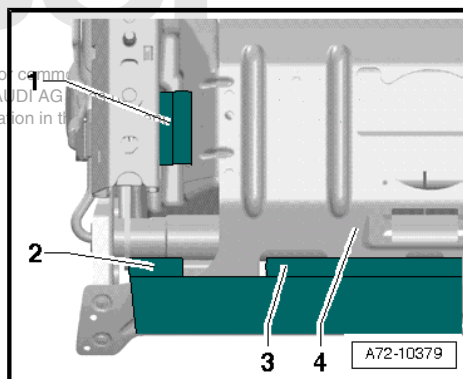
- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 42](#) .*
- ◆ *Before handling the airbag units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

- Remove front passenger's seat:
 - ◆ Front seat with manual adjustment ⇒ [page 243](#)
 - ◆ Front seat with electric adjustment ⇒ [page 274](#)
- Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- ⇒ [page 240](#) .
- Remove backrest:
 - ◆ Front seat with manual adjustment ⇒ [page 262](#)
 - ◆ Front seat with electric adjustment ⇒ [page 298](#)
- If fitted, disengage securing straps (left and right) -arrow-.



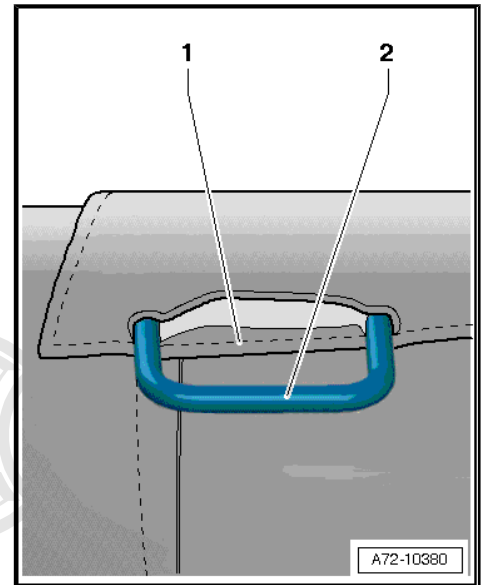
- Disengage fastening strips -1-, -2- and -3- on back of seat pan -4-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial use is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



- Pull cover to front off ISOFIX brackets.

Make sure the cover does not tear at the opening for the ISOFIX bracket.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Remove bolts -3- (4x).

**Note**

For greater clarity the padding is shown without the cover.

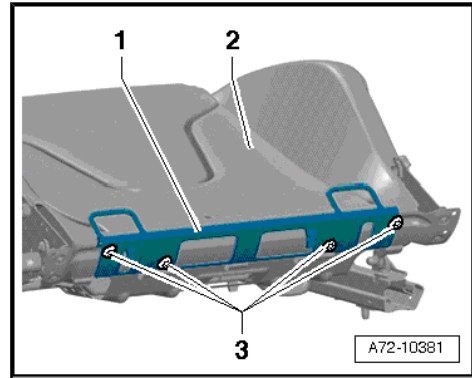
- Lift retainer -1- off seat pan -2-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

**WARNING**

- ◆ **Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components** ⇒ [page 42](#) .
- ◆ **Before handling the airbag units (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.**

**Note**

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

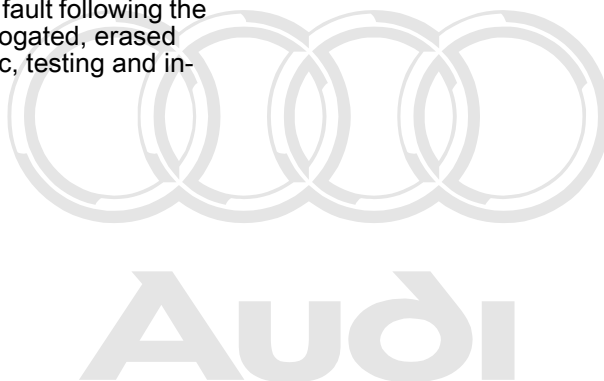
- Switch on ignition.

**WARNING**

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

- Connect battery earth wire with ignition switched on ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .
- If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following the installation, the fault memory must be interrogated, erased and interrogated again ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051 B- .

Tightening torque ⇒ [page 75](#)



4.3 Exploded view of child seat anchors (ISOFIX) for rear seats

Exploded view of backrest child seat anchor (ISOFIX)

1 - Backrest pan (right-side)

- Exploded view
 ⇒ [page 399](#)
- Removing and installing
 ⇒ [page 400](#)
- Double-sided adhesive tape on front and top edge
- Adhesive film on back
- With Top Tether (country-specific version)

2 - Backrest pan (left-side)

- Exploded view
 ⇒ [page 399](#)
- Removing and installing
 ⇒ [page 400](#)
- Double-sided adhesive tape on front and top edge
- Adhesive film on back
- With Top Tether (country-specific version)

3 - Bolt

- Tightening torque
 ⇒ [page 399](#)
- 16x

4 - Backrest frame

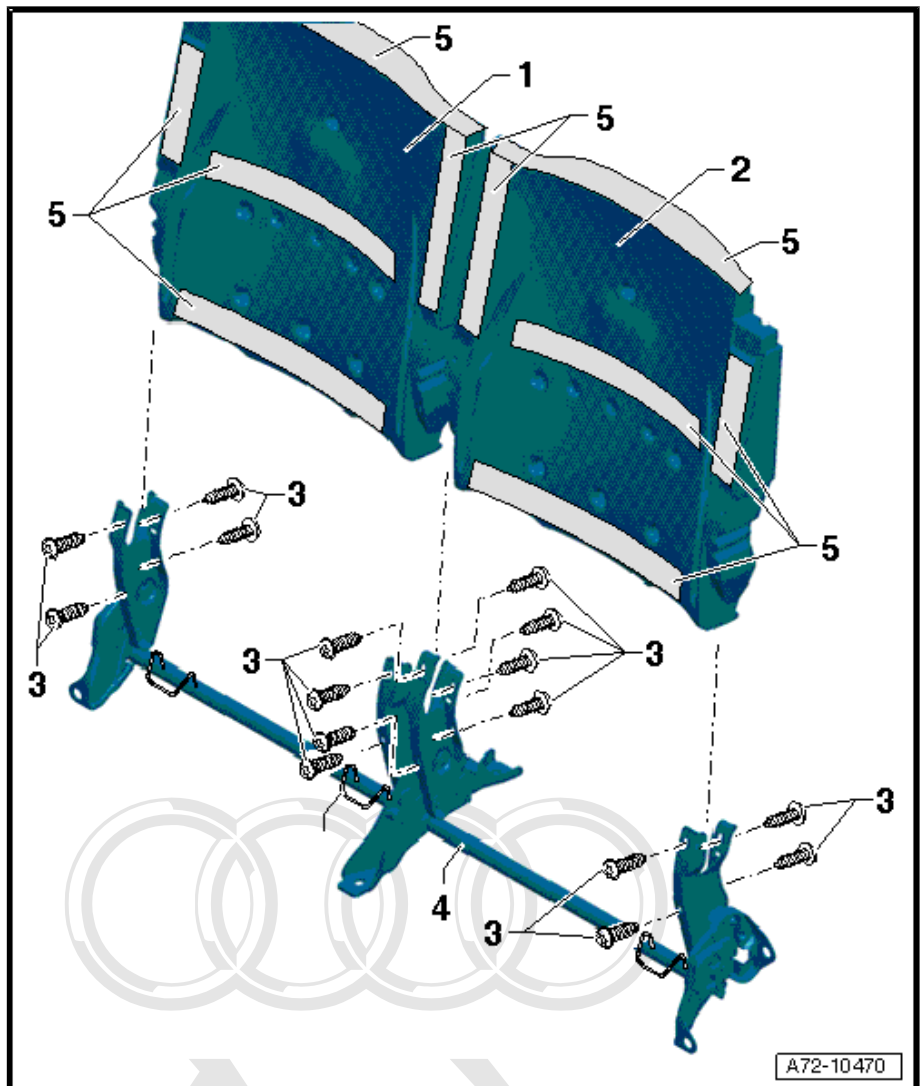
- Backrest pans (left and right) must be removed to renew backrest frame
- Exploded view
 ⇒ [page 399](#)
- Removing and installing
 ⇒ [page 399](#)
- Equipment versions:

◆ With child seat mounting (ISOFIX)

◆ Without child seat mounting

5 - Double-sided adhesive tape

- Affixed to front and top edge of backrest pan



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing and installing child seat anchor (ISOFIX)

Child seat anchor (ISOFIX) is welded to backrest frame. Removal and installation of the child seat anchor involve taking out and replacing backrest frame.

Removing and installing child seat anchor (ISOFIX)
 ⇒ [page 399](#)

4.4 Exploded view of child seat anchor (Top Tether) - country-specific version

1 - Backrest

2 - Inner trim

- ❑ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 80](#)

3 - Bracket

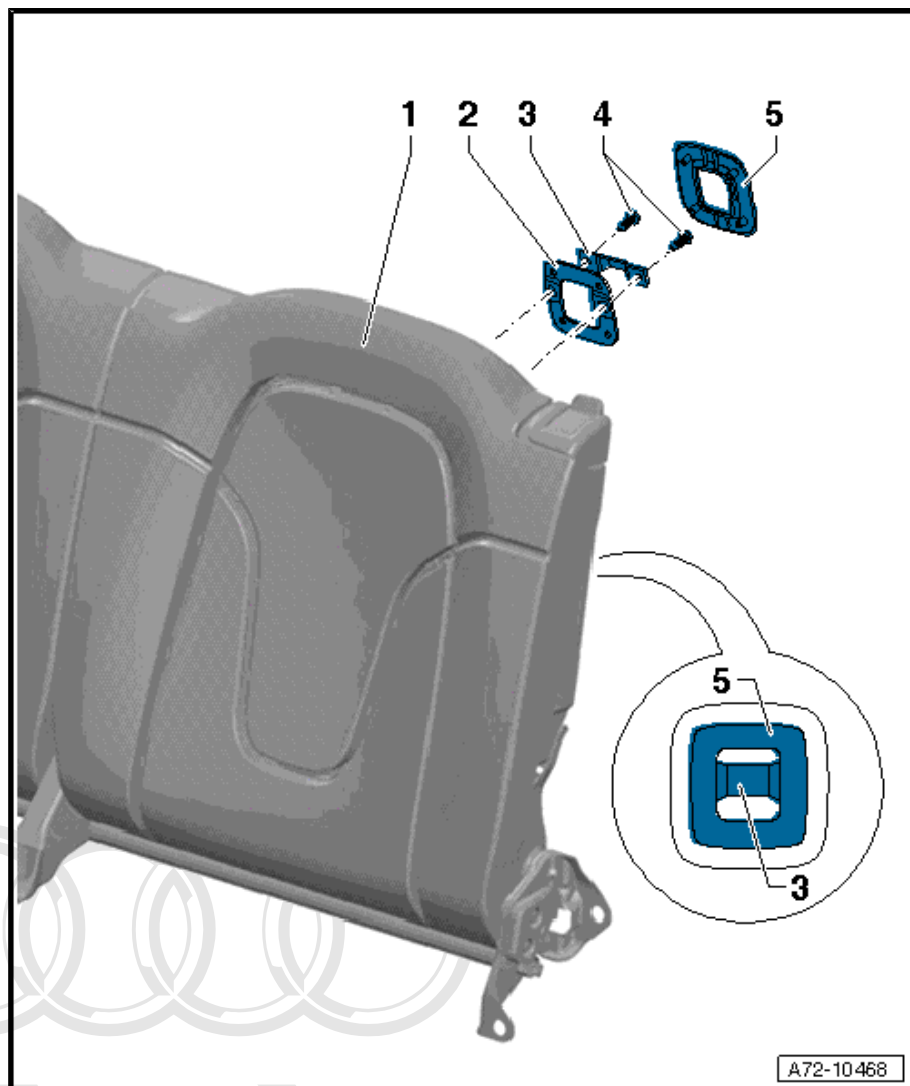
- ❑ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 80](#)

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 4 Nm
- ❑ 4x

5 - Outer trim

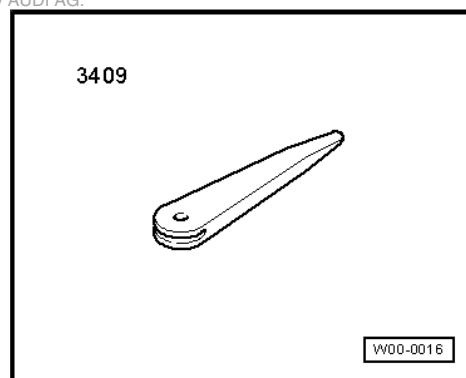
- ❑ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 80](#)



4.5 Removing and installing child seat mounting (Top Tether)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted without the written consent of Audi AG. Audi AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- ◆ Removal wedge -3409-



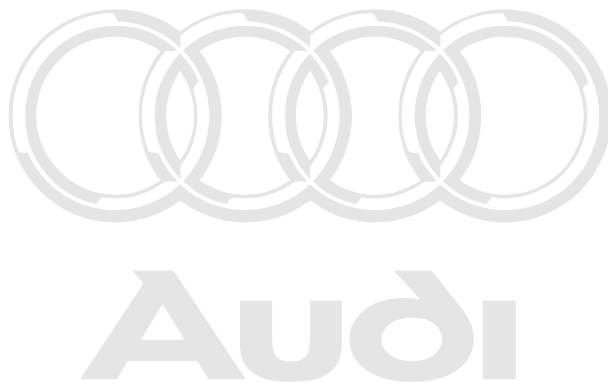
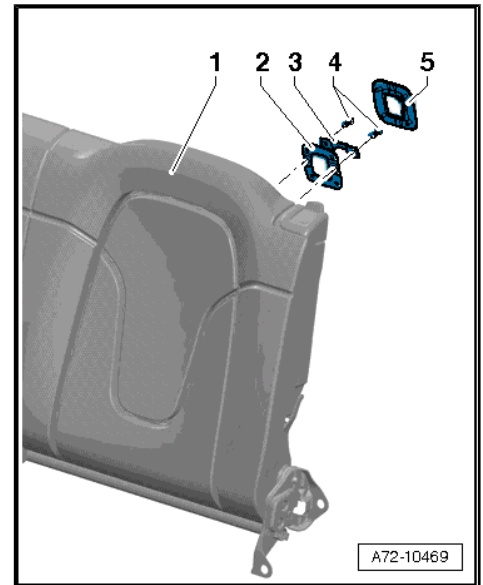
Removing

- Unclip outer trim -5- using removal wedge -3409- .
- Unscrew bolts -4-.
- Detach bracket -3-.
- Detach inner trim -2- from backrest -1-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening torque ⇒ [page 80](#)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5 Servicing airbags



WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components*
⇒ [page 42](#).
- ◆ *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components*
⇒ [page 43](#).

5.1 Overview of fitting locations

1 - Key-operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side -E224-

- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 97](#)

2 - Airbag unit (front passenger side)

- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 95](#)
- Can be disabled and activated via key-operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side -E224-

3 - Side airbag, front (passenger side)

- Exploded view
⇒ [page 99](#)
- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 100](#)

4 - Battery isolation igniter - N253-

- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 86](#)

5 - Side airbag, front (driver side)

- Exploded view
⇒ [page 99](#)
- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 100](#)

6 - Airbag unit (driver side)

- Exploded view
⇒ [page 89](#)
- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 89](#)

7 - Airbag coil connector and return ring with slip ring -F138-

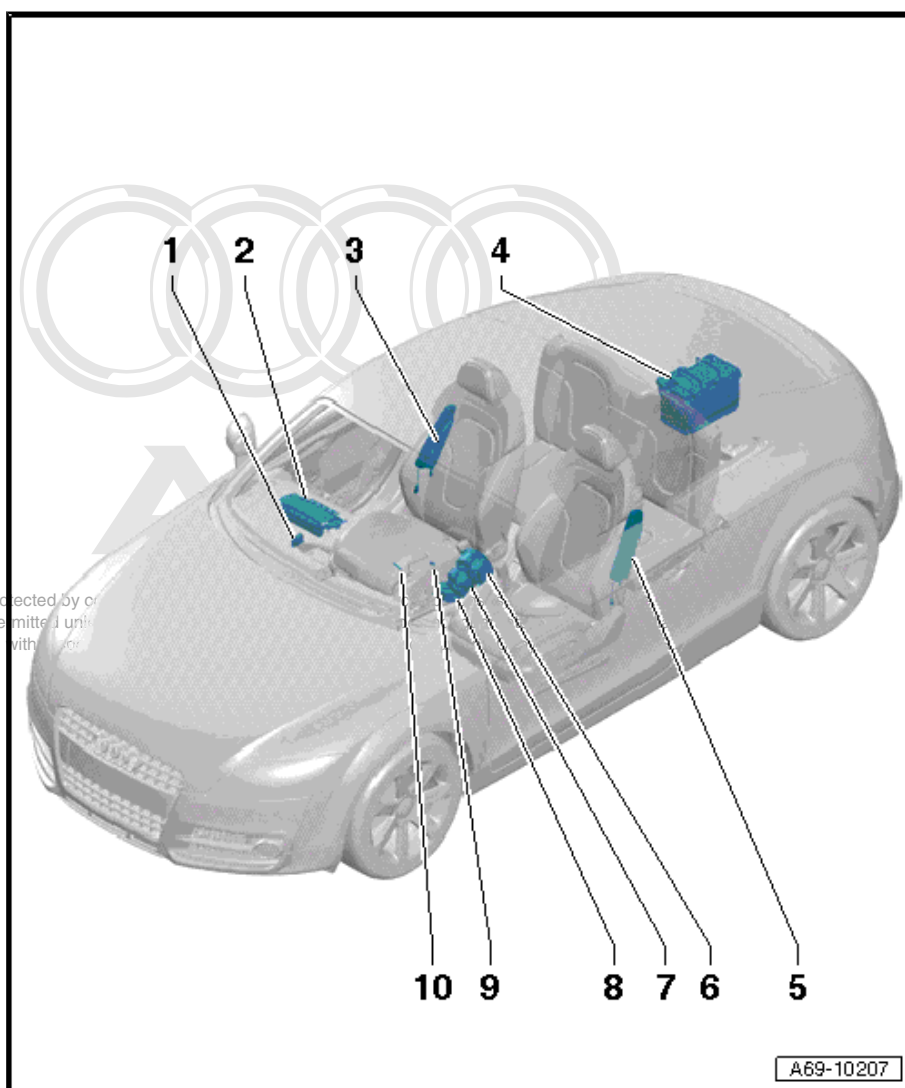
- Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94

8 - Airbag control unit -J234-

- Fitting location: on centre tunnel
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 83](#)

9 - Airbag warning lamp -K75-

- Fitting location: in instrument cluster ⇒ Rep. gr. 90



A69-10207

10 - Warning lamp for airbag deactivated on front passenger side -K145-

- Fitting location: In radio/navigation unit
- Removing and installing ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91

5.2 Exploded view of airbag control unit -J234-

1 - Nut

- 9 Nm

2 - Airbag control unit -J234-

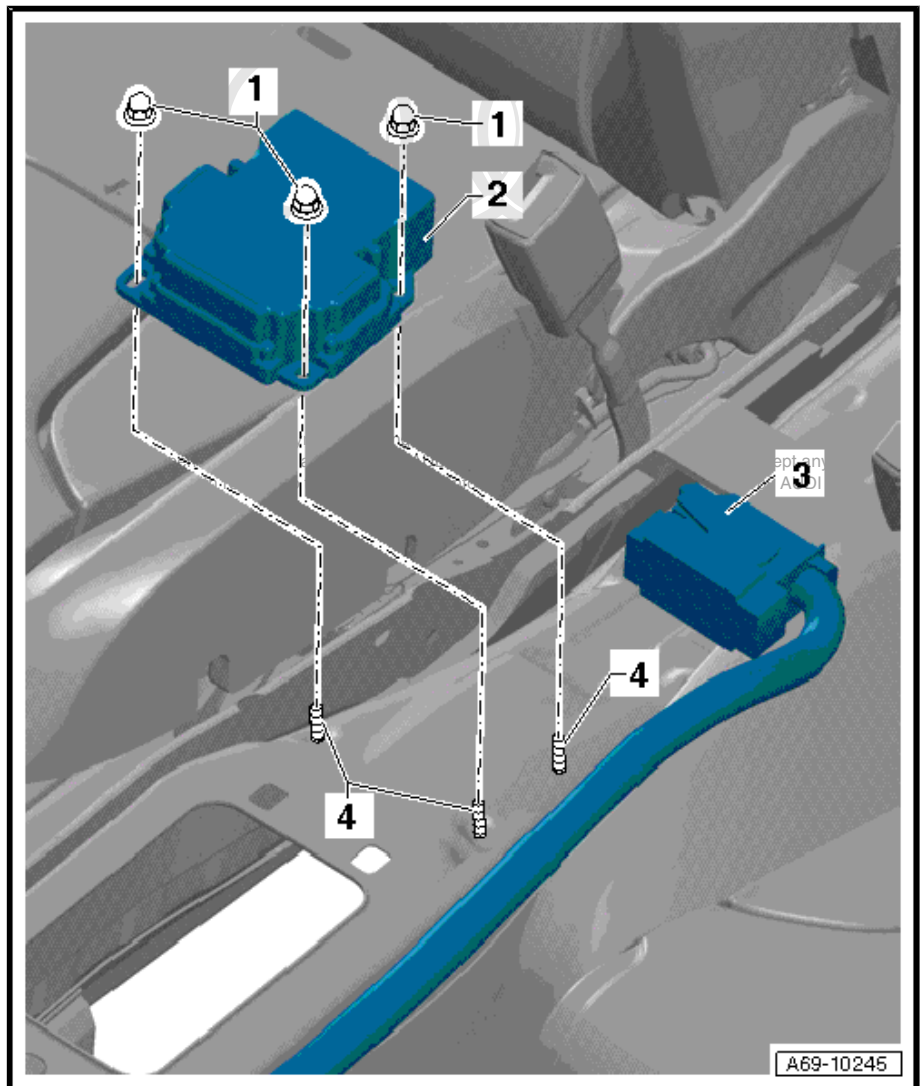
- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 83](#)

3 - Connector

- To unplug, release catch at connector and unplug connector.

4 - Threaded pin

- 3x



5.3 Removing and installing airbag control unit -J234-

Removing



WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components*
⇒ [page 42](#).

- Switch off ignition.
- Disconnect battery earth wire with ignition switched off ⇒
Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .



- Remove centre console (front) ⇒ [page 22](#) .



WARNING

- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*



Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Open catch at connector -1-.
- Unplug connector -1-.
- Unscrew nuts -3- (3x) from studs.
- Detach airbag control unit -J234- -2- from studs.

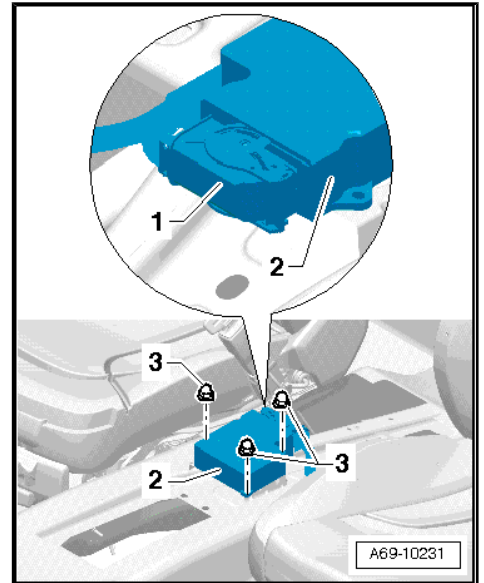
Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:



WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 42](#).*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*



Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

- Switch on ignition.



WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

- Connect battery earth wire with ignition switched on ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .
- If airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the fault memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system VAS 5051.



Note

- ◆ *Control unit must be encoded after renewal ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system VAS 5051.*
- ◆ *Earth connection for airbag control unit -J234- is provided by securing housing to body.*

Tightening torque ⇒ [page 83](#)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.4 Exploded view of battery isolation igniter -N253-

1 - Nut

- 2x
- 6 Nm

2 - Battery positive terminal

- With additional wires

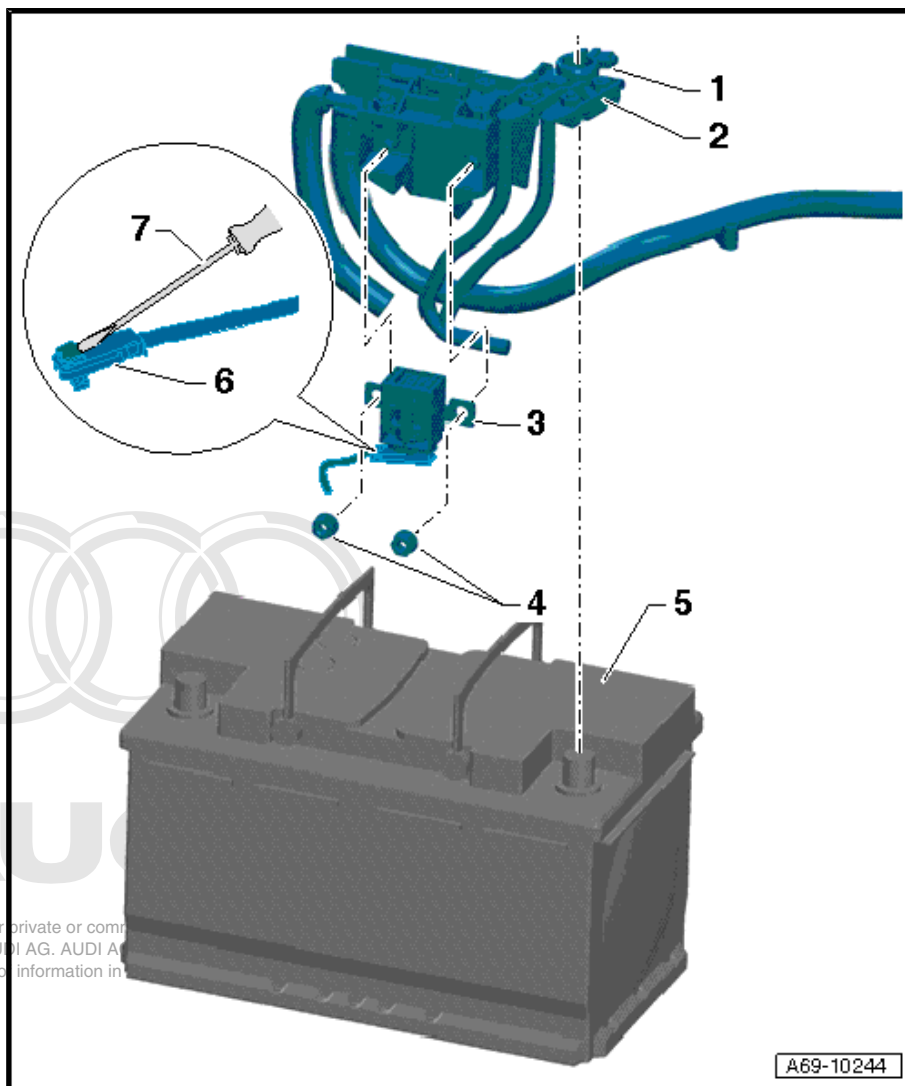
3 - Battery isolation igniter - N253-

- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 86](#)

4 - Nut

- 15 Nm

5 - Battery

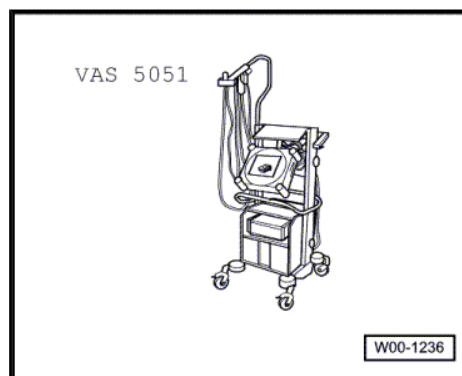


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial use is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG is not liable for any damage with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

5.5 Removing and installing battery isolation igniter -N253-

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B-



Removing



WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components*
⇒ page 42 .
- ◆ *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components*
⇒ page 43 .



Note

- ◆ *If airbag warning lamp -K75- is illuminated after an accident, use ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system VAS 5051 to check whether crash data have been stored. If this is the case, check whether the fault »001 Resistance too high« is stored in the fault memory of the battery isolation igniter -N253- . If this fault is stored in the memory, the battery isolation igniter -N253- must be renewed.*
 - ◆ *Each time the airbag is triggered, the battery isolation igniter -N253- electrically isolates the circuit. Battery isolation igniter -N253- must always be renewed after triggering.*
- Switch off ignition and remove ignition key.
 - Take the cover panel out of the luggage compartment floor.
 - Disconnect battery earth strap ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



- Disconnect the battery positive strap -1- and detach it with the auxiliary fuse box.
- Unscrew nuts -2-.
- Detach battery isolation igniter -N253- -5-.



WARNING

- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

- Release connector -3- at battery isolation igniter -N253- with a screwdriver -4-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:



WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components => page 42 .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*



Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

- Switch on ignition.

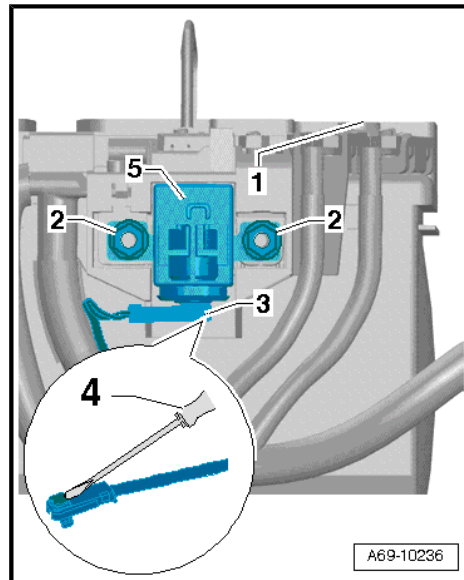


WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

- Connect battery earth wire with ignition switched on => Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .
- Finally read out fault memory for airbag control unit using => Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system VAS 5051 and rectify faults as necessary.

Tightening torque => [page 86](#)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

6 Servicing airbag (driver side)

6.1 Exploded view of airbag unit (driver side)

1 - Airbag coil connector and return ring with slip ring -F138-

- Removing and installing
 ⇒ Electrical system;
 Rep. gr. 94

2 - Steering wheel

- Removing and installing
 ⇒ Running gear, front-wheel drive and four-wheel drive; Rep. gr. 48

3 - Bolt

- Tightening torque ⇒
 Running gear, front-wheel drive and four-wheel drive; Rep. gr. 48

4 - Connector

- For airbag coil connector and return ring with slip ring -F138-
- Renewing ⇒ [page 92](#)

5 - Airbag unit

⚠ WARNING
 Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 42](#).

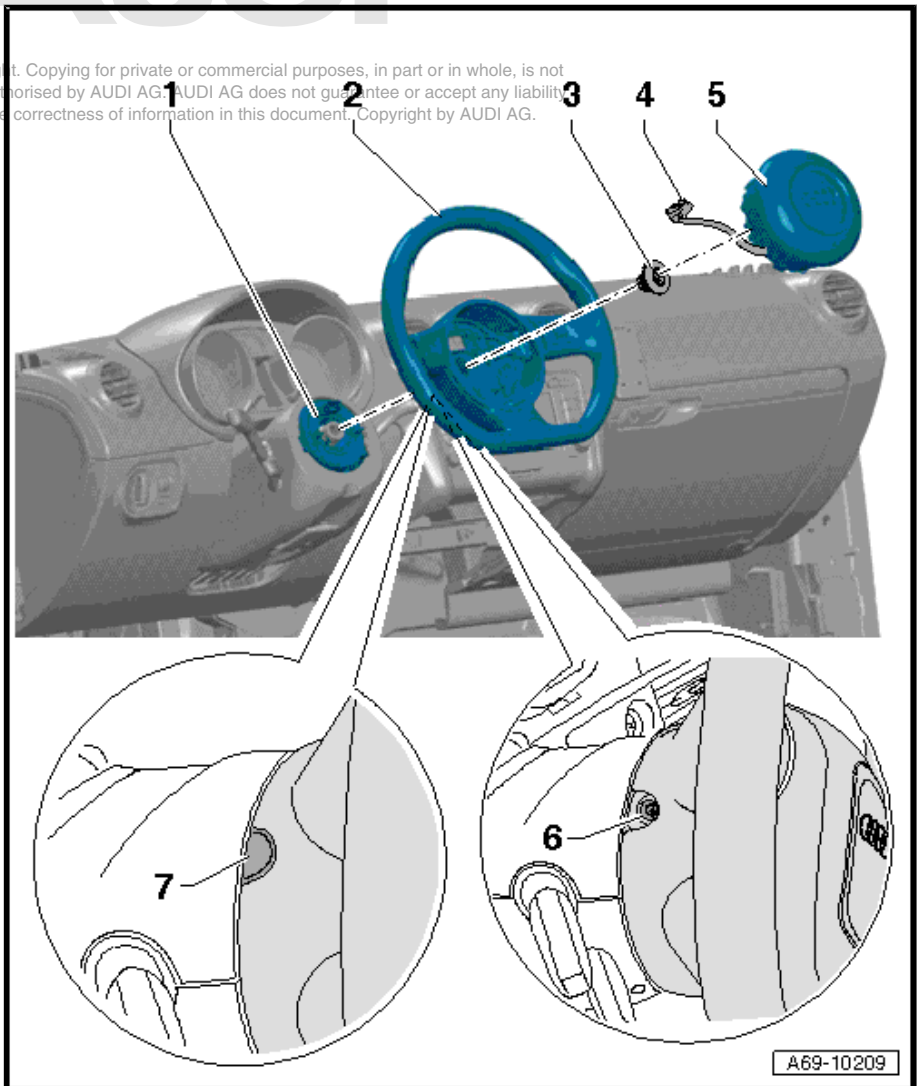
- Removing and installing
 ⇒ [page 89](#)

6 - Bolt

- 7 Nm

7 - Cap

- For securing bolt for airbag unit
- 2x



6.2 Removing and installing airbag igniter on driver side -N95- and airbag igniter 2 on driver side -N250-

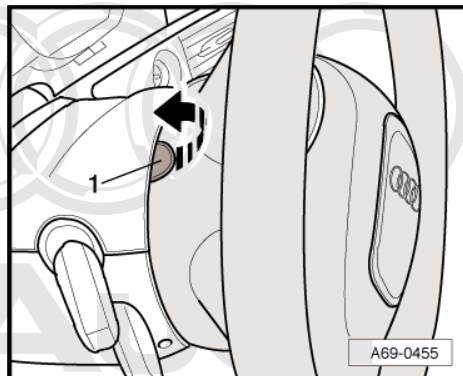
Removing

- Move steering wheel up and to rear as far as it will go, using full range of steering column adjuster.

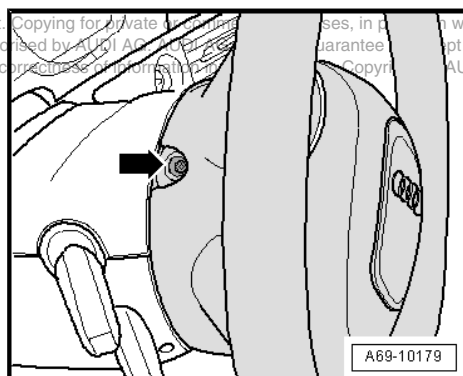
**WARNING**

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components*
⇒ page 42.
- ◆ *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components*
⇒ page 43.

- Switch off ignition.
- Disconnect the battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27.
- Prise off caps -1- (left and right) on reverse side of steering wheel -arrow-.



- Unscrew bolt -arrow- (left and right) on back of steering wheel.
- Turn steering wheel to centre position (wheels in straight-ahead position).
- Move airbag unit (driver side) slightly away from steering wheel.

**WARNING**

- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

- Pull connector locking element -4- as far as stop -arrow-. This will release electrical connector -2- which can then be unplugged.
- Detach airbag unit -1- from steering wheel.
- If fitted, unplug electrical connector -3-.
- Set down airbag unit with impact cushion facing upwards.

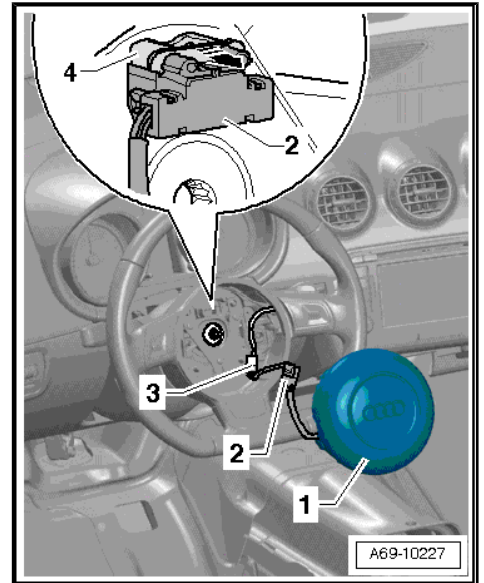
Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:



WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components => page 42.*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

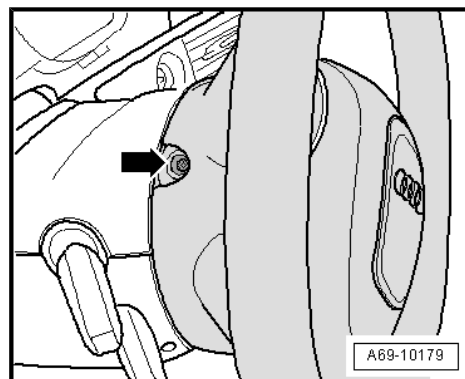


Note

- ◆ *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- ◆ *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*
- Attach electrical connector for coil connector to coupling for airbag unit at return ring with slip ring.
- Position airbag unit in steering wheel.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Screw in the two bolts -arrow- by approx. two turns to secure airbag unit.
- Operate horn three times to ensure an even gap width.
- Avoid further contact with airbag unit.
- Tighten bolts -arrow-.
- Press caps into openings in steering wheel.
- Switch on ignition.

**WARNING**

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

- Connect battery earth wire with ignition switched on ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .

After installing the airbag unit, the following step must be carried out:

- Interrogate and erase the fault memory of the airbag control unit as unplugging the electrical connectors may have caused faults to be stored ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system VAS 5051.

Tightening torque ⇒ [page 89](#)

6.3 Renewing connector at airbag unit

Removing

**WARNING**

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 42](#) .*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Remove airbag unit (driver side) ⇒ [page 89](#) .

**WARNING**

- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

- Use a screwdriver -1- to release electrical connectors -2- and -4- at airbag.
- Unplug connector -3-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:



WARNING

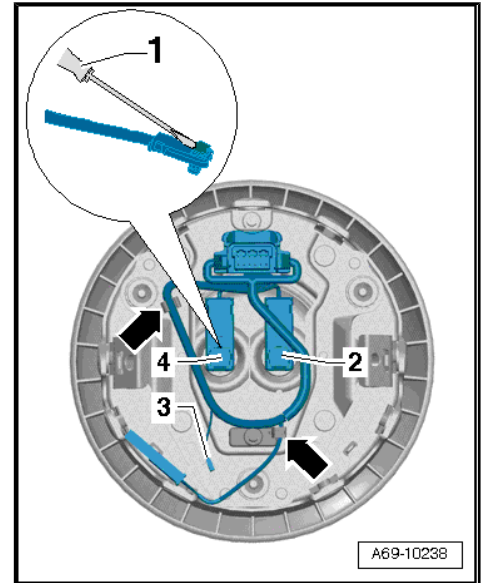
- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components*
⇒ [page 42](#).
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*



Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

- Install airbag unit (driver side) ⇒ [page 91](#) .



Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

7 Servicing airbag (front passenger side)

7.1 Exploded view of airbag unit (front passenger side)

1 - Support for airbag unit

- Bolted to central tube

2 - Guide for airbag unit

- Attached to dash panel
- Cannot be renewed as a separate unit


3 - Bracket (right-side) for airbag unit

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 97](#)

4 - Bolt

- Renew
- 7 Nm

5 - Airbag unit

 **WARNING**
Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 42](#).
*For correct combination of dash panel and airbag unit refer to ⇒ *Electronic parts catalogue*.*

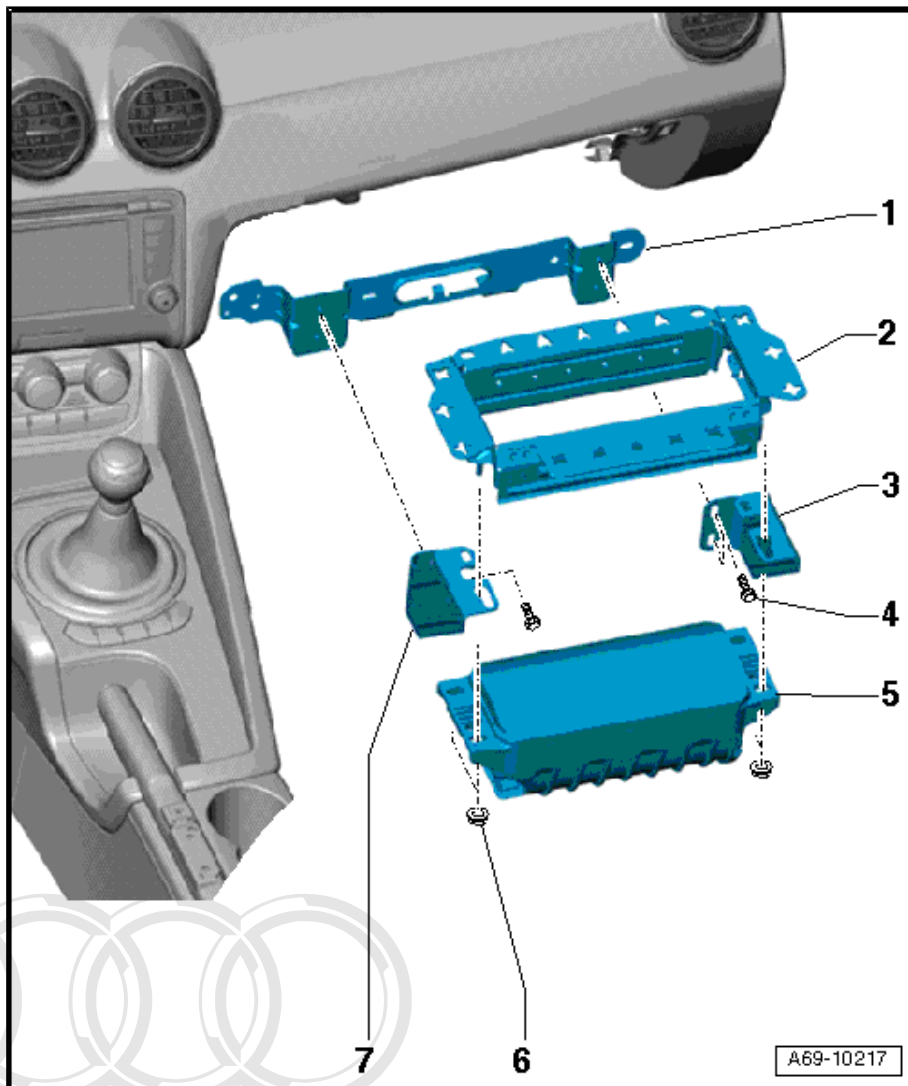
- Can be disabled and activated via key-operated switch
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 95](#)

6 - Nut

- Renew
- 7 Nm

7 - Bracket (left-side) for airbag unit

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 97](#)



7.2 Removing and installing airbag unit (front passenger side)

Removing



WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components
 ⇒ [page 42](#).*
- ◆ *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components
 ⇒ [page 43](#).*
- ◆ *For correct combination of dash panel and airbag unit refer
 to ⇒ [Electronic parts catalogue](#).*

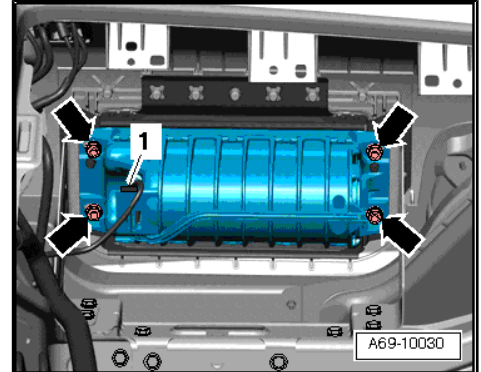
- Switch off ignition.
- Disconnect the battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27.
- Remove glove box ⇒ [page 12](#).



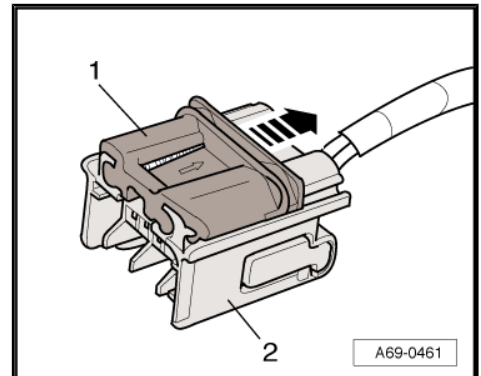
WARNING

- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate or similar.*
- protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Unplug electrical connector -1-.



- To do so, press catch -1- in direction of -arrow- until connector is disengaged.
- Unplug electrical connector -2-.





- Unscrew nuts -arrows-.
- Take out airbag unit downwards.
- Set down airbag unit with impact cushion facing upwards.

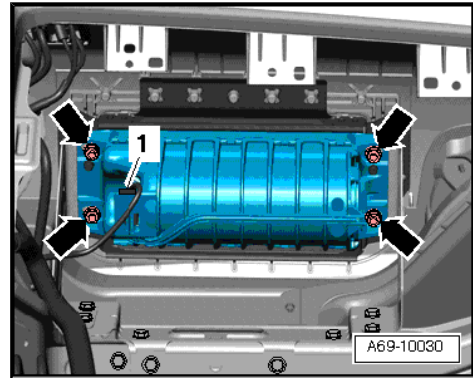
Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:



WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components => page 42 .*
- ◆ *For correct combination of dash panel and airbag unit refer to => Electronic parts catalogue .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*



Note

- ◆ *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- ◆ *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*
- Once an airbag has been triggered the airbag securing components must be renewed.



WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

- Switch on ignition.
- Connect battery earth wire with ignition switched on => Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .
- If airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the fault memory => Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system VAS 5051.

Tightening torque => page 94

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

7.3 Removing and installing brackets for airbag unit (front passenger side)

Removing

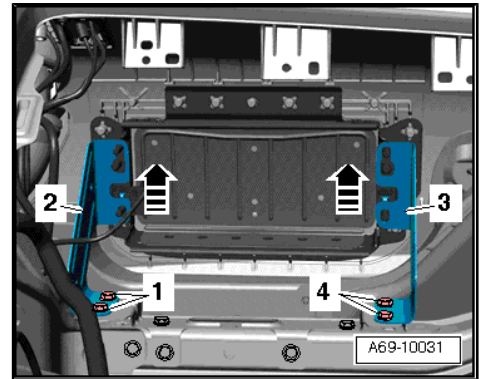
- Remove airbag unit (front passenger side) ⇒ [page 95](#) .
- Remove bolts -1- and -4-.
- Disengage brackets -2- and -3- at guide for airbag unit in direction of -arrows-.
- Detach brackets for airbag unit.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- Install airbag unit (front passenger side) ⇒ [page 95](#) .

Tightening torque ⇒ [page 94](#)



7.4 Removing and installing key-operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side -E224-

Removing



WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 42](#) .*

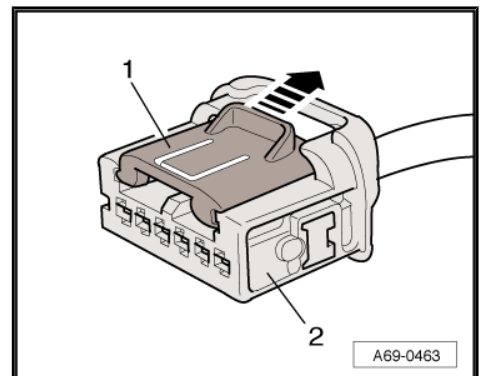
- Switch off ignition.
- Disconnect the battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .
- Remove glove box ⇒ [page 12](#) .



WARNING

- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

- Press catch -1- in direction of -arrow- until connector disengages.
- Unplug electrical connector -2-.




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Release retaining springs -2- and -3- (left and right) and slide key-operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side -E224- item 1- out of housing for key-operated switch.

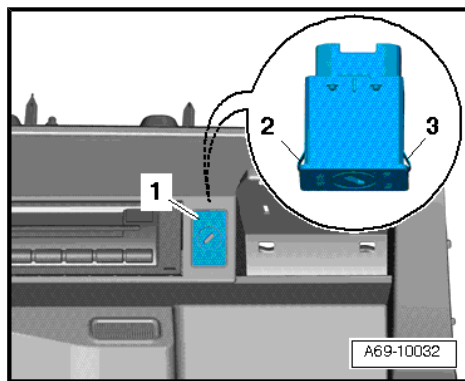
Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:




WARNING

◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*



Note

- ◆ *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- ◆ *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*
- Make sure that key-operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side -E224- engages audibly in housing.



WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

- Switch on ignition.
- Connect battery earth wire with ignition switched on => Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .
- If airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the fault memory => Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system VAS 5051.

7.5 Removing and installing warning lamp for airbag deactivated on front passenger side -K145-

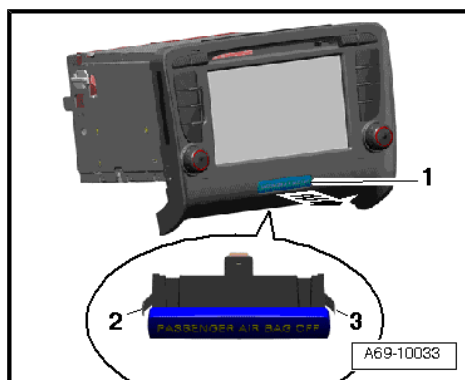
Removing

- Remove radio / navigation system => Rep. gr. 91 .
- Release retaining springs -2- and -3- (left and right) and slide out warning lamp for airbag deactivated on front passenger side -K145- item 1- -arrow- .

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- Press warning lamp into housing until it engages audibly.



8 Servicing side airbag (front)

8.1 Exploded view of side airbag (front)

1 - Side airbag

 **WARNING**
 Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 42](#).
 Observe additional safety regulations for side airbags ⇒ [page 44](#).

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 100](#)
- Inserted in pouch »pouch not shown«
- Pouch stitched to cover

2 - Hook

- 4x
- For attaching side airbag to seat frame

3 - Bracket

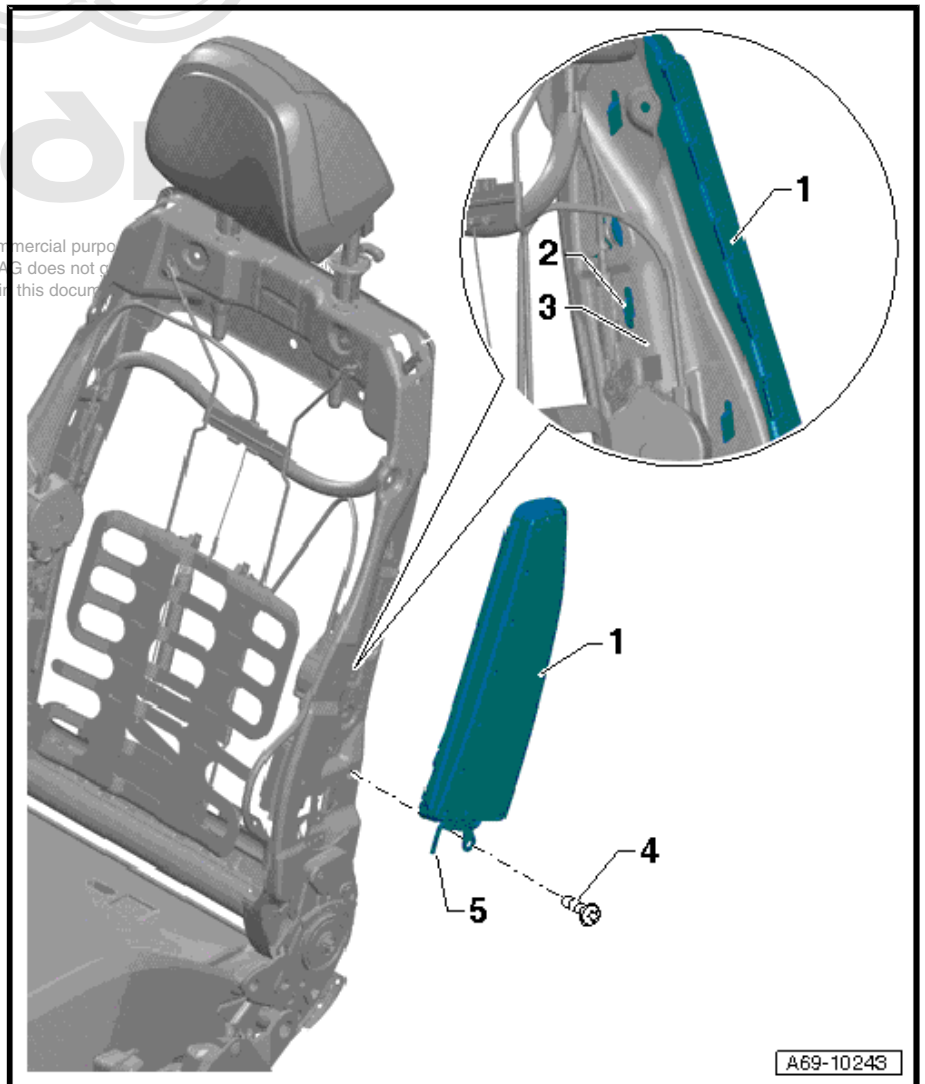
- For side airbag wiring harness

4 - Bolt

- 10 Nm

5 - Wiring harness

- From side airbag to body



A69-10243

8.2 Removing and installing side airbag

Removing



WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 42](#) .*
- ◆ *Observe additional safety regulations for side airbags ⇒ [page 44](#) .*
- ◆ *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 43](#) .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

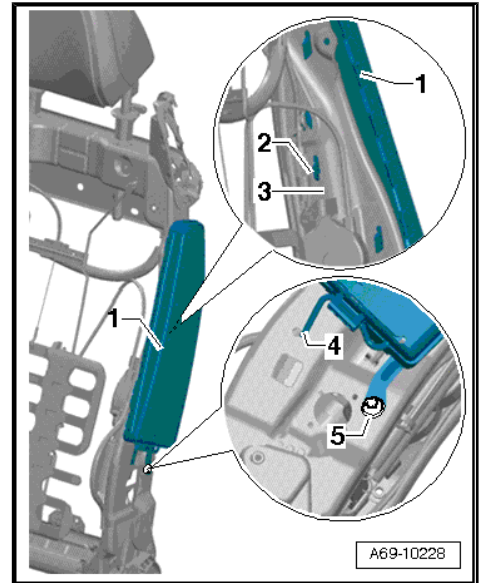
- Remove front seat: seat with manual adjustment ⇒ [page 243](#) , seat with electric adjustment ⇒ [page 274](#) .
- Attach seat repair stand -VAS 6136- to engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095- and secure front seat in position on seat repair stand -VAS 6136- ⇒ [page 240](#) .
- Remove front seat backrest: front seat with manual adjustment ⇒ [page 262](#) , front seat with electric adjustment ⇒ [page 298](#) .
- Remove backrest cover panel ⇒ [page 266](#) .



Audi


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Detach backrest padding far enough to gain access to bolt -5- => [page 407](#) .
- Remove wiring harness -4- from corrugated tube => [page 262](#) .
- Remove wiring harness -4- from rest of corrugated tube.
- Disengage wiring harness from bracket -3-.
- Remove bolt -5-.
- Disengage side airbag -1- with hook -2- from backrest frame.
- Take side airbag out of pouch.
- Guide out wiring harness and detach side airbag from seat.




Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:


 **WARNING**

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components => [page 42](#) .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

 Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

- Switch on ignition.

 **WARNING**

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

- Connect battery earth wire with ignition switched on => Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .
- If airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the fault memory => Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system VAS 5051.

Tightening torque => [page 99](#)

9 Servicing knee airbag

9.1 Exploded view of knee airbag unit (driver and passenger side)



WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components*
⇒ [page 42](#).

1 - Knee restraint

- Dash panel trim (driver side) in vehicles with knee airbag
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 104](#)

2 - Bolt

- 2.5 Nm
- 5x

3 - Bolt

- 2.5 Nm
- 2x
- For securing knee restraints to dash panel bracket

4 - Bolt

- 2.5 Nm
- 2x
- For securing air duct (driver's footwell) to supports on left ⇒ [Item 9 \(page 102\)](#) and right ⇒ [Item 11 \(page 103\)](#)

5 - Air duct (driver's footwell)

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 105](#)

6 - Knee airbag (driver side)

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 104](#)

7 - Nut

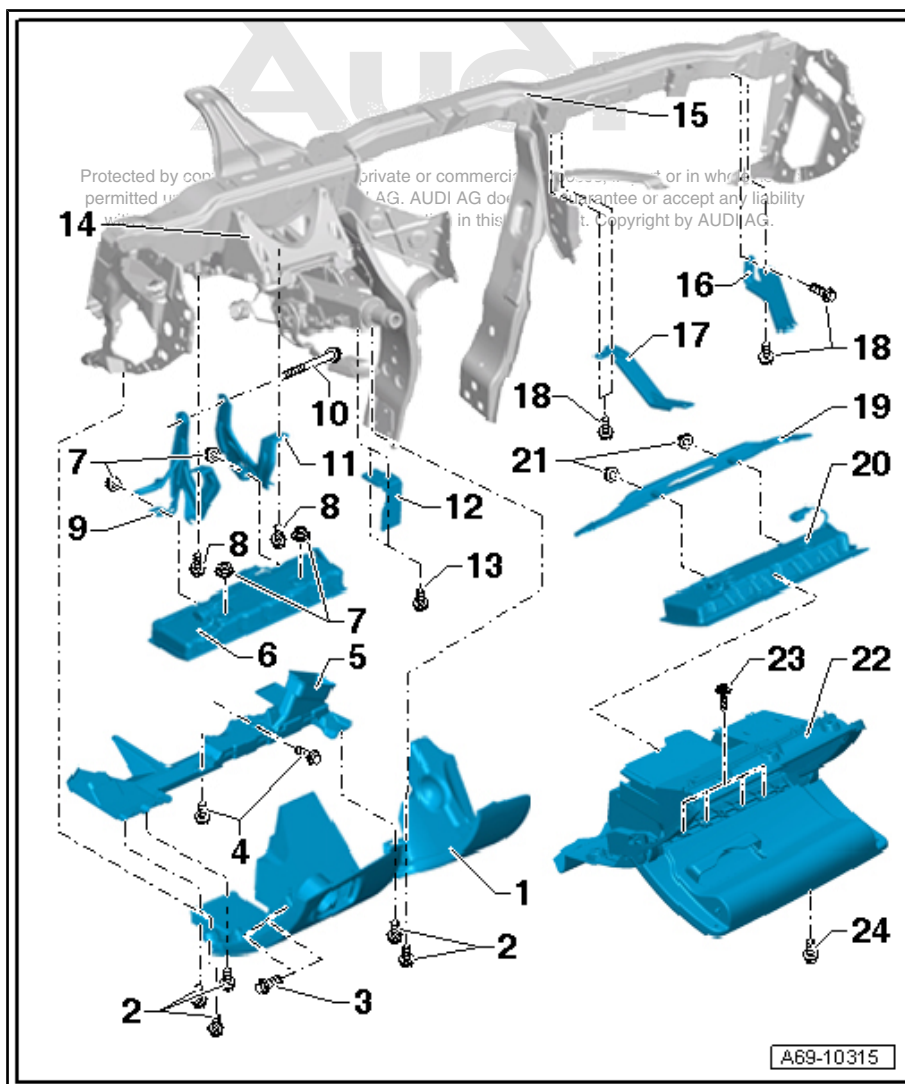
- 9 Nm
- 4x
- For securing knee airbag (driver side) to supports on left ⇒ [Item 9 \(page 102\)](#) and right ⇒ [Item 11 \(page 103\)](#)

8 - Bolt

⇒ Rep. gr. 48

9 - Support (left-side)

- Driver side
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 106](#)



10 - Bolt

⇒ Rep. gr. 48

11 - Support (right-side)

- Driver side
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 106](#)

12 - Retaining bracket

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 107](#)

13 - Bolt

- 9 Nm
- 2x
- For securing retaining bracket to central tube

14 - Mounting bracket

- For steering column

15 - Central tube

16 - Support (right-side)

- Passenger side
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 112](#)

17 - Support (left-side)

- Passenger side
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 112](#)

18 - Bolt

- 9 Nm
- 4x

19 - Bottom support

- Installed in glove box
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 111](#)

20 - Knee airbag (front passenger side)

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 110](#)

21 - Nut

- 9 Nm
- For securing knee airbag unit ⇒ [Item 20 \(page 103\)](#) to bottom support

22 - Glove box

- For vehicles with knee airbag
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 110](#)

23 - Bolt

- 3 Nm
- 4x
- For securing knee airbag ⇒ [Item 20 \(page 103\)](#) to glove box

24 - Bolt

- 2.5 Nm
- 7x
- For securing glove box to central tube

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

9.2 Removing and installing knee restraint (dash panel trim, driver side)

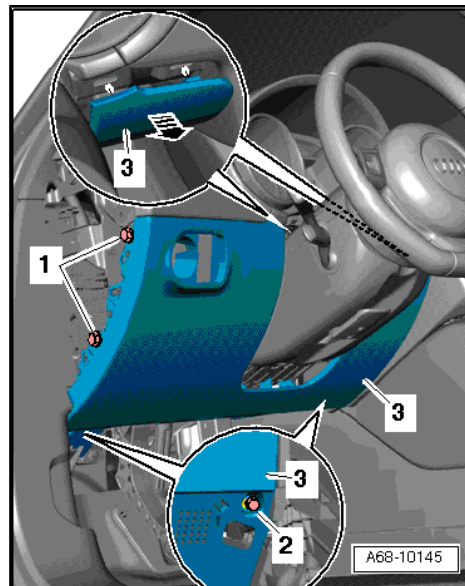
Removing

- Remove light switch ⇒ Rep. gr. 96 .
- Remove dash panel end trim ⇒ [page 146](#) .
- Unscrew bolts -1- (2x) and -2- (5x).
- Use a small screwdriver to detach top edge of knee restraint -3- from dash panel trim -arrow-.
- Remove knee restraint.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening torque ⇒ [page 102](#)



9.3 Removing and installing knee airbag (driver side)

Removing

- Move driver's seat to rearmost position and set backrest to 45° position.




WARNING

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

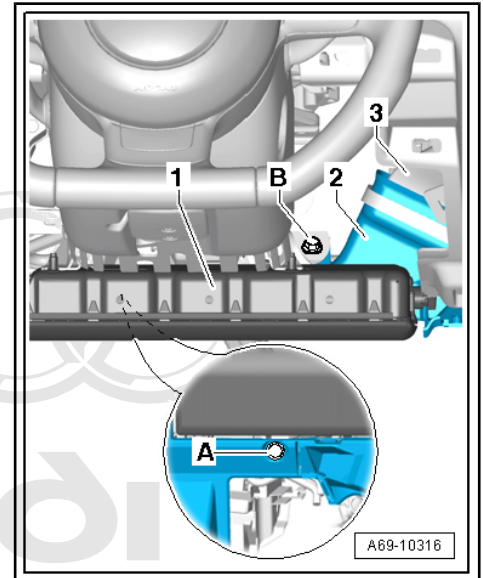
- ◆ **Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components** ⇒ [page 42](#) .
- ◆ **Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components** ⇒ [page 43](#) .

- Switch off ignition.
- Disconnect battery earth wire with ignition switched off ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .
- Remove knee restraint (dash panel trim, driver side) ⇒ [page 104](#) .
- Unclip 16-pin connector -T16- for diagnostic connector.

- Unscrew bolts -A- (below knee airbag -1-) and -B- (above knee airbag).
- Then pull air duct (driver's footwell) -2- off air duct (front passenger's footwell) -3-.

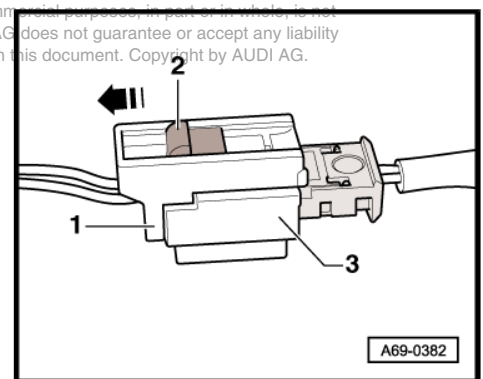
 **WARNING**

◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*



- Unplug knee airbag connector (yellow).
- To do so, pull catch -2- in direction of -arrow- and unplug electrical connectors -1- and -3-.


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted, unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



- Remove nuts -2- from support on left -3- and right -4-.
- Slacken nuts -5- approximately 3 turns and remove knee airbag (driver side) -1- towards the rear.
- Set down airbag unit -1- with impact cushion facing upwards.

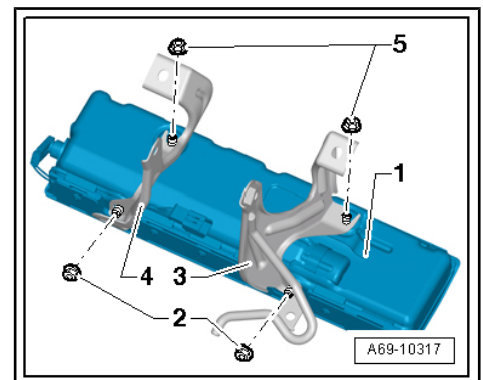
Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

 **WARNING**

◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 42.*

◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

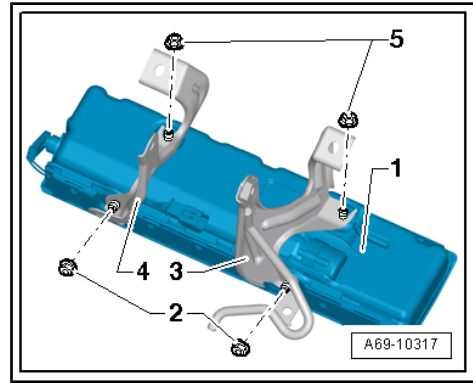


- Slide knee airbag -1- in until it touches support (left-side -3- and right-side -4-).
- First tighten nuts -2- and then nuts -5- to torque.



Note

- ◆ *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- ◆ *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*
- Once an airbag has been triggered the airbag securing components must be renewed.



WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

- Switch on ignition.
- Connect battery earth wire with ignition switched on => Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .
- If airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the fault memory => Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system VAS 5051.

Tightening torques => [page 102](#)

9.4 Removing and installing supports (left and right) for knee airbag (driver side)

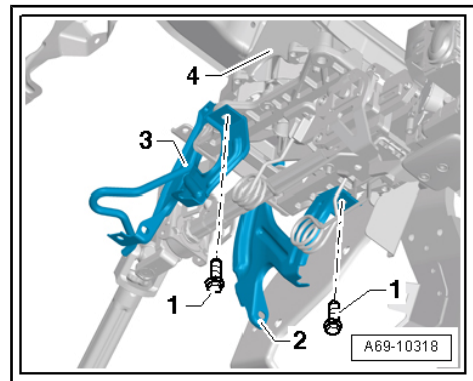
Removing



WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components => [page 42](#) .*

- Remove knee airbag (driver side) => [page 104](#) .
- Unscrew bolts -1- for support (right-side -2- and left-side -3-) from steering column mounting bracket -4-.



- Then detach supports -1- and -2- from forked brace and steering column mounting bracket -4-. To do so, unscrew bolt -3-.

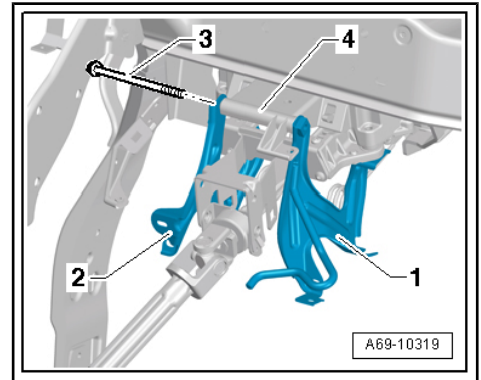
Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:



WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 42](#).*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*



- Install knee airbag (driver side) ⇒ [page 104](#).



Note

- ◆ *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- ◆ *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*

- Switch on ignition.



WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

- Connect battery earth wire with ignition switched on ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27.
- If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following the installation, the fault memory must be interrogated, erased and interrogated again ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051 B-.

Tightening torques ⇒ [page 102](#)

9.5 Removing and installing retaining bracket (above knee airbag, driver side)

Removing

- Move driver's seat to rearmost position and set backrest to 45° position.
- Remove knee restraint (dash panel trim, driver side) ⇒ [page 104](#).

- Unscrew bolts -2- and remove retaining bracket -1-.

**Note**

Take care not to damage the knee airbag unit -3- when installing or removing the retaining bracket.

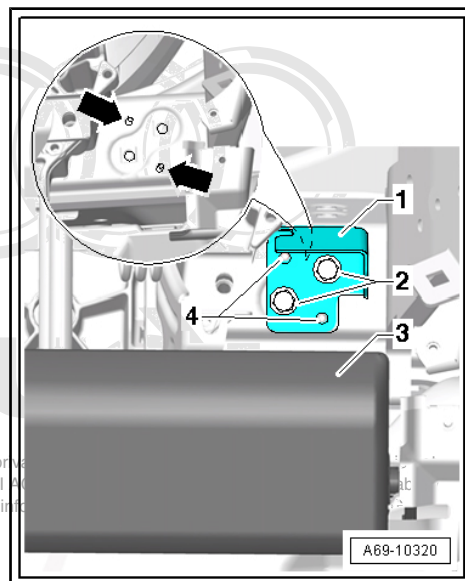
Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

- Insert retaining bracket -1- into mountings -arrows- on central tube so that holes on retaining bracket -4- fit into mountings and cut-away of retaining bracket faces rear.

Tightening torque ⇒ [page 102](#)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private use is permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. No liability with respect to the correctness of information.



9.6 Removing and installing glove box (on vehicles with knee airbag)

Removing

- Move front passenger's seat to rearmost position and set backrest to 45° position.

**WARNING**

On vehicles with key-operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side -E224-, observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 42](#).

- Open glove box lid -1-.

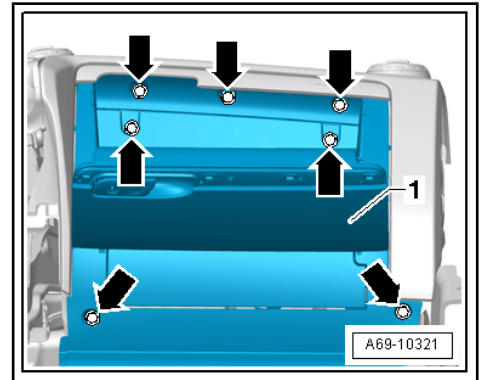


If the glove box lid cannot be opened in the normal way, you can release it manually ⇒ [page 9](#).



WARNING

- ◆ **Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components**
⇒ [page 42](#).



- Switch off ignition.
- Disconnect battery earth wire with ignition switched off ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .
- If fitted, remove CD changer ⇒ Rep. gr. 91 .
- Remove bolts -arrows-.
- Detach glove box and pull out far enough so that you can unplug electrical connectors.



WARNING

- ◆ **Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.**

- Unplug electrical connector at main connector.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



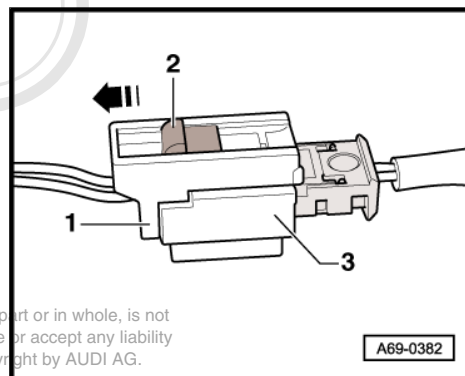
- Unplug knee airbag connector (yellow).
- To do so, pull catch -2- in direction of -arrow- and unplug electrical connectors -1- and -3-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

**WARNING**

- ◆ **Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components** ⇒ [page 42](#).
- ◆ **Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.**

**Note**

- ◆ *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- ◆ *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*

- Switch on ignition.

**WARNING**

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

- Connect battery earth wire with ignition switched on ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .
- If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following the installation, the fault memory must be interrogated, erased and interrogated again ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051 B- .

Tightening torque ⇒ [page 102](#)

9.7 Removing and installing knee airbag (front passenger side)

Removing**WARNING**

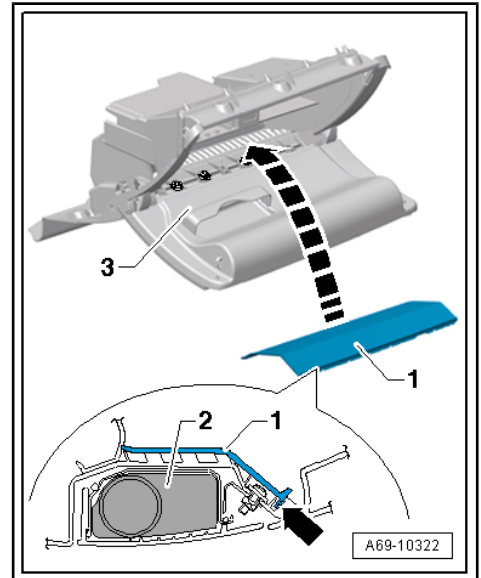
- ◆ **Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components** ⇒ [page 42](#) .
- ◆ **Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components** ⇒ [page 43](#) .

- Remove glove box ⇒ [page 108](#) .

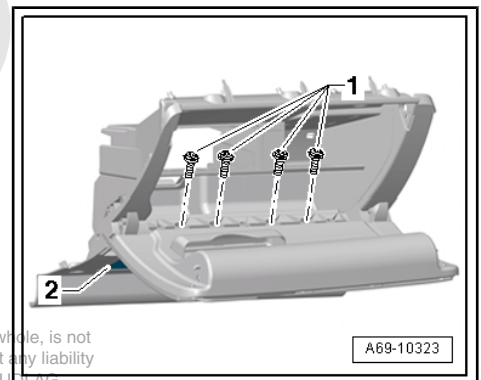
- Pull rubber mat -1- out of groove -arrow- in glove box -3-.

i Note

After the rubber mat -1- has been removed, you can access the bolts securing the knee airbag unit -2-.



- Unscrew bolts -1- securing knee airbag unit -2- from glove box.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Then unscrew nuts -2- securing knee airbag unit at bottom support -3-.
- Detach knee airbag unit from glove box. To do so, guide connector -1- for airbag unit through opening -4- in glove box.
- Set down airbag unit with impact cushion facing upwards.

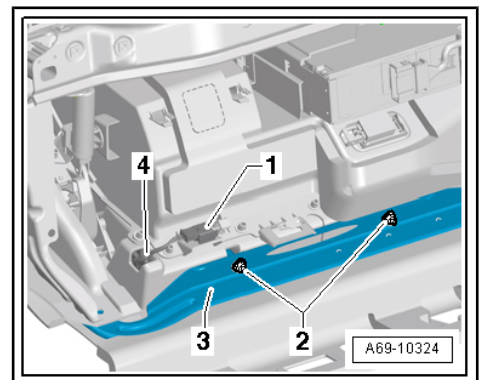
Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:



WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 42.*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*





- After installing knee airbag -2-, insert rubber mat -1- in glove box -3- in direction of -arrow-. Attach rubber mat by clipping it into groove -arrow-
- Install glove box => [page 108](#) .



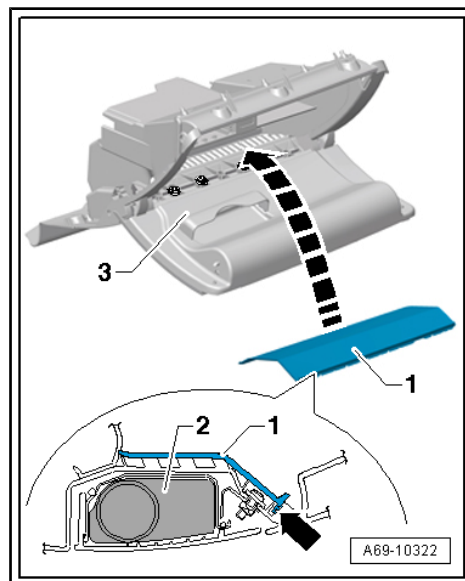
Note

- ◆ *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- ◆ *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*
- Switch on ignition.



WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.



- Connect battery earth wire with ignition switched on => Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .
- If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following the installation, the fault memory must be interrogated, erased and interrogated again => Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051 B- .

Tightening torques => [page 102](#)

9.8 Removing and installing supports (left and right) for knee airbag (front passenger side)

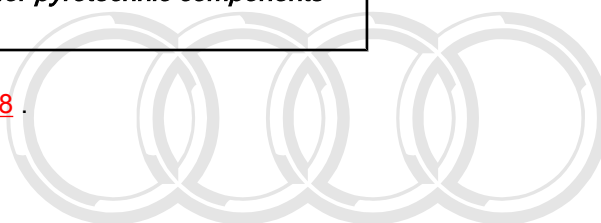
Removing



WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components => [page 42](#) .*

- Remove glove box => [page 108](#) .



Audi

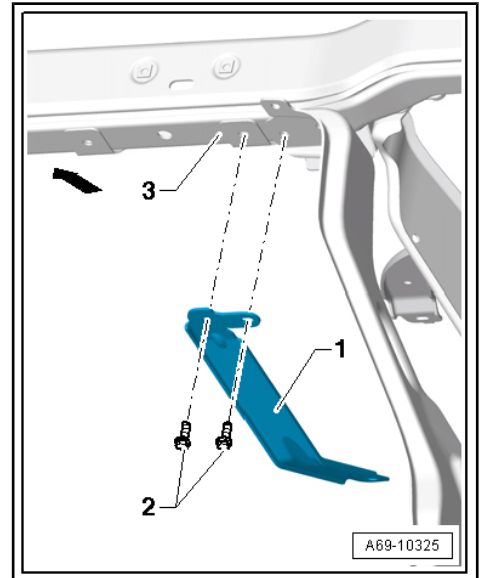
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Support, left-side (passenger side):

- Unscrew bolts -2- securing left-side support -1- to central tube -3-.
- Detach support (left-side).



Arrow points in direction of travel.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**Support, right-side (passenger side):**

- Unscrew bolts -1- securing support (right-side) -2- to central tube -3-.
- Detach support (right-side).

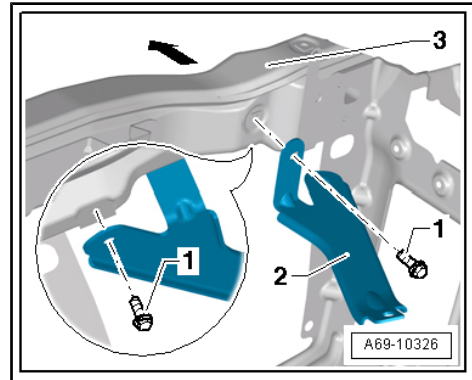
**Note**

Arrow points in direction of travel.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

- First hand-tighten bolts -1- securing support (right-side) -2- to central tube -3-. Then tighten screws to torque.

**WARNING**

- ◆ **Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components**
⇒ page 42 .
- ◆ **Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.**

- Install glove box ⇒ [page 108](#) .

**Note**

- ◆ **Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.**
- ◆ **Make sure that wiring is not trapped.**
- Switch on ignition.

**WARNING**

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on.
If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

- Connect battery earth wire with ignition switched on ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .
- If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following the installation, the fault memory must be interrogated, erased and interrogated again ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051 B- .

Tightening torques ⇒ [page 102](#)

10 Servicing crash sensors for airbags



WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for crash sensors (pressure sensors) for side airbag (front) ⇒ [page 45](#).*

10.1 Overview of fitting locations

Vehicles with one crash sensor for front airbag (country-specific version)

1 - Crash sensor for front airbag -G190-

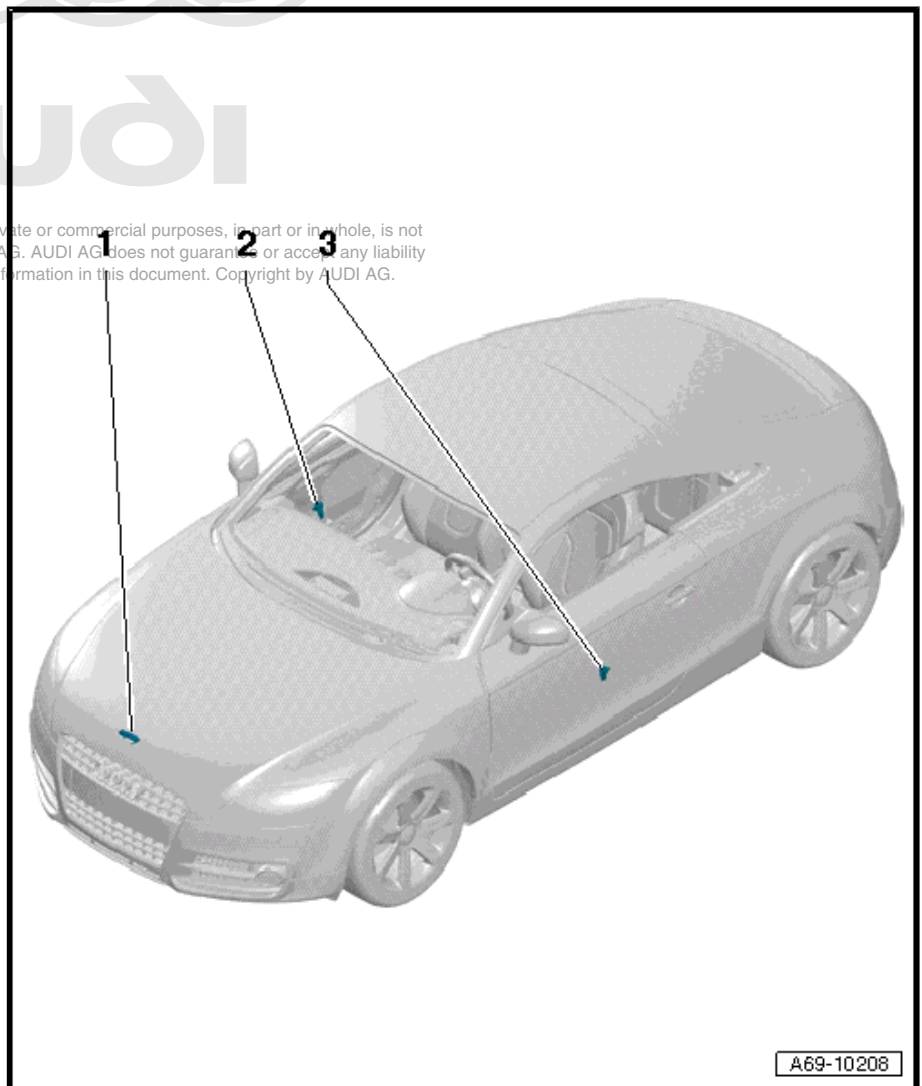
- 9 Nm
- Fitting location: At top of lock carrier
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 116](#)

2 - Side airbag crash sensor on front passenger side -G180-

- 5 Nm
- Fitting location: in front door
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 118](#)
- Precautions to take when handling crash sensors (pressure sensors) for side airbags (front) ⇒ [page 45](#)

3 - Side airbag crash sensor on driver side -G179-

- 5 Nm
- Fitting location: in front door
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 118](#)
- Precautions to take when handling crash sensors (pressure sensors) for side airbags (front) ⇒ [page 45](#)



Vehicles with two crash sensors for front airbag (country-specific version)

1 - Front airbag crash sensor for front passenger side - G284-

- 9 Nm
- Fitting location: At top of lock carrier
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 116](#)

2 - Front airbag crash sensor for driver side -G283-

- 9 Nm
- Fitting location: At top of lock carrier
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 116](#)

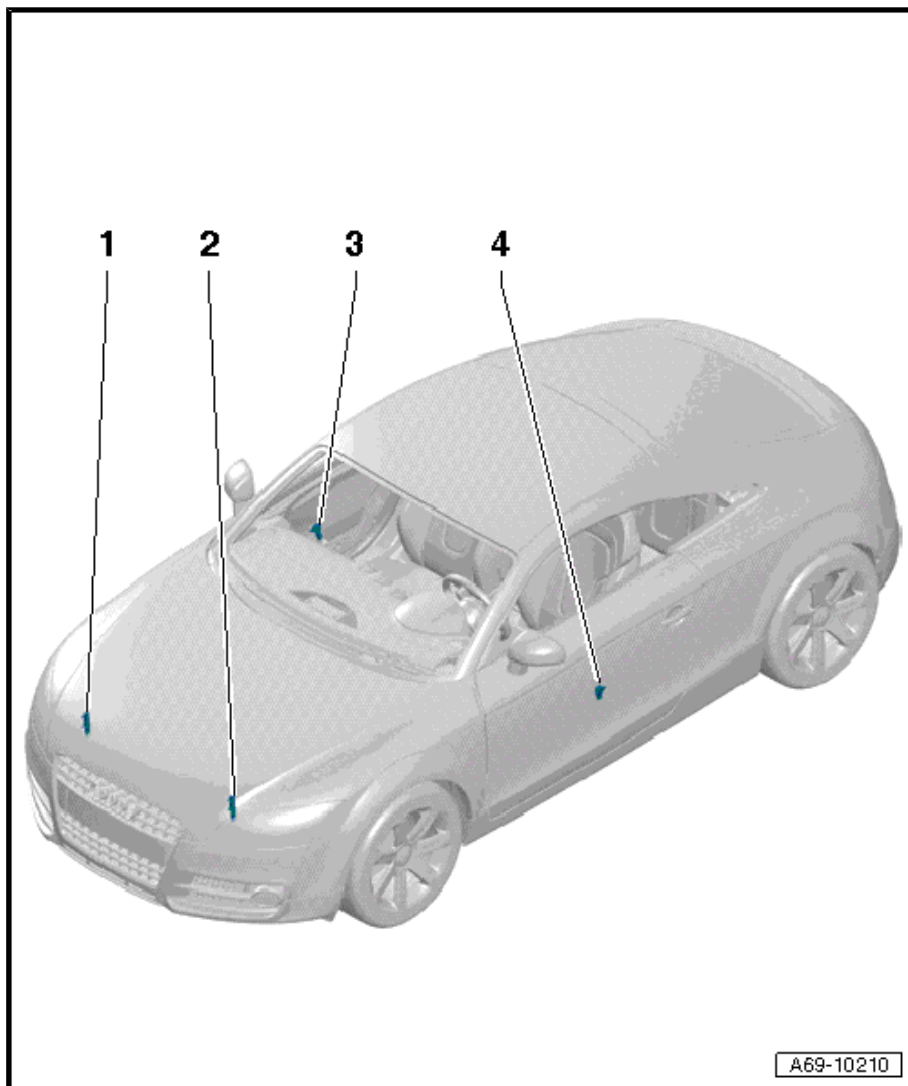
3 - Side airbag crash sensor on front passenger side -G180-

- 5 Nm
- Fitting location: in front door
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 118](#)
- Precautions to take when handling crash sensors (pressure sensors) for side airbags (front) ⇒ [page 45](#)

4 - Side airbag crash sensor on driver side -G179-

- 5 Nm
- Fitting location: in front door
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 118](#)

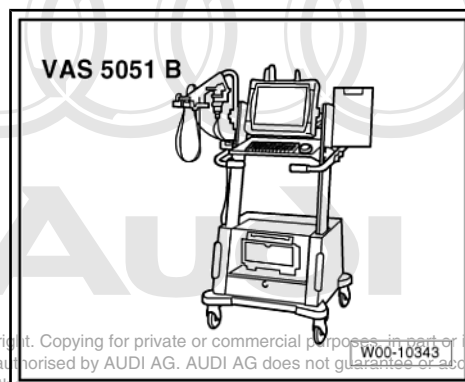
- Precautions to take when handling crash sensors (pressure sensors) for side airbags (front) ⇒ [page 45](#)



10.2 Removing and installing crash sensor for front airbag

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the accuracy of the information. © 2010 AUDI AG.

Removing



WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 42](#).*
- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for crash sensors (pressure sensors) for side airbag (front) ⇒ [page 45](#).*

- Open bonnet.
- With ignition switched off, disconnect earth wire at battery ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .

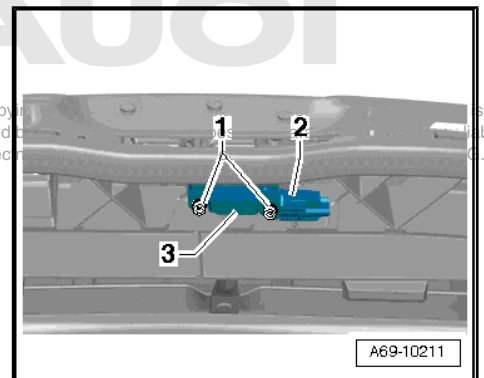


WARNING

- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Vehicles with one crash sensor for front airbag (country-specific version)

- Unplug connector -2- at crash sensor -3- for front airbag.
- Unscrew bolts -1- (2x).
- Detach crash sensor -3- for front airbag.



Vehicles with two crash sensors for front airbag (country-specific version)

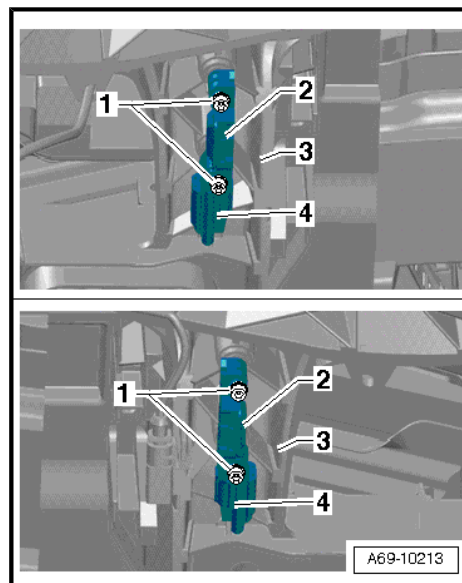
- Unplug electrical connector -4- at corresponding crash sensor -2- for front airbag.
- Remove bolts -1- (2x) at corresponding crash sensor -2- for front airbag.
- Detach corresponding crash sensor -2- for front airbag from lock carrier -3-.

Installing (all vehicles)

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

**WARNING**

- ◆ **Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components** ⇒ [page 42](#).
- ◆ **Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.**

**Note**

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

- Switch on ignition.

**WARNING**

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

... for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted without the written consent of AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability for the accuracy or completeness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Connect battery earth wire with ignition switched on ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27.

**Note**

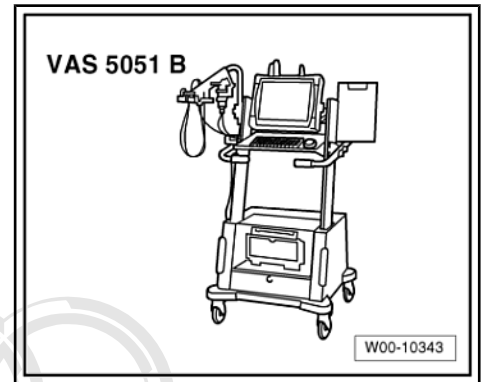
If airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the fault memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system VAS 5051.

Tightening torque ⇒ [page 115](#)

10.3 Removing and installing crash sensor for side airbag

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B-



Removing



WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 42](#) .*
- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for crash sensors (pressure sensors) for side airbag (front) ⇒ [page 45](#) .*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability for errors in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

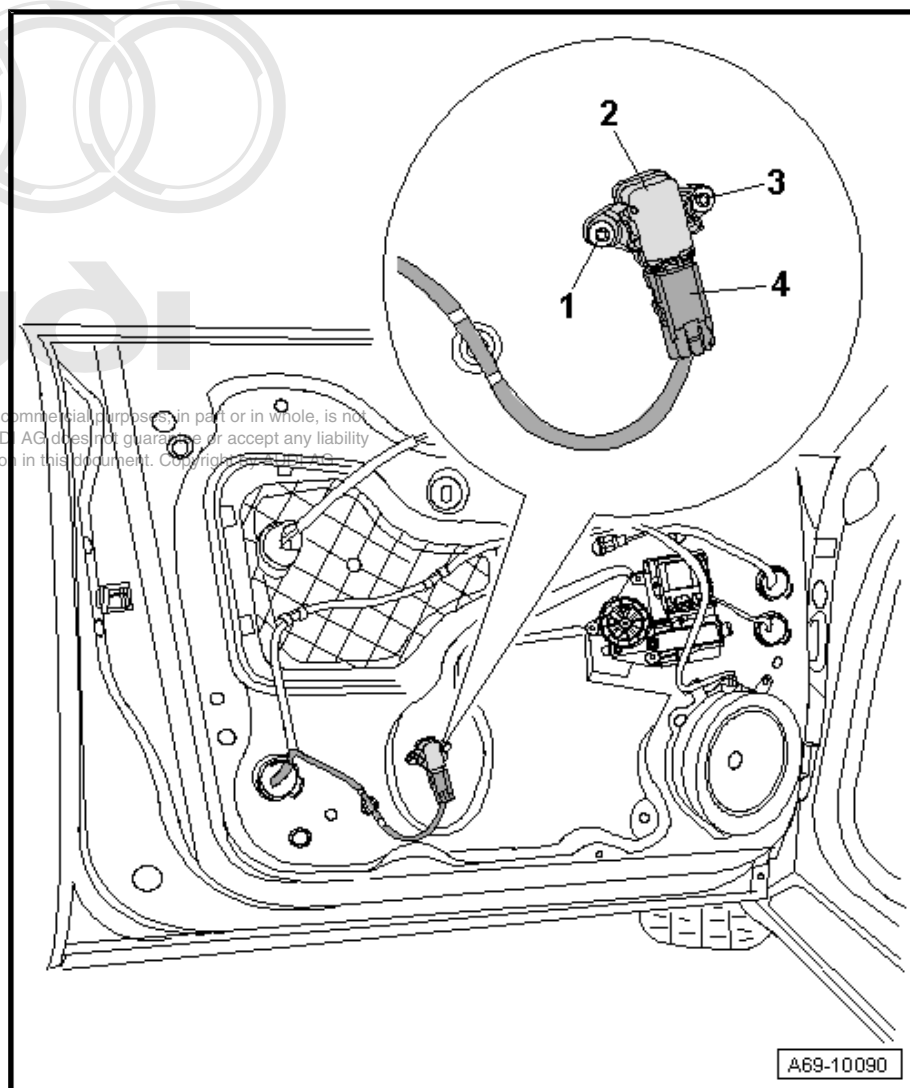
- With ignition switched off, **disconnect earth wire at battery** .
Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .
- Remove door trim ⇒ [page 137](#) .



WARNING

- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

- Unplug connector -4- at side airbag crash sensor .




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright © 2010 Audi AG

- Unscrew bolts -1- and -3- at side airbag crash sensor .
- Detach corresponding crash sensor -2- for side airbag.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

	WARNING
<ul style="list-style-type: none">◆ <i>Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components => page 42 .</i>◆ <i>Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.</i>	

 Note

- ◆ *Make sure that the door is properly sealed when it is installed; otherwise the crash sensor (pressure sensor) may not function correctly.*
 - ◆ *Make sure that all components (e.g. cover panel, loudspeaker, door trim) are fitted correctly.*
 - ◆ *The door trim clips provide a seal for the system. Renew door trim clips if necessary.*
 - ◆ *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- Switch on ignition.



WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

- Connect battery earth wire with ignition switched on ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .

 Note

If airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the fault memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system VAS 5051.

Tightening torque ⇒ [page 115](#)


Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



11 Belt-fastened recognition

11.1 Removing and installing seat occupied sensor (front passenger side) -G128-

Note

The seat occupied sensor (front passenger side) -G128- is only fitted in the front passenger's seat.

This document is intended for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing



WARNING

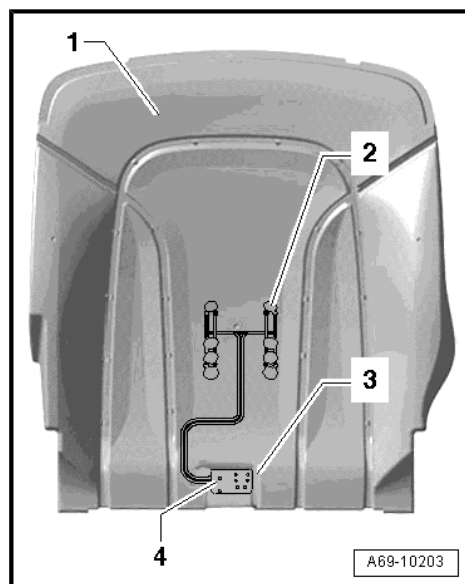
- ◆ **Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components**
⇒ [page 42](#).

- Remove front passenger's seat:
 - ◆ Front seat with manual adjustment ⇒ [page 243](#)
 - ◆ Front seat with electric adjustment ⇒ [page 274](#)
- Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- ⇒ [page 240](#).
- Separate cover from padding (seat pan).
 - ◆ Front seat with manual adjustment ⇒ [page 404](#)
 - ◆ Front seat with electric adjustment ⇒ [page 404](#)

Note

Detach padding from backrest just far enough to gain access to the seat occupied sensor (front passenger side) -G128- -2-.

- Unplug connector of seat occupied sensor (front passenger side) -G128- -2-.
- Carefully disconnect seat occupied sensor (front passenger side) -G128- -2- from seat padding -1-.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

- Position printed circuit -4- of seat occupied sensor (front passenger side) -G128- -2- in cut-out -3- in seat padding -1-.
- Align seat occupied sensor (front passenger side) -G128- -2- on seat padding -1- as shown in illustration.



Caution

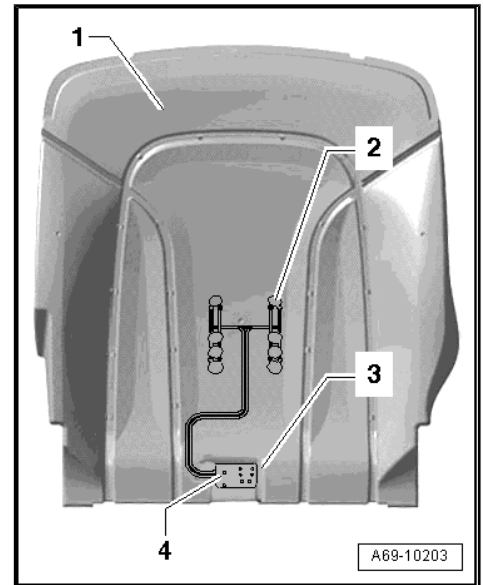
Fit the new seat occupied sensor (front passenger side) -G128- in the same position as the old seat occupied sensor in the seat padding.

- Peel off protective film and stick seat occupied sensor (front passenger side) -G128- -2- onto seat padding -1-.
- Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Note

Make sure that seat occupied sensor (front passenger side) -G128- is not covered by coils of seat heater element.



12 Seat position sensor - country-specific version

12.1 Exploded view of seat position sensor

**Note**

The seat position sensor is the same on all seat versions.

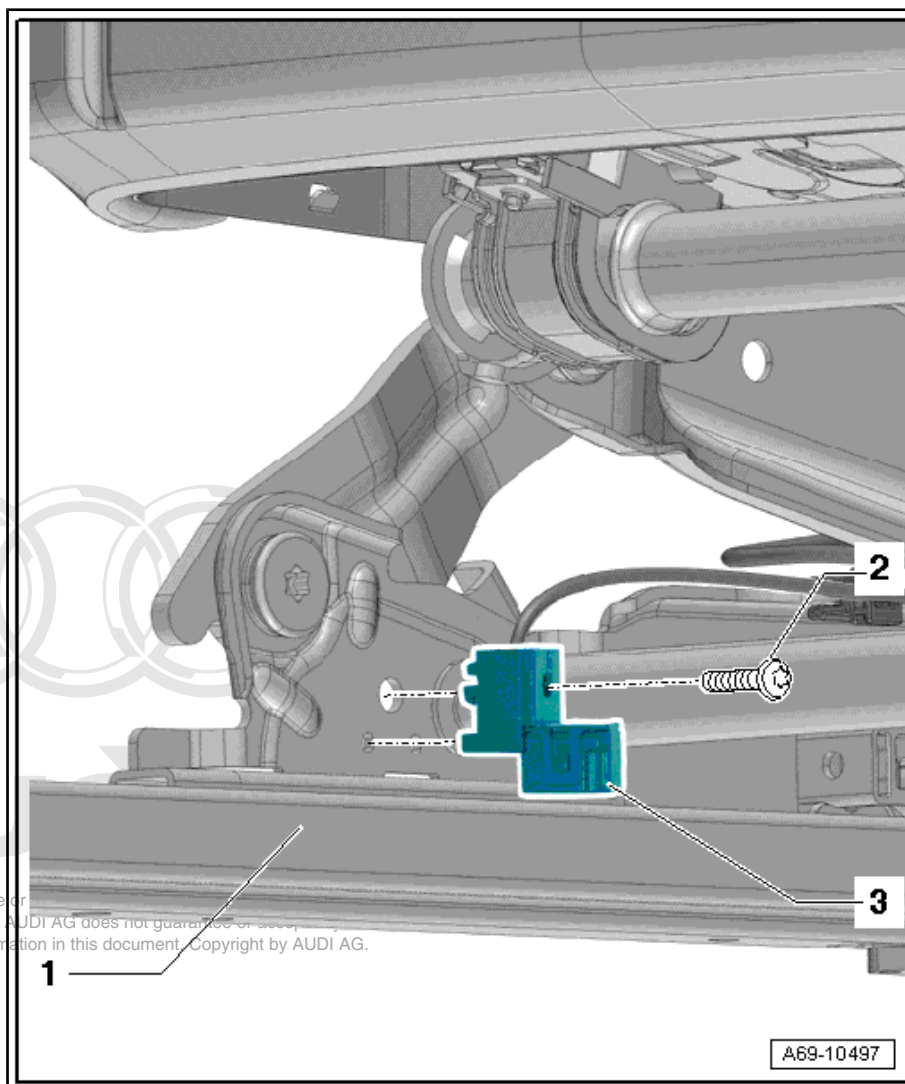
1 - Lower seat pan frame

2 - Bolt

- 1.3 Nm

3 - Driver side seat position sensor -G553-

- Depending on equipment version



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept responsibility with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

12.2 Removing and installing seat position sensor

Removing



WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components*
⇒ [page 42](#).
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

- Remove driver's seat:
- ◆ Front seat with manual adjustment ⇒ [page 243](#)
- ◆ Front seat with electric adjustment ⇒ [page 274](#)
- Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136-
⇒ [page 240](#).



Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



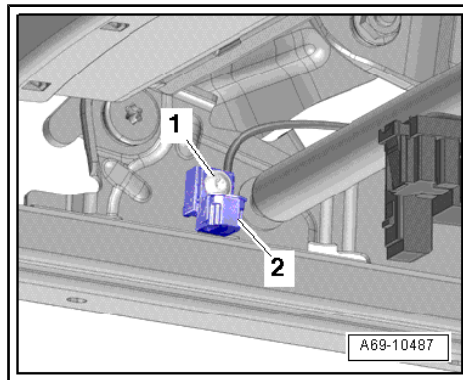
- Remove bolt -1-.
- Unclip seat position sensor -2- from lower seat pan frame.
- Disconnect and move clear electrical wiring for seat position sensor.
- Detach seat position sensor with wires from lower seat pan frame.

Installing



WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 42](#) .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*



Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:



Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.



WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

- With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .
- If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following the installation, the fault memory must be interrogated, erased and interrogated again ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B- .

Tightening torque ⇒ [page 124](#)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

13 Servicing seat occupied recognition system for front passenger's airbag - country-specific version



WARNING

- ◆ *Observe the additional safety regulations for working on the seat occupied recognition system controlling the deactivation of the front passenger airbag (country-specific version) ⇒ [page 46](#) .*
- ◆ *Observe the procedure for dealing with the seat occupied sensor for the deactivation of the front passenger airbag (country-specific version) following a crash ⇒ [page 46](#) .*
- ◆ *The replacement part (service kit) for the seat occupied recognition system (country-specific version) is already pre-calibrated; its components must NOT be disconnected ⇒ [page 129](#) .*



Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

13.1 Exploded view of seat occupied sensor for front passenger airbag - country-specific version



WARNING

The replacement part (service kit) for seat occupied recognition (country-specific version) is already pre-calibrated and the components must NOT be disconnected. The service kit consists of:

- ◆ Seat occupied recognition control unit -J706-
- ◆ Pressure sensor for seat occupied recognition -G452-
- ◆ Seat occupied sensor mat
- ◆ Seat padding
- ◆ Wiring harness between seat occupied recognition control unit -J706- and pressure sensor for seat occupied recognition -G452- .

1 - Seat occupied recognition control unit -J706-

- Do NOT disconnect and renew separately
- Can only be renewed using complete service kit ⇒ [page 129](#)

2 - Bolt

- 2.5 Nm
- 2x

3 - Connector at seat occupied recognition control unit -J706-

- Do NOT unplug under any circumstances.

4 - Pressure sensor for seat occupied recognition -G452-

- Do NOT disconnect and renew separately
- Can only be renewed using complete service kit ⇒ [page 129](#)

5 - Pressure hose

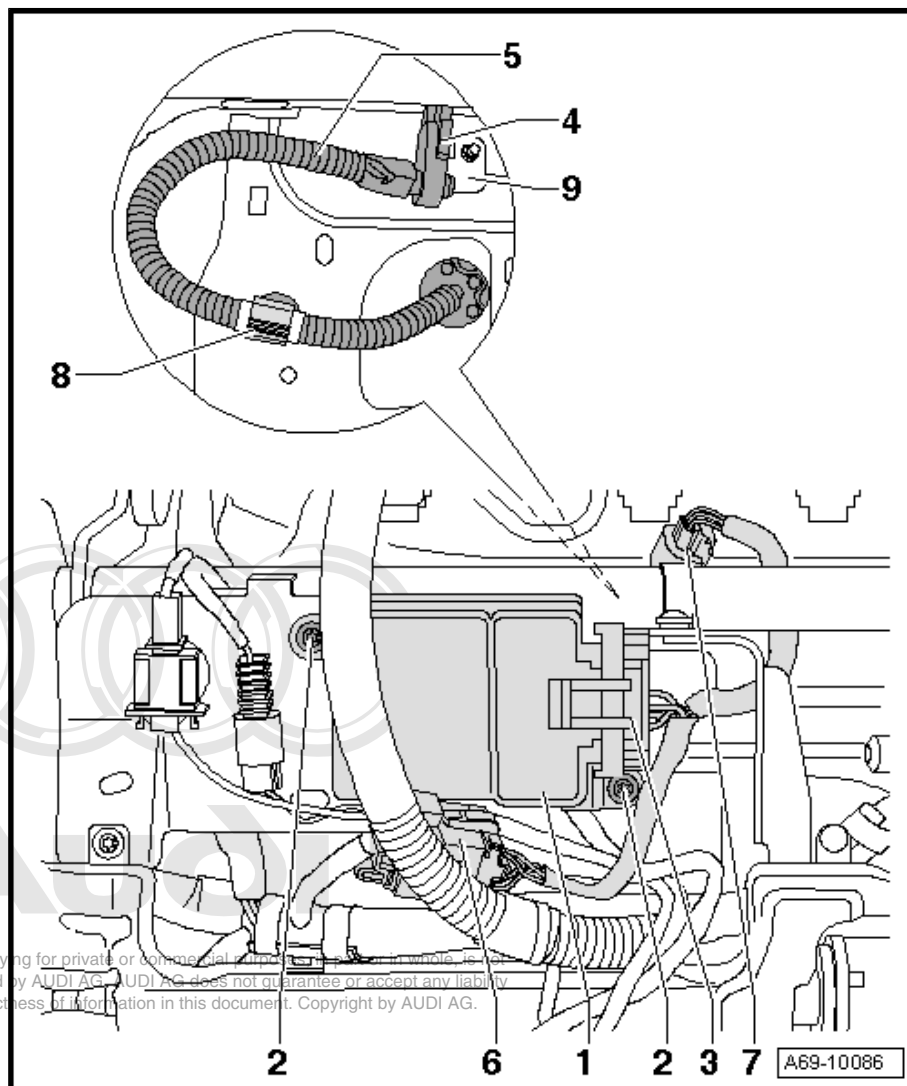
6 - Connector between service kit and seat wiring harness

7 - Connector at pressure sensor for seat occupied recognition -G452-

- Do NOT unplug under any circumstances.

8 - Guide clip

9 - Retaining bracket



13.2 Removing and installing seat occupied recognition system - country-specific version



WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components*
 ⇒ [page 42](#) .



WARNING

The replacement part (service kit) for seat occupied recognition (country-specific version) is already pre-calibrated and the components must NOT be disconnected. The service kit consists of:

- ◆ *Seat occupied recognition control unit -J706-*
- ◆ *Pressure sensor for seat occupied recognition -G452-*
- ◆ *Seat occupied sensor mat*
- ◆ *Seat padding*
- ◆ *Wiring harness between seat occupied recognition control unit -J706- and pressure sensor for seat occupied recognition -G452- .*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Note

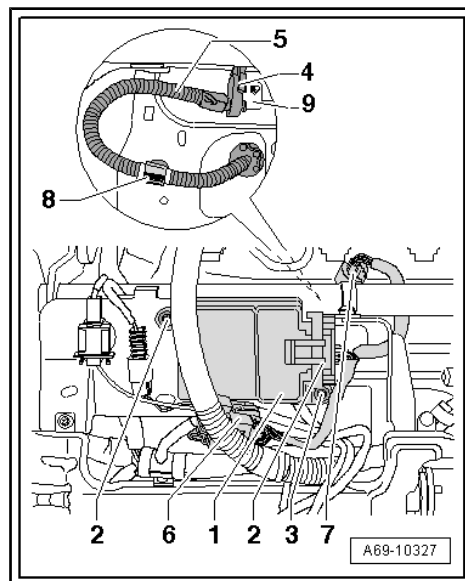
The seat occupied recognition system is only fitted on the front passenger's seat.

Removing

- Disconnect the battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .
- Remove front passenger's seat:
 - ◆ Removing and installing front seat (with manual adjustment) ⇒ [page 243](#)
 - ◆ Removing and installing front seat (with electric adjustment) ⇒ [page 274](#)
- Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- ⇒ [page 240](#) .
- Remove backrest:
 - ◆ Removing and installing front seat backrest (with manual adjustment) ⇒ [page 262](#)
 - ◆ Removing and installing front seat backrest (with electric adjustment) ⇒ [page 298](#)

Removing service kit

- Unplug connector -6-.
- Remove bolts -2- (2x).
- Detach cover with padding from seat pan ⇒ [page 401](#) .



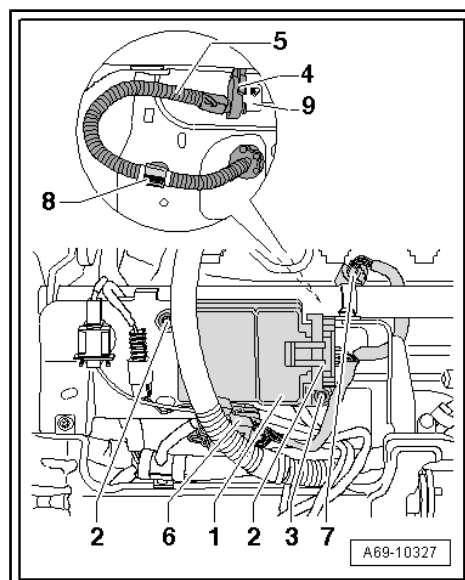
- Unfasten guide clip -8-.



Caution

Do NOT unplug connectors -3- and -7-.

- Push pressure sensor for seat occupied recognition -G452-
-4- to side off retaining bracket -9-.



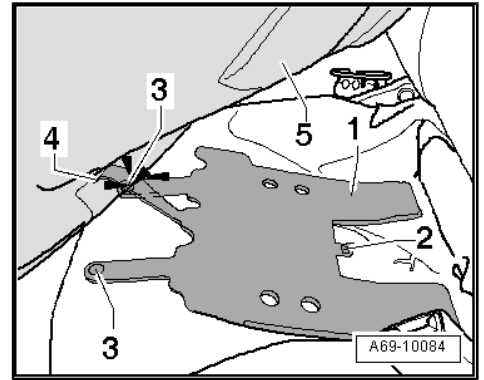
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Fold up padding -5-.

 **Note**

- ◆ *The padding is part of the service kit.*
- ◆ *Clip -4- must not be disengaged.*
- ◆ *The solid foam insert in the fleece is not part of the scope of delivery of the service kit.*

- Remove clips -2- and -3- (2x).
- Carefully pull up seat occupied sensor mat -1- with padding -5-. In doing so, guide pressure sensor for seat occupied recognition -G452- and seat occupied recognition control unit -J706- through seat pan without unplugging connectors.



WARNING

It is important that you do not bend or kink the pressure hose or the seat occupied sensor mat -1- while you are working.

- Detach complete service kit.

Installing



WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components => page 42.*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Installing service kit

 **Note**

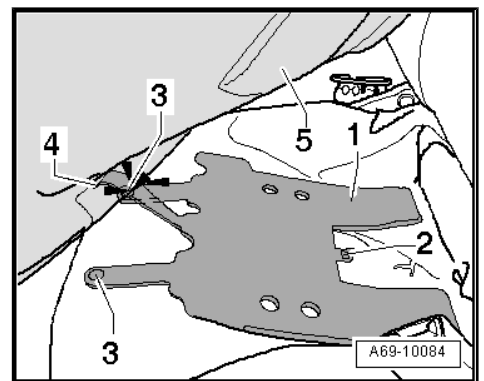
The solid foam insert in the fleece is not part of the scope of delivery of the service kit. The solid foam insert in the seat fleece should therefore be re-used.

- Working from above, guide pressure sensor for seat occupied recognition -G452- and seat occupied recognition control unit -J706- through seat pan without unplugging connectors.



WARNING

It is important that you do not bend or kink the pressure hose or the seat occupied sensor mat -1- while you are working.



- Smooth down fleece between seat pan and seat-occupied sensor mat -1- (no creases).
- Secure seat occupied sensor mat -1- using clips -2- and -3- (2x).

- Attach pressure sensor for seat occupied recognition -G452-4-.
- Secure seat occupied recognition control unit -J706- using bolts -2- (2x).
- Plug in connector -6-.
- Fit cover with padding onto seat pan ⇒ [page 401](#) .

Remaining installation is performed in reverse order of removal.

**Note**

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

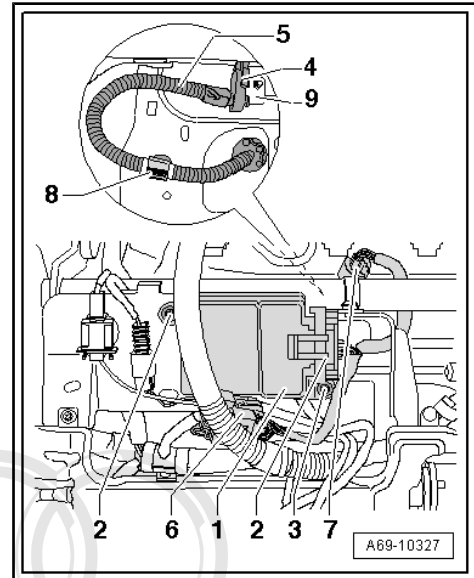
- Switch on ignition.

**WARNING**

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

- Connect battery earth wire with ignition switched on ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .
- If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following the installation, the fault memory must be interrogated, erased and interrogated again ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B- .
- When installing a new service kit, run the following Guided Fault Finding program under the menu option „Airbag“ after fitting the front passenger's seat:
- ◆ Basic setting for seat occupied recognition control unit -J706-

Tightening torques ⇒ [page 128](#)



70 – Trim, insulation

1 Door trim

1.1 Exploded view of door trim

1 - Window regulator switch

- Driver side: operating unit for window regulator in driver door -E512-
- Passenger side: window regulator switch in front passenger door - E107-
- Removing and installing
⇒ Rep. gr. 96

2 - Switch mounting

- For window regulator switch
- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 142](#)

3 - Door puller

- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 140](#)

4 - Rear lid remote release button -E233- and fuel tank flap release button -E319-

- Removing and installing
⇒ Rep. gr. 96

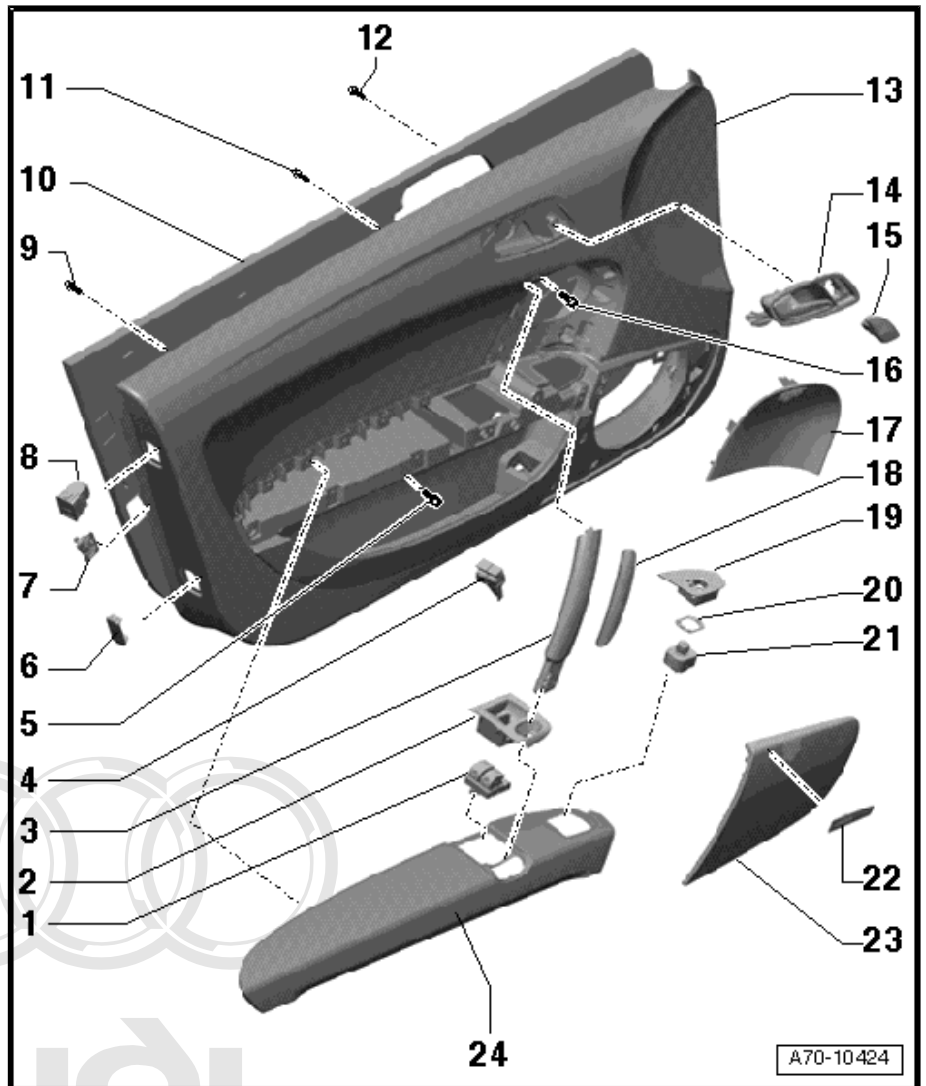
5 - Bolt

- For door trim
- Tightening torque:
2.8 Nm


6 - Passive reflectors

7 - Retaining clip with seal

- For door trim



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

 **WARNING**

Make sure that the door is properly sealed when it is installed; otherwise the crash sensor (pressure sensor) may not function correctly.

The retaining clips for the door trim provide a seal for the system. If necessary, renew retaining clips for door trim.

Observe safety regulations for crash sensors (pressure sensors) for side airbag (front) ⇒ [page 45](#).

8 - Interior monitoring switch -E183- / alarm system off switch -E217-

- Removing and installing ⇒ Rep. gr. 96

9 - Bolt

- For armrest
- Tightening torque: 1.3 Nm

10 - Insulating mat**11 - Bolt**

- For door puller
- Tightening torque: 3.3 Nm

12 - Bolt

- For interior door handle
- Tightening torque: 1.3 Nm

13 - Door trim

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 137](#)

14 - Interior door handle

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 140](#)

15 - Driver side interior locking switch -E150- (central locking switch)

- Removing and installing ⇒ Rep. gr. 96

16 - Bolt

- For door trim
- Tightening torque: 2.8 Nm

17 - Trim for mid-range loudspeaker

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 135](#)

18 - Trim for door puller

- Depending on equipment
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 136](#)

19 - Switch mounting

- For mirror adjustment switch
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 141](#)

20 - Trim for switch panel

21 - Mirror adjustment switch -E43-

- Removing and installing ⇒ Rep. gr. 96

22 - Trim panel

- Only if fitted with BOSE sound system
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 136](#)

23 - Bass loudspeaker trim

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 135](#)

24 - Armrest

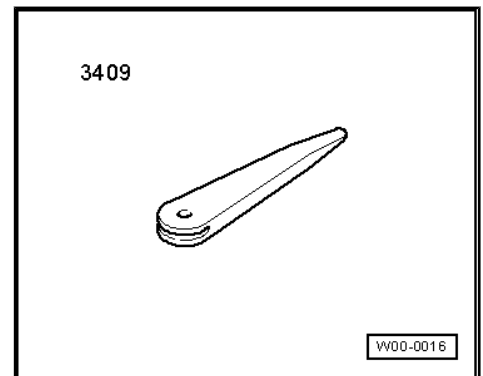
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 141](#)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted without the prior written consent of AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.2 Removing and installing mid-range loudspeaker trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal wedge -3409-



Removing



Note

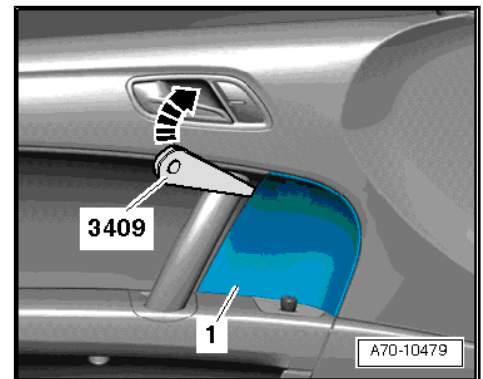
Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.

- Starting in top back corner, prise loudspeaker trim -1- off door trim -arrow- using removal wedge -3409- .

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

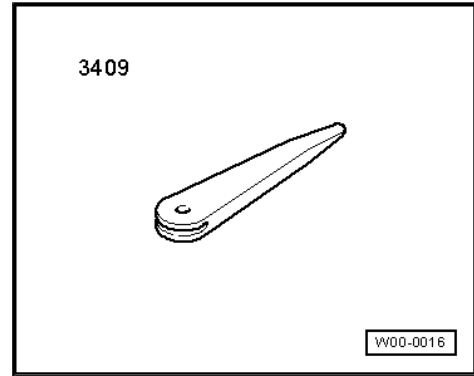
- Make sure trim panel engages audibly.



1.3 Removing and installing bass loudspeaker trim

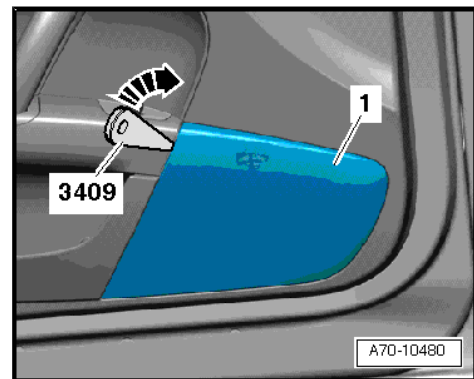
Special tools and workshop equipment required

◆ Removal wedge -3409-

**Removing****Note**

Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.

- Starting at top of joint with armrest, prise loudspeaker trim -1- off door trim at top and side using removal wedge -3409- -arrow-.
- Lift the loudspeaker trim out of the door trim.

**Installing**

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

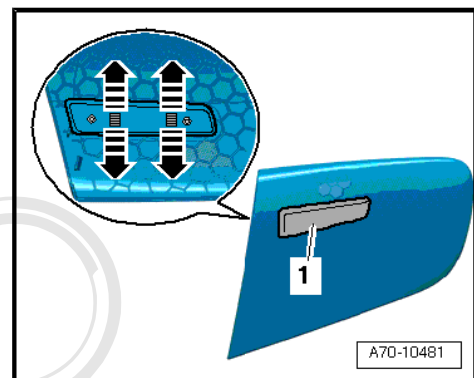
- Start by inserting the trim panel at the bottom in the door trim.
- Make sure trim panel engages audibly.

1.4 Removing and installing trim panel for BOSE sound system

Removing**Note**

Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.

- Remove bass loudspeaker trim ⇒ [page 135](#).
- Use a narrow screwdriver to carefully prise off the clips -arrows- and detach the trim panel -1- for the BOSE sound system from the loudspeaker trim.

**Installing**

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

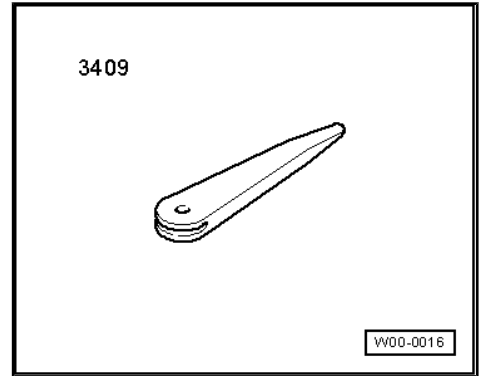
- Make sure trim panel engages audibly.

1.5 Removing and installing trim for door puller

Special tools and workshop equipment required

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted without the prior written consent of AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

◆ Removal wedge -3409-



Removing Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

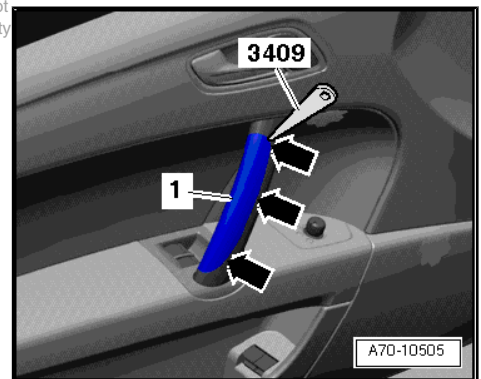
i Note

Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.

- Use removal wedge -3409- to carefully prise off door puller trim -1- -arrows-.

Installing

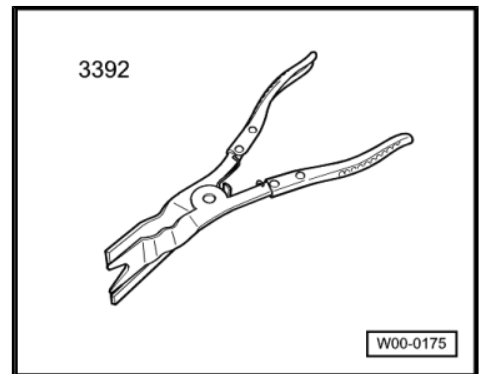
- Make sure door puller trim engages properly.



1.6 Removing and installing door trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal pliers -3392-

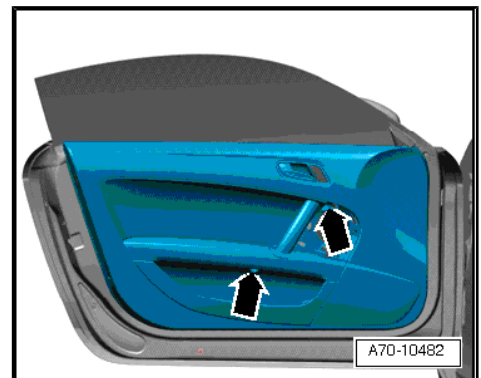


Removing

i Note

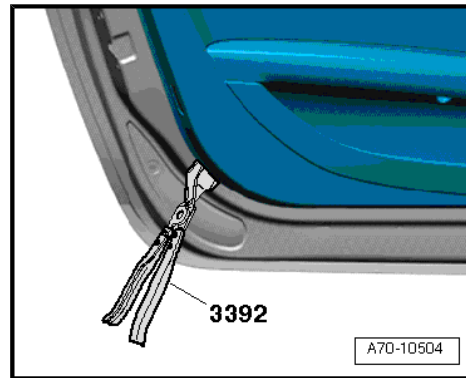
Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.

- Switch off ignition and remove ignition key.
- Remove mid-range loudspeaker trim => [page 135](#) .
- Remove bolts -arrows-.

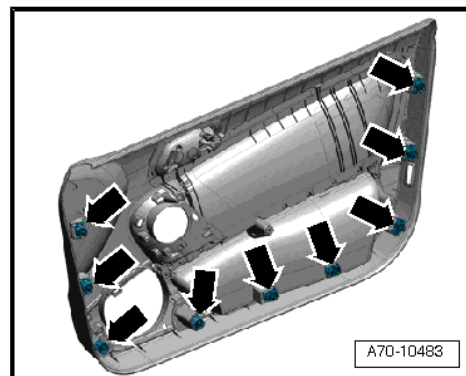




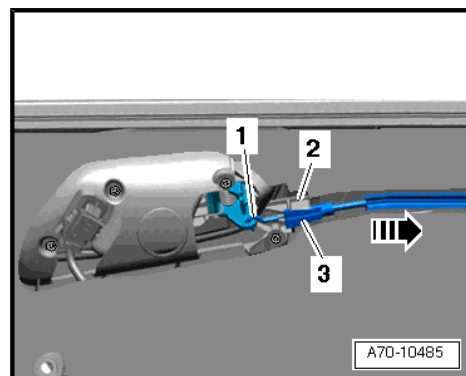
- Starting in bottom rear corner, use removal pliers -3392- to unclip door trim from door. To do so, insert removal pliers between door trim and door in area of retaining clips.



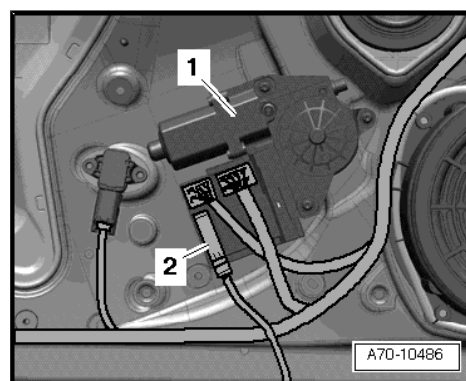
- Position of retaining clips -arrows-
- Disengage the door trim from the door at the top in the window slot area. To do so, pull the door trim upwards.



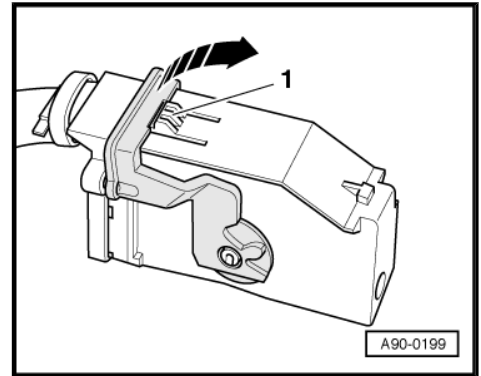
- Disengage clip -3- at cable support bracket -2-
- Pull Bowden cable for interior door handle out of cable support bracket in direction of -arrow-
- Disengage end of cable -1- at interior door handle.



- Unplug electrical connector -2- at door control unit -1-



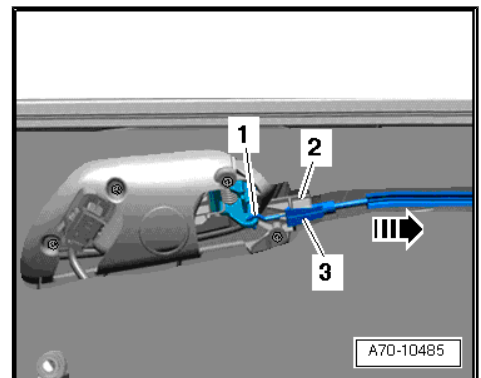
- To unplug electrical connector, press catch -1-, turn retaining bracket in direction of -arrow- and unplug connector.
- Detach door trim.




Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

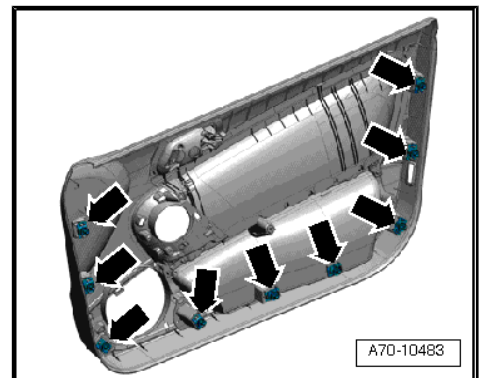
- Engage end of cable -1- in lever of interior door handle.
- The open side of the eyelet at the end of the cable must face downwards.
- Pull Bowden cable for interior door handle in direction of -arrow- and guide it into cable support bracket -2-.
- Clip -3- must engage audibly in cable support bracket.



 **WARNING**

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted without the prior written consent of the copyright holder.

- ◆ **Make sure that the door is properly sealed when it is installed; otherwise the crash sensor (pressure sensor) may not function correctly.**
- ◆ **The retaining clips for the door trim -arrows- provide a seal for the system. If necessary, renew retaining clips for door trim.**
- ◆ **Observe safety regulations for crash sensors (pressure sensors) for side airbag (front) ⇒ [page 45](#).**



Tightening torque ⇒ [page 133](#)

1.7 Removing and installing inner cover panel

Removing

 **Note**

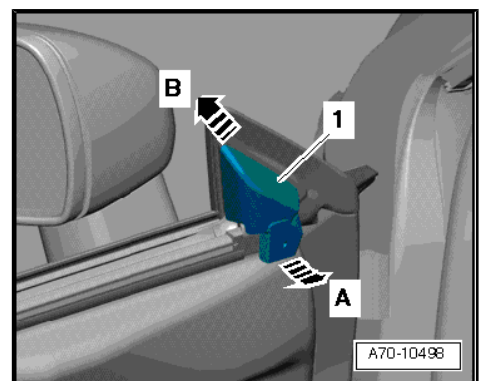
Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.

- Remove door trim ⇒ [page 137](#) .
- Unclip inner cover panel -1- from door -arrow A-.
- Slide inner cover panel upwards -arrow B- and detach it.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- Make sure inner cover panel engages audibly.



1.8 Removing and installing interior door handle

Removing



Note

Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.

- Remove door trim ⇒ [page 137](#) .

Door trim (driver side):

- Remove driver side interior locking switch -E150- (central locking switch) ⇒ Rep. gr. 96 .

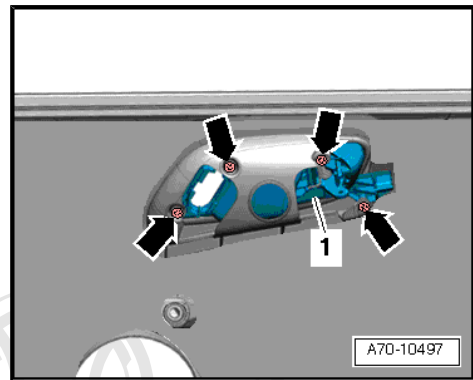
Both sides (continued):

- Remove bolts -arrows-.
- Take interior door handle -1- out of door trim.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening torque ⇒ [page 133](#)



1.9 Removing and installing door puller

Removing



Note

Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.

- Remove door trim ⇒ [page 137](#) .

- Detach insulating mat from door trim.

- Remove armrest bolts -arrows-.

- Unscrew bolts -1- and -2- for door puller.

- In area of door puller, pull armrest -2- slightly off door trim -arrow A-.

- Disengage door puller -1- from guide (bottom) and from door trim (top) -arrow B-.

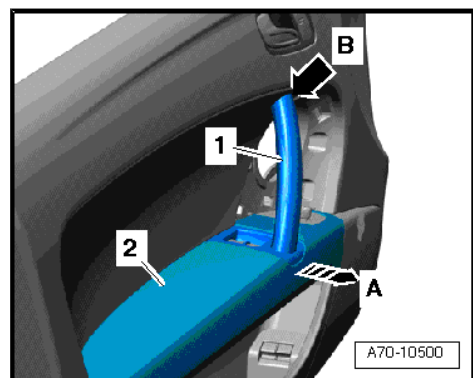
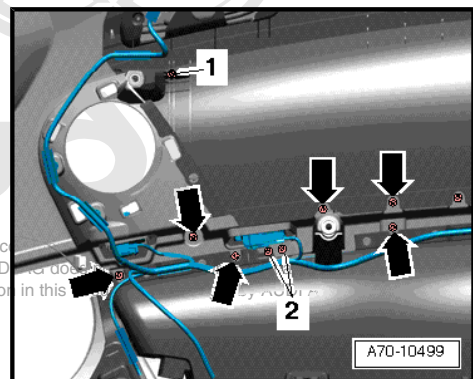
- Lift door puller out of armrest guide.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- Make sure door puller engages in guides at top and bottom.

Tightening torque ⇒ [page 133](#)



1.10 Removing and installing armrest

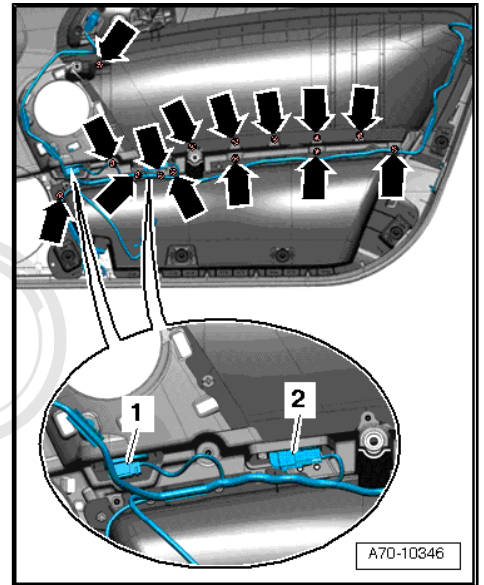
Removing



Note

Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.

- Remove door trim ⇒ [page 137](#) .
- Detach insulating mat from door trim.
- Unplug electrical connector at mirror adjustment switch -1- and at window regulator switch -2-.
- Remove bolts -arrows-.

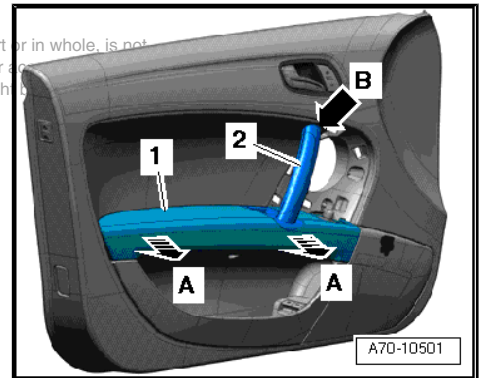


- Disengage door puller -2- (top) from door trim -arrow B- and detach together with armrest -1- -arrows A-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening torque ⇒ [page 133](#)



1.11 Removing and installing mounting for mirror adjustment switch

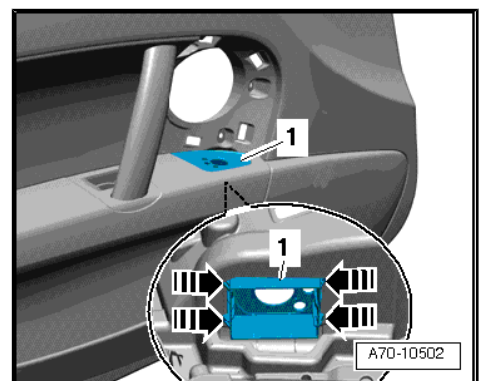
Removing

- Remove door trim ⇒ [page 137](#) .
- Remove mirror adjustment switch ⇒ Rep. gr. 96 .
- Use small screwdriver to carefully release retaining hooks -arrows-.
- Press switch mounting -1- upwards out of armrest.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- Press switch mounting into armrest until retaining hooks engage audibly.



1.12 Removing and installing mounting for window regulator switch

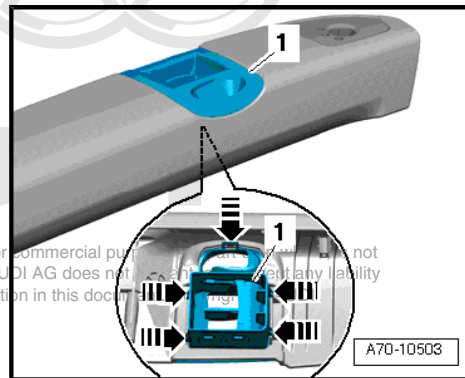
Removing



Note

Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.

- Remove armrest ⇒ [page 141](#) .
- Remove window regulator switch ⇒ [Rep. gr. 96](#) .
- Use small screwdriver to carefully release retaining hooks -arrows-.
- Press switch mounting -1- upwards out of armrest.



Note

The illustration shows the switch mounting on the driver side.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- Press switch mounting into armrest until retaining hooks engage audibly.

2 Dash panel

2.1 Overview of dash panel

1 - Centre console

- Exploded view
⇒ [page 14](#)
- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 22](#)

2 - Dash panel trim (driver side)

- Exploded view
⇒ [page 4](#)
- Removing and installing dash panel trim (driver side) ⇒ [page 5](#)

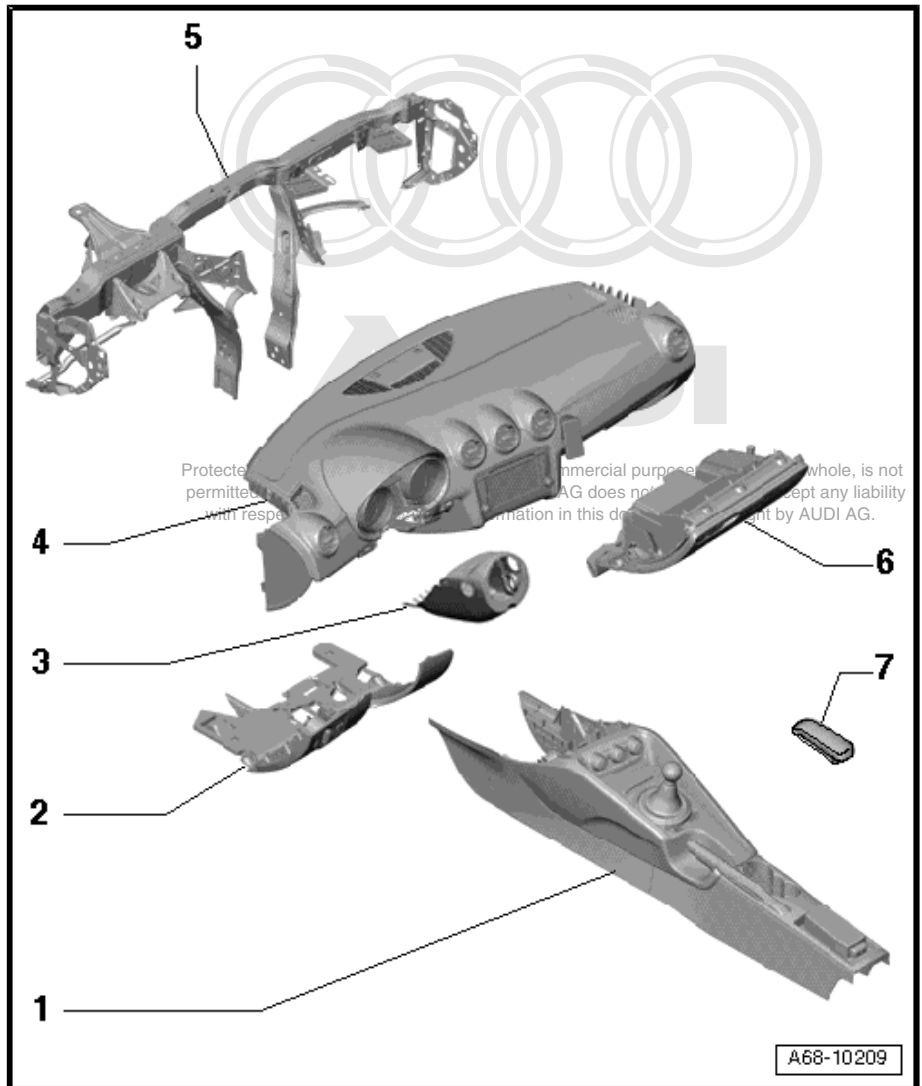
3 - Trim for steering column switch

- Exploded view
⇒ [page 6](#)
- Removing and installing upper trim for steering column switch
⇒ [page 7](#)
- Removing and installing trim (bottom) for steering column switch
⇒ [page 8](#)

4 - Dash panel

⚠ WARNING
Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 42](#).

- Exploded view
⇒ [page 144](#)
- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 149](#)



5 - Central tube

- Exploded view ⇒ [page 153](#)
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 156](#)

6 - Glove box

- Exploded view ⇒ [page 9](#)
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 12](#)

7 - Padding for centre armrest

- Exploded view ⇒ [page 27](#)
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 27](#)
- Removing and installing holder for padding ⇒ [page 28](#)

2.2 Exploded view of dash panel

1 - Side dash panel vent

- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 146](#)

2 - Bolt

- 3.5 Nm

3 - Dash panel

WARNING

Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 42](#).

For correct combination of dash panel and airbag unit refer to ⇒ *Electronic parts catalogue*.

- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 149](#)

4 - Cover for instrument cluster

- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 148](#)

5 - Bolt

- 1 Nm

6 - Defroster vent (centre)

- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 152](#)

7 - Loudspeaker

- Removing and installing
⇒ Rep. gr. 91

8 - Sunlight penetration photo-sensor -G107- /cap

- Removing and installing ⇒ Rep. gr. 87

9 - Centre loudspeaker trim

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 147](#)

10 - Central locking deadlock function warning lamp -SAFE- -K133-

11 - Nut

- 0.5 Nm



Note

12 - Side loudspeaker trim

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 147](#)

13 - Loudspeaker

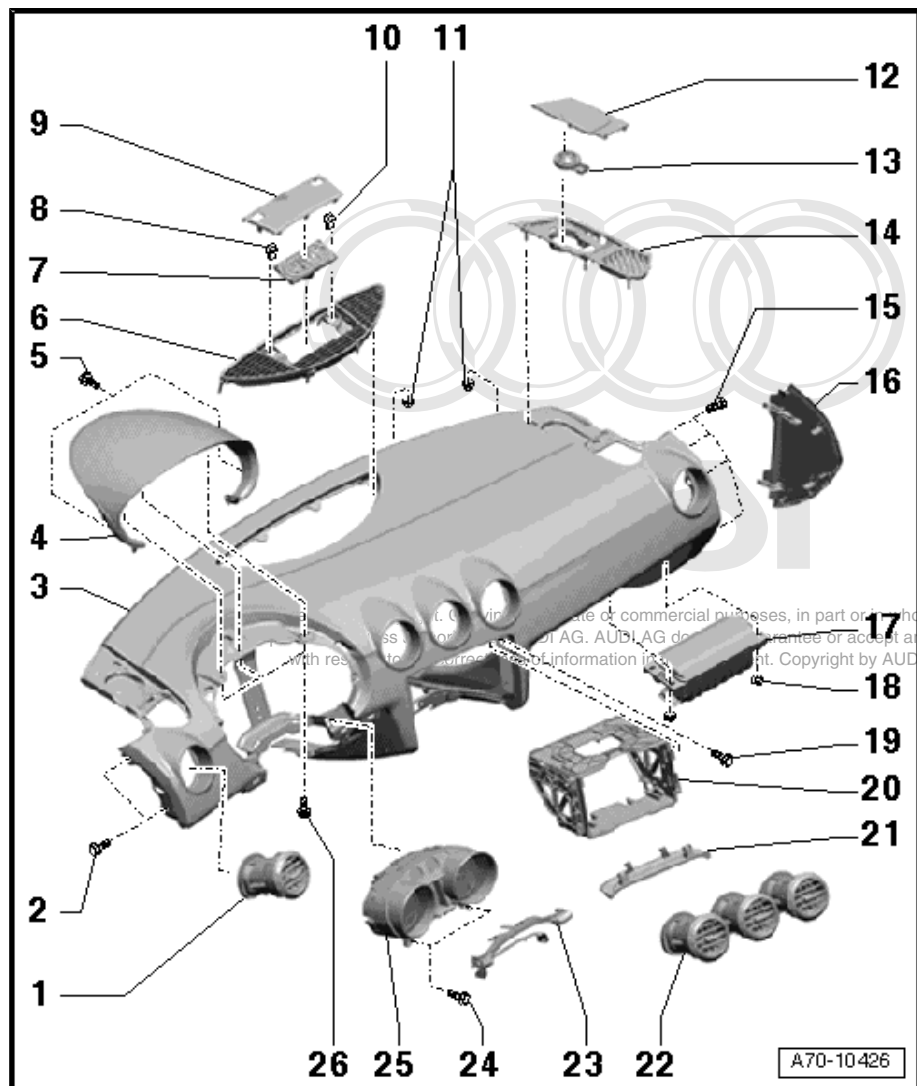
- Removing and installing ⇒ Rep. gr. 91

14 - Side defroster vent

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 152](#)

15 - Bolt

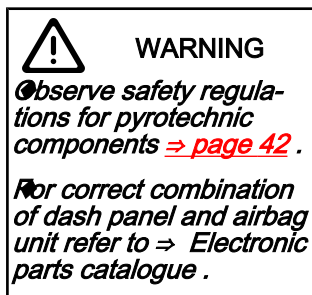
- 3.5 Nm



16 - Dash panel end trim

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 146](#)

17 - Airbag unit (front passenger side)



- Exploded view ⇒ [page 94](#)
- Can be disabled and activated via key-operated switch
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 95](#)

18 - Nut

- Renew
- 7 Nm

19 - Bolt

- 2.5 Nm

20 - Mounting frame

- For radio/navigation system
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 149](#)

21 - Trim cover

- For centre console
 - Removing and installing ⇒ [page 147](#)
- This document is not permitted for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness, timeliness and content of this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

22 - Dash panel vent (centre)

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 146](#)

23 - Trim cover

- For instrument cluster
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 6](#)

24 - Bolt

- 2.5 Nm

25 - Instrument cluster

- Removing and installing ⇒ Rep. gr. 90

26 - Bolt

- 2.5 Nm

2.3 Removing and installing dash panel end trim

Removing



Note

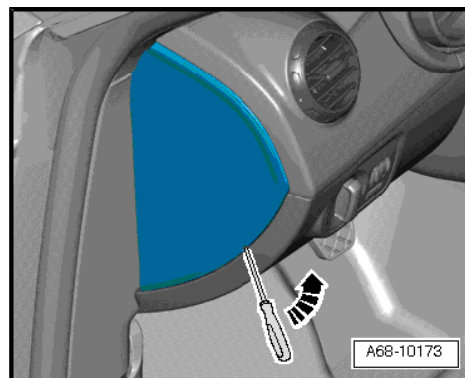
Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.

- Use a screwdriver to prise off dash panel end trim -arrow-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- Press in the dash panel end trim until the catches fully engage.



2.4 Removing and installing dash panel vent

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal wedge -3409-

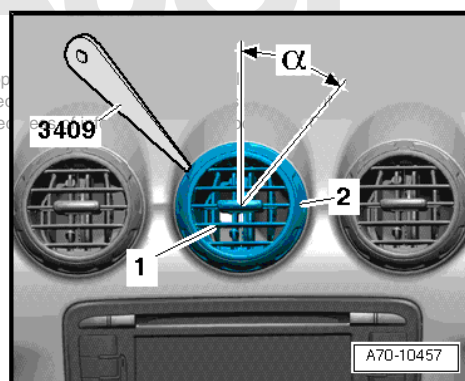
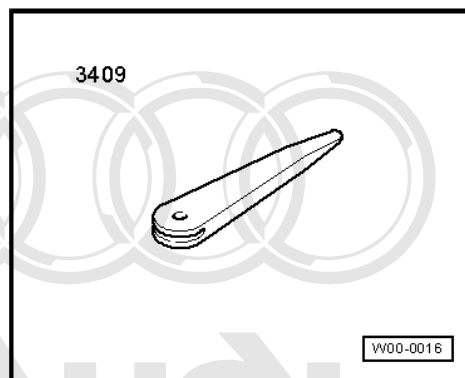
Removing



Note

Removal and installation in the centre and at the side are identical.

- Starting from the left stop, turn the ring -2- clockwise through $\alpha = 45^\circ$.
- Use removal wedge -3409- to prise dash panel vent -1- off dash panel.
- Pull dash panel vent out of dash panel by hand.



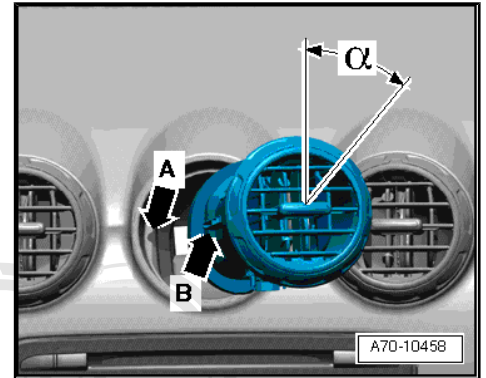
Protected by copyright. Copying or reproduction is not permitted unless authorised in writing by Audi AG. All rights reserved.

is not
ability
G.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- The ring must be in the position shown ($-\alpha-$ = 45° clockwise).
- When inserting dash panel vent in dash panel, make sure guide -arrow B- engages in recess -arrow A-.
- Press dash panel vent into installation opening as far as stop.



2.5 Removing and installing side loudspeaker trim

Removing



Note

Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.

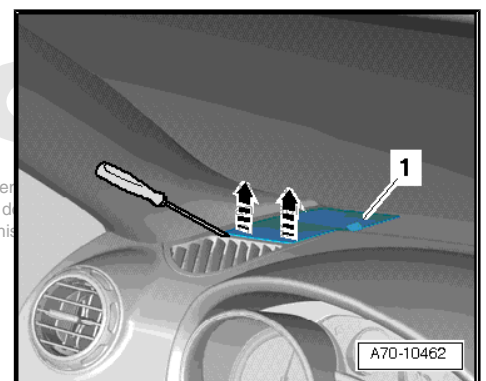
- Use a small screwdriver to carefully prise off loudspeaker trim -1- -arrows-.

- Pull loudspeaker trim to rear out of dash panel.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- Start by inserting loudspeaker trim at front in dash panel.
- Make sure loudspeaker trim engages audibly.



2.6 Removing and installing centre loudspeaker trim

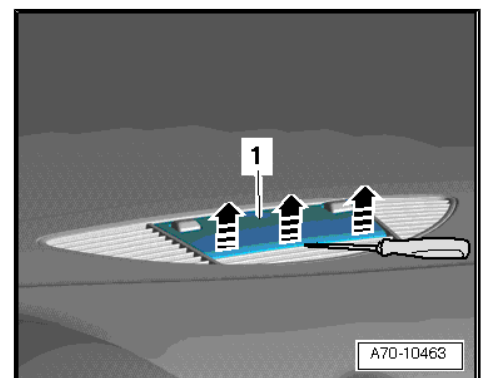
Removing

- Use a small screwdriver to carefully prise off centre loudspeaker trim -1- -arrows-.
- Pull centre loudspeaker trim to rear out of dash panel.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- First insert centre loudspeaker trim at front in dash panel.
- Make sure centre loudspeaker trim engages audibly.

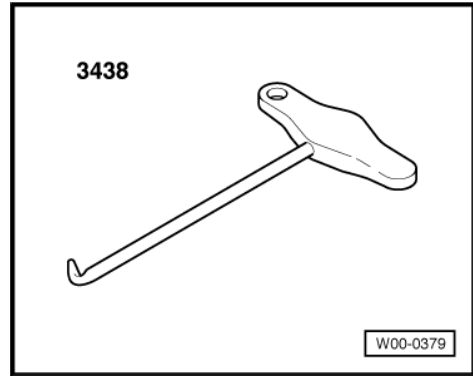
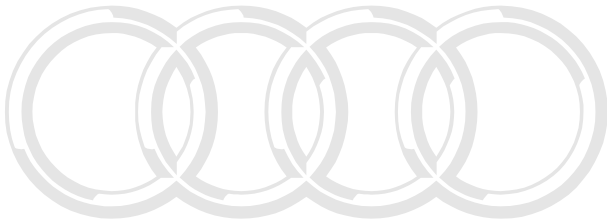


2.7 Removing and installing trim cover for centre console

Special tools and workshop equipment required



◆ Hook -3438-



Removing

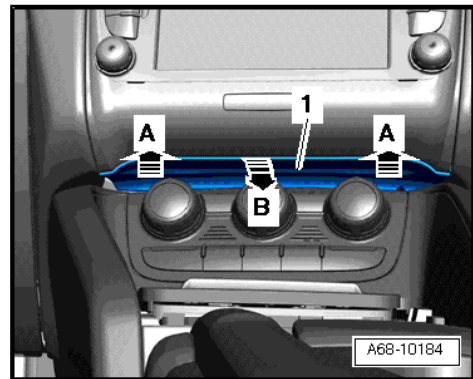
- On left and right, pull trim cover -1- to the rear -arrows A- with hook -3438- and carefully prise it out downwards with a screwdriver -arrow B-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Note

If trim cover for centre console cannot be pulled out in this way, pull radio/navigation system slightly out of mounting frame → Rep. gr. 91 .



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

2.8 Removing and installing cover for instrument cluster

Removing

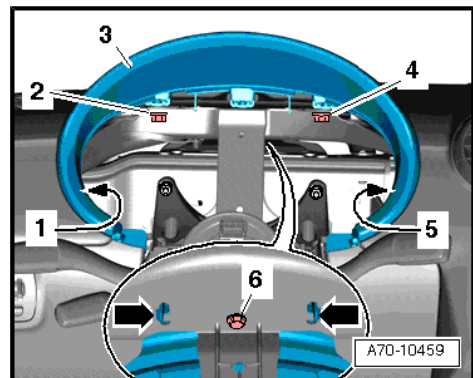
- Remove instrument cluster ⇒ Rep. gr. 90 .
- If fitted, remove tyre pressure monitor control unit -J502- ⇒ Rep. gr. 44 .
- Remove bolts -1, 2, 4, 5, 6-.
- Release fasteners -arrows- and lift off trim -3-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- Make sure fasteners engage audibly.

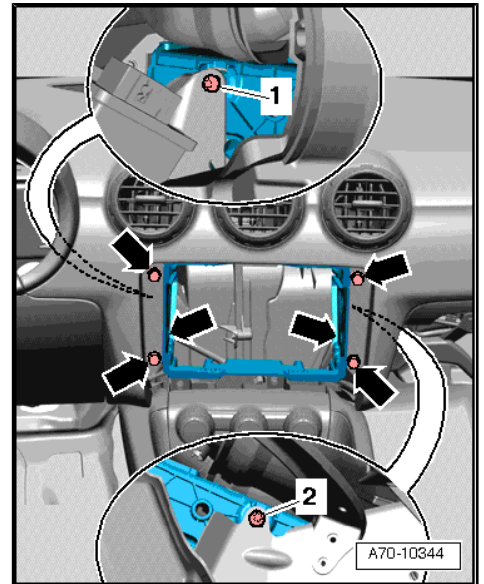
Tightening torque ⇒ [page 144](#)



2.9 Removing and installing mounting frame for radio / navigation system

Removing

- Remove instrument cluster ⇒ Rep. gr. 90 .
- Remove glove box ⇒ [page 12](#) .
- Remove radio / navigation system ⇒ Rep. gr. 91 .
- Remove trim cover for centre console ⇒ [page 147](#) .
- Unscrew side bolts -1- and -2- for centre console.
- Remove bolts -arrows-.

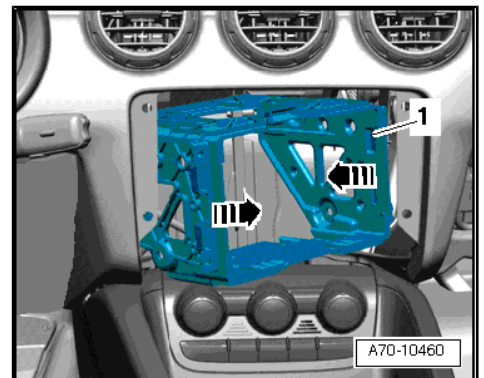


- Turn mounting frame -1- 90° in direction of -arrow-, slightly pressing mounting frame retainers to side.
- Take out mounting frame.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening torque ⇒ [page 144](#)



2.10 Removing and installing dash panel

Removing

- Move steering wheel down and towards rear as far as it will go, using full range of steering column adjuster.
- Move front seats to rearmost position and set backrests to 45° position.

Vehicles with dual clutch gearbox:

- Set selector lever to position „S“.

All vehicles:



WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components*
 ⇒ [page 42](#) .

- Switch off ignition.
- Disconnect the battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .
- Remove airbag unit ⇒ Rep. gr. 69 .

- Remove steering wheel ⇒ Rep. gr. 48 .
- Remove dash panel trim (driver side) ⇒ [page 5](#) .
- Remove front left chest vent temperature sensor -G385- from air duct ⇒ Rep. gr. 87 .

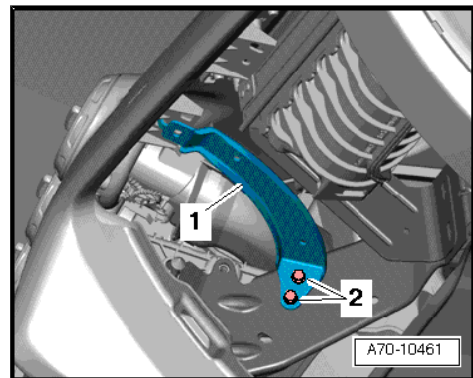
**Note**

The connector for the left vent temperature sender -G150- does not have to be unplugged.

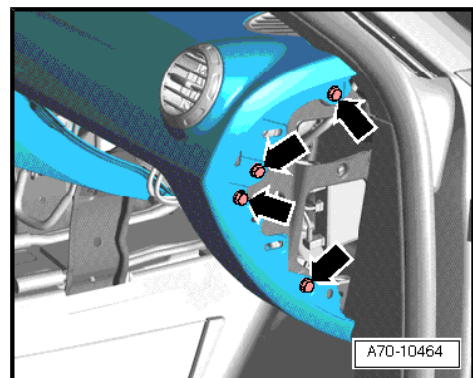
- Remove instrument cluster ⇒ Rep. gr. 90 .
- If fitted, remove tyre pressure monitor control unit -J502- ⇒ Rep. gr. 44 .
- Remove radio / navigation system ⇒ Rep. gr. 91 .
- Remove glove box ⇒ [page 12](#) .
- Unscrew bolts -2-.
- Disengage support -1- at dash panel and detach.

**WARNING**

- ◆ **Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components** ⇒ [page 42](#) .



- Remove brackets for airbag unit (front passenger side) ⇒ [page 97](#) .
- Remove centre console (front) ⇒ [page 22](#) .
- Remove centre loudspeaker trim ⇒ [page 147](#) .
- Remove centre mid-range and treble loudspeaker -R158- from the dash panel ⇒ Rep. gr. 91 .
- Remove sunlight penetration photosensor -G107- ⇒ Rep. gr. 87 .
- Remove central locking deadlock function warning lamp -SAFE- -K133- .
- Remove A-pillar trim (left and right) ⇒ [page 164](#) .
- Remove side loudspeaker trim ⇒ [page 147](#) .
- Unplug and move clear electrical connector for treble loudspeaker.
- Remove dash panel end trim (passenger side) ⇒ [page 146](#) .
- Remove dash panel bolts -arrows- (left and right).



- Unscrew dash panel bolts -arrows-.
- Carefully pull dash panel to rear off central tube.

 **Note**

A second mechanic is required for detaching the dash panel.

- Take dash panel out of vehicle interior.
- Set down dash panel on a soft surface.

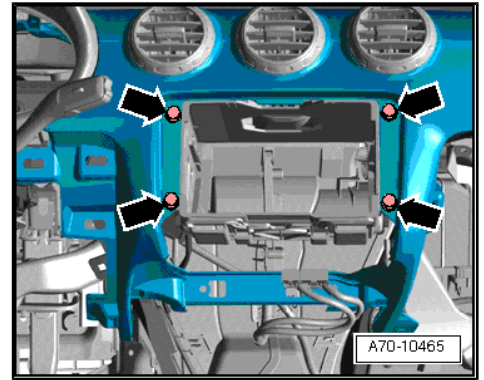
Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:



WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 42](#).*
- ◆ *For correct combination of dash panel and airbag unit refer to ⇒ *Electronic parts catalogue*.*

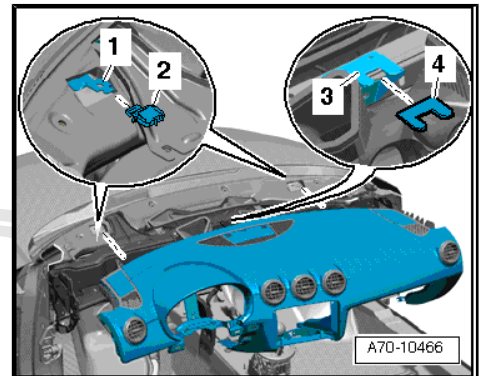


- Place dash panel in position and guide electrical connectors for sunlight penetration photosensor -G107-, central locking deadlock function warning lamp -SAFE- -K133- and loudspeakers through openings in dash panel.
- Check that a rubber buffer -2- is fitted on each clip -1- at bottom of windscreen frame (left and right).
- Check whether a plastic cap -4- has been fitted on centring element -3- at central tube.
- When inserting dash panel, make sure clips engage in box-shaped sections on underside of dash panel.
- Align dash panel and tighten bolts.



WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.



- Switch on ignition.
- Connect battery earth wire with ignition switched on ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .
- If airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the fault memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system VAS 5051.

Tightening torque ⇒ [page 144](#)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.11 Removing and installing side defroster vents

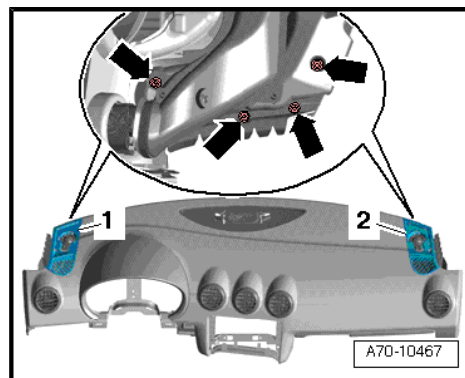
Removing



Note

Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.

- Remove dash panel ⇒ [page 149](#) .
- Unscrew the nuts on the underside of the dash panel -arrows-.
- Lift the defroster vents -1- and -2- out of the dash panel.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:



Note

When tightening the nuts, pay attention to an equal distance between the top of the dash panel and the top edge of the defroster vent, as well as to an even gap width all round.

Tightening torque ⇒ [page 144](#)

2.12 Removing and installing defroster vent (centre)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted. Used by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

- Remove dash panel ⇒ [page 149](#) .
- Unscrew the nuts on the underside of the dash panel -arrows-.
- Lift the centre defroster vent -1- out of the dash panel.

Installing

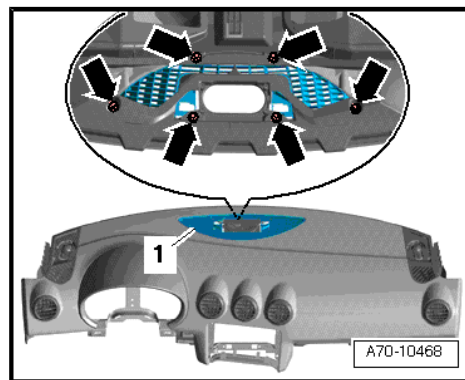
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:



Note

When tightening the nuts, pay attention to an equal distance between the top of the dash panel and the top edge of the centre defroster vent, as well as to an even gap width all round.

Tightening torque ⇒ [page 144](#)



3 Central tube

3.1 Exploded view of central tube

Part 1 (left-side)

1 - Nut

- 2x
- Renew
- 20 Nm

2 - Bracket for dash panel

3 - Threaded pin

- 23 Nm

4 - Bolt

- 2x
- 20 Nm

5 - Bolt

⇒ Rep. gr. 48

6 - Lower brace

- With compensating element

7 - Bolt

- 20 Nm

8 - Bolt

⇒ Rep. gr. 48

9 - Upper brace

10 - Bolt

- 3x
- 20 Nm

11 - Central tube

- Removing and installing
 ⇒ [page 156](#)

12 - Bolt

- 2x
- 9 Nm

13 - Bracket for centre section (left-side)

14 - Support (left-side)

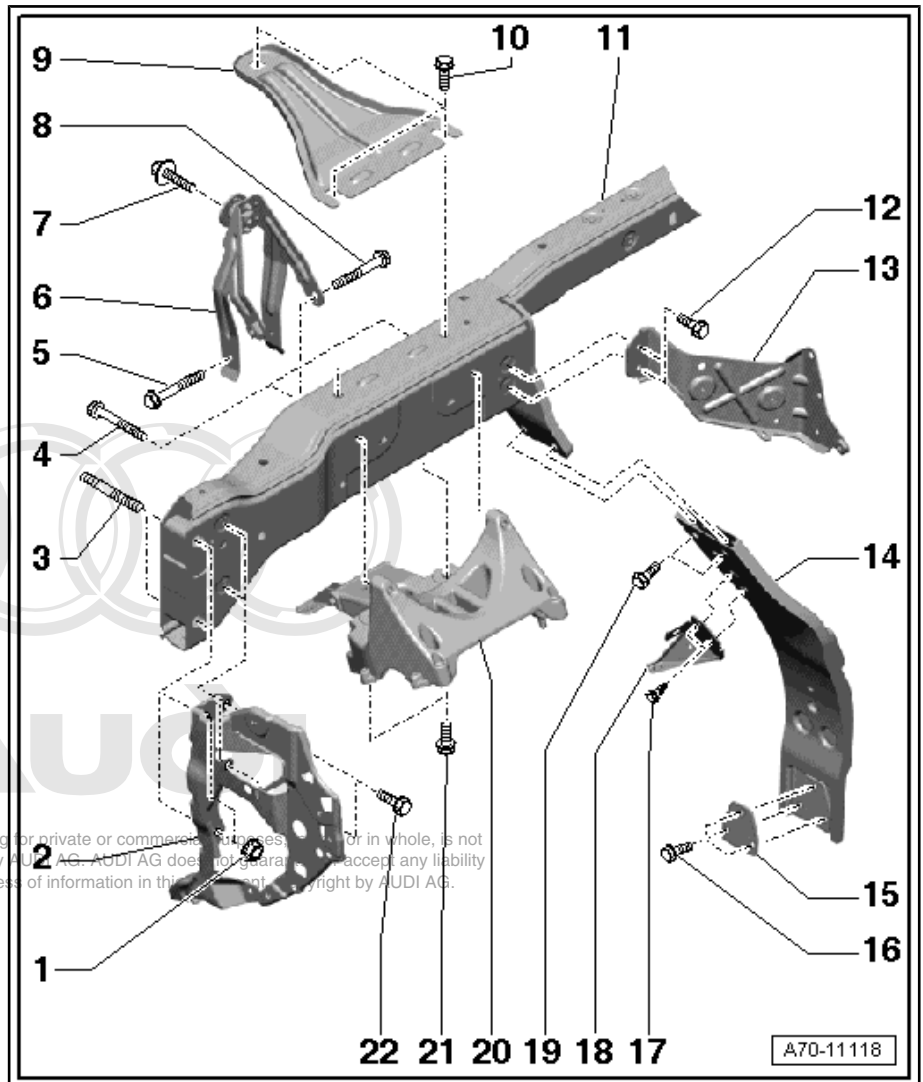
15 - Intermediate plate

16 - Bolt

- 3x
- 9 Nm

17 - Bolt

- 2x
- 3.5 Nm



18 - Securing bracket for dash panel trim (driver side)

19 - Bolt

- 2x
- 9 Nm

20 - Mounting bracket for steering column

21 - Bolt

- 2x
- 20 Nm

22 - Bolt

- 2x
- 9 Nm

Part 2 (right-side)

1 - Support (right-side)

2 - Bolt

- 2x
- 9 Nm

3 - Centring element

- With plastic bearing

4 - Bolt

- 9 Nm

5 - Central tube

- Removing and installing
=> [page 156](#)

6 - Threaded pin

- 23 Nm

7 - Nut

- Renew
- 20 Nm

8 - Bracket for dash panel

9 - Bolt

- 9 Nm

10 - Bolt

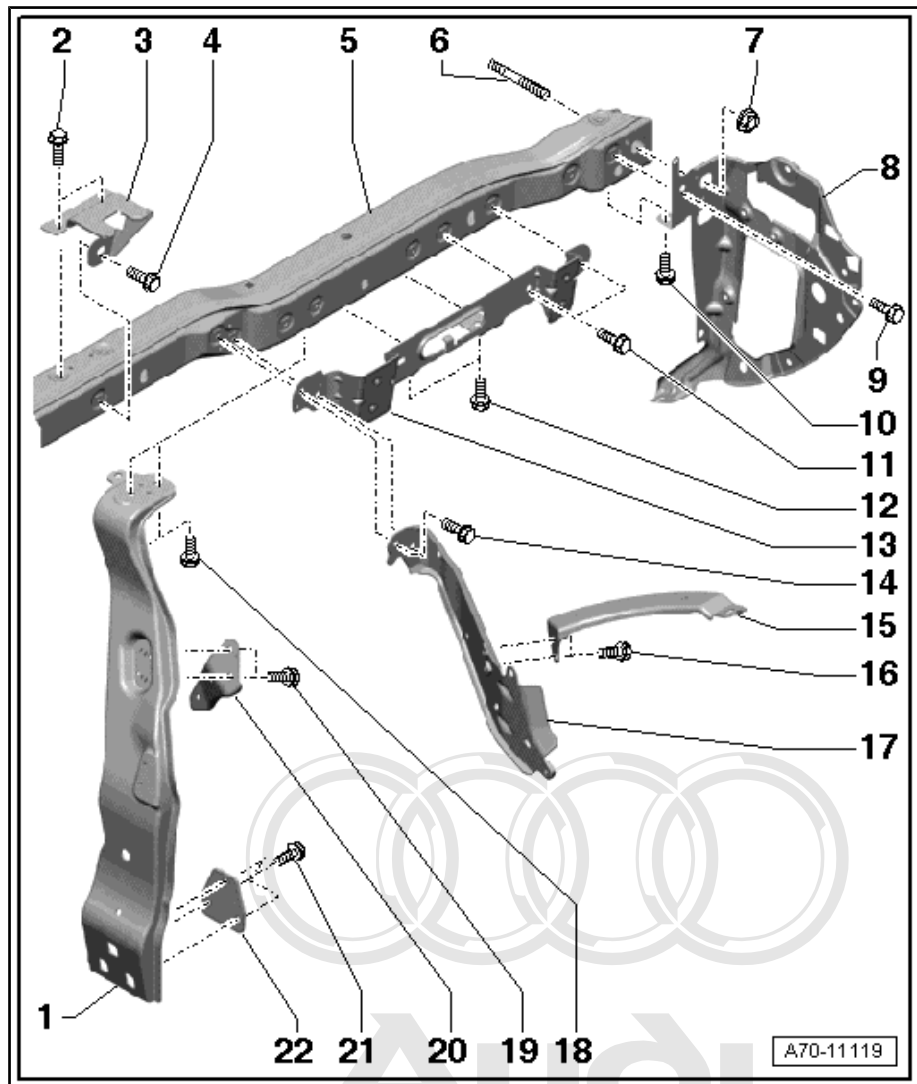
- 9 Nm

11 - Bolt

- 2x
- 9 Nm

12 - Bolt

- 2x
- 9 Nm



13 - Support for airbag unit (front passenger side)

14 - Bolt

- 2x
- 9 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

15 - Support for dash panel

16 - Bolt

- 2x
- 3.5 Nm

17 - Bracket for centre section (right-side)

18 - Bolt

- 2x
- 9 Nm

19 - Bolt

- 2x
- 3.5 Nm

20 - Securing bracket for glove box

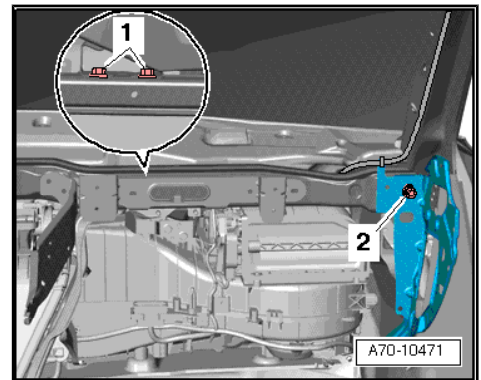
21 - Bolt

- 3x
- 9 Nm

22 - Intermediate plate

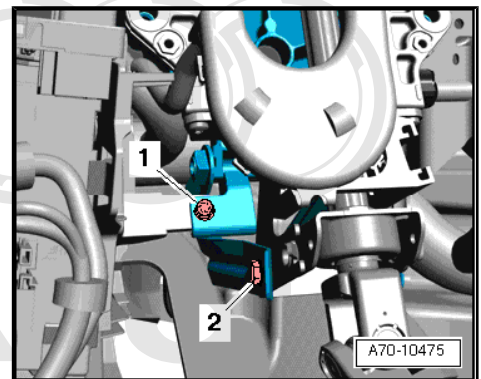
Cable guide to central tube

-Item 1- 4.5 Nm



Mounting frame for relay and fuse carrier at central tube (left-side)

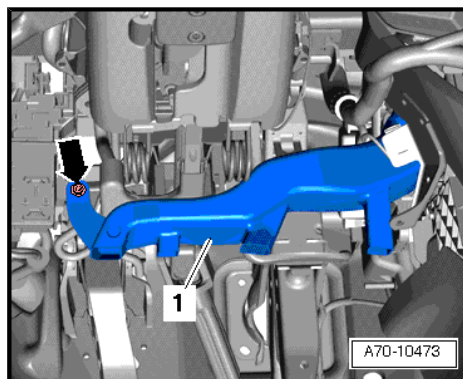
-Item 1- 4.5 Nm



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

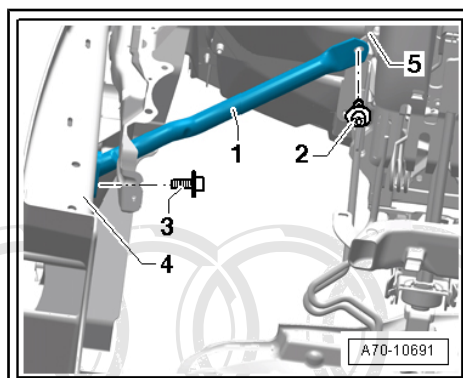
Air duct to central tube

Tightening torque ⇒ Rep. gr. 87



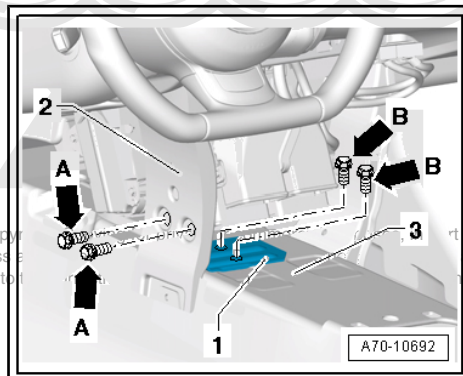
Brace between A-pillar and steering column mounting bracket (Roadster)

- 1 - Brace
- 2 - Bolt, 9 Nm
- 3 - Bolt, 9 Nm
- 4 - A-pillar
- 5 - Mounting bracket for steering column



Reinforcement for tunnel support (Roadster)

- 1 - Reinforcement for tunnel support
 - 2 - Support (left-side)
 - 3 - Tunnel (front)
- Arrows A- Bolts (M6, 20 mm long) - 9 Nm
-Arrows B- Bolts (M6, 12 mm long) - 9 Nm

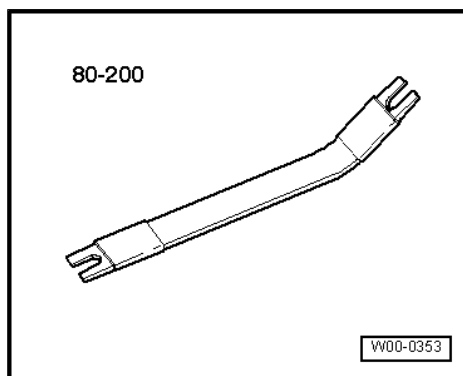


Protected by copyright. All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or by any information storage and retrieval system, without the prior written permission of Audi AG.

3.2 Removing and installing central tube

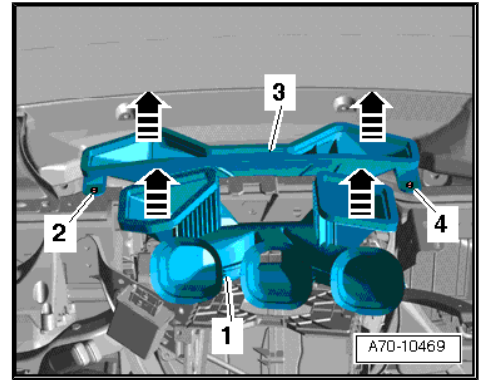
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal lever -80 - 200-

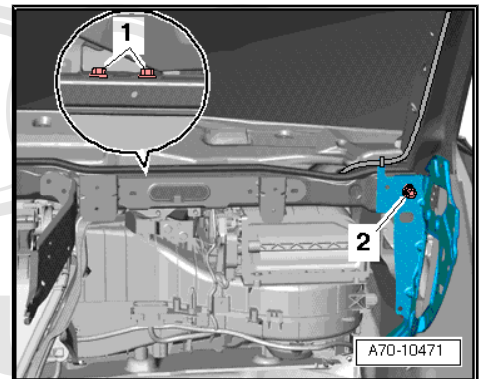


Removing

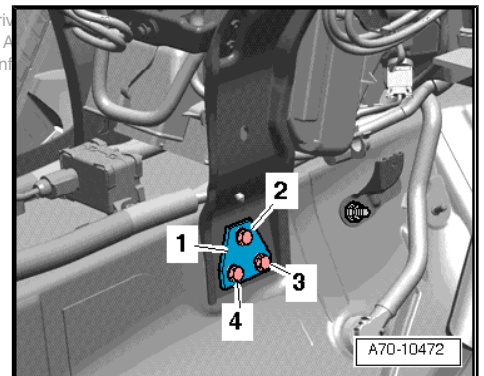
- Remove dash panel ⇒ [page 149](#) .
- Lift air duct -1- off air conditioner unit -arrows-.
- Use screwdriver to press in clamping pins approx. 5 mm and release fasteners -2- and -4-.
- Pull air duct -3- slightly upwards off central tube -arrows- – do not remove completely.



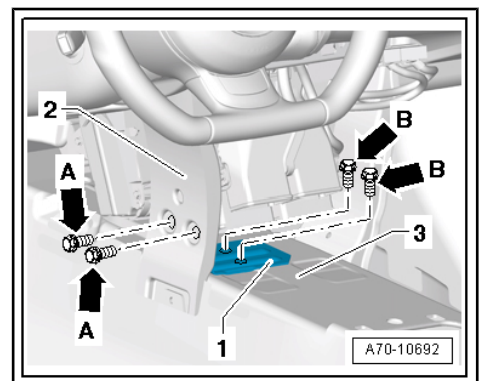
- Remove bolts -1- for cable guide at central tube.
- Unscrew nut -2- for central tube.
- If fitted, remove aerial amplifier for mobile telephone -R86- at bracket (right-side) ⇒ Rep. gr. 91 .



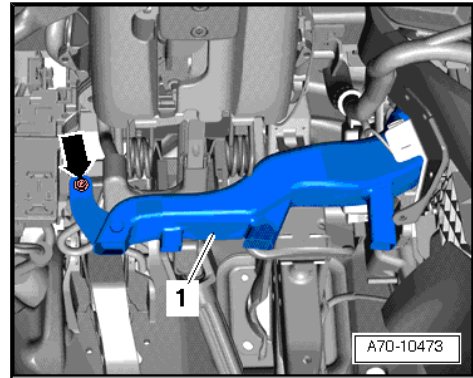
- Remove bolts -2 ... 4- on support (both sides) and detach intermediate plate -1-.



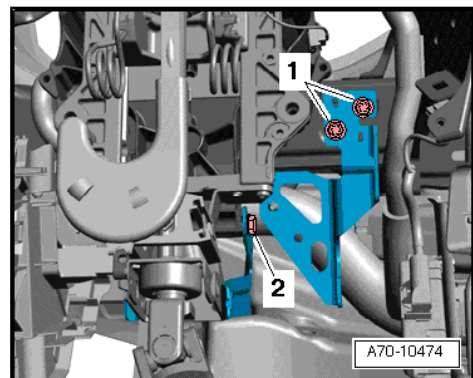
- Roadster: Unscrew bolts -arrows A- and -arrows B- and pull reinforcement for tunnel support -1- off support (left-side) -2- and tunnel (front) -3-.
- Remove control unit for headlight range control -J431- ; electrical connector does not have to be unplugged ⇒ Rep. gr. 94 .
- Leave control unit for headlight range control -J431- in vehicle with electrical wiring connected.



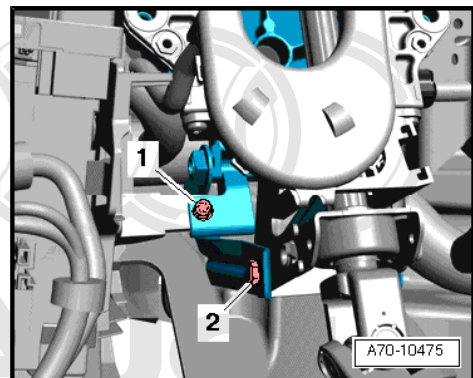
- Unscrew bolt -arrow- and detach air duct -1-.



- Remove bolts -1- at bottom of bracket.
- Remove bolt -2- for brace at bottom of mounting bracket for steering column.

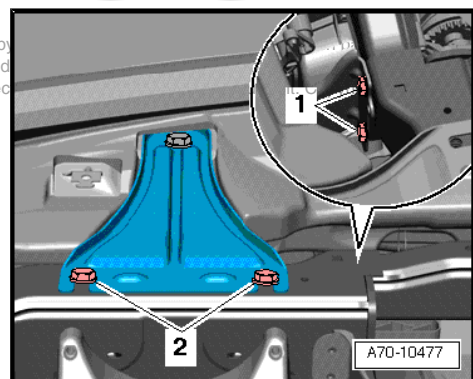


- Remove bolt -1- for relay and fuse carrier at bottom of mounting bracket for steering column.
- Loosen bolt -2- for steering column by a few turns.



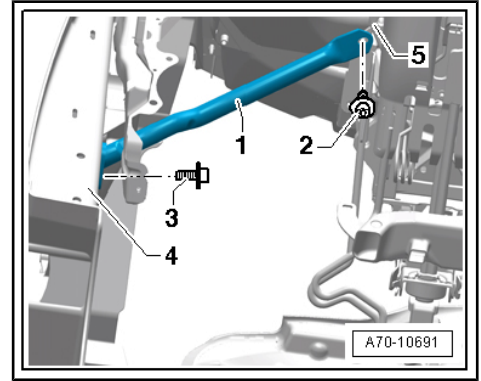
- Unscrew bolts -1- for retainer for air conditioning unit at central tube.
- Loosen bolts -2- at upper brace by a few turns.

Protected by copyright. Copy permitted unless authorised with respect to the correct

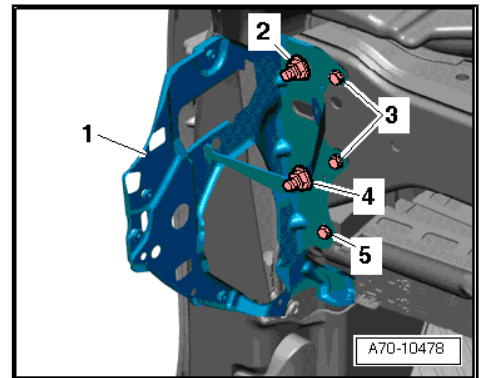


is not
bility

- Roadster: Unscrew bolts -2- and -3- and detach brace -1- from A-pillar -4- and mounting bracket -5- for steering column.
- Remove fuse holder in dash panel (left-side) ⇒ Rep. gr. 97 .
- Lay fuse holder to side with wiring harness connected.



- Remove bolts -3- and -5-.
- Unscrew nuts -2- and -4- and detach bracket -1- for dash panel.
- Unscrew the steering column from the steering column mounting bracket ⇒ Rep. gr. 48 .
- Set down steering column on a suitable surface in footwell.



Caution

Mark the vertical and side positions at the central tube for re-installation.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Pull central tube -3- with cable guide off bulkhead as far as possible.
- Remove bolts -1- for cable guide at front left of central tube.
- Unscrew bolts -2- for cable guide at front right of central tube.

**Note**

A second mechanic is required to detach central tube for dash panel.

- Swivel upper side of central tube to rear.
- Take central tube out of passenger compartment.

Installing

- Insert central tube in body in line with marks made earlier.
- Bolt on cable guide at front left and right of central tube.
- Align central tube at A-pillar in accordance with central tube marks made during removal.
- Tighten nuts for central tube (left and right).

Further installation is carried out in the reverse order, note the following:

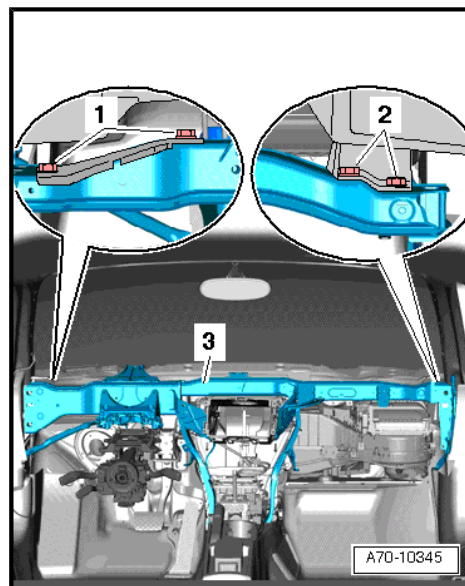
- Install control unit for headlight range control -J431- ⇒ Rep. gr. 94 .
- Bolt steering column to mounting bracket for steering column ⇒ Rep. gr. 48 .
- If fitted, install aerial amplifier for mobile telephone -R86- at bracket (right-side) ⇒ Rep. gr. 91 .
- Install dash panel fuse box (left-side) ⇒ Rep. gr. 97 .

Checking installation position of central tube for dash panel

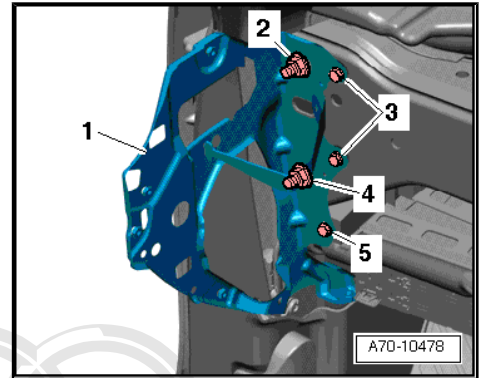
- Insert dash panel only as a trial.
- Bolt dash panel to central tube for dash panel (left and right).
- Close doors.
- Check whether gap between dash panel and door is the same on left and right.
- Check whether height of dash panel coincides with recesses in door trim.

If setting is not OK:

- Note down lateral and/or vertical deviation.
- Remove dash panel again.
- Unfasten bolt connections of central tube for dash panel.
- Adjust central tube for dash panel according to deviations (noted down).



- Tighten bolts -2- and -4- (left and right) for central tube for dash panel.



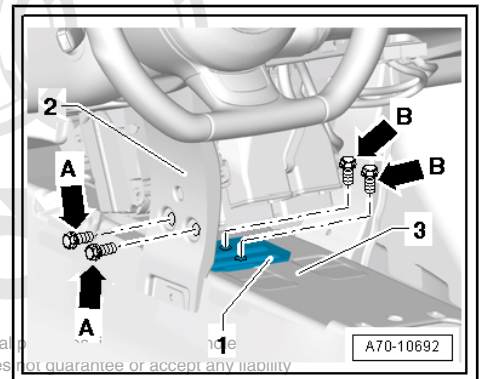
i Note

The reinforcement for the tunnel support is installed on the driver side only on the Roadster.

- Slide reinforcement for tunnel support -1- to the left until it makes contact with support (left-side) -2-.

i Note

Make sure the correct bolts -arrows A- and -arrows B- are used at each attachment point. The bolts have different lengths.



- Insert bolts -arrows A- (M6, 20 mm long) and -arrows B- (M6, 12 mm long) in tunnel (front) -3- and hand-tighten.
- Tighten bolts -arrows A- and -arrows B-.

! WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

- Switch on ignition.
- Connect battery earth wire with ignition switched on ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .
- If airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the fault memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system VAS 5051.

Tightening torques ⇒ [page 153](#)

4 Trim panels (Coupé)

4.1 Overview of trim panels

Overview of trim panels (passenger compartment)

1 - Roof end trim

- ❑ Exploded view
⇒ [page 179](#)

2 - Rear side trim

- ❑ Exploded view
⇒ [page 175](#)

3 - A-pillar trim (top)

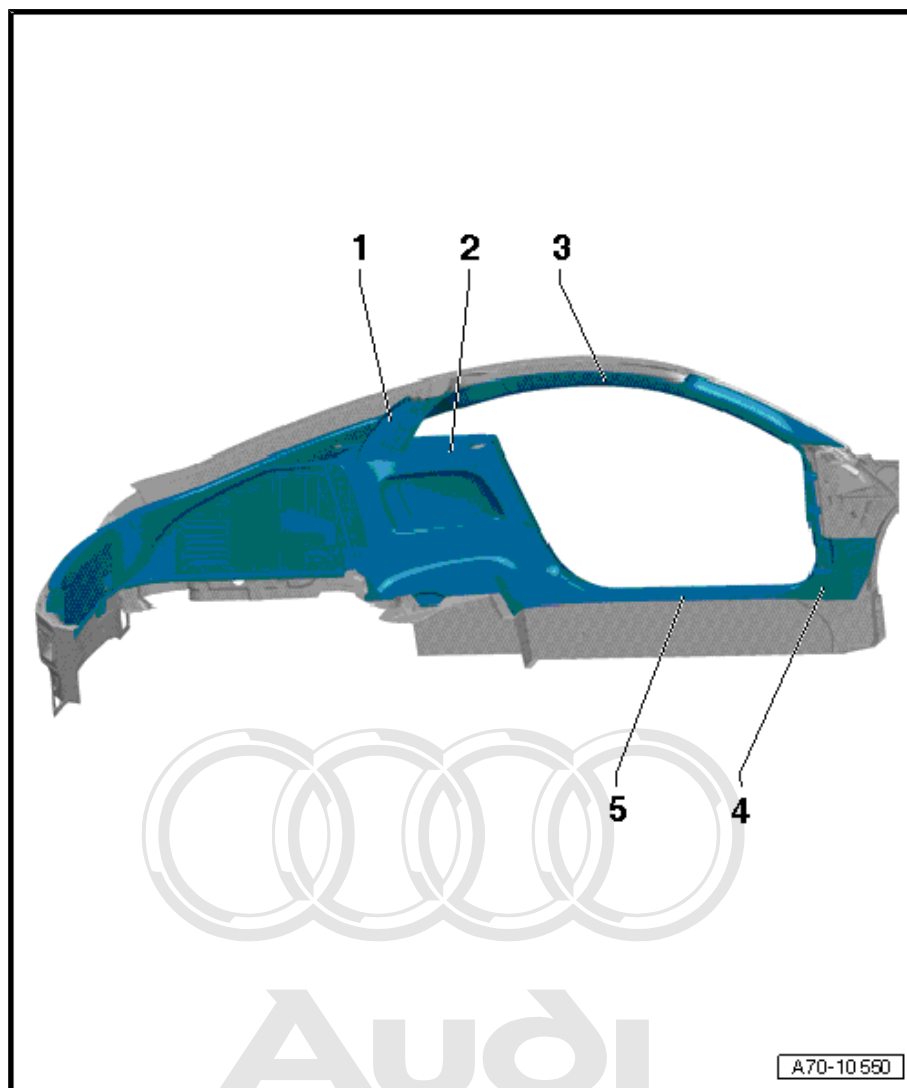
- ❑ Exploded view
⇒ [page 164](#)

4 - A-pillar trim (bottom)

- ❑ Exploded view
⇒ [page 166](#)

5 - Sill panel trim

- ❑ Exploded view
⇒ [page 170](#)



Overview of trim panels (luggage compartment)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted without the express written consent of Audi AG. Audi AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Audi AG.

1 - Rear cross panel trim

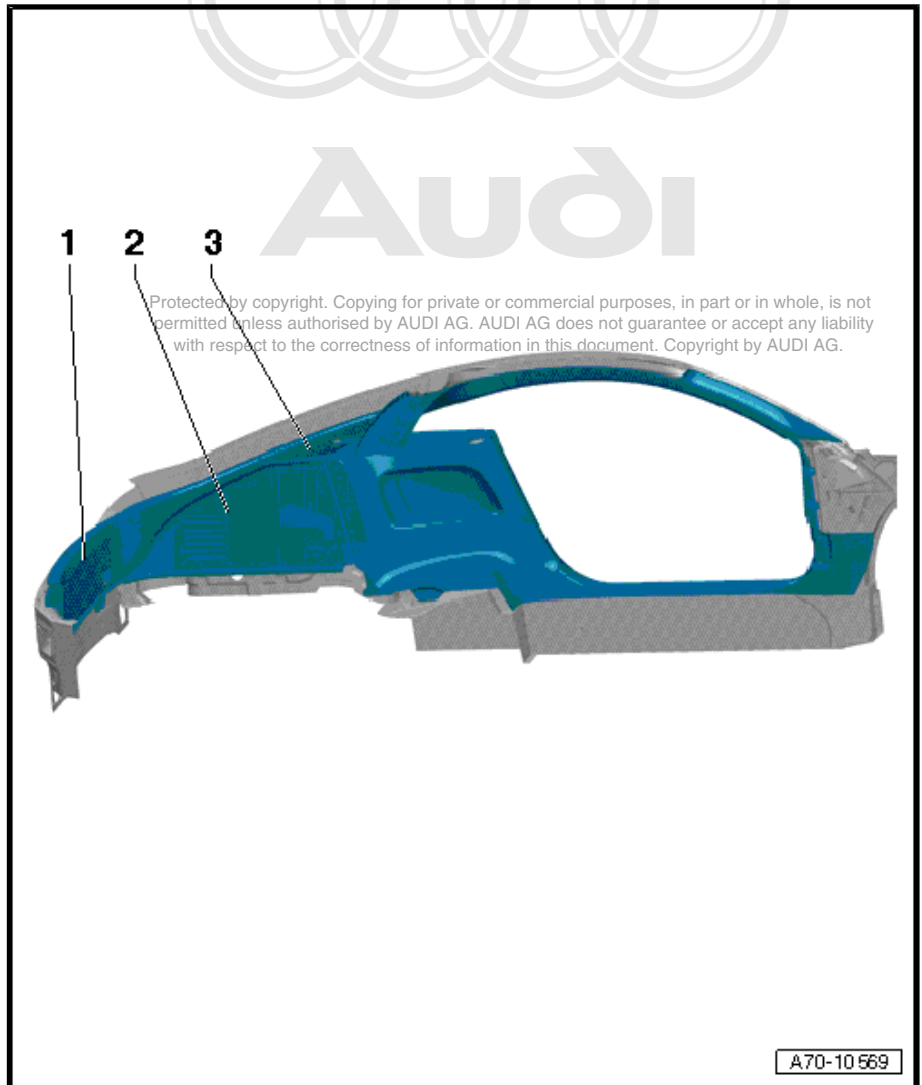
- ❑ Exploded view
⇒ [page 187](#)

2 - Luggage compartment side trim

- ❑ Exploded view
⇒ [page 189](#)

3 - C-pillar trim

- ❑ Exploded view
⇒ [page 172](#)



4.2 Exploded view of A-pillar trim (top)

1 - A-pillar trim (top)

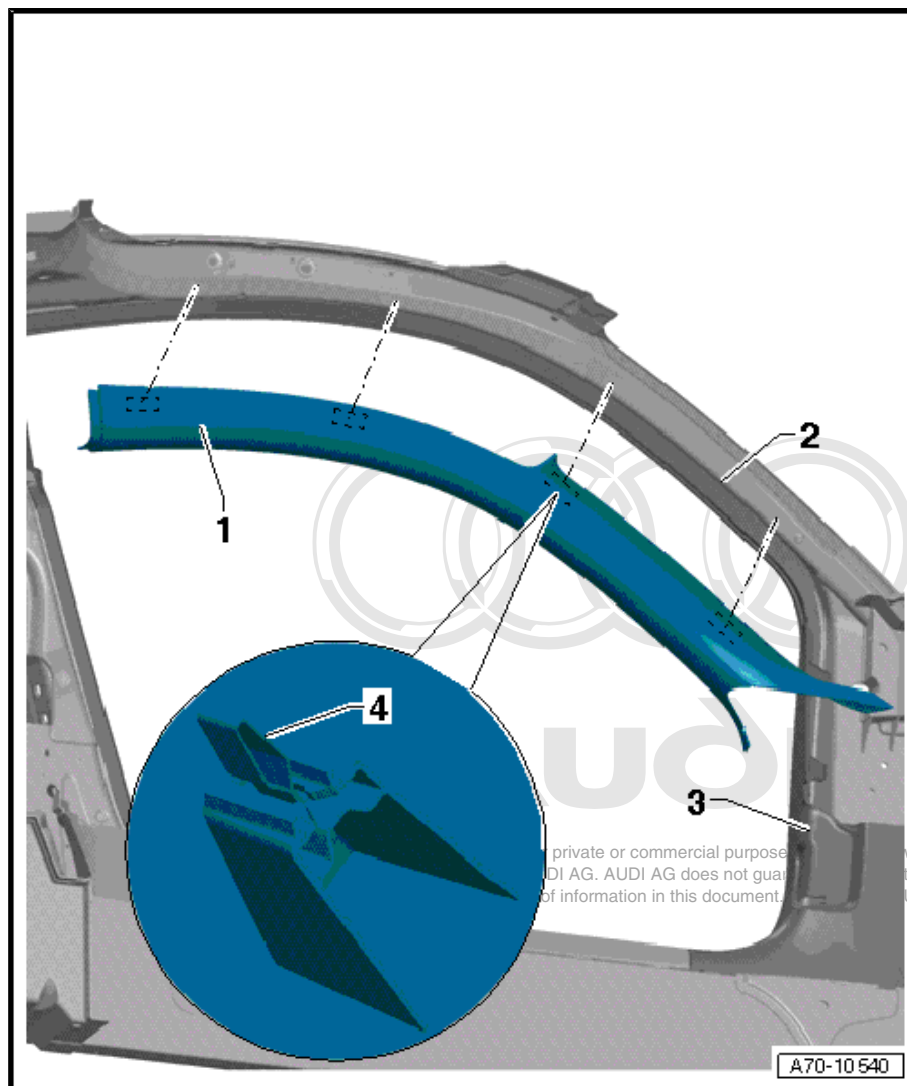
- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 164](#)

2 - Door seal

3 - A-pillar trim (bottom)

4 - Clip

- 4x
- Renew if damaged or deformed

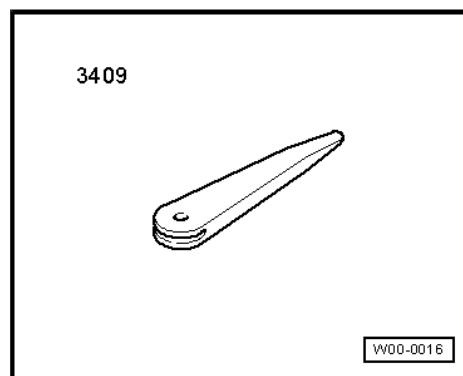


private or commercial purpose. Audi AG does not guarantee the accuracy of the information in this document. Audi AG is not liable for any liability.

4.3 Removing and installing A-pillar trim (top)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal wedge -3409-



Removing

- Unclip C-pillar trim -1- in area of A-pillar trim (top) -2-
 => [page 172](#) .
- Starting at top, unclip A-pillar trim (top) -2- using removal wedge -3409- .
- Lift out A-pillar trim (top) -2-.

Installing

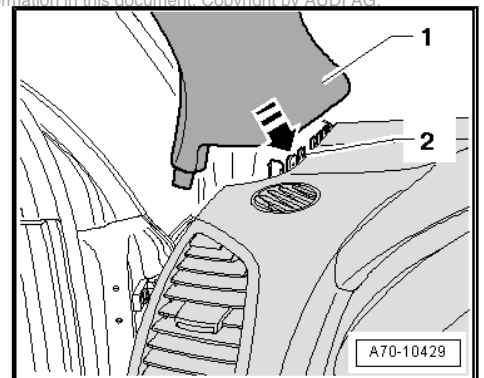
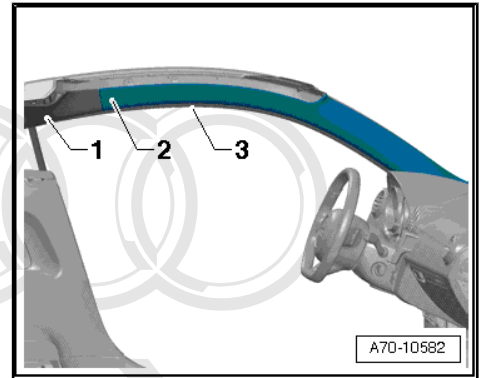
Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

Note

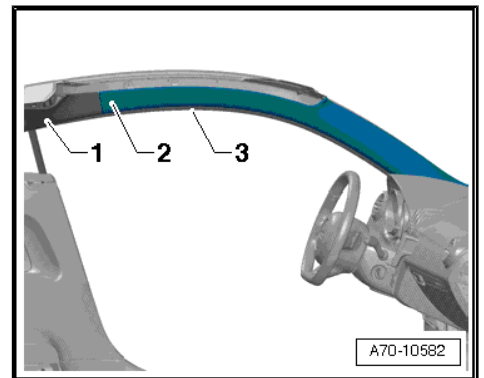
- ◆ *If the clips for the trim have been left behind in the mounting points on the body, remove them and insert them in the trim.*
- ◆ *Check the clips for damage or deformation and renew them if necessary.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Start by inserting A-pillar trim (top) -1- in ribbed section -2- of dash panel in direction of -arrow-.



- Clip in A-pillar trim (top) -2- and fold lip of door seal -3- over A-pillar trim (top) -2-.



4.4 Exploded view of A-pillar trim (bottom)

1 - A-pillar trim (bottom)

- ❑ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 166](#)

2 - Operating lever

- ❑ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 166](#)

3 - Clip

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ Renew if damaged or deformed

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 12 Nm

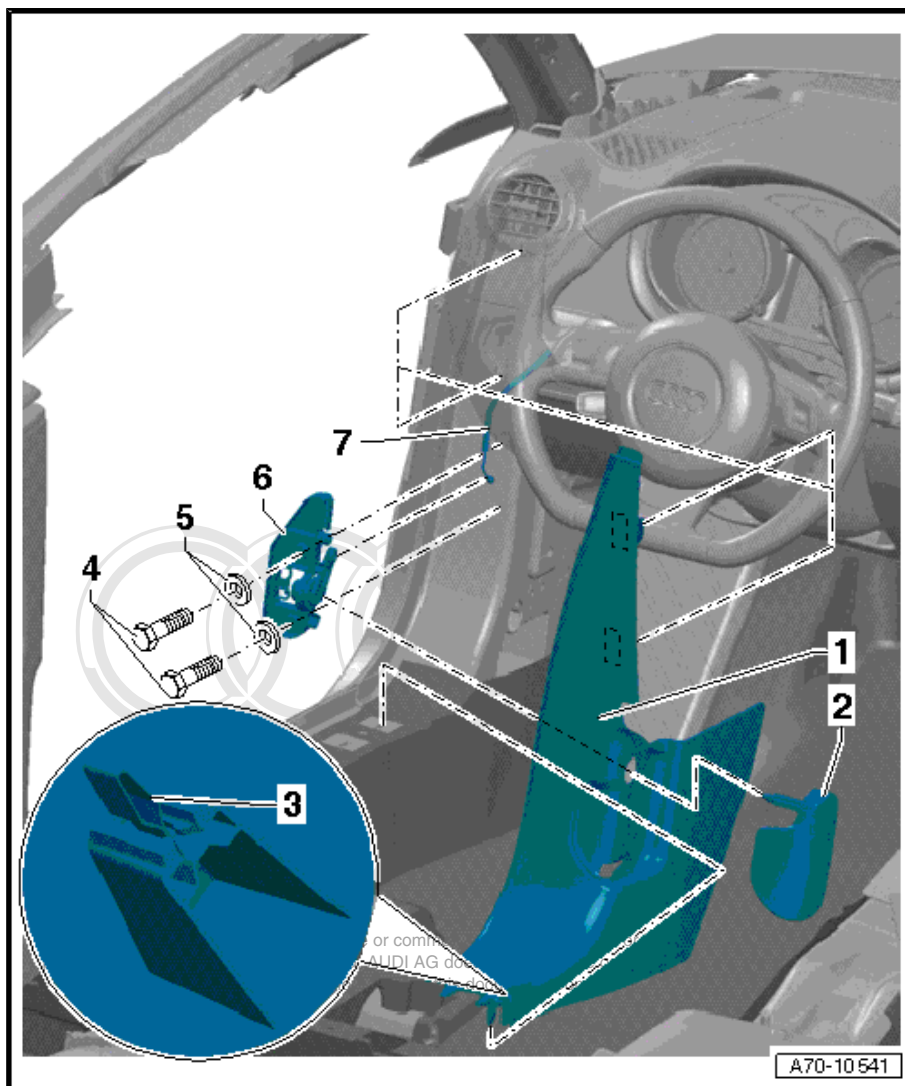
5 - Washer

- ❑ 2x

6 - Mounting bracket

- ❑ For operating lever
⇒ [Item 2 \(page 166\)](#)

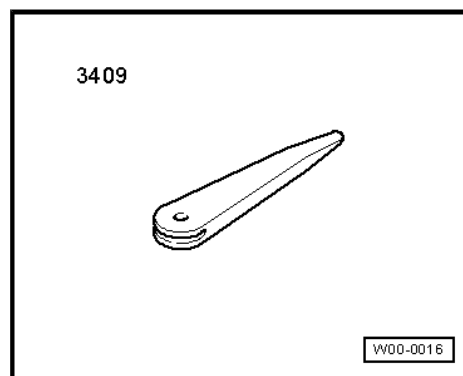
7 - Cable for bonnet lock



4.5 Removing and installing A-pillar trim (bottom)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal wedge -3409-



Removing

Driver side only

- Pull operating lever -1- in direction of -arrow A- to release bonnet.

At the same time, operating lever -1- is moved out of guide in A-pillar trim (bottom) -2-.

- Insert a screwdriver -5- in gap between operating lever -1- and A-pillar trim (bottom) -2-.



Caution

- ◆ *To remove operating lever -1-, it must be prised out of its mounting by moving screwdriver in direction of -arrow C-. At the same time, pull operating lever out by hand in direction of -arrow B-, taking care to keep it straight at all times.*
- ◆ *If operating lever -1- is pulled out at an angle or not kept straight, the mounting could be damaged. The mounting must be renewed if it is damaged.*

- Prise operating lever -1- out of its mounting, taking care to keep it straight.
- At the mounting, check the fasteners -1- on the catch and the fasteners -2- on the support for damage.

Both sides of vehicle (continued)

- Remove dash panel end trim ⇒ [page 146](#) .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Detach sill panel trim -3- from side member at transition to A-pillar trim (bottom) ⇒ [page 170](#) .
- Unclip A-pillar trim (bottom) -2- using removal wedge -3409- .

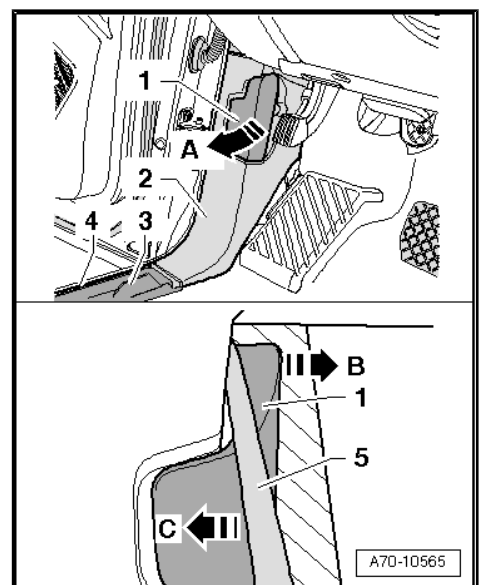
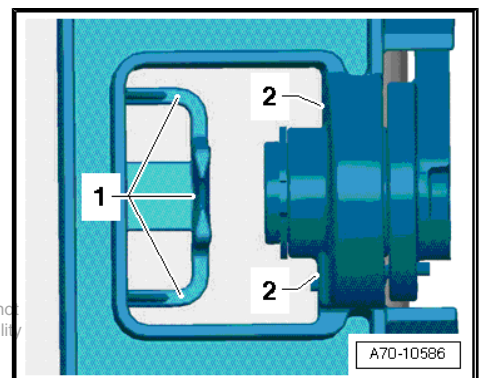
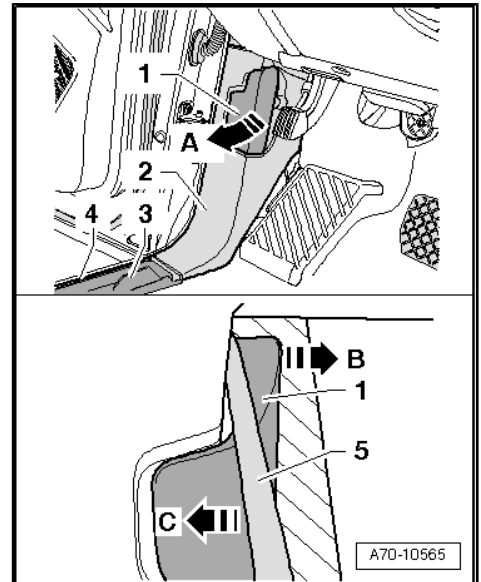
Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:



Note

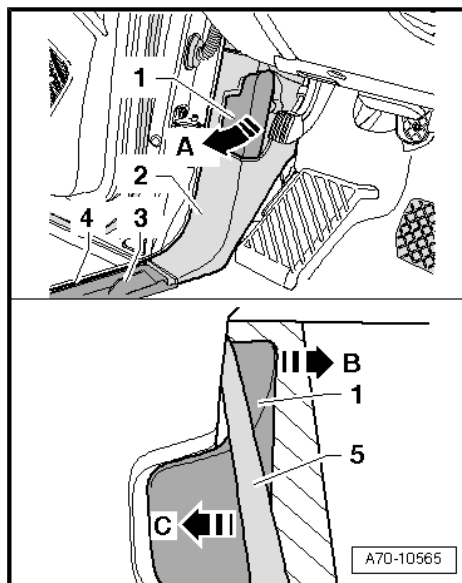
- ◆ *If the clips for the trim have been left behind in the mounting points on the body, remove them and insert them in the trim.*
- ◆ *Check the clips for damage or deformation and renew them if necessary.*





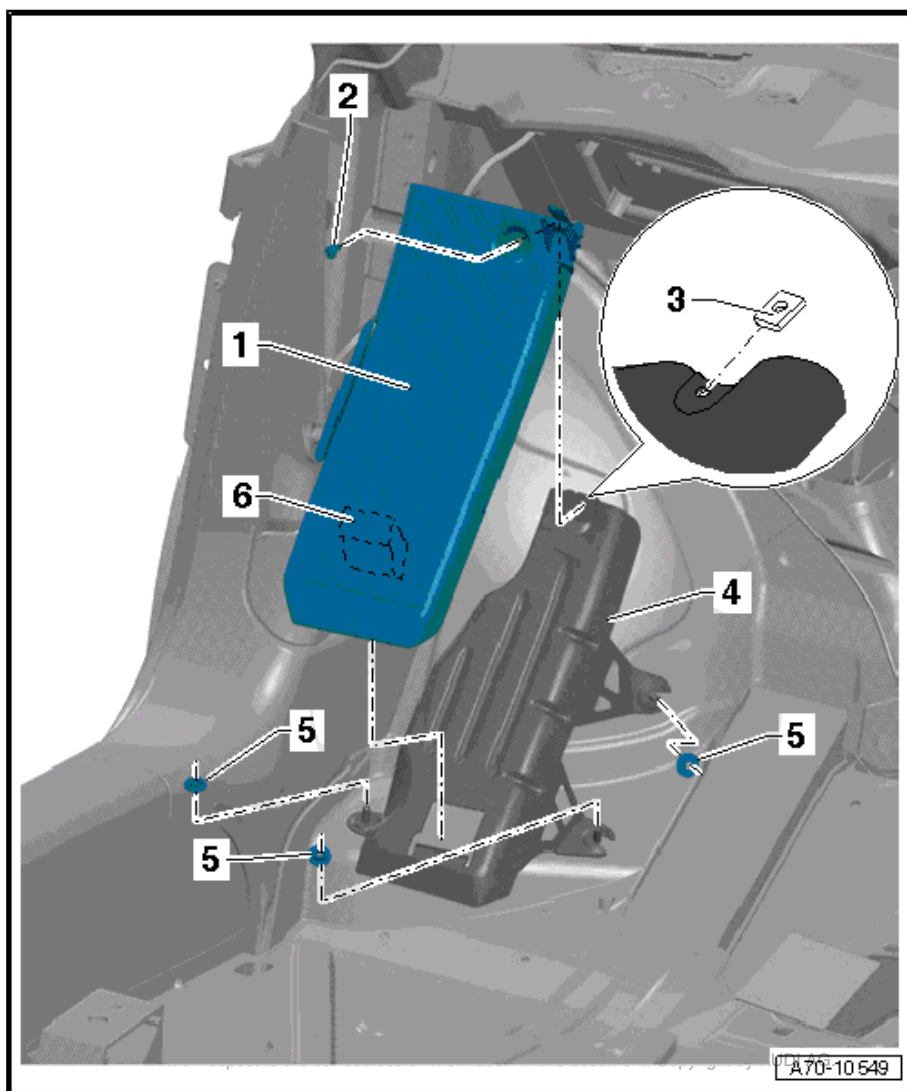
- Clip in A-pillar trim (bottom) -2- and fold lip of door seal -4- over A-pillar trim (top) -1- and sill panel trim -3-.
- Insert operating lever -1- roughly half way into mounting and turn in direction of -arrow A-.
- Carefully press operating lever -1- all the way into mounting and insert it in guide in A-pillar trim (bottom) -2-.

Tightening torque for mounting bracket => [page 166](#)



4.6 Exploded view of foot rest cover and bracket

- 1 - Foot rest cover
 - Removing and installing => [page 169](#)
- 2 - Bolt
 - 2 Nm
- 3 - Speed nut
 - Insert in foot rest bracket
- 4 - Foot rest bracket
 - Removing and installing => [page 169](#)
- 5 - Nut
 - 3x
 - 3.5 Nm
- 6 - Lug
 - Permanently connected to foot rest cover



4.7 Removing and installing foot rest cover

Removing

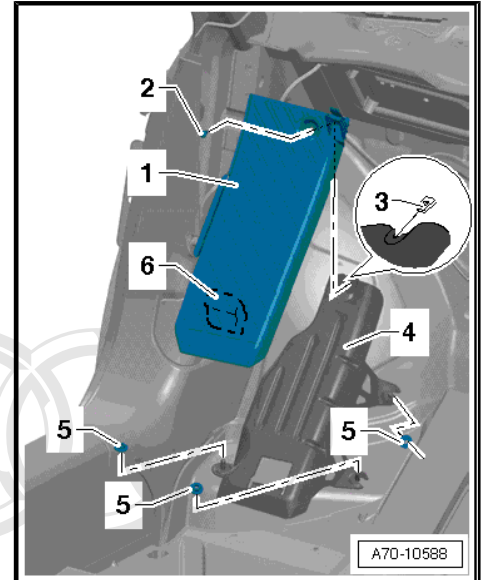
- Remove dash panel trim (driver side) ⇒ [page 5](#) .
- Remove A-pillar trim (bottom) ⇒ [page 166](#) .
- Remove bolt -2-.
- Slide foot rest cover -1- upwards until lug -6- is disengaged from opening in foot rest bracket -4-.
- Take out foot rest cover -1-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

- Make sure lug -6- engages properly in opening in foot rest bracket.
- Make sure speed nut -3- is seated correctly on foot rest bracket -4-.

Tightening torque ⇒ [page 168](#)



4.8 Removing and installing foot rest bracket

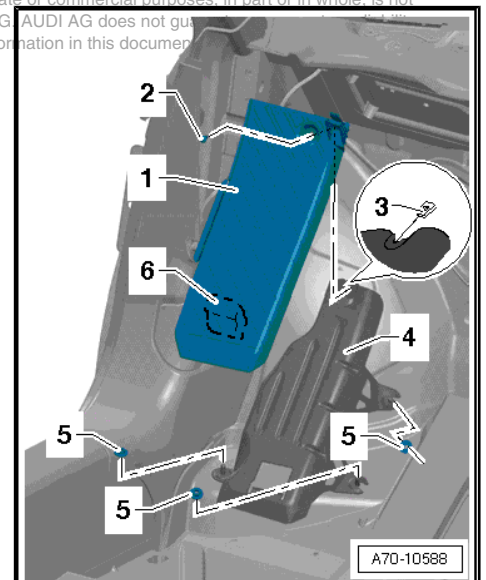
Removing

- Remove foot rest cover -1- ⇒ [page 169](#) .
- Fold back floor covering in area of foot rest.
- Unscrew the 3 nuts -5-.
- Take out foot rest bracket -4-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening torque ⇒ [page 168](#)



4.9 Exploded view of sill panel trim

1 - Sill panel trim

- ❑ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 170](#)

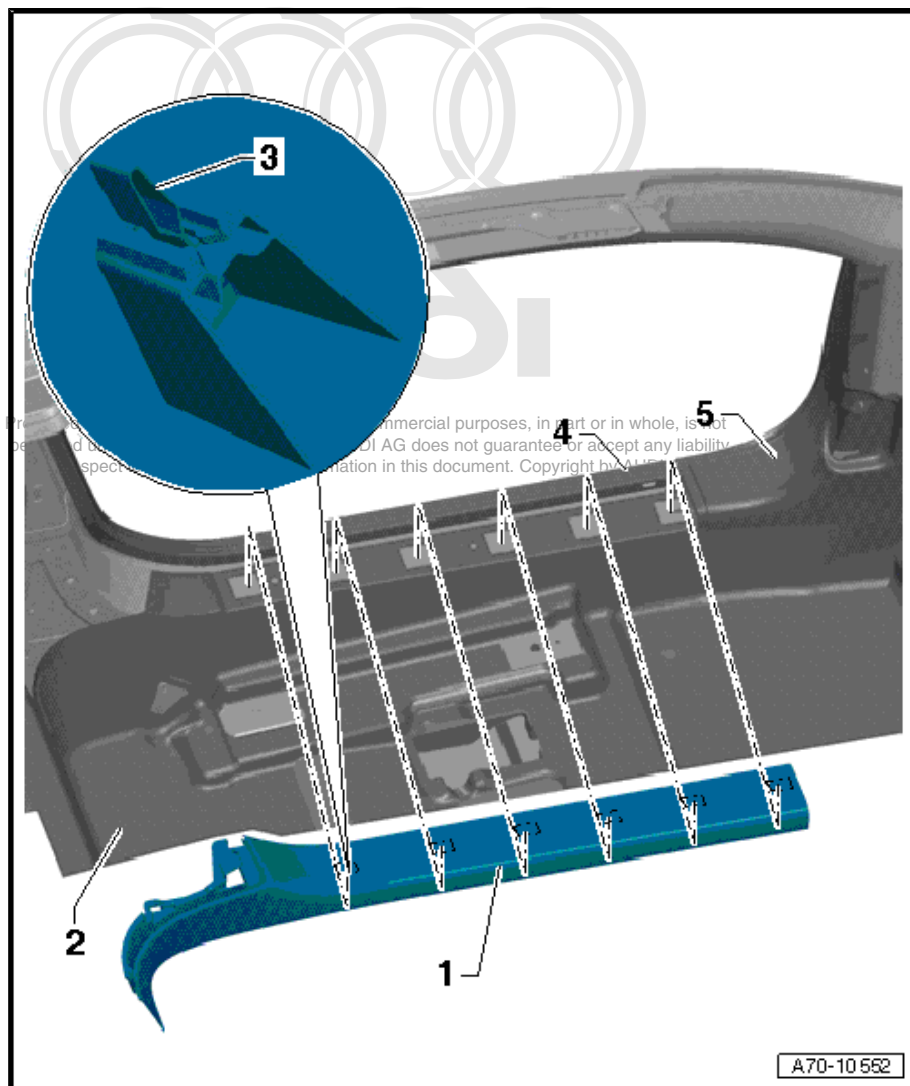
2 - Floor covering

3 - Clip

- ❑ 6x
- ❑ Renew if damaged or deformed

4 - Door seal

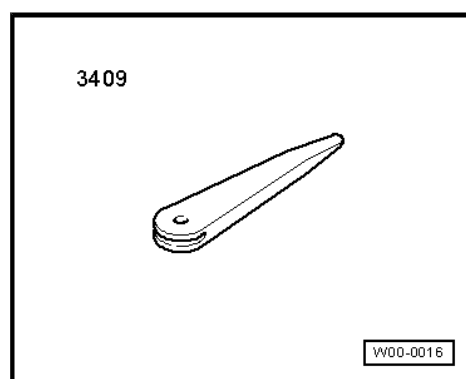
5 - A-pillar trim (bottom)



4.10 Removing sill panel trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal wedge -3409-



Removing

- Remove side trim -1- ⇒ [page 175](#) .

- Unclip sill panel trim -3- using removal wedge -3409- .

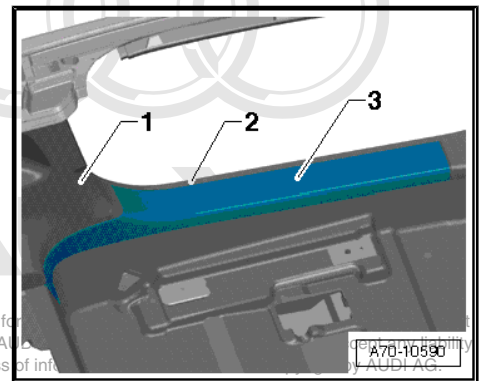
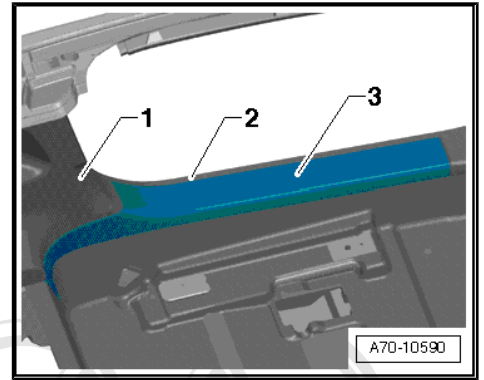
Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

Note

- ◆ *If the clips for the trim have been left behind in the mounting points on the body, remove them and insert them in the trim.*
- ◆ *Check the clips for damage or deformation and renew them if necessary.*

- Fold lip of door seal -2- over sill panel trim -3-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private use is permitted unless authorised by Audi AG. All rights reserved. with respect to the correctness of information. Audi AG

4.11 Exploded view of C-pillar trim

1 - C-pillar trim

- ❑ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 172](#)

2 - Fastener

3 - Spring clip

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ Renew if damaged or deformed

4 - Spring clip

- ❑ With catch
- ❑ Renew on vehicles without keyhole
- ❑ Renew on vehicles with keyhole if damaged or deformed

5 - A-pillar trim (top)

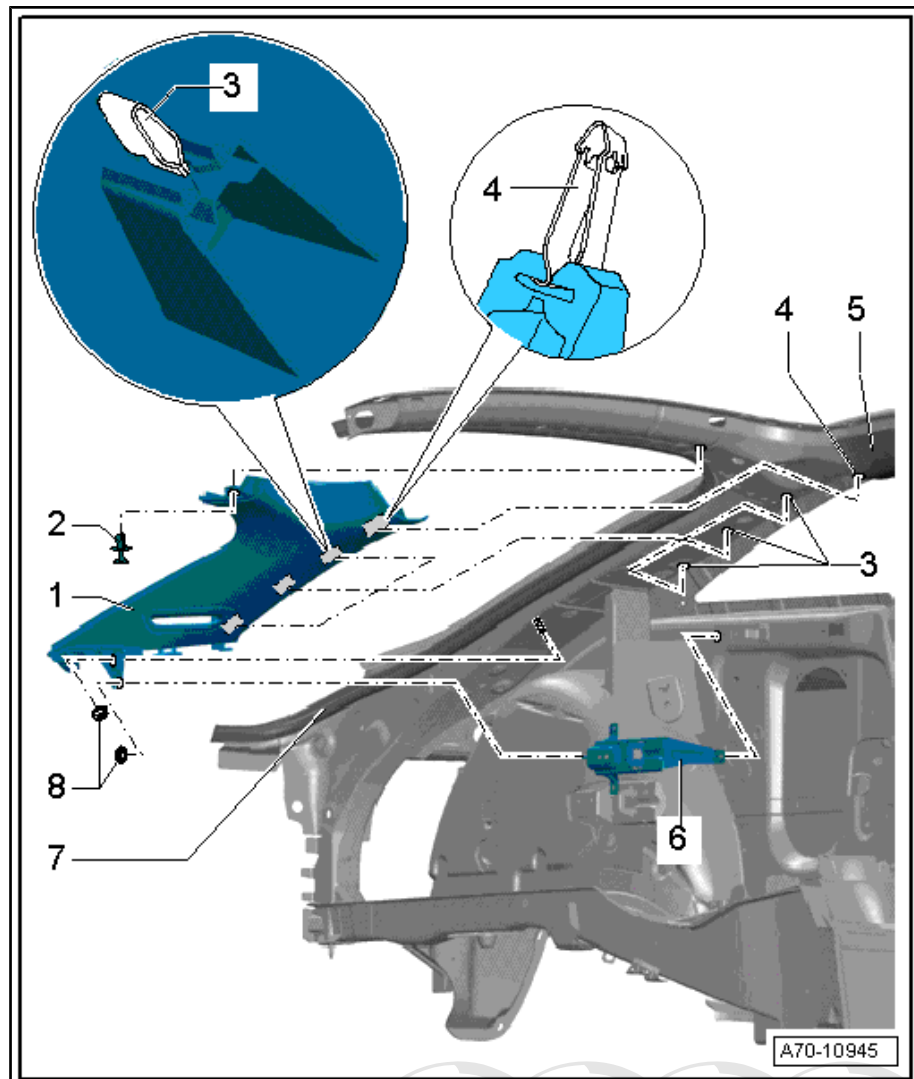
6 - Bracket

- ❑ For C-pillar trim, rear side trim and luggage compartment side trim
- ❑ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 177](#)
- ❑ Tightening torque for bolts for bracket
⇒ [page 175](#)

7 - Rear lid seal

8 - Nut

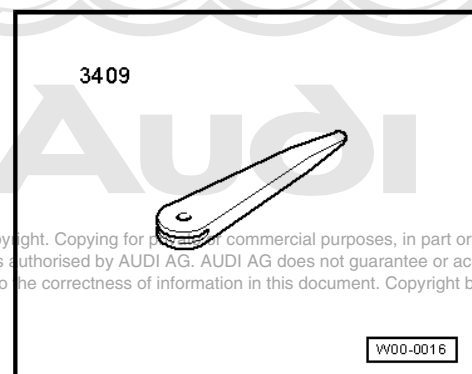
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 3.5 Nm



4.12 Removing and installing C-pillar trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal wedge -3409-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

- Remove luggage compartment side trim ⇒ [page 189](#).
- Remove outer belt end fitting (rear) ⇒ [page 62](#).

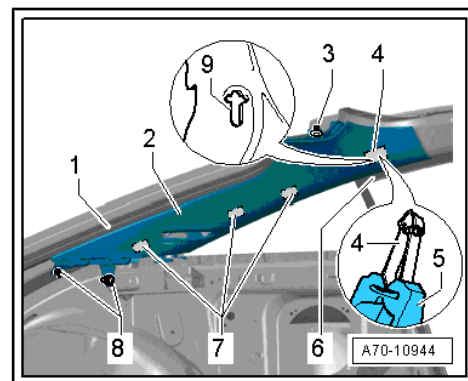
- Remove roof end trim ⇒ [page 179](#) .
- Unscrew nuts -8-.
- Remove fastener -3-.

 **Note**

Approx. from week 05/2007 onwards, a keyhole -9- was introduced for the spring clip »with catch« -4- on the body side.

 **Caution**

On vehicles produced prior to week 05/2007, the C-pillar trim -2- could be damaged if the C-pillar trim is not removed correctly. It is important that you keep exactly to the following work steps.



- Unclip C-pillar trim -2- at spring clips -7- (3x) using removal wedge -3409- .

Vehicles with keyhole:

- Push spring clip -4- with C-pillar trim -2- upwards and towards front out of keyhole.

Vehicles without keyhole:

- Detach C-pillar trim -2- by pulling downwards and towards rear. Spring clip -4- must slide out of support -5- of C-pillar trim -2-. Spring clip -4- will remain attached to body.
- Carefully detach spring clip -4- from body.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

 **Note**

- ◆ *If spring clips -7- have been left behind in the mounting points on the body, remove them and insert them in the trim.*
- ◆ *Check spring clips -4- and -7- for damage or deformation and renew if necessary.*

Vehicles without keyhole:

- Renew spring clip -4-.
- Slide spring clip -4- into support -5- of C-pillar trim -2-.
- Attach spring clip -4- like spring clips -7-.

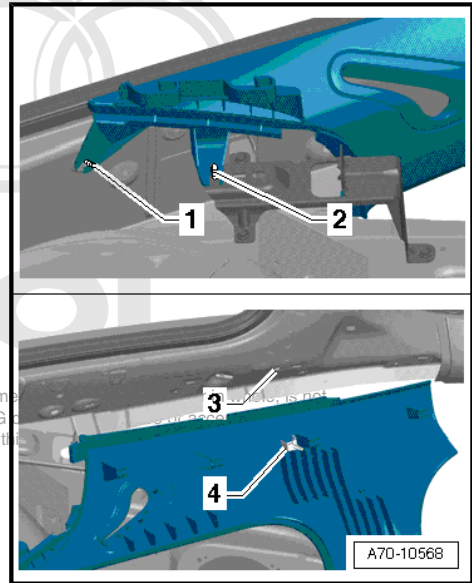
All vehicles:



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

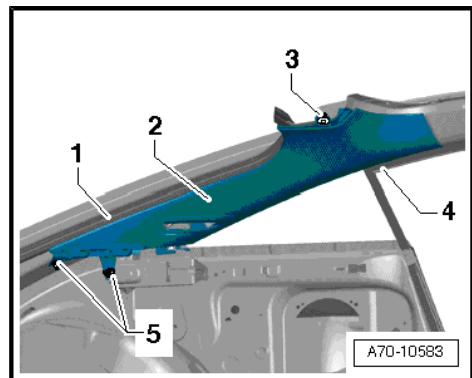


- Make sure that centring pin -4- slides into mounting -3- on body.



- Fold lip of door seal -4- and lip of rear lid seal -1- over C-pillar trim -2-.

Tightening torque ⇒ [page 172](#)



4.13 Exploded view of rear side trim

1 - Rear side trim

- Removing and installing
 ⇒ [page 175](#)

2 - Mounting for retaining clip

- 3x
- Renew if damaged

3 - Retaining clip

- 3x
- Inserted in body
- Renew if damaged

4 - Luggage compartment side trim

5 - Bracket (bottom)

- Riveted to body

6 - Bolt

- 3x
- 8 Nm

7 - Bracket (top)

- For C-pillar trim, rear side trim and luggage compartment side trim
- Removing and installing
 ⇒ [page 177](#)

8 - Door seal

9 - C-pillar trim

10 - Bolt

- 1 Nm

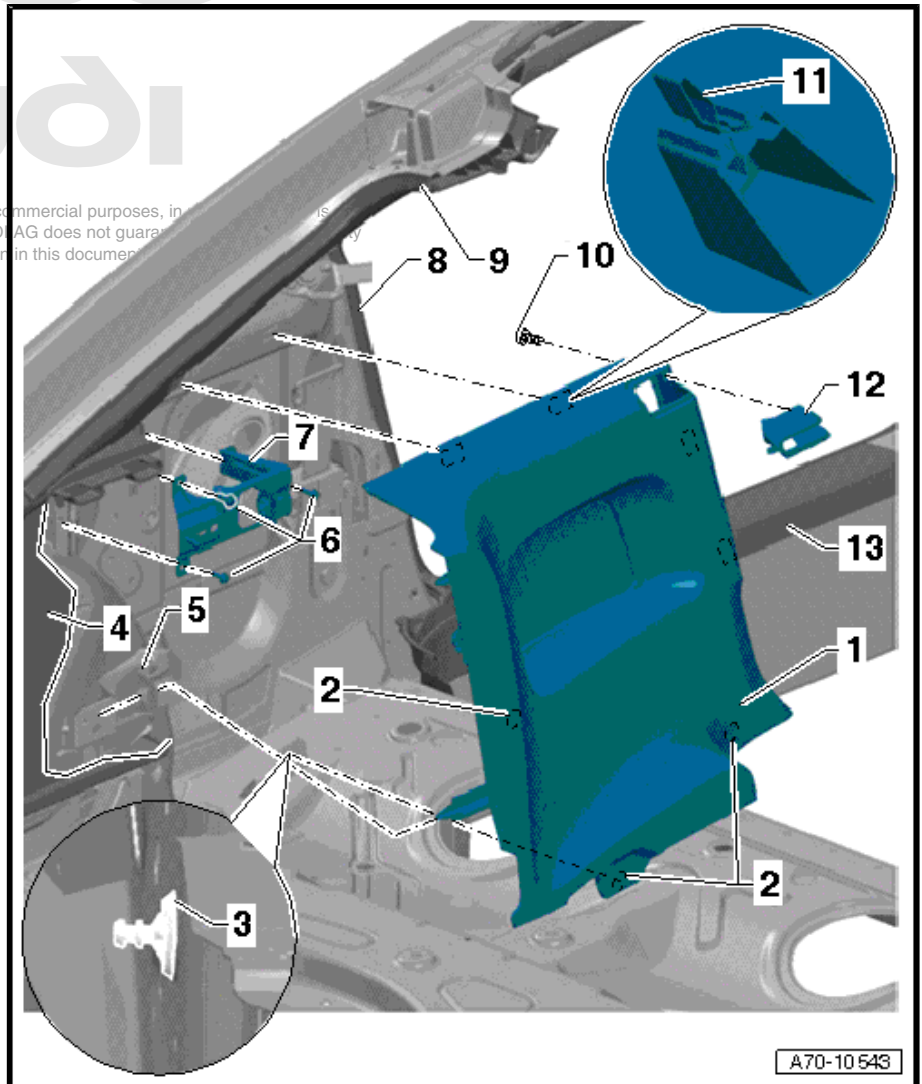
11 - Clip

- 4x
- Renew if damaged or deformed

12 - Belt exit point trim

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 178](#)

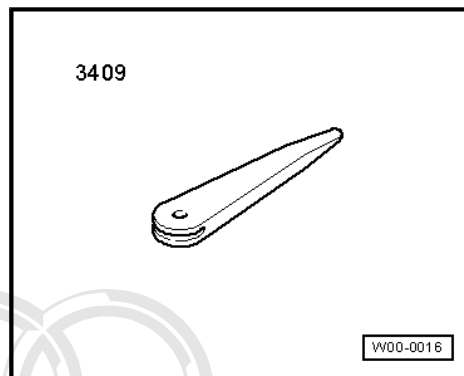
13 - Sill panel trim



4.14 Removing and installing rear side trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

◆ Removal wedge -3409-



Removing

- Remove rear seat bench => [page 383](#) .
- Working from bottom front to bottom rear, unclip rear side trim -2- using removal wedge -3409- .
- Fold rear seat backrest forwards.
- Unclip rear side trim -2- at top using removal wedge -3409- and detach.

Only if rear side trim is to be removed.

- Remove outer belt end fitting (front) => [page 56](#) .

Installing

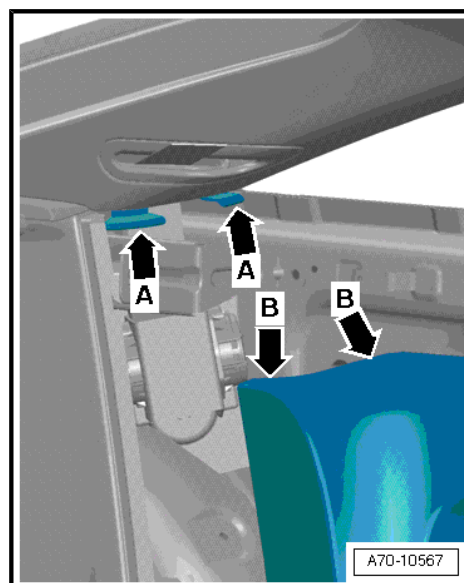
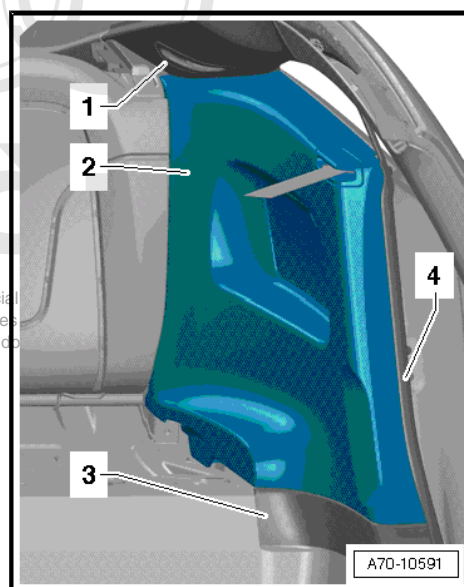
Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:



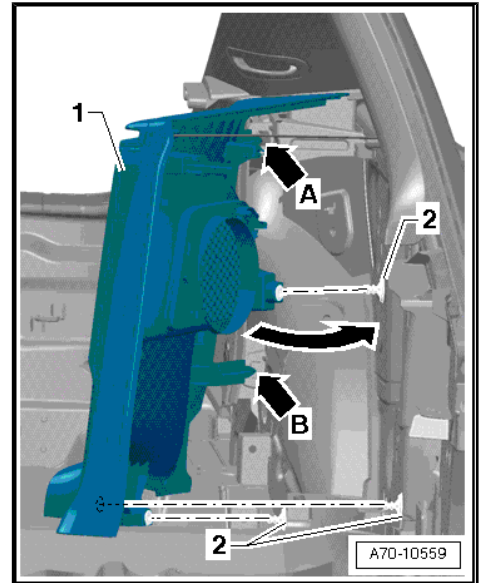
Note

- ◆ For the rear side trim, there are clips => [Item 11 \(page 175\)](#) which are inserted in the rear side trim and retaining clips => [Item 3 \(page 175\)](#) which are inserted in the body.
- ◆ Remove clips left in body and insert them in trim. Remove retaining clips left in trim and insert them in body.
- ◆ Check clips and retaining clips for damage or deformation and renew if necessary.

- Engage rear side trim with lugs -arrows B- in mountings -arrows A- of C-pillar trim.

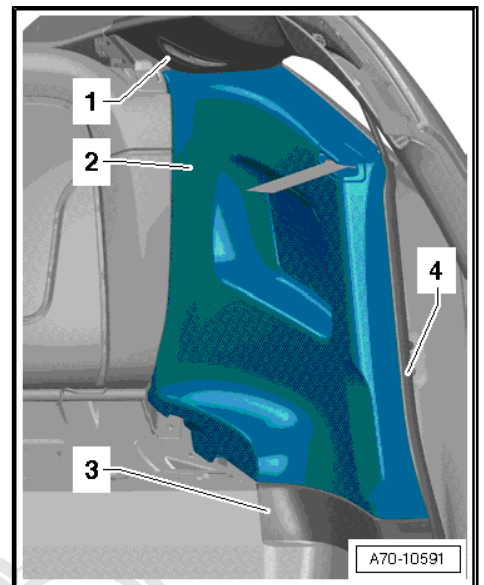


- Insert rear side trim -1- with centring pins -arrow A- and -arrow B- in mountings.
- Swivel rear side trim -1- in direction of -arrow- and press rear side trim -1- onto retaining clips -2-.



- Fold lip of door seal -4- over rear side trim -2-.

Tightening torque ⇒ [page 175](#)



4.15 Removing and installing bracket for C-pillar trim, rear side trim and luggage compartment side trim

Removing

- Remove rear side trim ⇒ [page 175](#) .
- Remove luggage compartment side trim ⇒ [page 189](#) .
- Remove C-pillar trim ⇒ [page 172](#) .

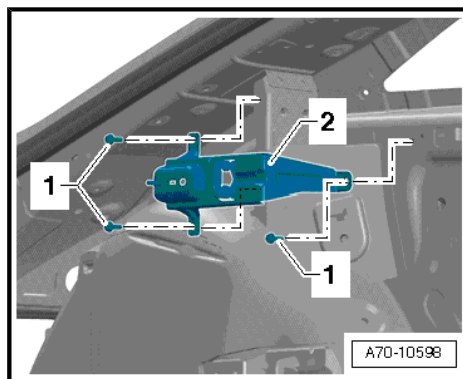
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Remove bolts -1- and detach bracket -2-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening torque ⇒ [page 175](#)



4.16 Removing and installing belt exit point trim

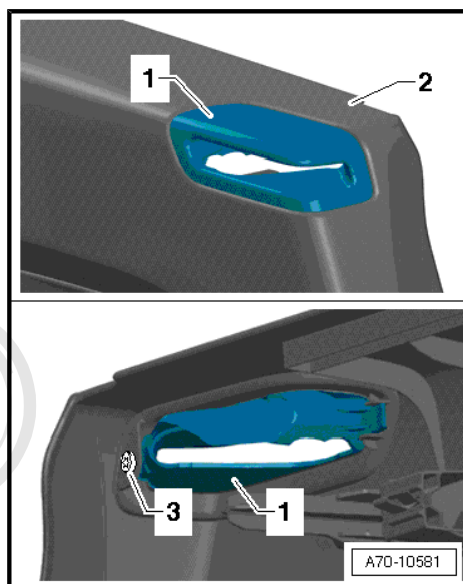
Removing

- Remove rear side trim ⇒ [page 175](#) .
- Remove bolt -3- from rear side trim -2-.
- Swivel belt exit point trim -1- out of rear side trim -2-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening torque ⇒ [page 175](#)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4.17 Exploded view of roof end trim

1 - Roof end trim

- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 179](#)

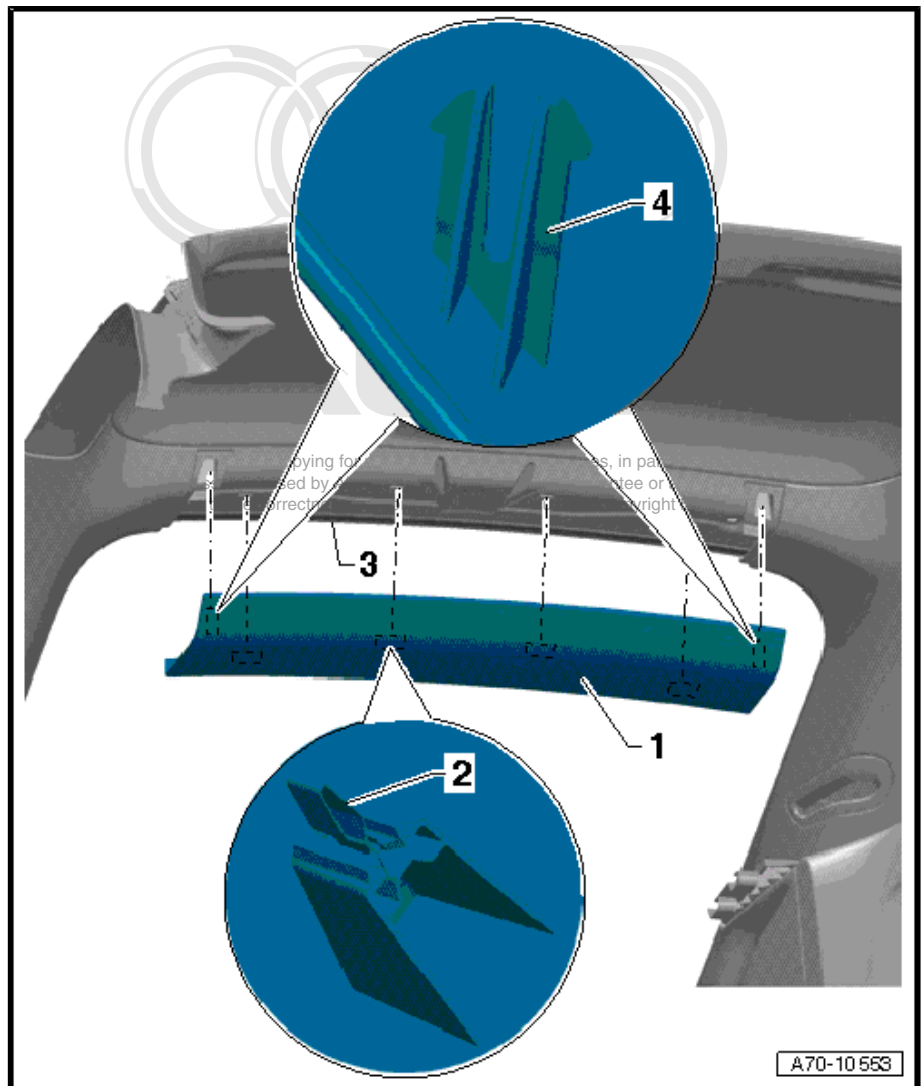
2 - Clip

- 2x
- Renew if damaged or deformed

3 - Rear lid seal

4 - Retaining tabs

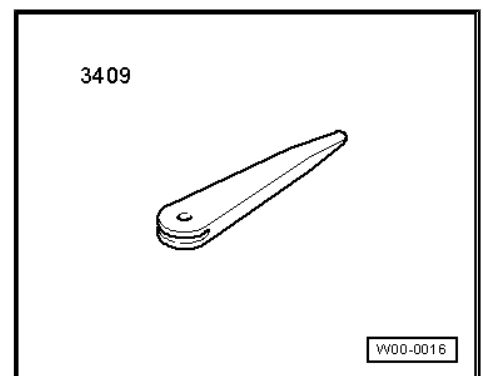
- 2x



4.18 Removing and installing roof end trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal wedge -3409-



Removing

- Unclip roof end trim -1- using removal wedge -3409- .

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

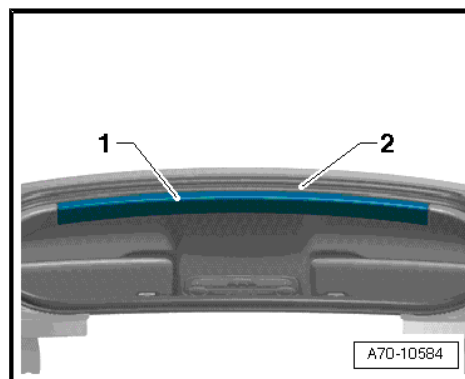
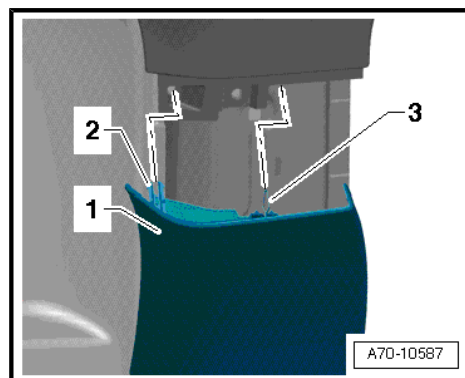
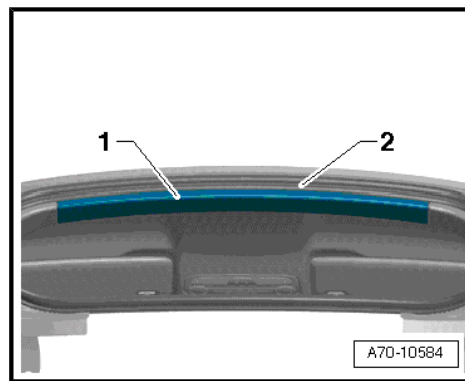


Note

- ◆ *If the clips for the trim have been left behind in the mounting points on the body, remove them and insert them in the trim.*
- ◆ *Check the clips for damage or deformation and renew them if necessary.*

- Start by inserting roof end trim -1- with centring pin -2- in mounting.
- Press outer clip -3- into mounting. Then press in remaining clips.

- Fold lip of rear lid seal -2- over roof end trim -1-.



Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4.19 Exploded view of floor covering

1 - Floor covering

- One-piece
- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 181](#)

2 - Fastener

- 8x

3 - Omega clips

- 2x
- Welded to body
- Cannot be renewed
- For securing seat bench and floor covering

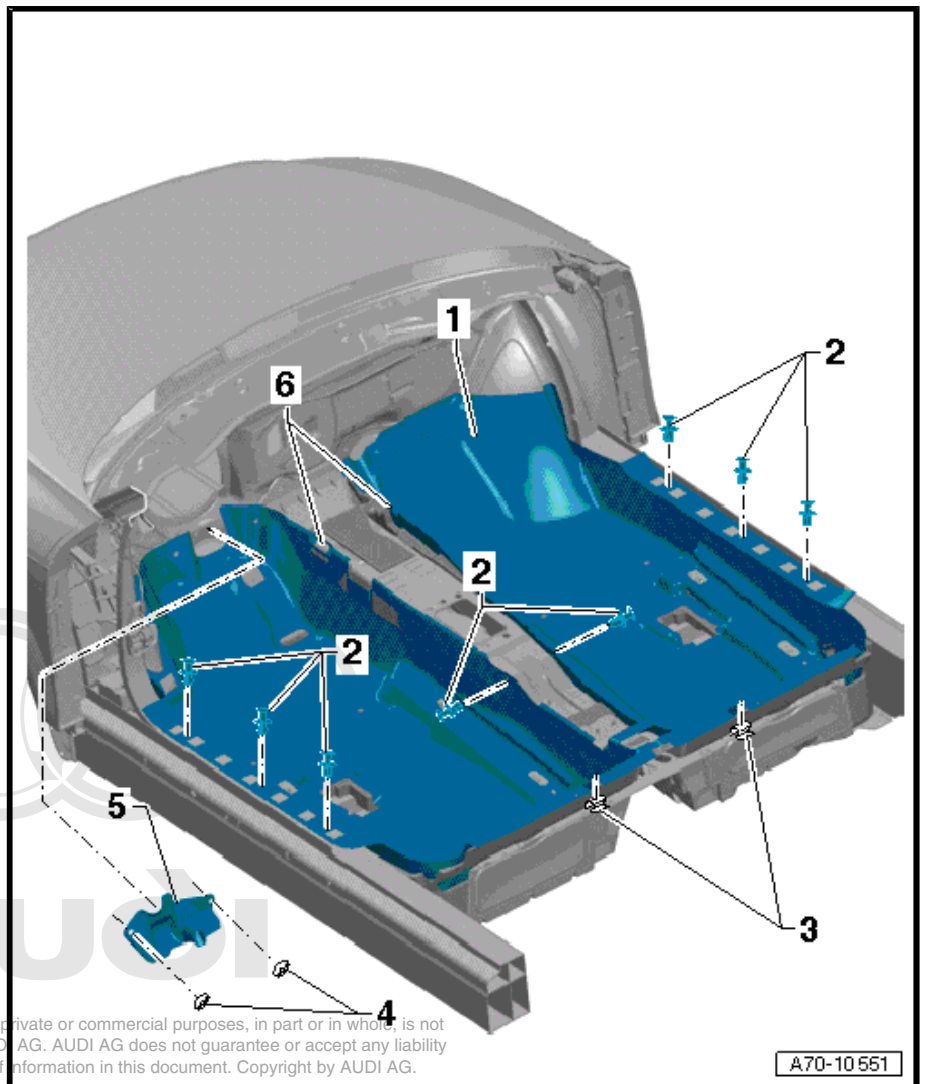
4 - Stud

- 2x

5 - Cover for universal joint on steering column

6 - Retainer

- For securing floor covering



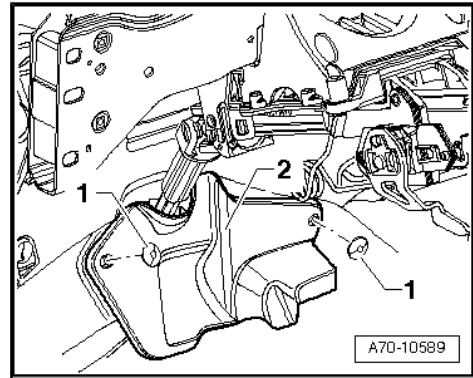
4.20 Removing and installing floor covering

Removing

- Remove front seats (left and right) ⇒ [page 243](#) .
- Remove rear seat bench ⇒ [page 383](#) .
- Remove dash panel trim (driver side) ⇒ [page 5](#) .
- Remove entire centre console ⇒ [page 23](#) .
- Remove accelerator pedal module ⇒ Rep. gr. 20 .



- Twist out studs -1- and detach cover for for universal joint on steering column.
- Remove A-pillar trim (bottom) on both sides => [page 166](#) .
- Remove sill panel trim (left and right) => [page 170](#) .
- Remove foot rest cover => [page 169](#) .
- Remove outer belt end fitting (front) => [page 56](#) .



- Remove fasteners -2- (8x).
- Unhook floor covering from retainers -1-.
- Disengage floor covering at omega clips -3-.
- Disengage wiring harness -4- and -5- from mountings.
- Pull floor covering -6- towards rear.



Note

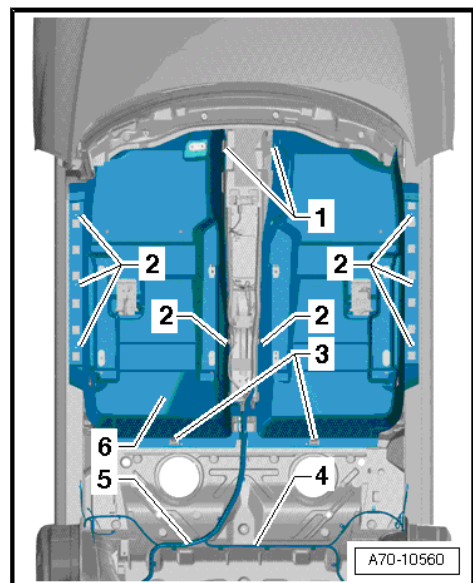
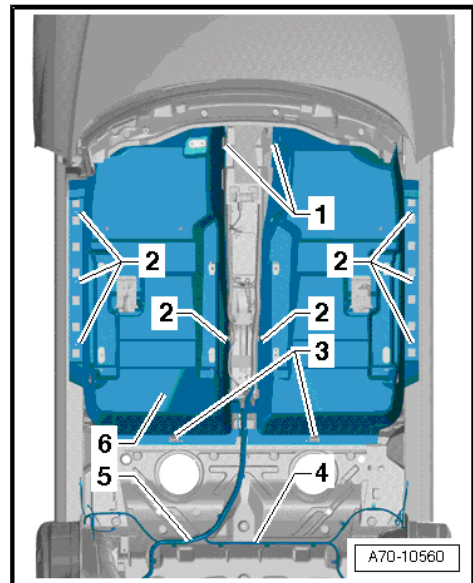
Make sure that floor covering does not tear at openings.

- Fold up floor covering lengthwise, guide it through beneath wiring harness -4- and -5- and take it out through one of the doors.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

- Fold up new floor covering lengthwise and place it in vehicle.
- Start by sliding floor covering as far forwards as possible until hole patterns of accelerator pedal module, foot rest and cover for universal joint on steering column are aligned.
- Then engage floor covering at retainers -1- and omega clips -3-.
- Then fit fasteners -2- (8x).



4.21 Exploded view of rear lid trim panels

1 - Rear lid trim (bottom)

- Removing and installing
 ⇒ [page 184](#)

2 - Cap

- For manual release of rear lid

3 - Bolt

- 1.8 Nm
- 2x

4 - Clip

- 4x for rear lid trim (bottom)
- 10x for rear lid trim (top)
- Renew if damaged or deformed

5 - Bolt

- 1.8 Nm
- 2x

6 - Ball-head pin

- Supplied as replacement part together with rear lid trim (top)

7 - Rear lid trim (top)

- Removing and installing
 ⇒ [page 183](#)

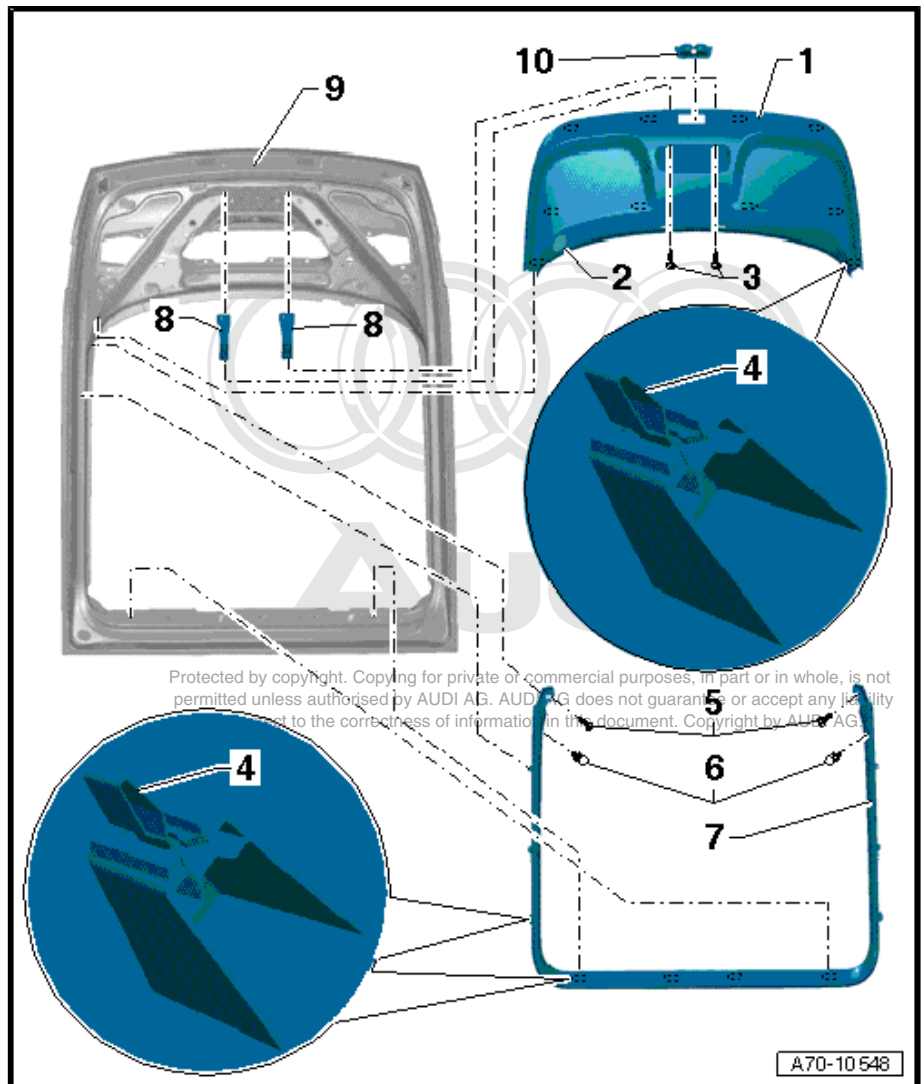
8 - Support

- Engaged in rear lid and bolted to rear lid trim (bottom)

9 - Rear lid

10 - Trim for rear lid lock

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 185](#)



4.22 Removing and installing rear lid trim (top)

Removing

- Remove rear lid trim (bottom) ⇒ [page 184](#) .



- Detach clip -1- for wiring harness (left and right).
- Remove bolt -2- (left and right).

Only if rear lid trim (top) -4- is to be renewed:

- Remove ball-head pin -3- (left and right).
- Start by detaching rear lid trim (top) -4- at bottom in direction of -arrow A- (left and right).
- Then lift off rear lid trim (top) -4- in direction of -arrow B- with help of a second mechanic.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:



Note

◆ *If the clips for the trim have been left behind in the mounting points on the body, remove them and insert them in the trim.*

◆ *Check the clips for damage or deformation and renew them if necessary.*

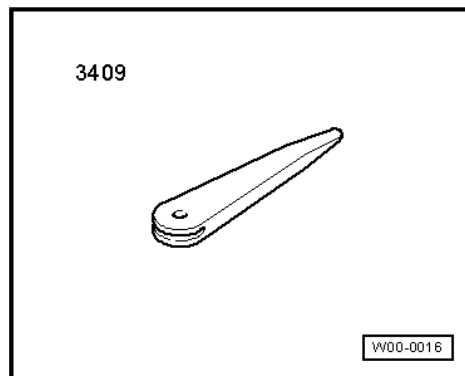
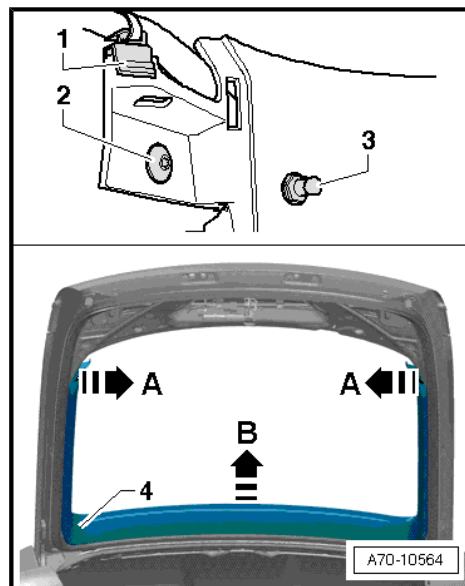
- Insert rear lid trim (top) together with a second mechanic. Press on rear lid trim (top), working from bottom to top.

Tightening torque ⇒ [page 183](#)

4.23 Removing and installing rear lid trim (bottom)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal wedge -3409-



Removing

- Disengage rear shelf.

- Remove bolts -2-.
- Unclip rear lid trim (bottom) -1- using removal wedge -3409- .

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

Note

- ◆ *If the clips for the trim have been left behind in the mounting points on the body, remove them and insert them in the trim.*
- ◆ *Check the clips for damage or deformation and renew them if necessary.*

Tightening torque ⇒ [page 183](#)

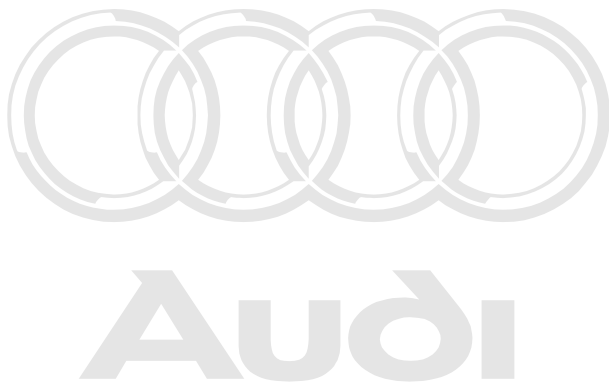
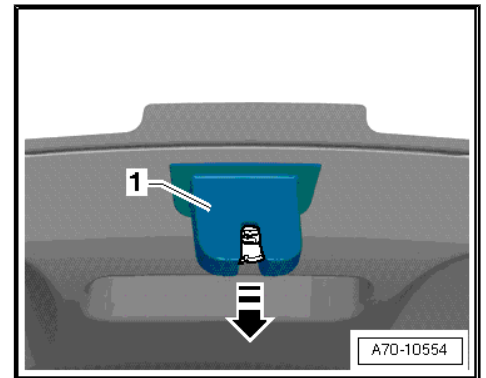
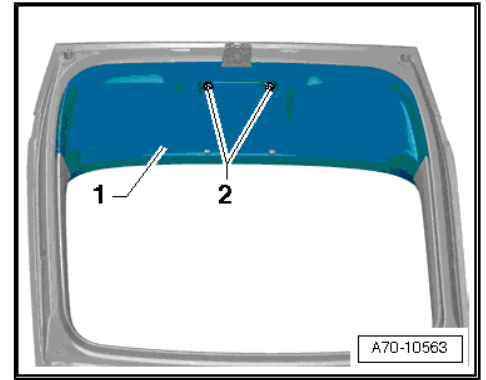
4.24 Removing and installing trim for rear lid lock

Removing

- Detach trim for rear lid lock -1- in direction of -arrow-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4.25 Exploded view of rear shelf

1 - Front section of rear shelf

- ❑ Engaged in C-pillar trim (side)
- ❑ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 186](#)

2 - C-pillar trim

3 - Rear section of rear shelf

- ❑ Engaged in rear lid trim (bottom)
- ❑ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 187](#)

4 - Rear lid trim (bottom)

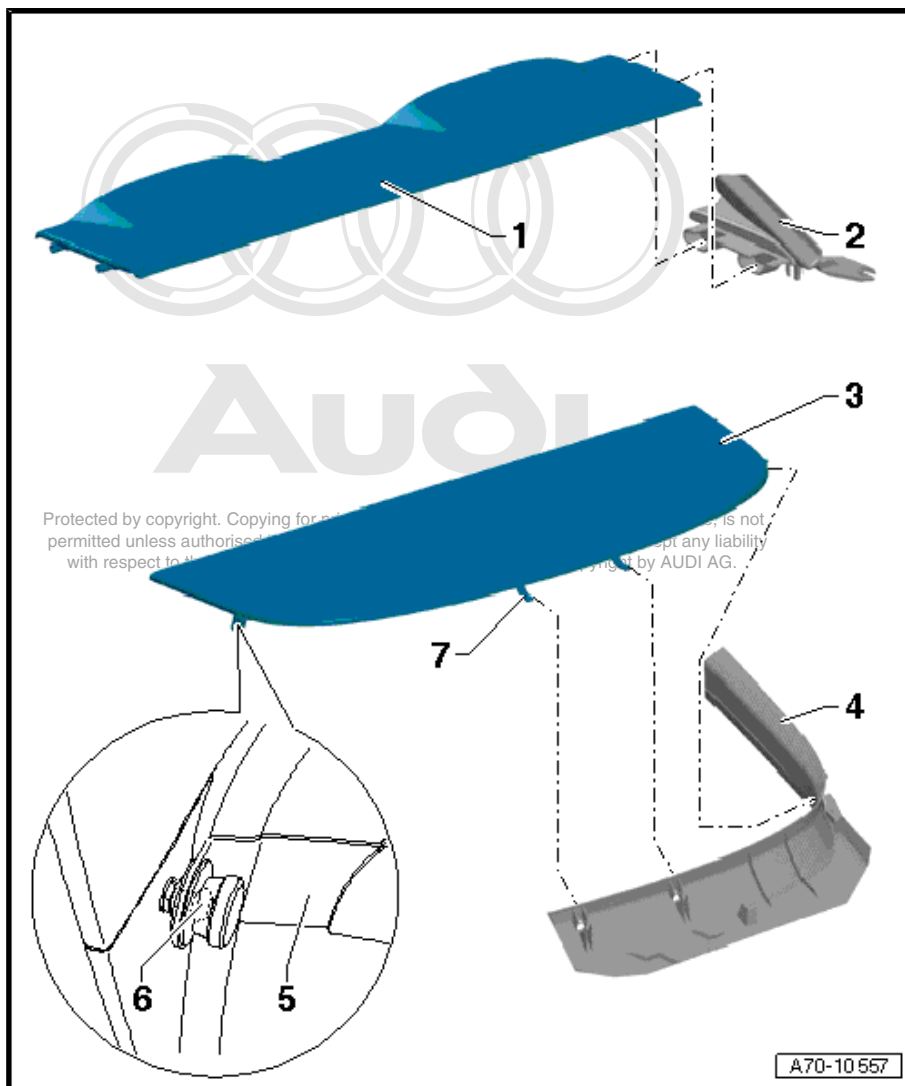
5 - Bracket

6 - Retaining clip

- ❑ Screwed into rear lid trim (top)

7 - Retainer

- ❑ Engaged in rear lid trim (bottom)



4.26 Removing and installing front section of rear shelf

Removing

- Pull front section of rear shelf to rear out of its mounting and lift it out of C-pillar trim.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

- Press front section of rear shelf as far forwards as it will go in its mounting.

4.27 Removing and installing rear section of rear shelf

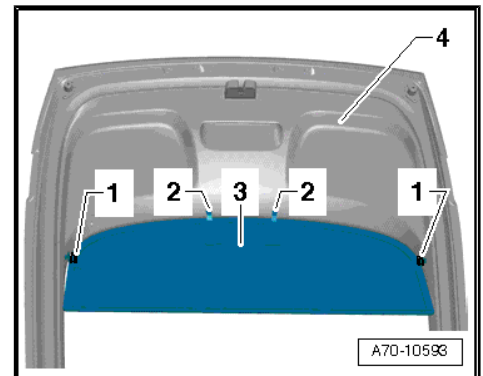
Removing

- Detach retainers -1- of rear section of rear shelf -3- from retaining clips.
- Pull rear section of rear shelf -3- with lugs -2- vertically out of openings in rear lid trim (bottom) -4-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

- Press home rear section of rear shelf -1- into rear lid trim (bottom) -3-.



4.28 Exploded view of rear cross panel trim

1 - Rear cross panel trim

- Removing and installing
 => [page 188](#)

2 - Rear lid seal

3 - Pin

- 2x
- Secured to body

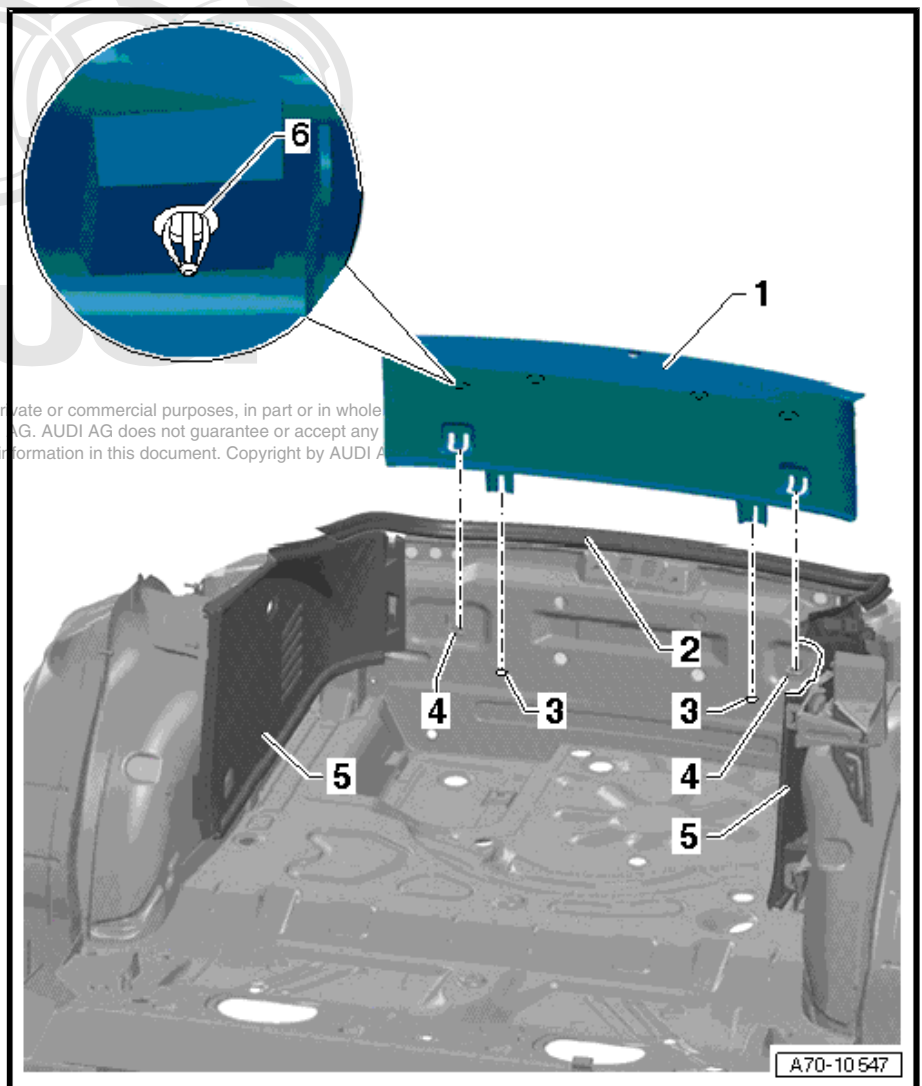
4 - Eyelet

- 2x
- Secured to body

5 - Luggage compartment side trim

6 - Clip

- 4x
- Renew if damaged or deformed



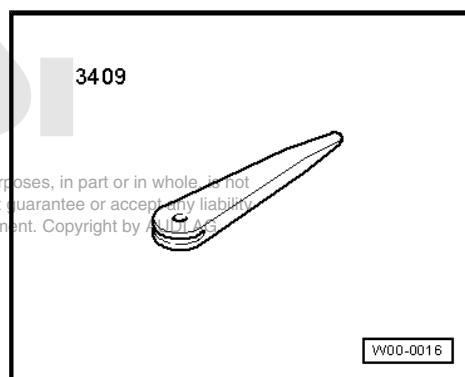


4.29 Removing and installing rear cross panel trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal wedge -3409-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Audi AG.



Removing

- Unclip rear cross panel trim -1- vertically upwards using removal wedge -3409- .

Installing

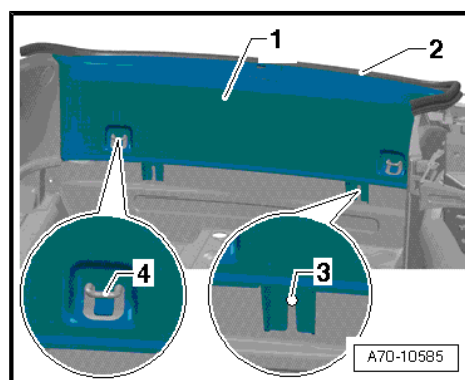
Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:



Note

Check the clips for damage or deformation and renew if necessary.

- Insert rear cross panel trim -1- so that retainers (left and right) engage in pins -3- and eyelets -4-.
- Fold lip of rear lid seal -2- over rear cross panel trim -1-.



4.30 Exploded view of luggage compartment side trim

1 - Luggage compartment side trim

- Removing and installing
 ⇒ [page 189](#)

2 - Bolt

- 4 Nm

3 - Fastening ring

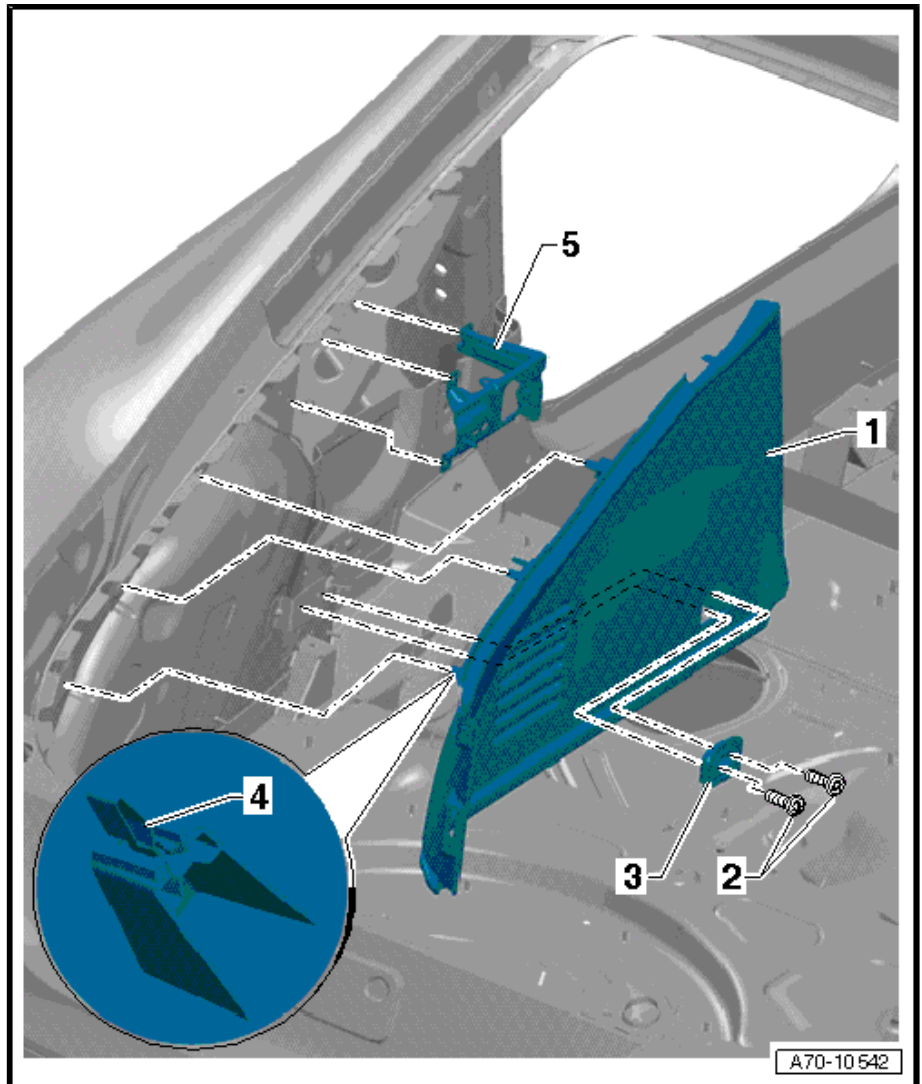
- Removing and installing
 ⇒ [page 190](#)

4 - Clip

- 4x
- Renew if damaged or deformed

5 - Bracket

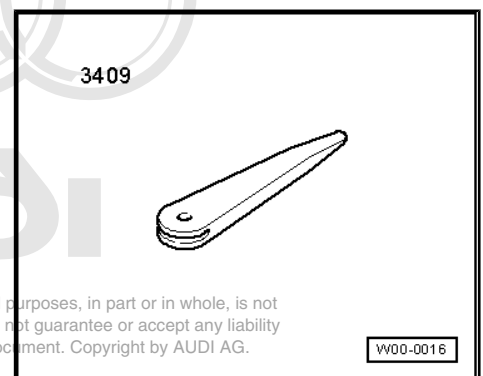
- For C-pillar trim, rear side trim and luggage compartment side trim
- Removing and installing
 ⇒ [page 177](#)
- Tightening torque for bolts for bracket
 ⇒ [page 175](#)



4.31 Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal wedge -3409-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

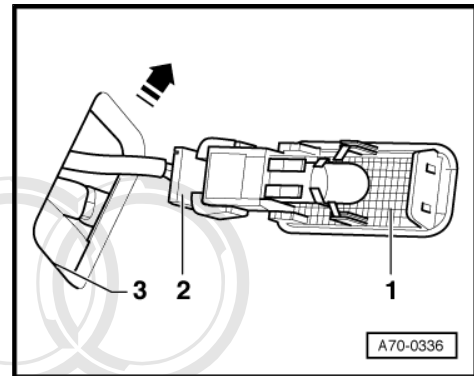
- Fold luggage compartment floor covering forwards.

- Remove rear cross panel trim ⇒ [page 188](#) .

Luggage compartment side trim (right-side) only

- Use a screwdriver to prise out the light -1- at the side -3-.
- Arrow- points in direction of travel.
- Unplug electrical connector -2-.

Both sides (continued)



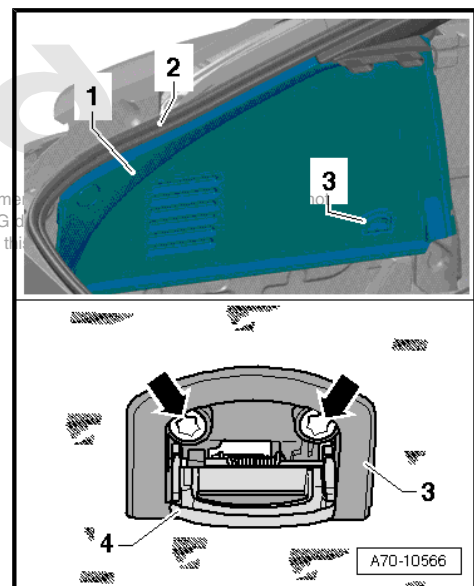
- Fold down bracket -4-.
- Remove bolts -arrows- and detach fastening ring -3-.
- Unclip luggage compartment side trim -1- using removal wedge -3409- .

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

- Fold lip of rear lid seal -2- over luggage compartment side trim -1-.

Tightening torque ⇒ [page 189](#)



4.32 Removing and installing fastening ring

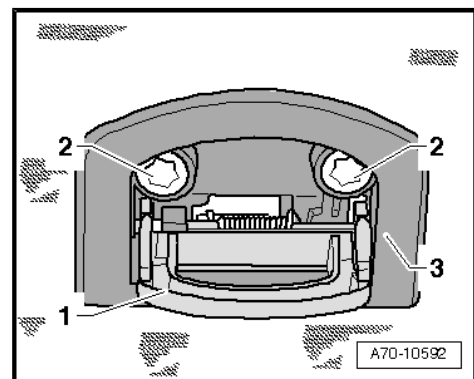
Removing

- Fold down bracket -1-.
- Remove bolts -2- and detach fastening ring -3-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening torque ⇒ [page 189](#)



4.33 Exploded view of luggage compartment floor covering

1 - Rear cross panel trim

- ❑ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 191](#)

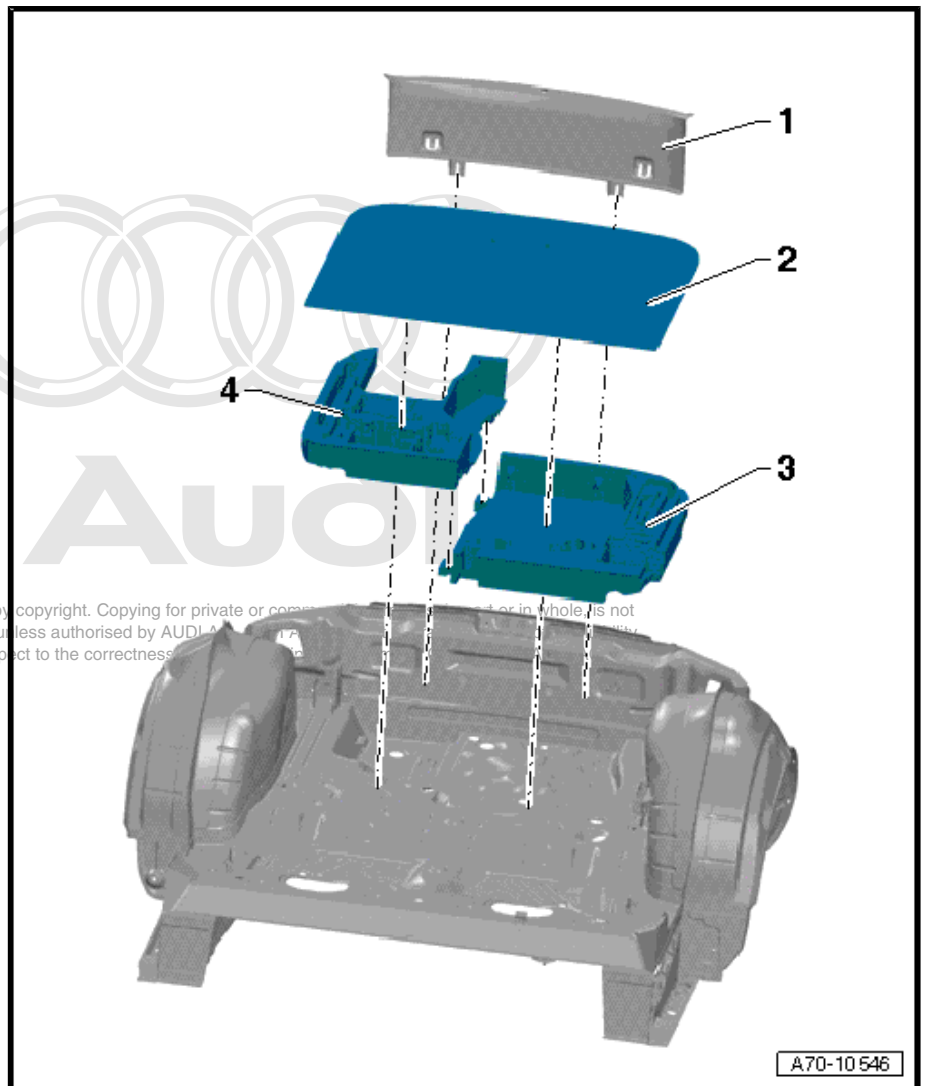
2 - Luggage compartment floor covering

3 - Foam insert (left-side)

- ❑ For tyre sealant can and compressor

4 - Foam insert (right-side)

- ❑ For vehicle tool kit



4.34 Removing and installing luggage compartment floor covering

Removing

- Fold entire luggage compartment floor covering forwards.
- Take floor covering out of luggage compartment.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

5 Trim panels (Roadster)

5.1 Overview of trim panels

Overview of trim panels (passenger compartment)



Note

-Arrow- points in direction of travel

1 - Locking element trim (left-side)

- Exploded view
=> [page 194](#)

2 - Locking element trim (right-side)

- Exploded view
=> [page 194](#)

3 - Sun visor (right-side)

- Exploded view
=> [page 197](#)

4 - Trim for windscreen frame

- Exploded view
=> [page 195](#)

5 - Sun visor (left-side)

- Exploded view
=> [page 197](#)

6 - A-pillar trim (top)

- Exploded view
=> [page 198](#)

7 - A-pillar trim (bottom)

- Exploded view
=> [page 200](#)

8 - Foot rest cover

- Exploded view
=> [page 203](#)

9 - Sill panel trim

- Exploded view
=> [page 205](#)

10 - Floor covering

- Exploded view
=> [page 206](#)

11 - Back panel side trim (left-side)

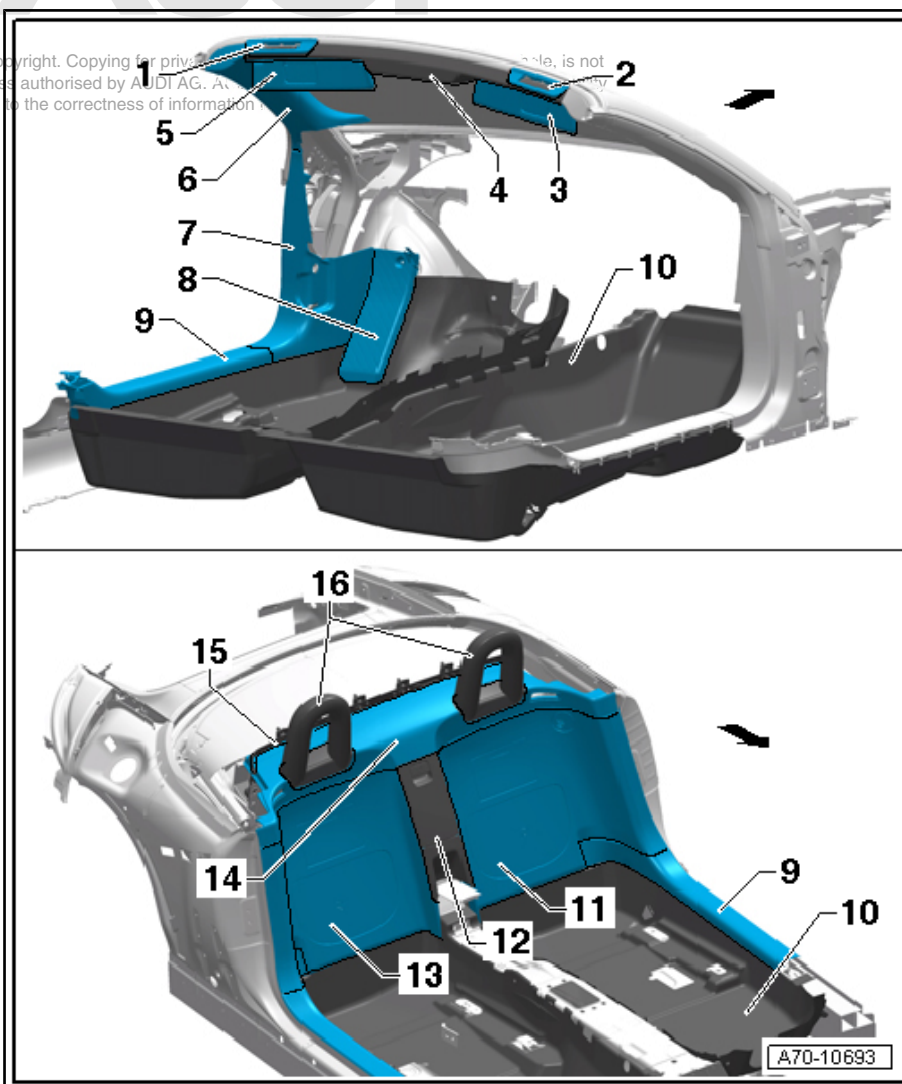
- Exploded view => [page 208](#)

12 - Centre storage compartment

- Exploded view => [page 211](#)

13 - Back panel side trim (right-side)

- Exploded view => [page 208](#)



14 - Back panel cover

- Exploded view ⇒ [page 213](#)

15 - Windbreak

- Exploded view ⇒ [page 217](#)
- Removing and installing convertible roof compartment trim (front) ⇒ [page 218](#)
- Removing and installing convertible roof compartment trim (rear) ⇒ [page 219](#)



Note

16 - Roll-over bar trim

- Exploded view ⇒ [page 215](#)

Overview of trim panels (luggage compartment)

1 - Luggage compartment floor covering

- Exploded view ⇒ [page 221](#)

2 - Rear cross panel trim

- Exploded view ⇒ [page 222](#)

3 - Luggage compartment side trim

- Left side of vehicle
- Exploded view ⇒ [page 224](#)

4 - Luggage compartment trim (top)

- Exploded view ⇒ [page 225](#)

5 - Luggage compartment trim (front)

- Exploded view ⇒ [page 225](#)

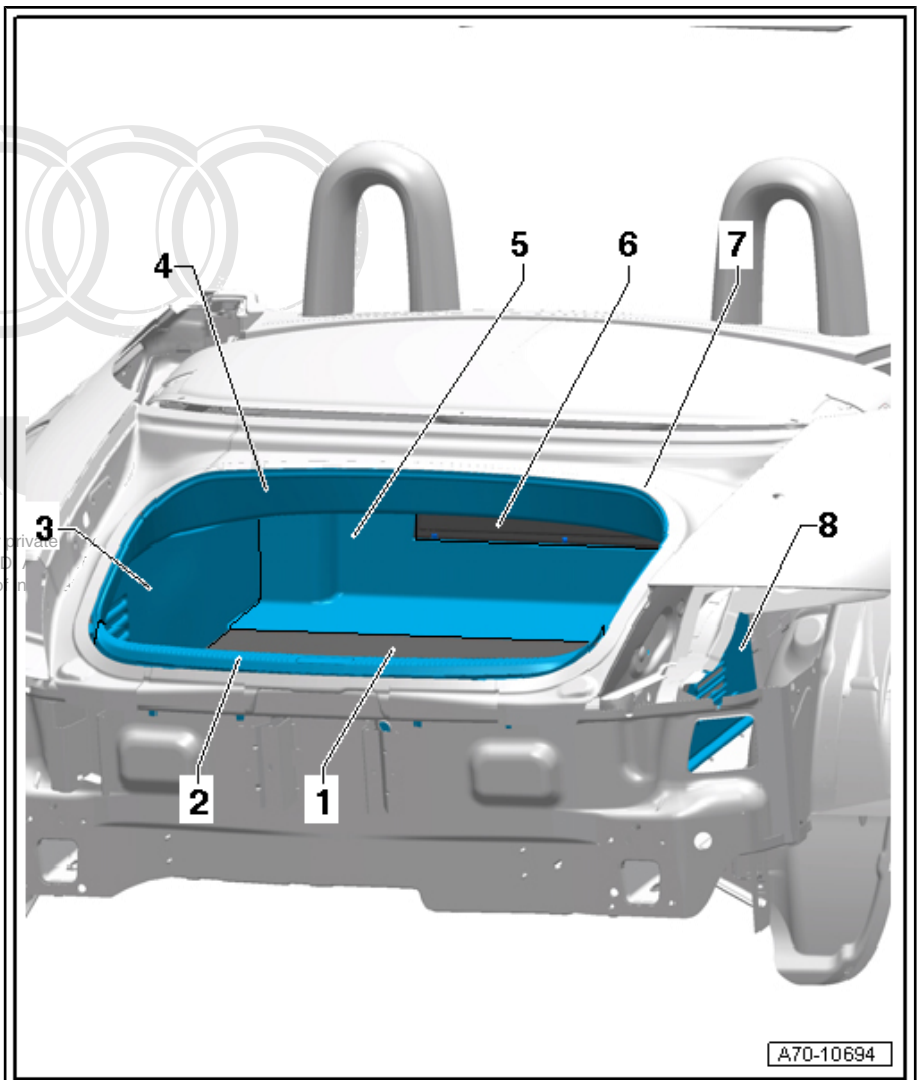
6 - Centre storage compartment (bottom)

- Exploded view ⇒ [page 228](#)

7 - Rear lid seal

8 - Luggage compartment side trim

- Right side of vehicle
- Exploded view ⇒ [page 224](#)



A70-10694

5.2 Exploded view of locking element trim

Note

- ◆ -Arrow- points in direction of travel
- ◆ Convertible roof must be opened before removing and installing locking element trim.

1 - Locking element trim (left-side)

- Pull off by hand to remove
- Clip into windscreen frame to install

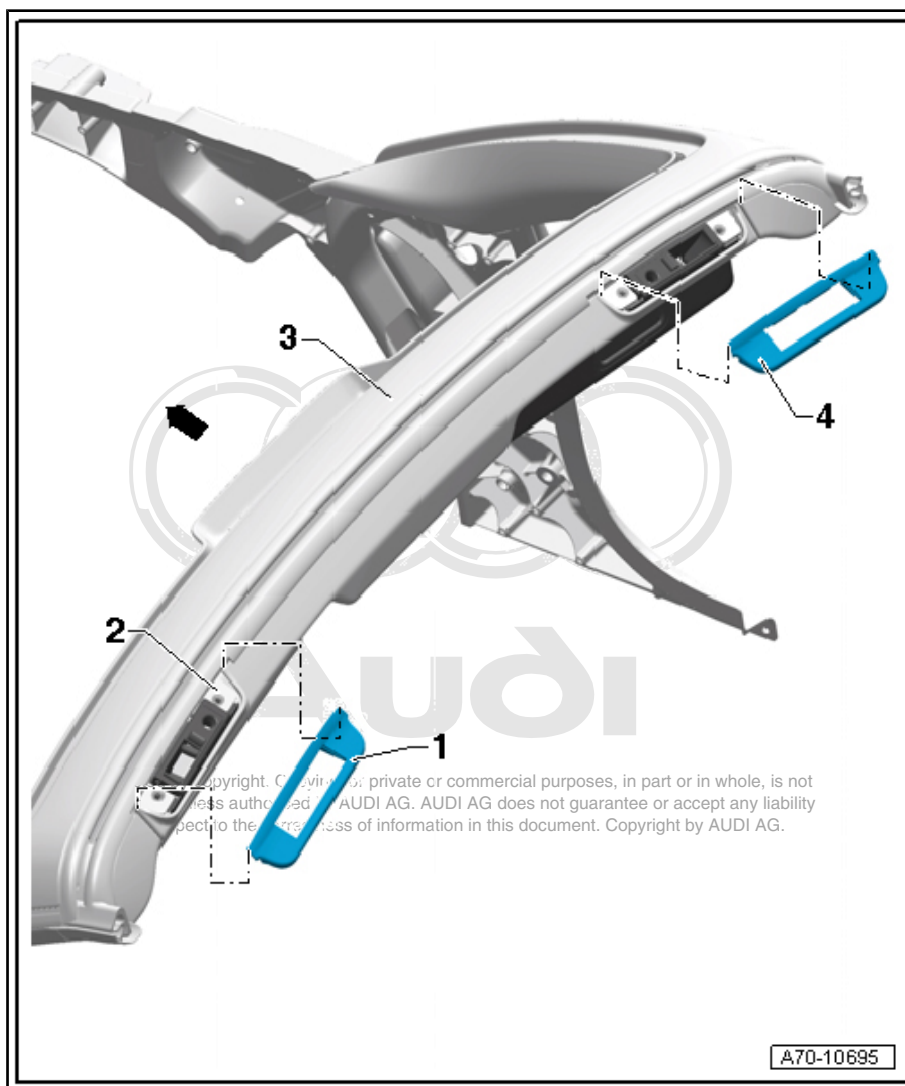
2 - Locking element

- For convertible roof

3 - Windscreen frame

4 - Locking element trim (right-side)

- Pull off by hand to remove
- Clip into windscreen frame to install



5.3 Exploded view of trim for windscreen frame



-Arrow- points in direction of travel.

1 - Trim for windscreen frame

- Removing and installing
 => [page 195](#)

2 - Bolt

- 3.5 Nm
- 2x
- Renew

3 - Buffer

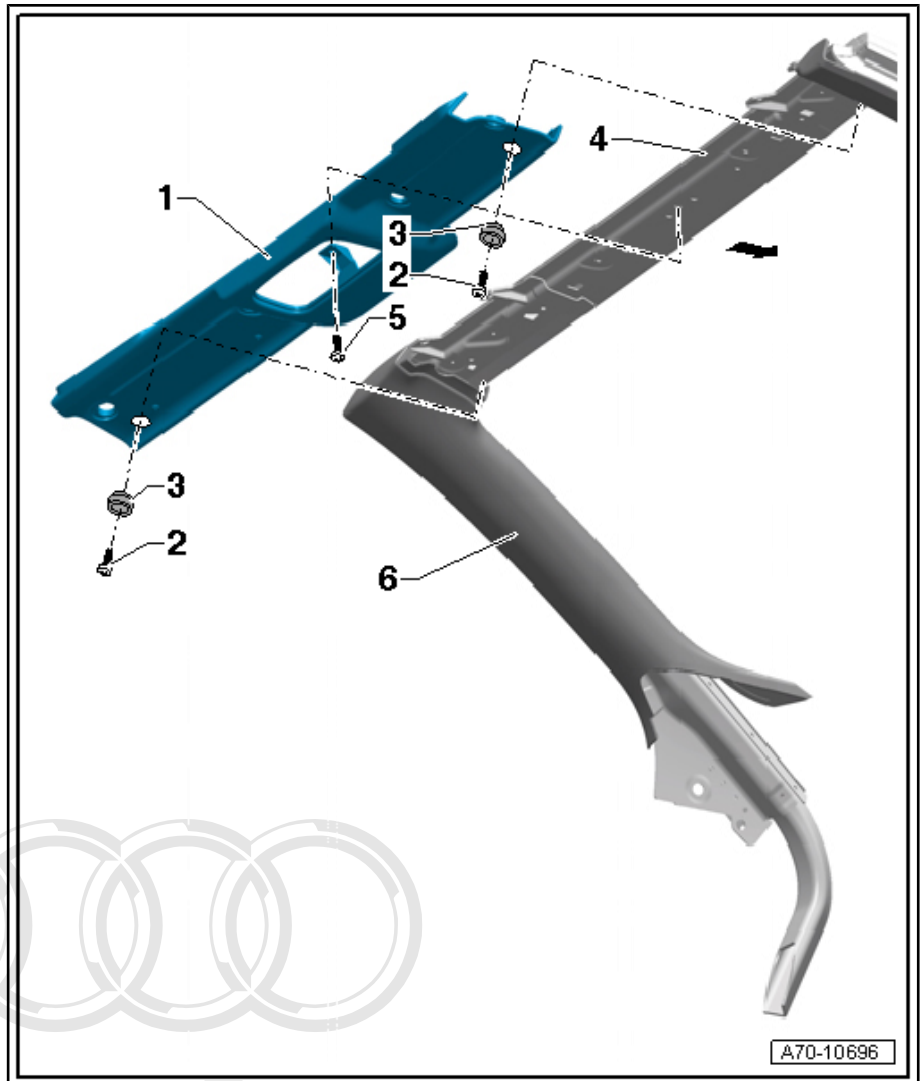
4 - Windscreen frame

5 - Bolt

- 2.0 Nm
- Accessible after removing front interior light - W1-

6 - A-pillar trim (top)

- Must be installed before fitting trim for windscreen frame



5.4 Removing and installing trim for windscreen frame

Removing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

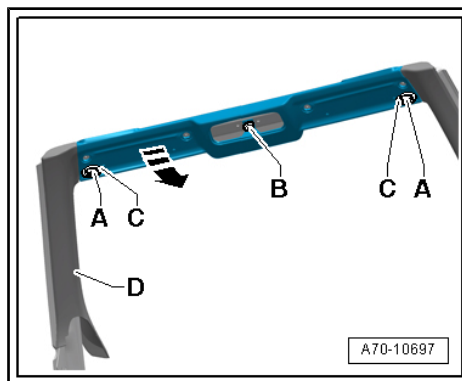
- Remove front interior light -W1- => **Electrical System; Rep. gr. 96** ; Removing and installing interior light/reading light (front) .
- Remove sun visors => [page 197](#) .



- Remove bolts -A- and -B- (latter is located in cut-out for front interior light -W1-). At the same time, remove buffers -C-.
- Starting from side nearest to rear of vehicle, unclip trim for windscreen frame from A-pillar trim (top) -D- and detach in direction of -arrow-.

Installing

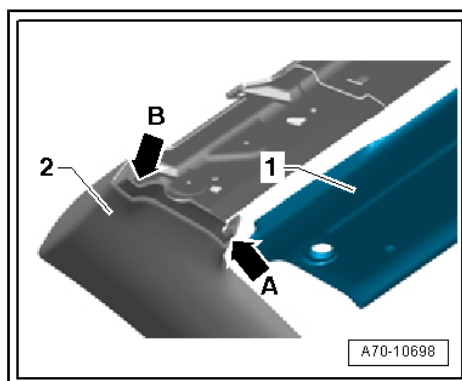
Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:



- Clip trim for windscreen frame -1- into A-pillar trim (top) -2-, starting at side nearest to front of vehicle -arrow A-, and then swivel trim for windscreen frame upwards.

Trim for windscreen frame must engage with A-pillar trim (top) -arrow B-.

Tightening torques ⇒ [page 195](#)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.5 Exploded view of sun visor

1 - Sun visor

- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 197](#)

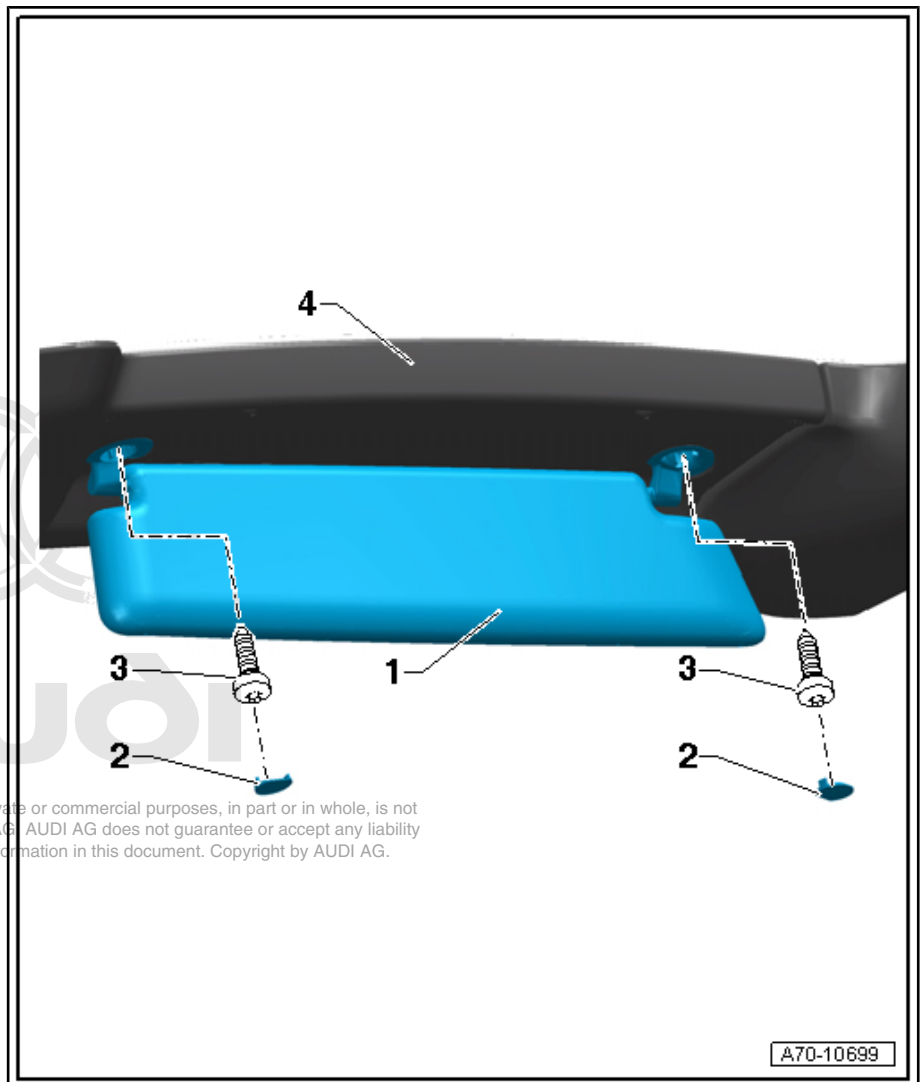
2 - Cap

- 2x

3 - Bolt

- 3.5 Nm
- Renew

4 - Trim for windscreen frame



Removing and installing sun visor

- Fold down sun visor.
- Unclip the two caps from sun visor brackets.
- Remove bolts securing sun visor to windscreen frame and detach sun visor.

Install in reverse order of removal.

5.6 Exploded view of A-pillar trim (top)

1 - A-pillar trim (top)

- ❑ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 198](#)

2 - Windscreen frame

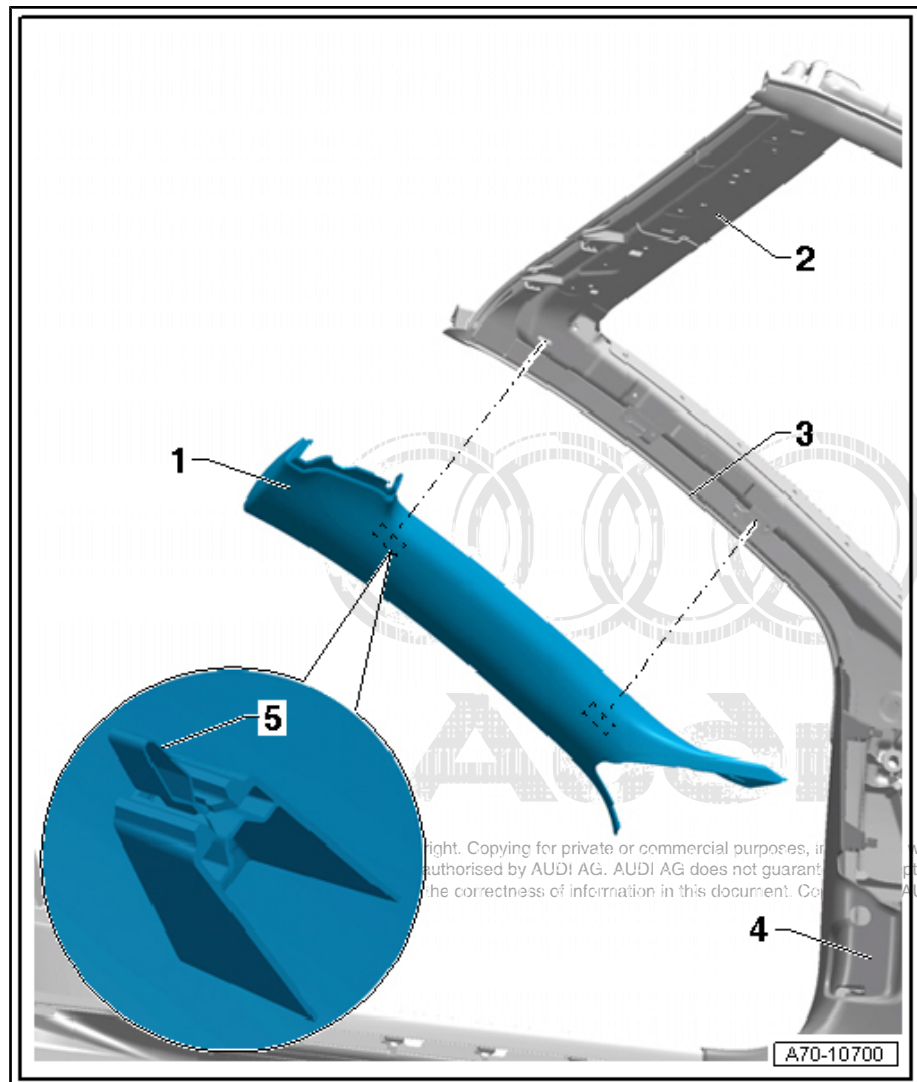
- ❑ Trim for windscreen frame must be removed
⇒ [page 195](#)

3 - Door seal

4 - A-pillar trim (bottom)

5 - Clip

- ❑ Renew if damaged or deformed
- ❑ There may be 2 or 3 clips. If there are 3 clips, the 3rd is positioned approximately in the middle of the two clips shown in the illustration.

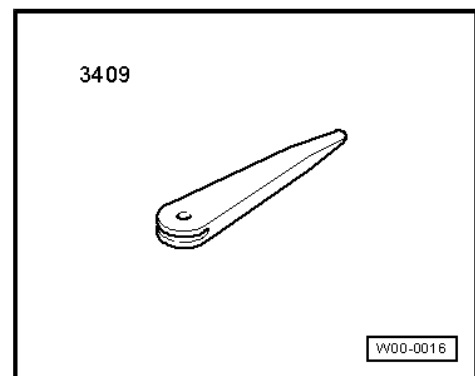


Right. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in whole, is not authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee any liability for the correctness of information in this document. Copyright © AUDI AG.

5.7 Removing and installing A-pillar trim (top)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal wedge -3409-



Removing

- Remove trim for windscreen frame ⇒ [page 195](#) .

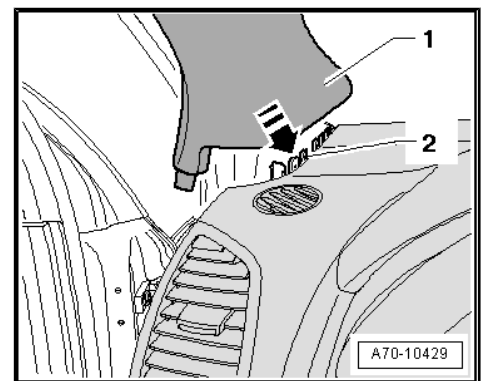
- Starting at the top, unclip A-pillar trim (top) from body using removal wedge -3409- .
- Lift A-pillar trim (top) out of ribbed section on dash panel => [page 199](#) .

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

Note

- ◆ *If the clips for the trim have been left behind in the mounting points on the body, remove them and insert them in the trim.*
- ◆ *Check the clips for damage or deformation and renew them if necessary.*
- Start by inserting A-pillar trim (top) -1- in ribbed section -2- of dash panel in direction of -arrow-.
- Then clip on A-pillar trim (top) and fold lip of door seal over A-pillar trim (top).



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.8 Exploded view of A-pillar trim (bottom)

1 - A-pillar trim (bottom)

- ❑ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 200](#)

2 - Operating lever

- ❑ For bonnet
- ❑ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 200](#)

3 - Clip

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ Renew if damaged or deformed

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 12 Nm
- ❑ 2x

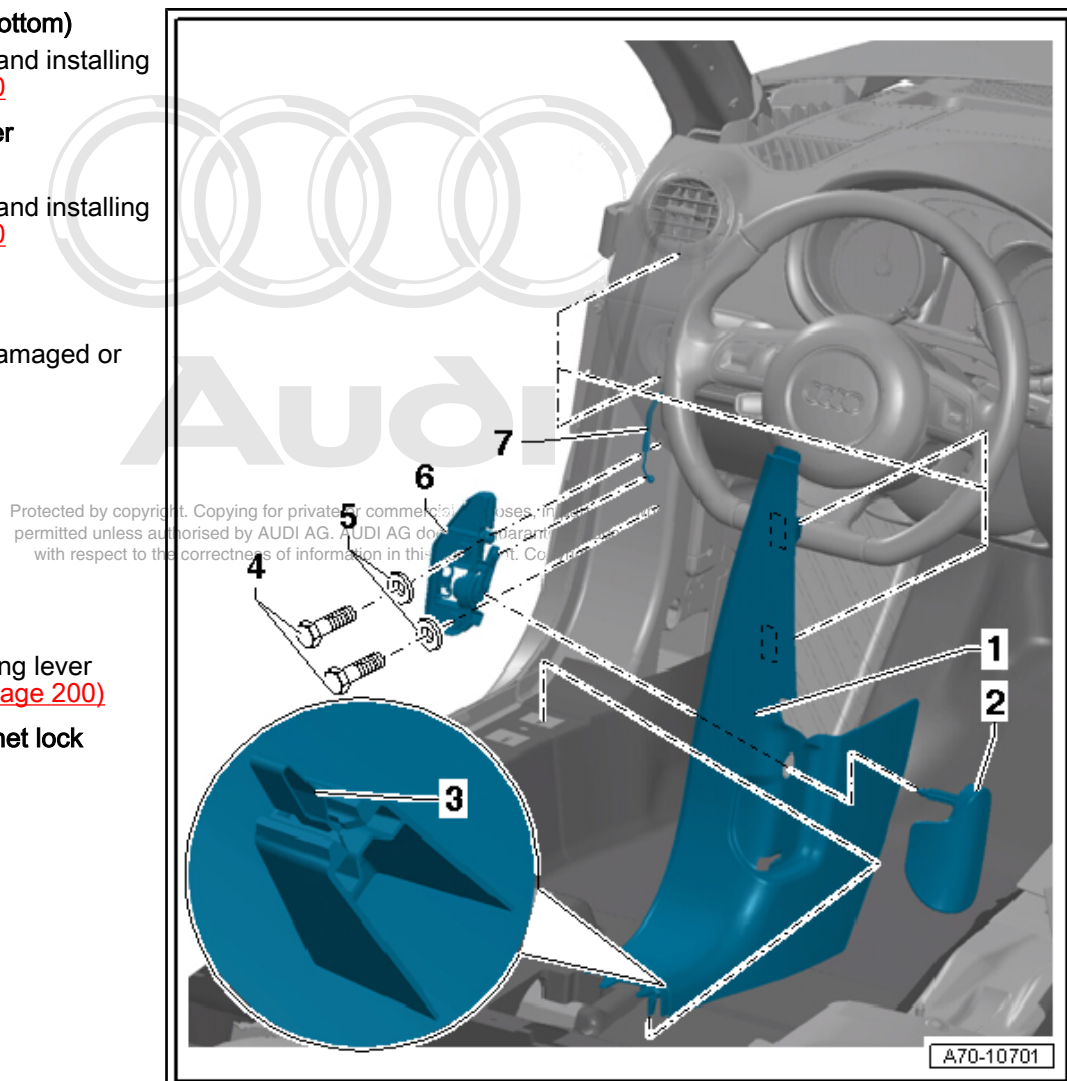
5 - Washer

- ❑ 2x

6 - Mounting

- ❑ For operating lever
⇒ [Item 2 \(page 200\)](#)

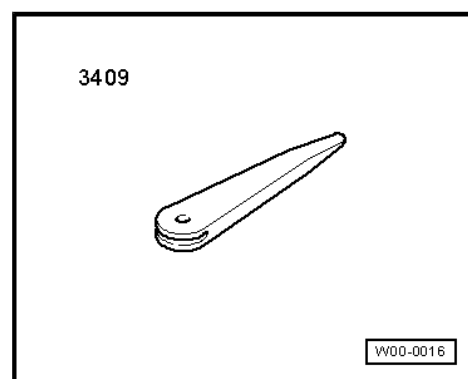
7 - Cable for bonnet lock



5.9 Removing and installing A-pillar trim (bottom)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal wedge -3409-



Removing

Driver side only

- Pull operating lever -1- in direction of -arrow A- to release bonnet.

At the same time, operating lever -1- is moved out of guide in A-pillar trim (bottom) -2-.

- Insert a screwdriver -5- in gap between operating lever -1- and A-pillar trim (bottom) -2-.



Caution

- ◆ *To remove operating lever -1-, it must be prised out of its mounting by moving screwdriver in direction of -arrow C-. At the same time, pull operating lever out by hand in direction of -arrow B-, taking care to keep it straight at all times.*
- ◆ *If operating lever -1- is pulled out at an angle or not kept straight, the mounting could be damaged. The mounting must be renewed if it is damaged.*

- Prise operating lever -1- out of its mounting, taking care to keep it straight.
- At the mounting, check the fasteners -1- on the catch and the fasteners -2- on the support for damage.

Both sides of vehicle (continued)

- Remove dash panel end trim ⇒ [page 146](#) .

- Detach sill panel trim -3- from side member at transition to A-pillar trim (bottom) ⇒ [page 205](#) .
- Unclip A-pillar trim (bottom) -2- using removal wedge -3409- .

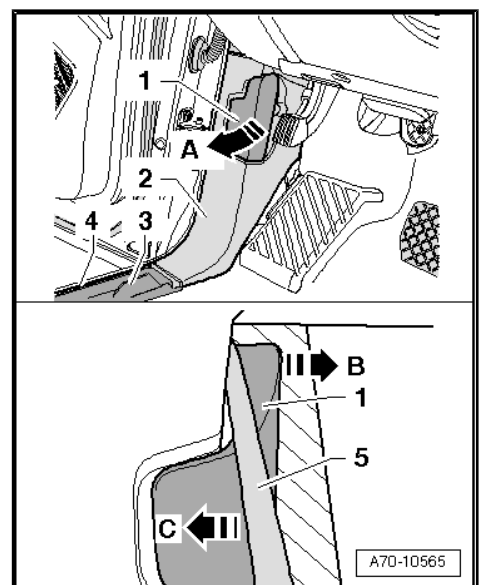
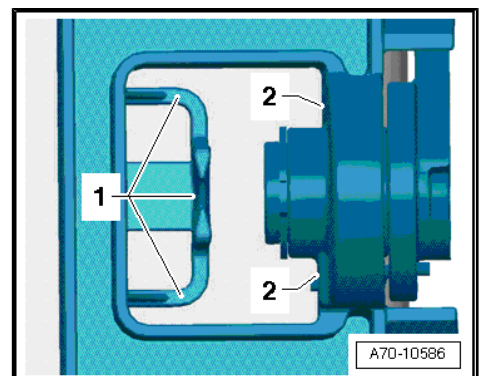
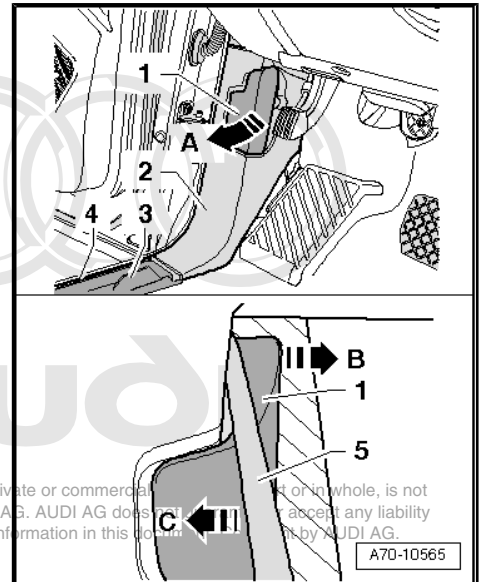
Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:



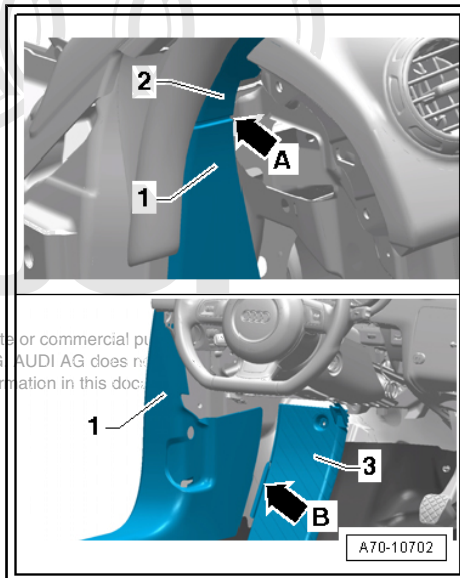
Note

- ◆ *If the clips for the trim have been left behind in the mounting points on the body, remove them and insert them in the trim.*
- ◆ *Check the clips for damage or deformation and renew them if necessary.*





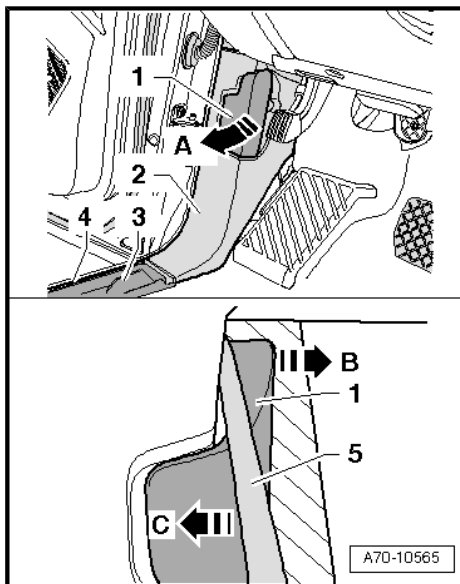
- To install, guide A-pillar trim (bottom) -1- underneath A-pillar trim (top) -2- at transition point -arrow A-.
- Also insert A-pillar trim (bottom) -1- into groove -arrow B- on foot rest cover -3-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

- Clip A-pillar trim (bottom) -2- into place.
- Install dash panel end trim.
- Fold lip of door seal -4- over A-pillar trim (bottom) -2- and sill panel trim -3-.
- Insert operating lever -1- roughly half way into mounting and turn in direction of -arrow A-.
- Carefully press operating lever -1- all the way into mounting and insert it in guide in A-pillar trim (bottom) -2-.

Tightening torque for mounting bracket => [page 200](#)



5.10 Exploded view of foot rest cover and bracket

1 - Foot rest cover

- Removing and installing
 ⇒ [page 203](#)

2 - Bolt

- 2 Nm

3 - Speed nut

- Insert in foot rest bracket

4 - Foot rest bracket

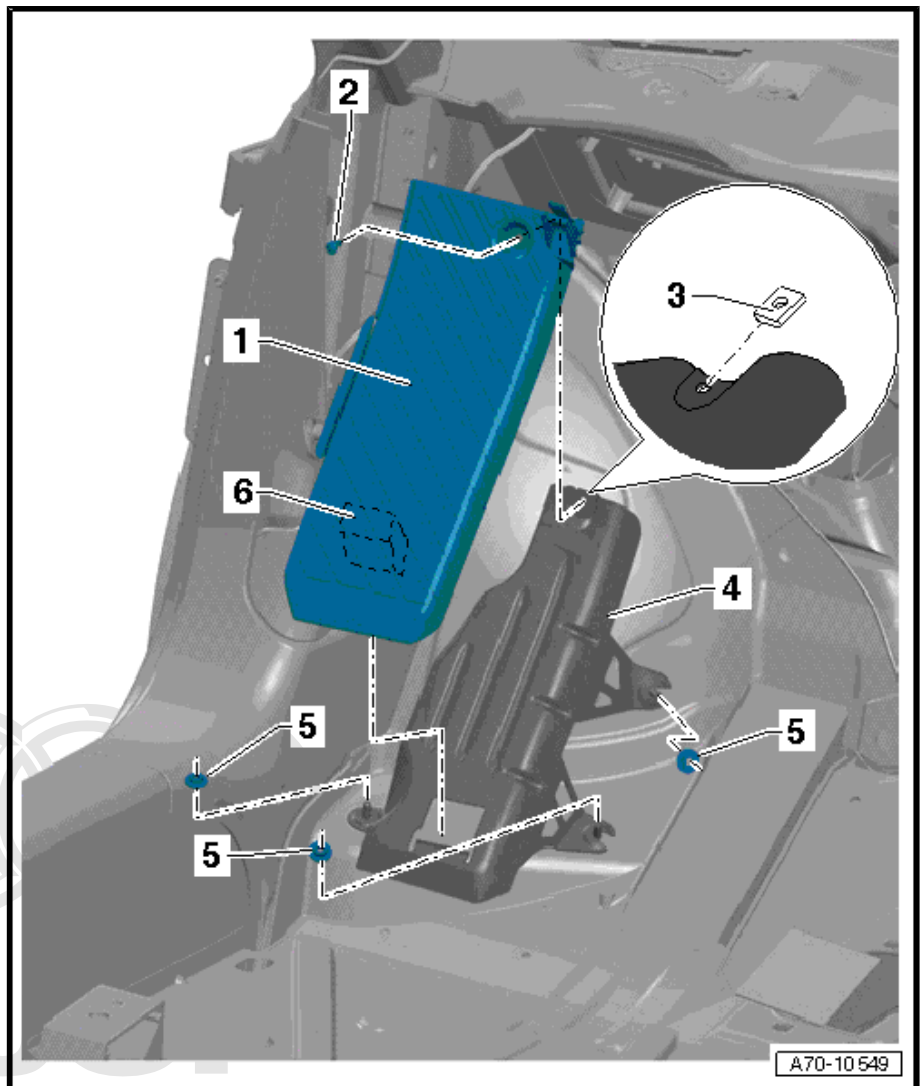
- Removing and installing
 ⇒ [page 204](#)

5 - Nut

- 3.5 Nm
- 3x

6 - Lug

- Permanently connected to foot rest cover



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the accuracy of the information contained in this document.

5.11 Removing and installing foot rest cover

Removing

- Remove dash panel trim (driver side) ⇒ [page 5](#) .
- Remove A-pillar trim (bottom) ⇒ [page 200](#) .

- Remove bolt -2-.
- Slide foot rest cover -1- upwards until lug -6- is disengaged from opening in foot rest bracket -4-.
- Take out foot rest cover -1-.

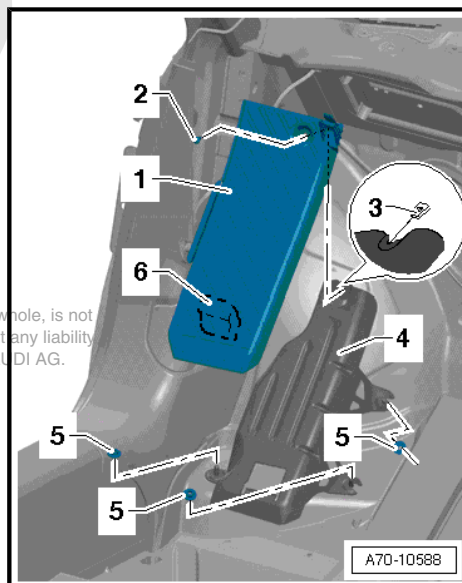
Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

- Make sure lug -6- engages properly in opening in foot rest bracket.
- Make sure speed nut -3- is seated correctly on foot rest bracket -4-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Tightening torque ⇒ [page 203](#)



5.12 Removing and installing foot rest bracket

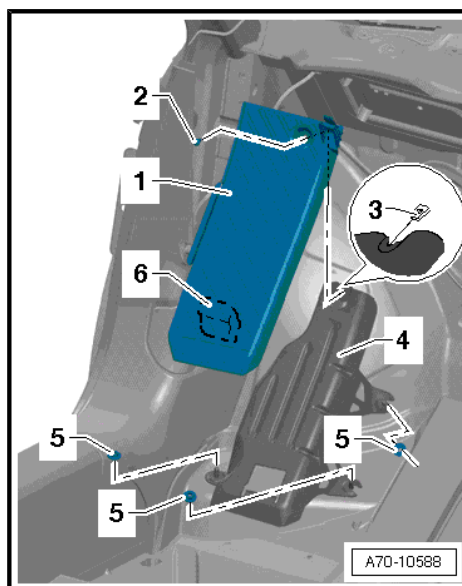
Removing

- Remove foot rest cover -1- ⇒ [page 203](#) .
- Fold back floor covering in area of foot rest.
- Unscrew the 3 nuts -5-.
- Take out foot rest bracket -4-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening torque ⇒ [page 203](#)



5.13 Exploded view of sill panel trim

1 - Sill panel trim

- Removing and installing
 ⇒ [page 205](#)

2 - Floor covering

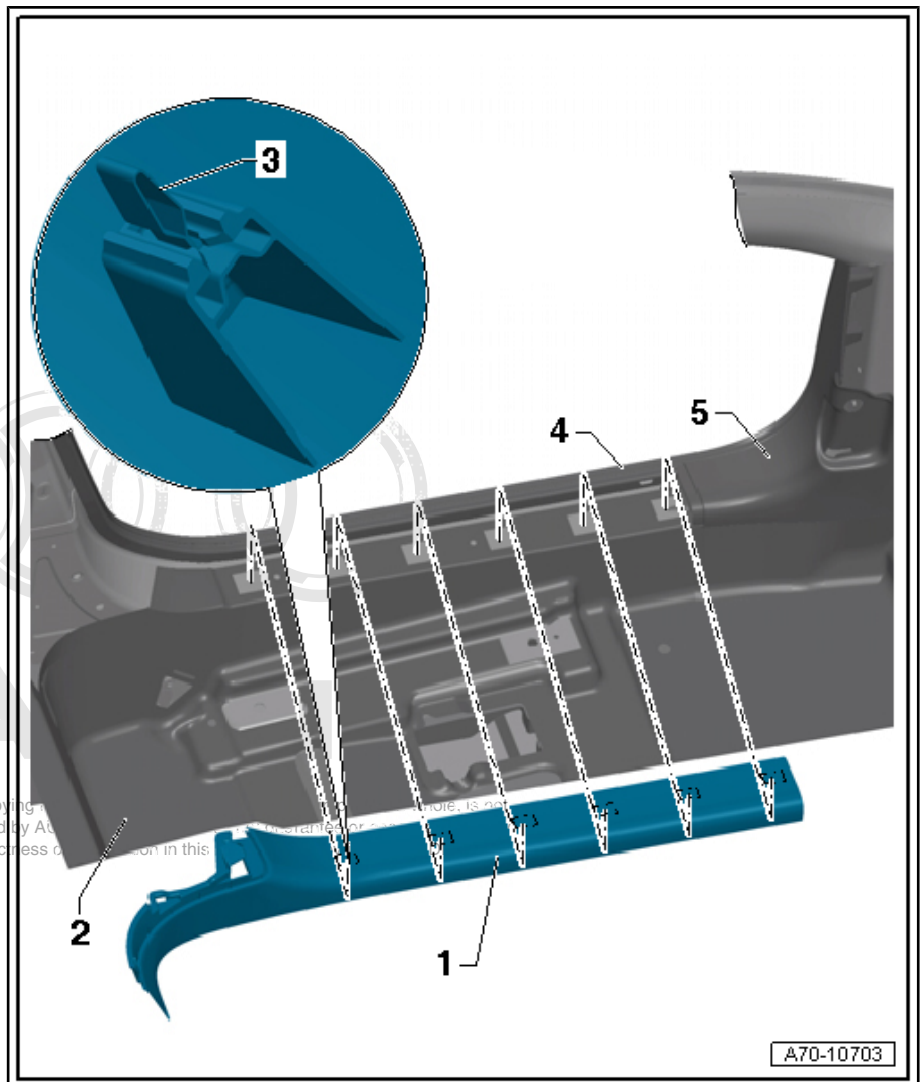
3 - Clip

- 6x
- Renew if damaged or deformed

4 - Door seal

5 - A-pillar trim (bottom)

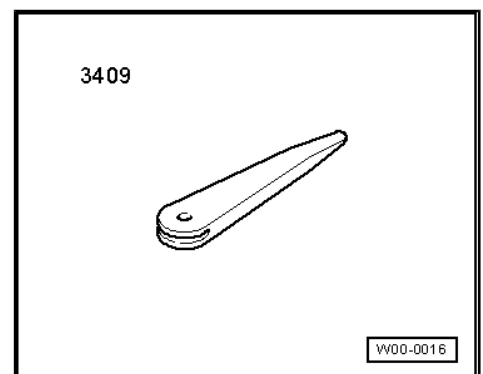
Protected by copyright. Copying or reproduction in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or by any information storage and retrieval system, is not permitted unless authorised by Audi AG. The manufacturer's liability is limited with respect to the correctness of the information in this manual.



5.14 Removing and installing sill panel trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal wedge -3409-



Removing

- Detach back panel side trim -1- from body at transition to sill panel trim -3- ⇒ [page 209](#) .

- Unclip sill panel trim -3- using removal wedge -3409- .

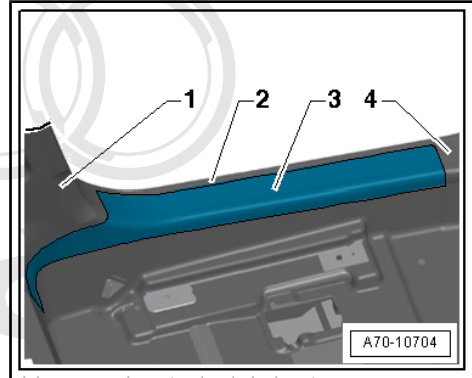
Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:



Note

- ◆ If the clips for the trim have been left behind in the mounting points on the body, remove them and insert them in the trim.
- ◆ Check the clips for damage or deformation and renew them if necessary.
- ◆ A-pillar trim (bottom) -4- must be in place



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Fold lip of door seal -2- over sill panel trim -3- and back panel side trim -1-.

5.15 Exploded view of floor covering

1 - Floor covering

- One-piece
- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 207](#)

2 - Fastener

- 8x

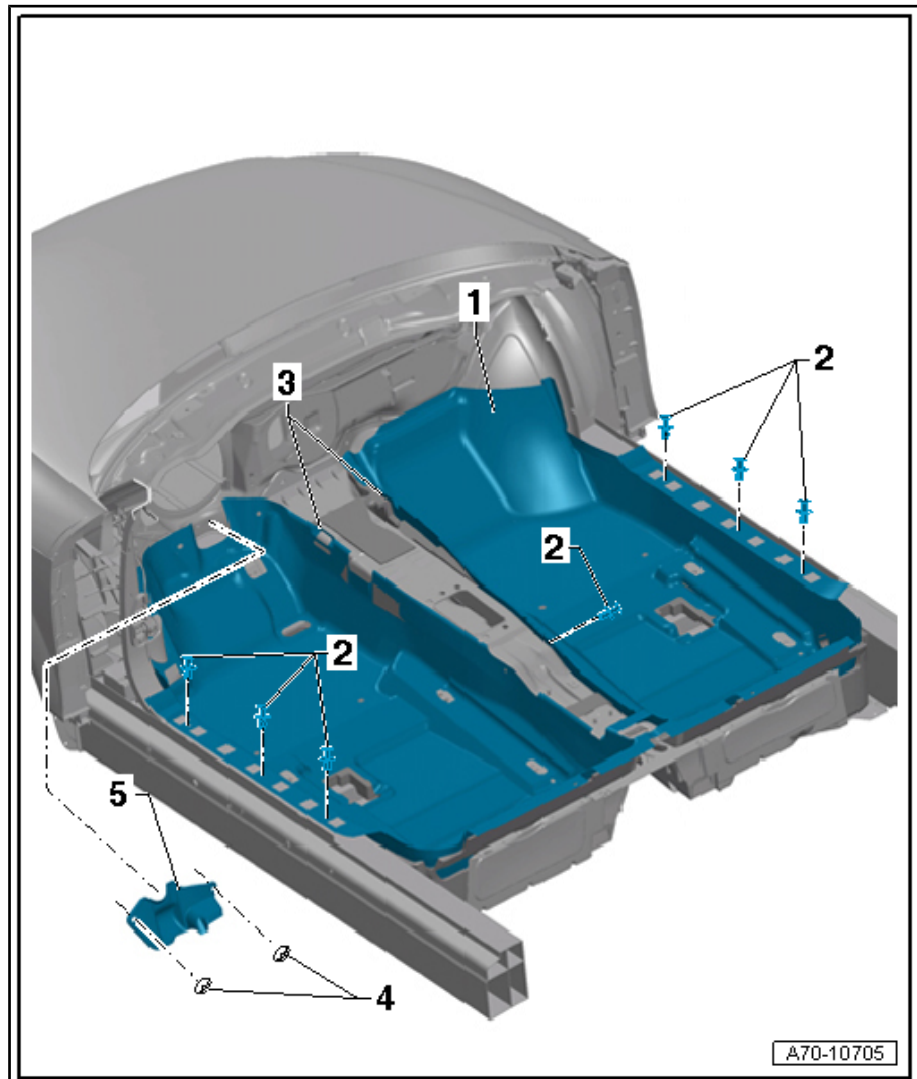
3 - Retainer

- For securing floor covering

4 - Stud

- 2x

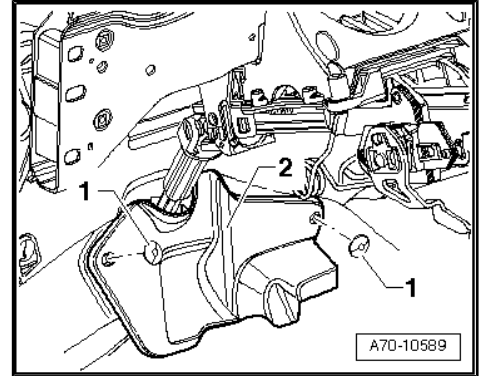
5 - Cover for universal joint on steering column



5.16 Removing and installing floor covering

Removing

- Remove seats (left and right) ⇒ [page 243](#) .
- Remove dash panel trim (driver side) ⇒ [page 5](#) .
- Remove accelerator pedal module ⇒ Rep. gr. 20 .
- Remove entire centre console ⇒ [page 23](#) .
- Twist out studs -1- and detach cover for for universal joint on steering column.
- Remove A-pillar trim (bottom, left and right) ⇒ [page 200](#) .
- Remove back panel side trim (left and right) ⇒ [page 209](#) .
- Remove sill panel trim (left and right) ⇒ [page 205](#) .
- Remove foot rest cover ⇒ [page 203](#) .
- Detach seat belt from outer belt end fitting ⇒ [page 71](#) .

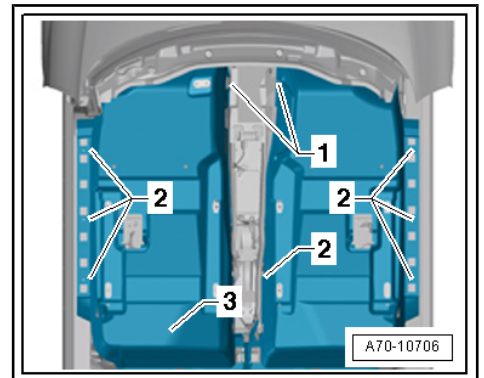


- Remove fasteners -2- (8x).
- Unhook floor covering from retainers -1-.
- Disengage wiring harness from retainers.
- Pull floor covering -3- towards rear.

Note

Make sure that floor covering does not tear at openings.

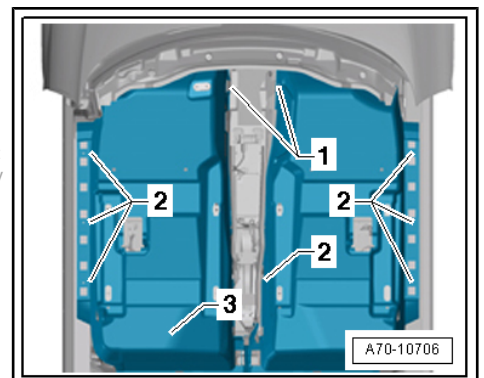
- Fold up floor covering lengthwise, guide it through beneath the wiring harness and take it out through one of the doors.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

- Fold up new floor covering lengthwise and place it in vehicle.
- Start by sliding floor covering as far forwards as possible until hole patterns of accelerator pedal module, foot rest and cover for universal joint on steering column are aligned.
- Then hook floor covering -3- into retainers -1-.
- Now fit fasteners -2- (8x).



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.17 Exploded view of back panel side trim

1 - Back panel side trim

- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 209](#)

2 - Lid

- For storage compartment (left-side
⇒ [Item 4 \(page 208\)](#)
and right-side
⇒ [Item 10 \(page 208\)](#))
- Not installed on all vehicles. Note type of equipment on vehicle

3 - Cover

- Is clipped into back panel side trim
- Note type of equipment on vehicle

4 - Storage compartment (left-side)

- Not installed on all vehicles. Note type of equipment on vehicle
- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 210](#)

5 - Sill panel trim

6 - Floor covering

- Must be installed before fitting back panel side trim

7 - Cover

- Is clipped into centre storage compartment
- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 209](#)

8 - Lid

- For centre storage compartment
- Must be opened before installing or removing back panel side trim

9 - Centre storage compartment

- Must be installed before fitting back panel side trim

10 - Storage compartment (right-side)

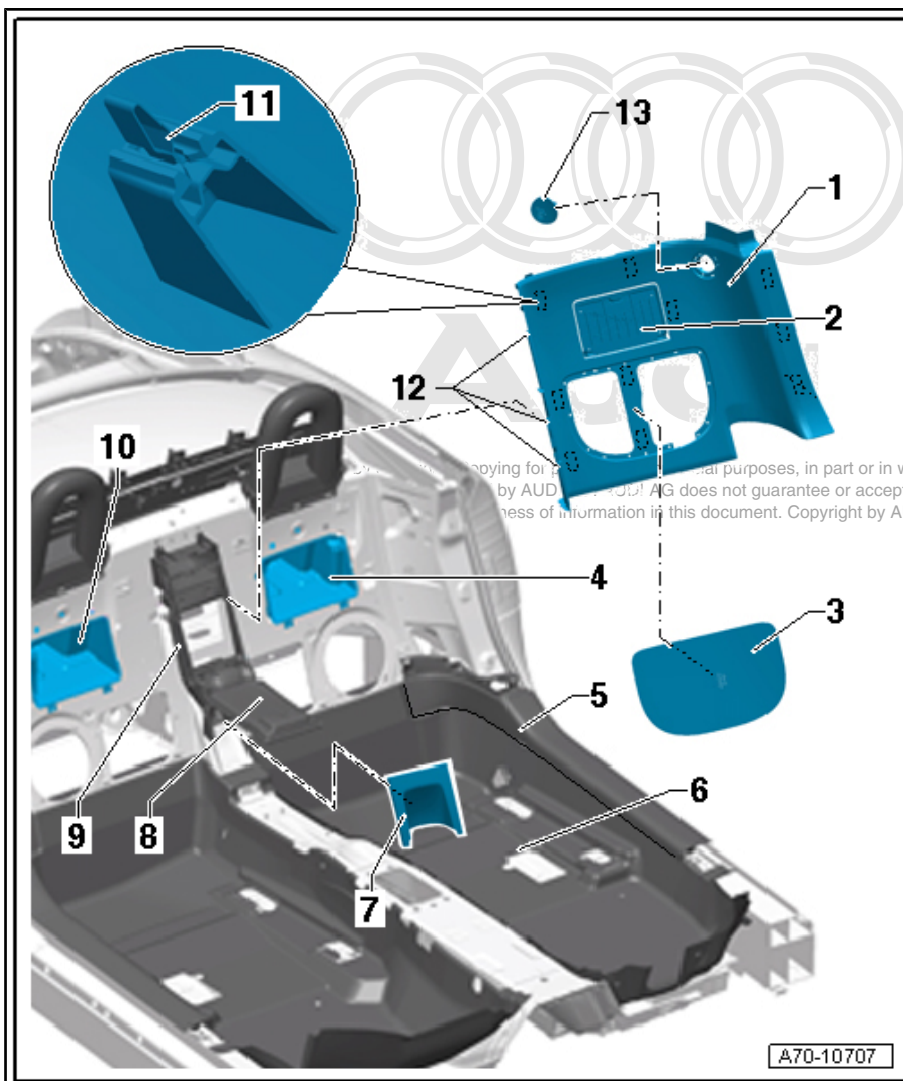
- Not installed on all vehicles. Note type of equipment on vehicle
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 210](#)

11 - Clip

- 11x
- Renew if damaged or deformed

12 - Locking lugs

- On back panel side trim
- Attach to centre storage compartment



Copying for personal or internal purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted without the written consent of AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability for the accuracy or completeness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

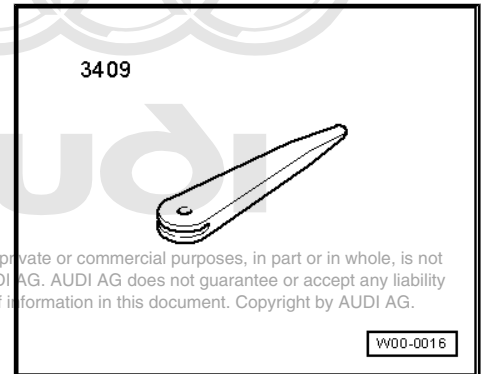
13 - Cover

- For rear left treble loudspeaker -R14- / rear right treble loudspeaker -R16-

5.18 Removing and installing back panel side trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal wedge -3409-



Removing

- Move both seats forwards and fold backrest forwards.

Note

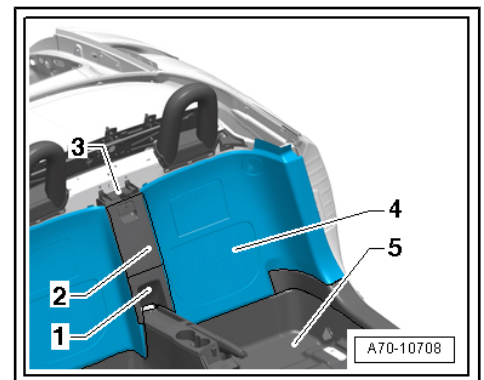
Do not completely remove back panel trim; just move it aside.

Unfasten back panel trim (without detaching seat belts from outer belt end fittings) ⇒ [page 213](#) and put back panel trim to one side.

- Remove cover -1- from centre storage compartment -3-.
- Open lid -2- of centre storage compartment -3-.
- Starting at the top, unclip back panel side trim -4- from back panel using removal wedge -3409- .
- Unplug connector at rear left treble loudspeaker -R14- and/or rear right treble loudspeaker -R16- ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 .

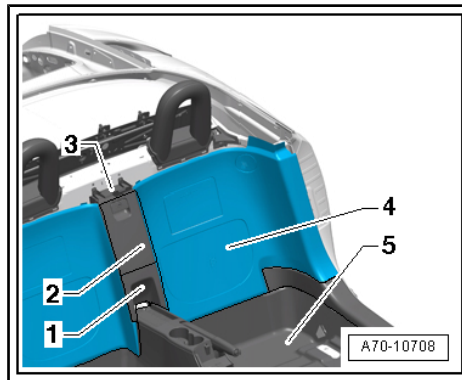
Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:



 **Note**

- ◆ If the clips for the trim have been left behind in the mounting points on the body, remove them and insert them in the trim.
- ◆ Check the clips for damage or deformation and renew them if necessary.
- ◆ Floor covering -5- and centre storage compartment -3- must be installed. Lid -2- of centre storage compartment must be opened.



- Hook locking lugs => [Item 12 \(page 208\)](#) of back panel side trim -4- into centre storage compartment and clip trim onto back panel.
- Engage back panel side trim with centre storage compartment when installing cover -1-.
- Fold lip of door seal over back panel side trim.

5.19 Exploded view of storage compartments (left and right)

1 - Storage compartment (left-side)

- Removing and installing => [page 211](#)

2 - Bolt

- 4 Nm

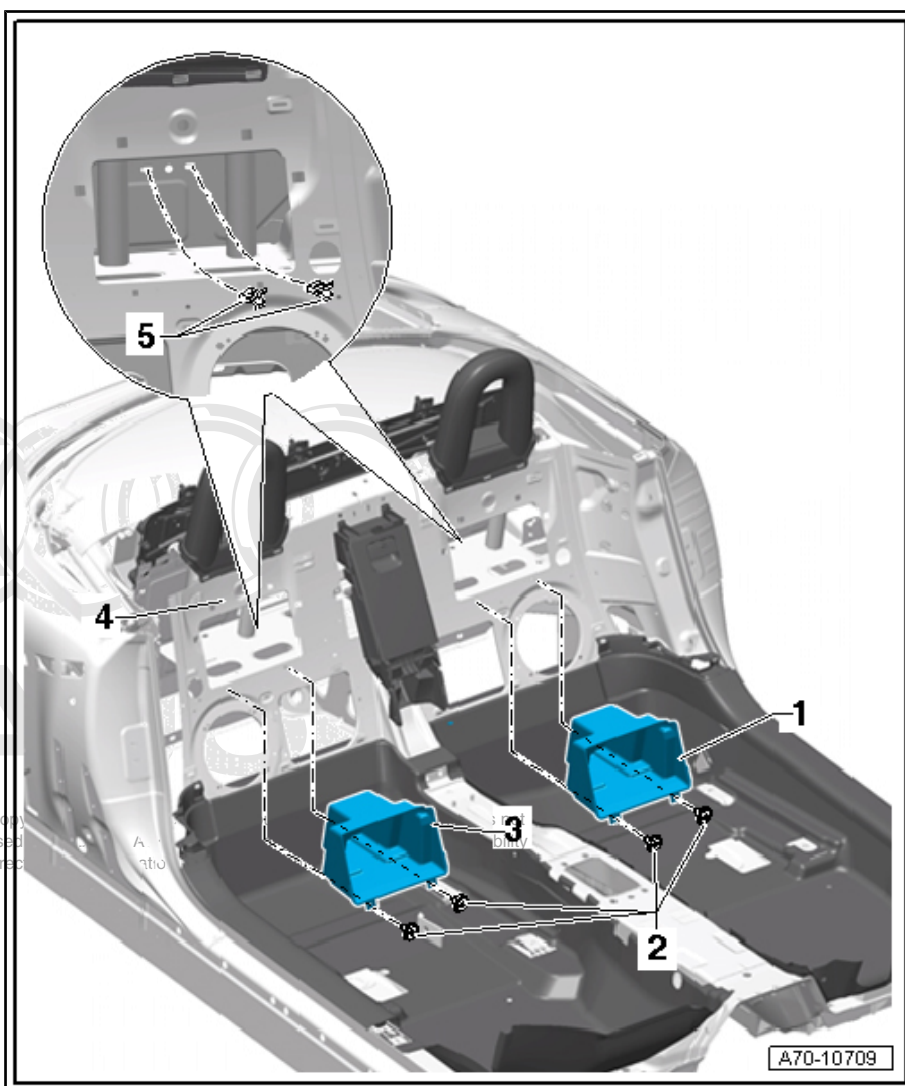
3 - Storage compartment (right-side)

- Removing and installing => [page 211](#)

4 - Back panel

5 - Clip

- Insert in back panel



Protected by copyright. Copy permitted unless authorised with respect to the correct

Removing and installing storage compartments (left and right)

- Remove back panel cover ⇒ [page 214](#) .
- Remove back panel side trim ⇒ [page 209](#) .
- Remove bolts ⇒ [Item 2 \(page 210\)](#) and pull storage compartment out of back panel.

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:



Note

Clips ⇒ [Item 5 \(page 210\)](#) must be fitted in back panel.

5.20 Exploded view of centre storage compartment

1 - Centre storage compartment

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 211](#)

2 - Bolt

- 4 Nm
- 5x

3 - First-aid kit

4 - Bracket

- Not installed on all vehicles. Note type of equipment on vehicle

5 - Bolt

- 4 Nm
- 2x
- For attaching bracket ⇒ [Item 4 \(page 211\)](#) to body

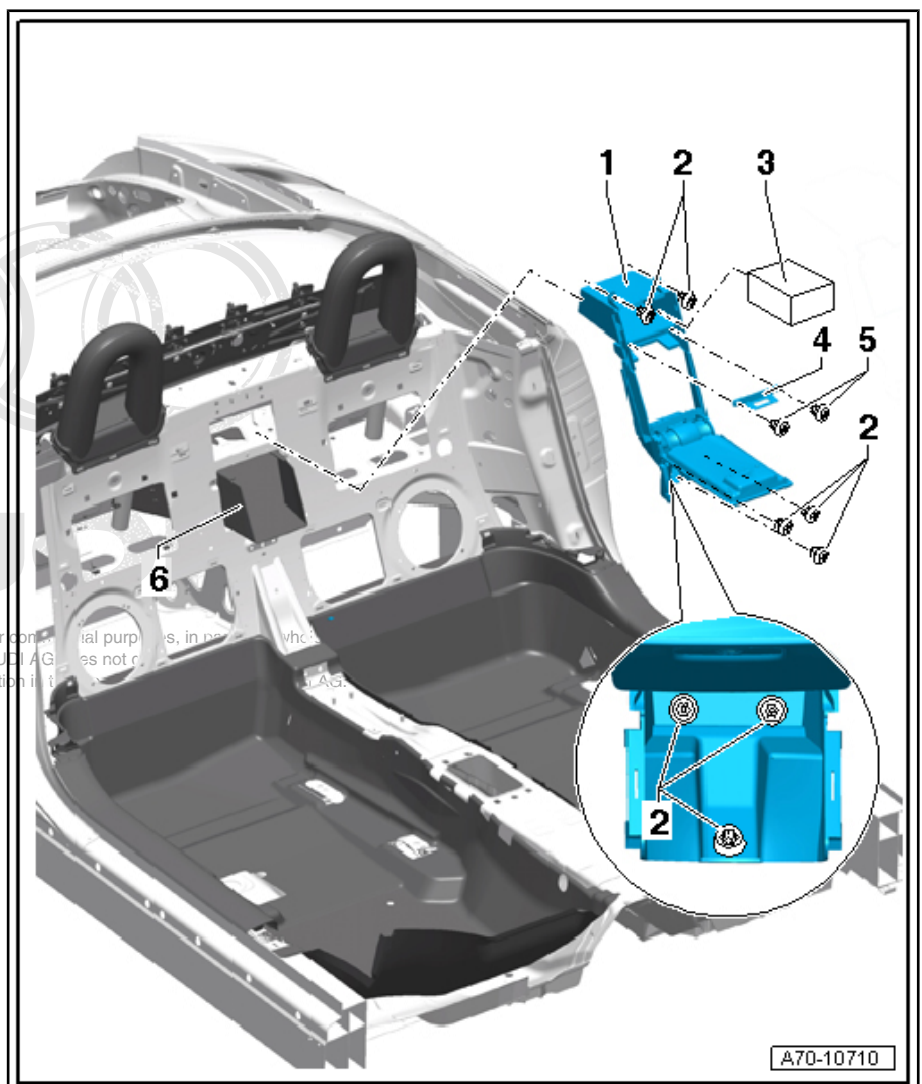
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is prohibited unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not accept any responsibility for the correctness of information in this manual.



Note

6 - Centre storage compartment (bottom)

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 228](#)



A70-10710

5.21 Removing and installing centre storage compartment

Removing

- Remove back panel cover ⇒ [page 214](#) .
- Remove back panel side trim (left and right) ⇒ [page 209](#) .



- Remove cover below lid of centre storage compartment
=> [page 209](#) .
- Open lid -3- of centre storage compartment.
- Disengage handle with cable for manual release of rear lid.
- Remove bolts -2- for bracket -1- (if fitted).



Note

Bolts -2- are also installed on vehicles without bracket.

- Remove bolts -4- (5x) and detach centre storage compartment -5- from back panel.

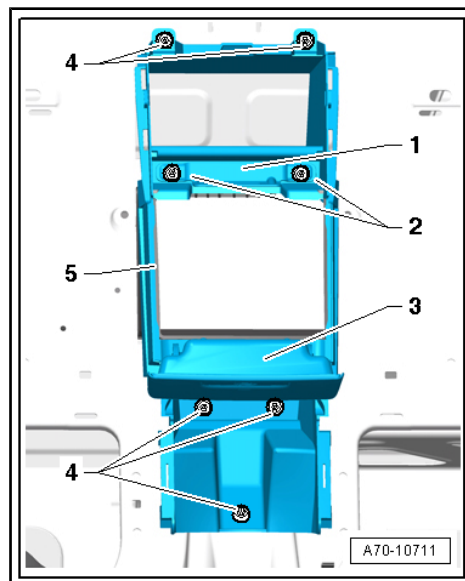
Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:



Note

Make sure the correct bolts -2- and -4- are used at each attachment point.



Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.22 Exploded view of back panel cover

1 - Back panel cover

- Removing and installing
 ⇒ [page 214](#)

2 - Seat belt

3 - Roll-over bar trim

- Must be installed before fitting back panel cover

4 - Flap for frame linkage

- For convertible roof
- Is in basic position when closed

5 - Back panel side trim (left-side)

- Must be installed before fitting back panel cover

6 - Clip

- 6x
- Press into roll-over bar trim
- Must be installed before fitting back panel cover

7 - Back panel side trim (right-side)

- Must be installed before fitting back panel cover

8 - Windbreak

- Some vehicles are only equipped with the mount for the windbreak
 ⇒ [Item 2 \(page 217\)](#).
 Note type of equipment on vehicle.

9 - Clip

- 6x
- Press into back panel cover
- Must engage with windbreak (or mount for windbreak) ⇒ [Item 8 \(page 213\)](#) when installing back panel cover.

10 - Clip

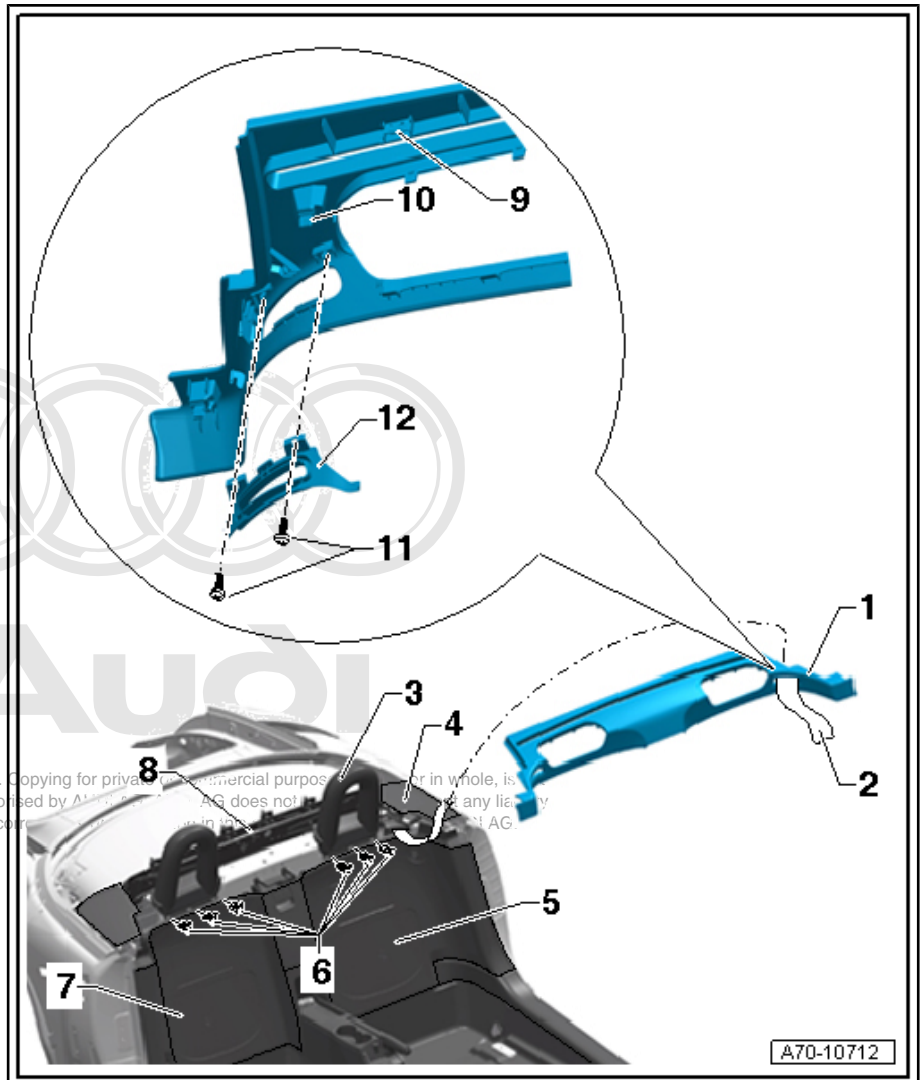
- Insert in back panel cover

11 - Bolt

- 0.6 Nm

12 - Belt exit point trim

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 214](#)



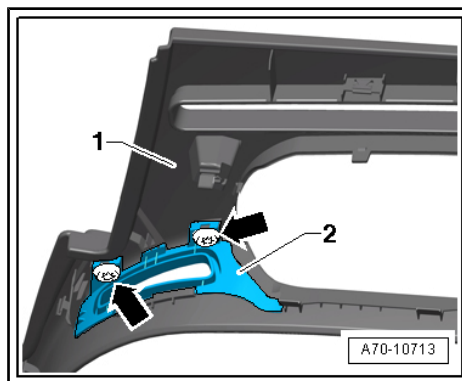
Removing and installing belt exit point trim

- Remove back panel cover -1- => [page 214](#) .

When doing so, detach seat belt from outer belt end fitting => [page 71](#) and guide seat belt out of belt exit point trim -2-.

- Remove bolts -arrows- and detach belt exit point trim -2-.

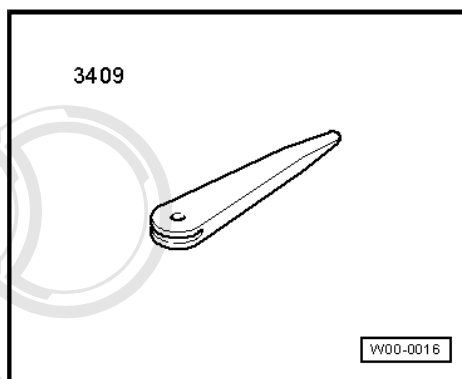
Install in reverse order of removal.



5.23 Removing and installing back panel cover

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal wedge -3409-

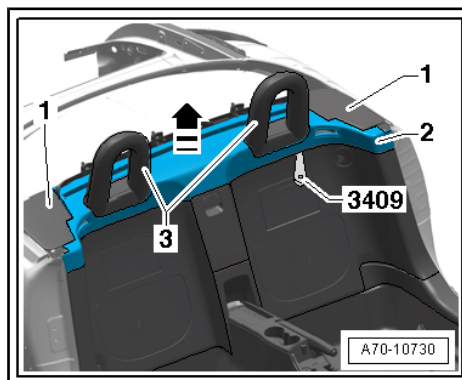


Removing

- Move both seats forwards and fold backrest forwards.
- Detach seat belts from outer belt end fitting on both sides of vehicle => [page 71](#) .
- The two flaps for the frame linkage -1- are closed in the basic position.
- Carefully unclip back panel cover -2- towards the front in the area of the two roll-over bars -3- using removal wedge -3409- .
- Then lift back panel cover -2- in direction of -arrow- off body and windbreak (or mount for windbreak).

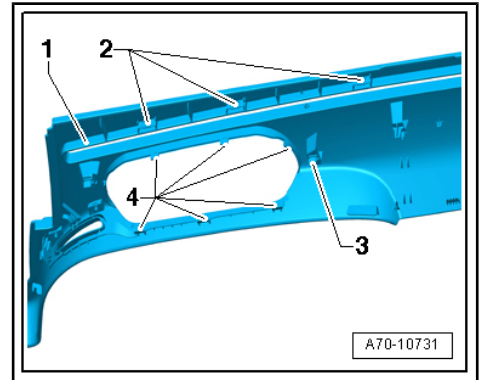
Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:



 **Note**

- ◆ The back panel cover -1- is secured by clips which are inserted in the back panel cover (-2- and -3-) and clips which are inserted in the roll-over bar trim (body) ⇒ [Item 6 \(page 213\)](#).
 - ◆ Take care to choose the correct fitting location when inserting the clips.
 - ◆ Check the clips for damage or deformation and renew them if necessary.
- Tabs -4- must engage in recesses on roll-over bar trim.



5.24 Exploded view of roll-over bar trim

1 - Roll-over bar trim (front part)

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 215](#)

2 - Clip

- Press into recess on front part of roll-over bar trim and body

3 - Roll-over bar bracket

4 - Roll-over bar trim (rear part)

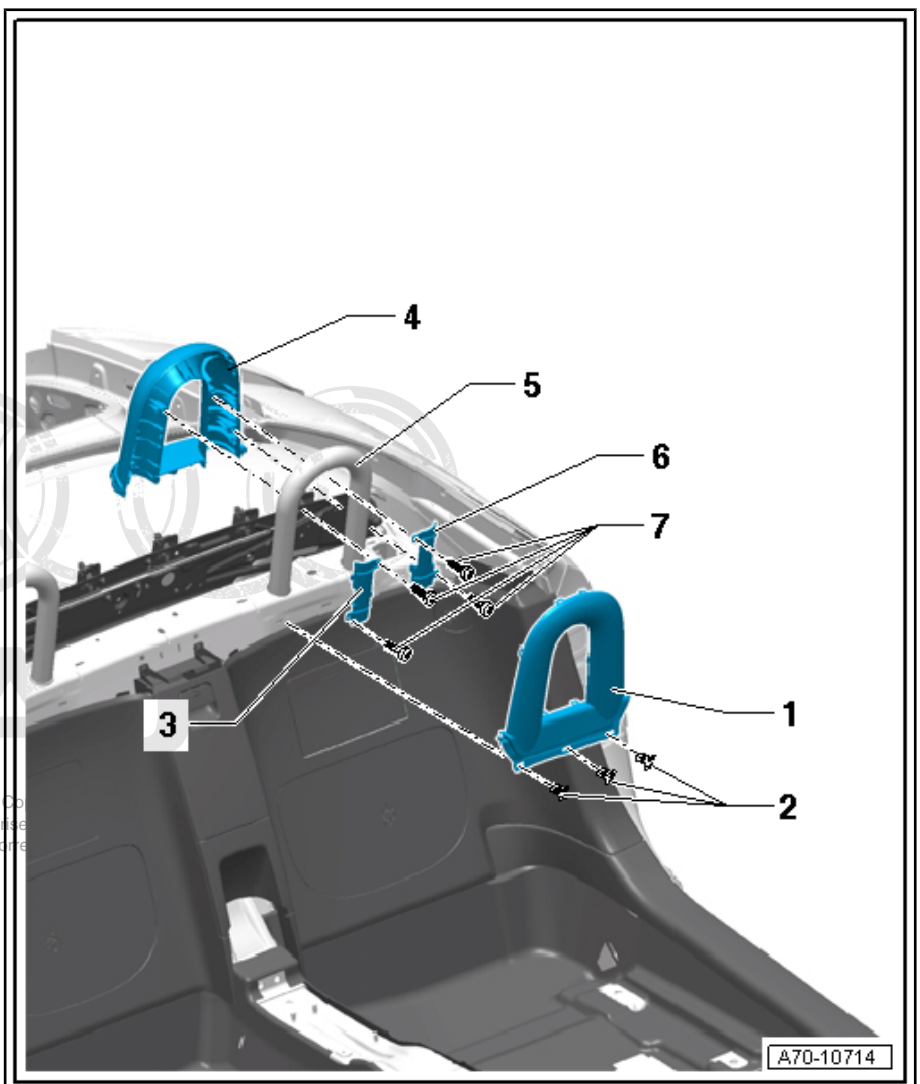
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 215](#)

5 - Roll-over bar

6 - Roll-over bar bracket

7 - Bolt

- 3.5 Nm
- Renew

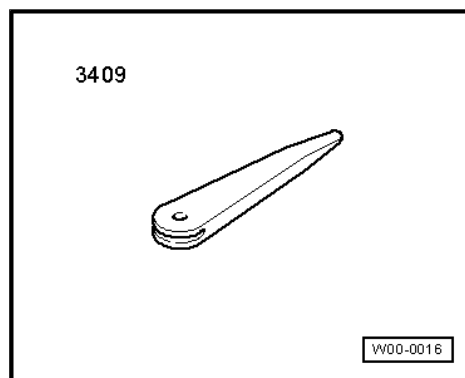


Protected by copyright. Do not reproduce or disseminate this document without the written permission of the copyright holder.

5.25 Removing and installing roll-over bar trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

◆ Removal wedge -3409-



Removing



Do not completely remove back panel trim; just move it aside.

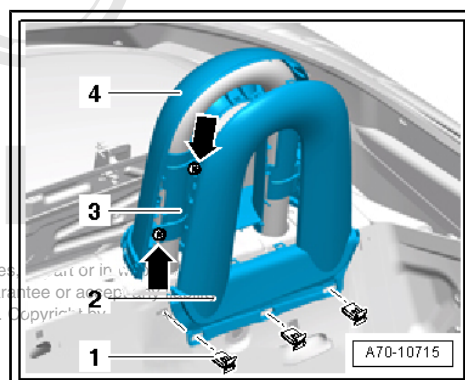
Unfasten back panel trim (without detaching seat belts from outer belt end fittings) ⇒ [page 213](#) and put back panel trim to one side.

- Pull clips -1- out of front part of roll-over bar trim -2- and body.
- Starting at the bottom, unclip front part of roll-over bar trim -2- from roll-over bar using removal wedge -3409- .
- Remove bolts -arrows- and detach roll-over bar brackets -3-.
- Pull rear part of roll-over bar trim -4- off roll-over bar.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening torque ⇒ [page 215](#)



5.26 Exploded view of windbreak

1 - Windbreak

- Some vehicles are only equipped with the mount for the windbreak ⇒ [Item 2 \(page 217\)](#) .
 Note type of equipment on vehicle.
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 217](#)

2 - Mount for windbreak

3 - Washer

- Must be installed between bolt and damping element ⇒ [Item 4 \(page 217\)](#)
 ⇒ [Item 5 \(page 217\)](#)

4 - Bolt

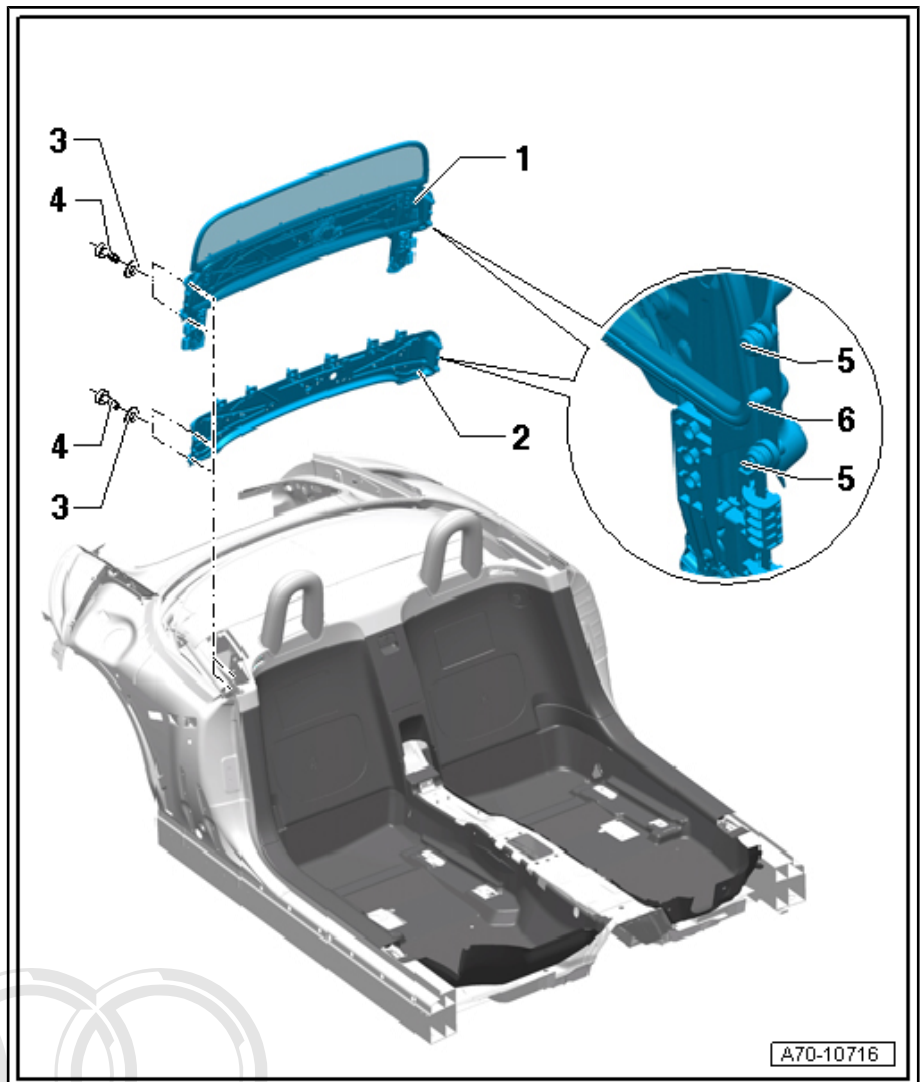
- 7 Nm

5 - Damping element

- Insert in windbreak (or mount for windbreak)

6 - Centring pin

- Insert in body



5.27 Removing and installing windbreak (or mount for windbreak)

Removing

- Remove back panel cover ⇒ [page 214](#) .
- Remove flaps for frame linkage (both sides) ⇒ General body repairs, exterior: Rep. gr. 61
- Remove convertible roof compartment trim (front) ⇒ [page 218](#) .

Vehicles with windbreak

- Unplug connector on motor for windbreak and unclip electrical wiring from windbreak.

Vehicles with power-operated convertible roof

- Unclip hydraulic lines from windbreak or mount for windbreak (5 clips).

All vehicles (continued)

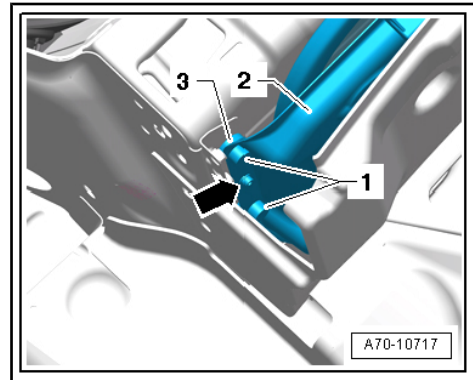
- Remove bolts -1- on both sides of vehicle. Note washers => [Item 3 \(page 217\)](#).
- Lift out windbreak -2- (or mount for windbreak).

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

- Insert locking pins -arrow- on windbreak -2- (or mount for windbreak) into holes on body (on both sides of vehicle).
- Make sure that washer => [Item 3 \(page 217\)](#) is installed between bolt -1- and damping element -3-.

Tightening torque => [page 217](#)

**5.28 Exploded view of convertible roof compartment trim (front)****1 - Convertible roof compartment trim (front)**

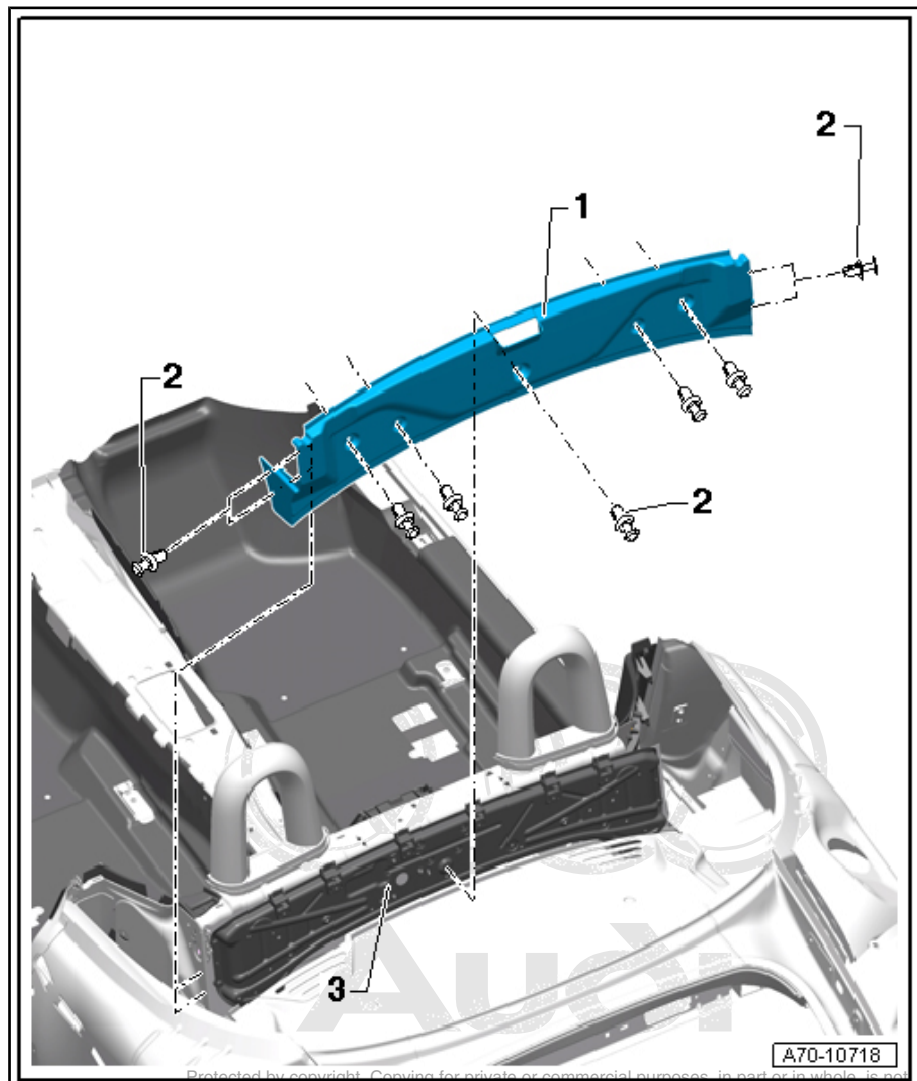
- Removing and installing => [page 218](#)

2 - Fastener

- 9x

3 - Windbreak

- Some vehicles are only equipped with the mount for the windbreak. Note type of equipment on vehicle.

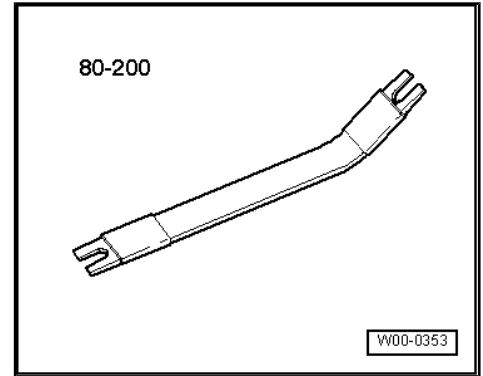


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.29 Removing and installing convertible roof compartment trim (front)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

◆ Removal lever -80 - 200-



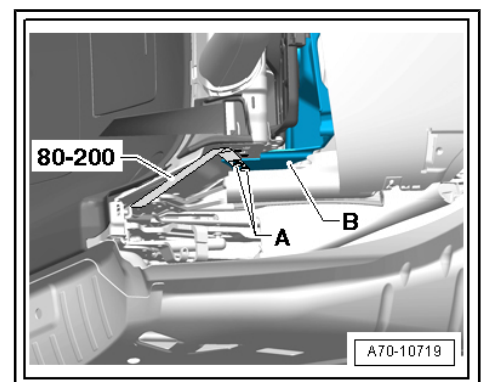
Removing

- Remove back panel cover ⇒ [page 214](#) .
- Position convertible roof and flaps for frame linkage so that fasteners -A- can be unclipped using removal lever -80 - 200- .

 **Note**

Take care not to drop fasteners -A-.

- Unclip remaining fasteners and take out convertible roof compartment trim (front) -B-.



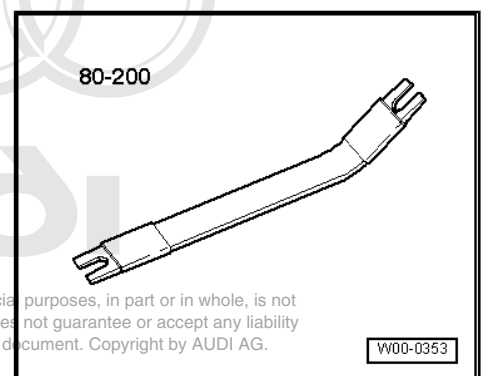
Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

5.30 Exploded view of convertible roof compartment trim (rear)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

◆ Removal lever -80 - 200-



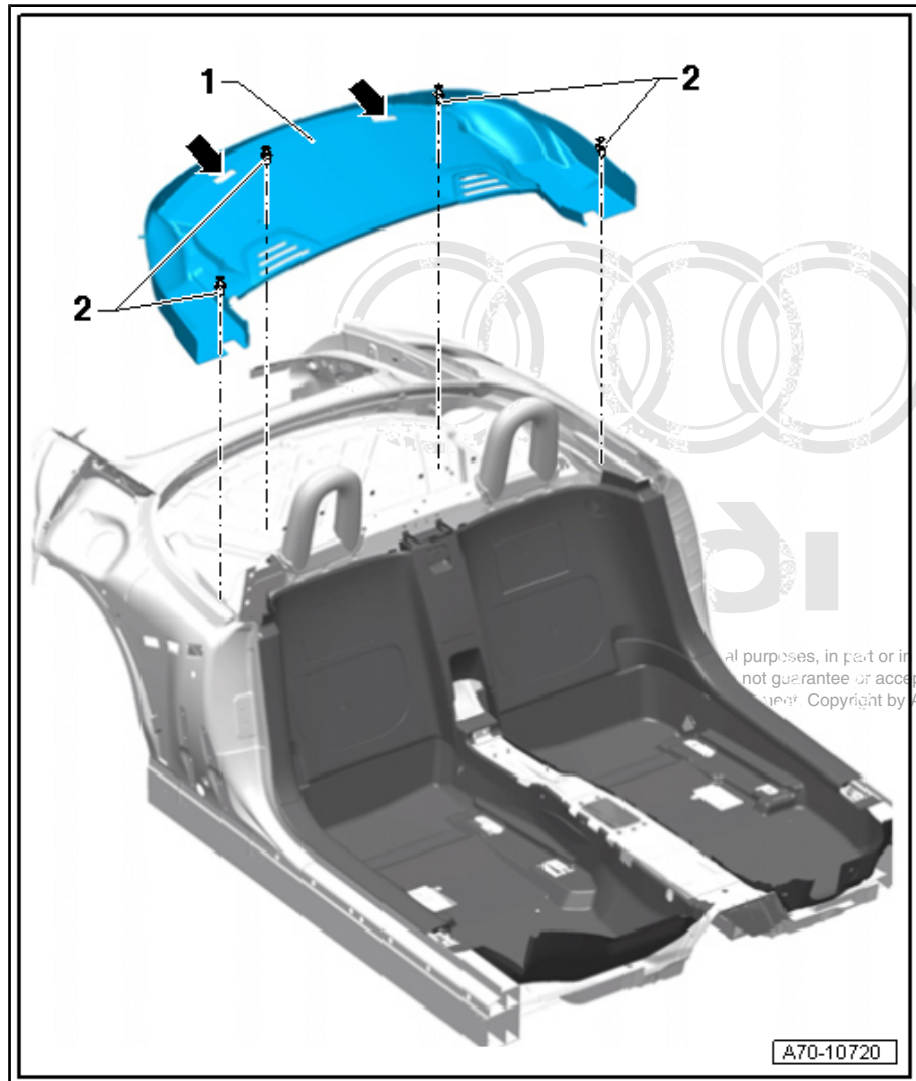
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Convertible roof compartment trim (rear)

- With apertures -arrows- for straps for convertible roof
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 220](#)

2 - Fastener

- 4x



For informational purposes, in part or in whole, is not a guarantee or accept any liability for the content. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing and installing convertible roof compartment trim (rear)

- Remove luggage compartment cover (top) ⇒ [page 225](#) .
- Detach retainer for straps for convertible roof in luggage compartment ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 61 .
- Remove convertible roof ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 61 .
- When doing so, run straps for convertible roof through apertures in convertible roof compartment trim (rear).
- Unclip fasteners using removal lever -80 - 200- and take out convertible roof compartment trim (rear).

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

5.31 Exploded view of luggage compartment floor covering



-Arrow- points in direction of travel.

1 - Luggage compartment floor covering

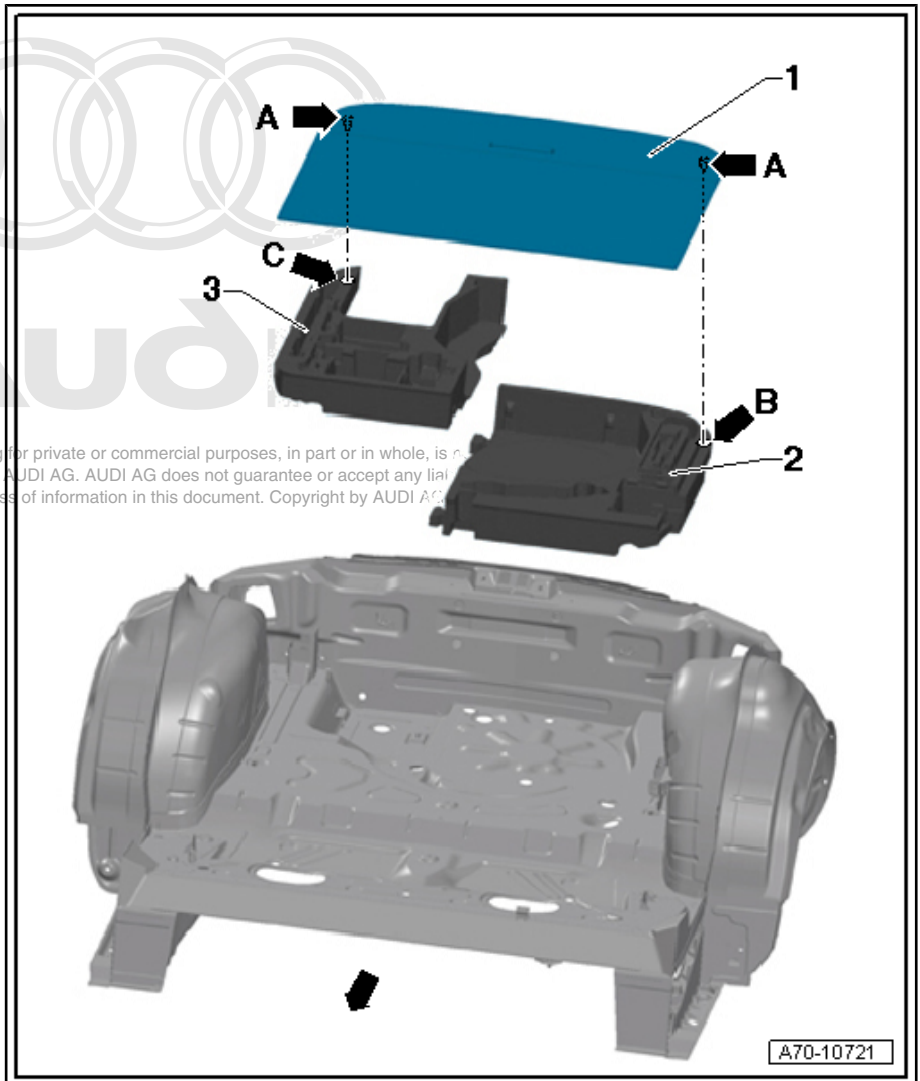
- With lugs -arrows A-
- Removing and installing
 ⇒ [page 221](#)

2 - Foam insert (left-side)

- For tyre sealant can and compressor
- With recess -arrow B- for lug -arrow A- on luggage compartment floor covering

3 - Foam insert (right-side)

- For vehicle tool kit
- With recess -arrow C- for lug -arrow A- on luggage compartment floor covering



Removing and installing luggage compartment floor covering

- Fold the entire luggage compartment floor covering forwards.
- Take floor covering out of luggage compartment.

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

- Both of the lugs on the luggage compartment floor covering must engage in the recesses on the foam inserts.

5.32 Exploded view of rear cross panel trim



Note

-Arrow- points in direction of travel.

1 - Rear cross panel trim

- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 223](#)

2 - Rear lid seal

3 - Pin

- 2x
- Secured to body

4 - Eyelet

- 2x
- Secured to body

5 - Luggage compartment side trim (left-side)

- Must be installed before fitting rear cross panel trim

6 - Luggage compartment side trim (right-side)

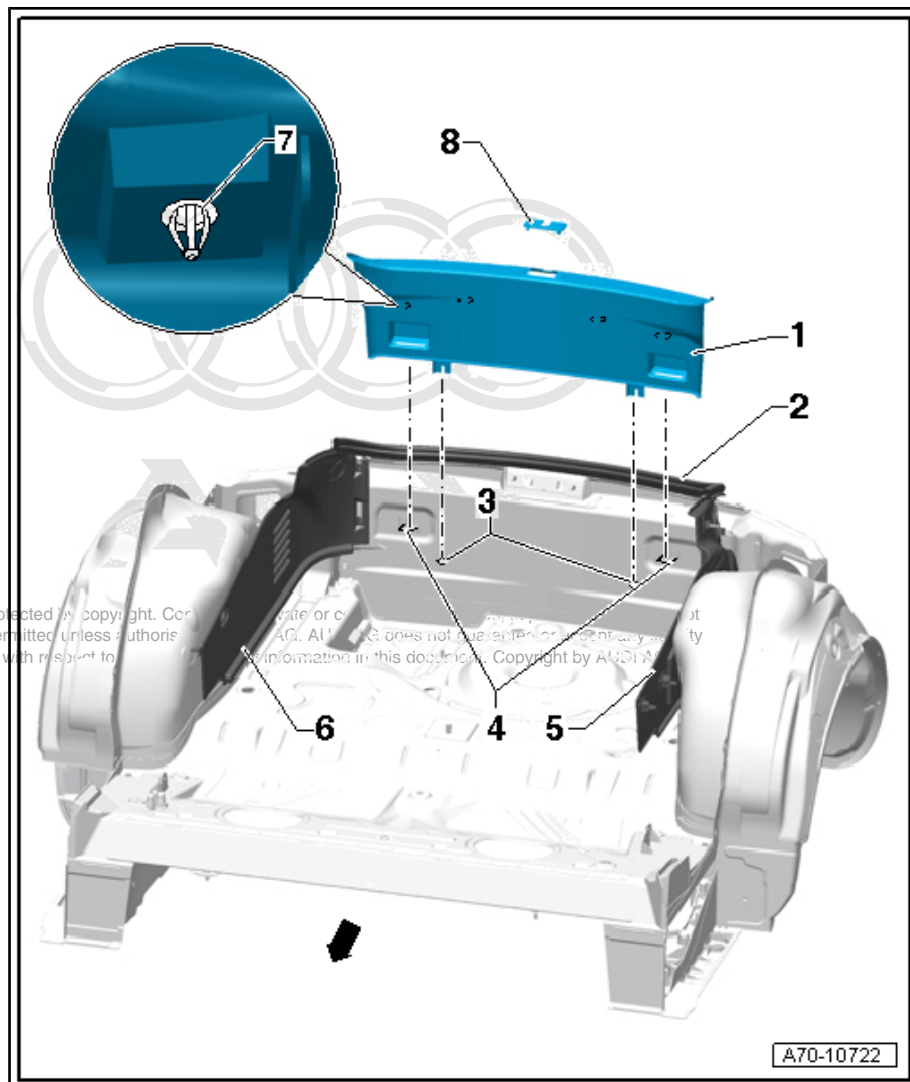
- Must be installed before fitting rear cross panel trim

7 - Clip

- 4x
- Renew if damaged or deformed

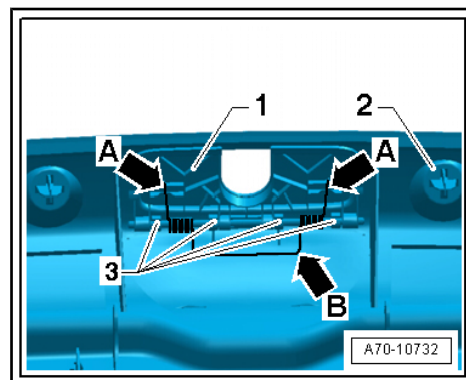
8 - Cover

- For rear cross panel trim
- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 222](#)



Removing and installing cover for rear cross panel trim

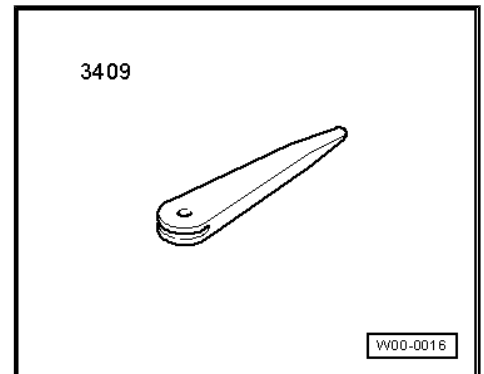
- Detach cover -1- from retainers -3- on rear cross panel trim -2-.
- When installing, ensure that shanks -arrows A- of spring rest against cover and that bar -arrow B- of spring rests against rear cross panel trim.



5.33 Removing and installing rear cross panel trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal wedge -3409-



Removing

- Fold the entire luggage compartment floor covering forwards.
- Take floor covering out of luggage compartment.
- Unclip rear cross panel trim -1- vertically upwards using removal wedge -3409- .

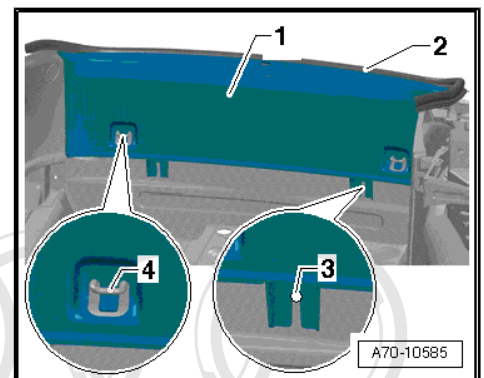
Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:



Check the clips for damage or deformation and renew if necessary.

- Insert rear cross panel trim -1- so that retainers (left and right) engage in pins -3- and eyelets -4-.
- Fold lip of rear lid seal -2- over rear cross panel trim -1-.



Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.34 Exploded view of luggage compartment side trim

1 - Luggage compartment side trim

- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 224](#)

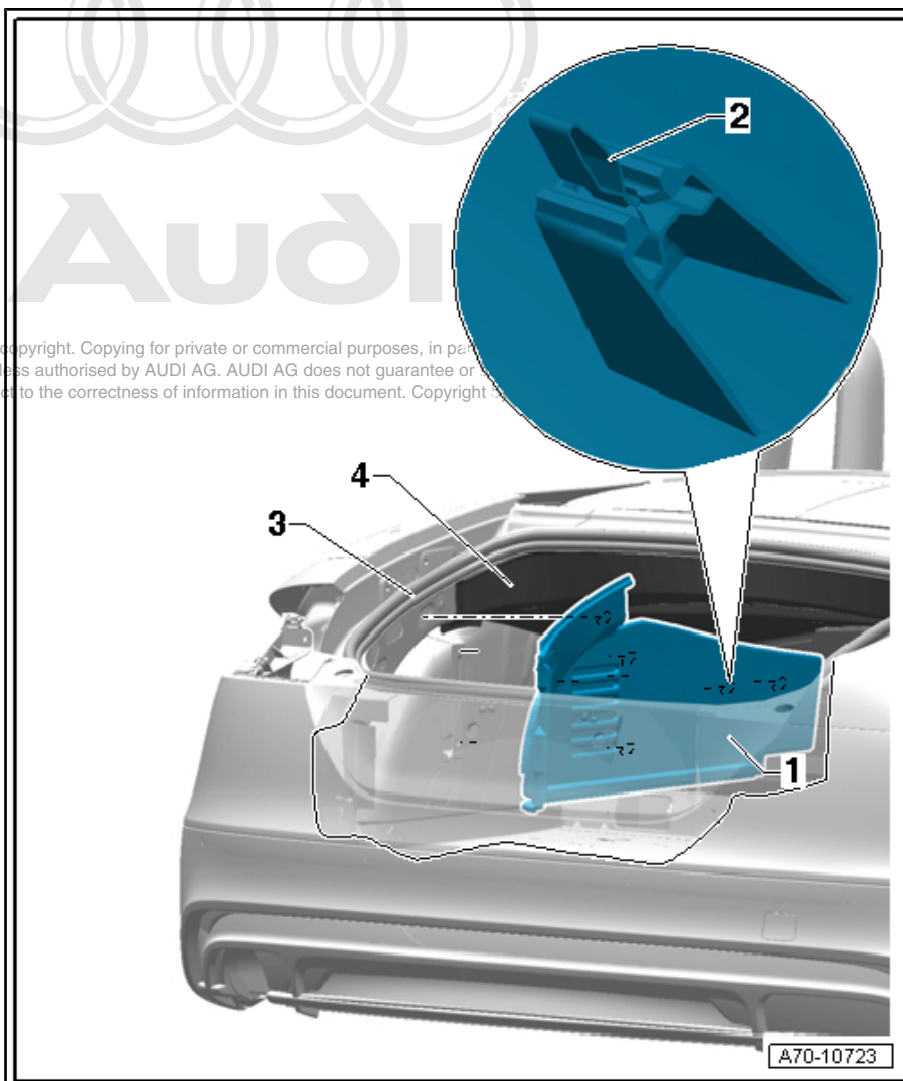
2 - Clip

- Renew if damaged or deformed

3 - Rear lid seal

4 - Luggage compartment trim (top)

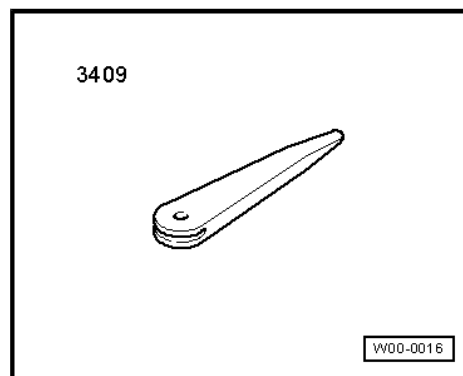
- Must be installed before fitting luggage compartment side trim



5.35 Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal wedge -3409-



Removing

- Fold the entire luggage compartment floor covering forwards.

- Take floor covering out of luggage compartment.
- Remove rear cross panel trim ⇒ [page 223](#) .

Luggage compartment side trim (right-side) only

- Use a screwdriver to prise out the light -1- at the side -3-.
- Arrow- points in direction of travel.
- Unplug electrical connector -2-.

Both sides (continued)

- Unclip luggage compartment side trim using removal wedge -3409- .

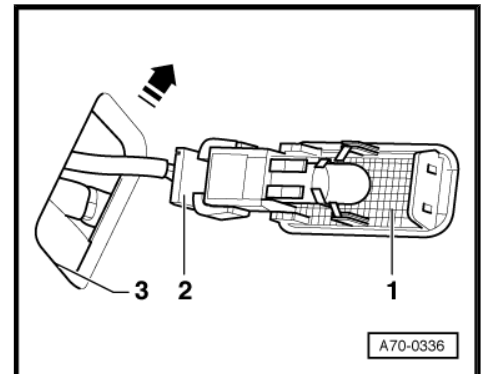
Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:



Note

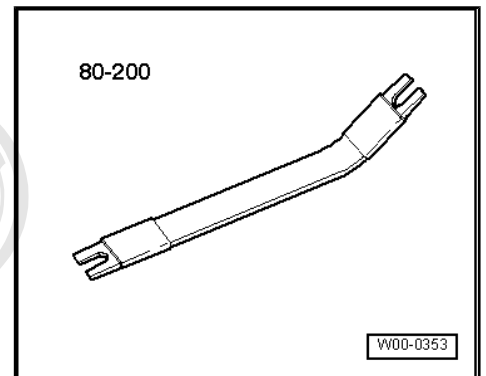
- ◆ *If the clips for the trim have been left behind in the mounting points on the body, remove them and insert them in the trim.*
 - ◆ *Check the clips for damage or deformation and renew them if necessary.*
- Fold lip of rear lid seal over luggage compartment side trim.



5.36 Exploded view of luggage compartment trim (front and top)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal lever -80 - 200-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Luggage compartment trim (top)

- ❑ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 226](#)

2 - Fastener

- ❑ For luggage compartment trim (top)
- ❑ 5x
- ❑ Use removal lever -80 - 200- to remove

3 - Luggage compartment trim (front)

- ❑ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 227](#)

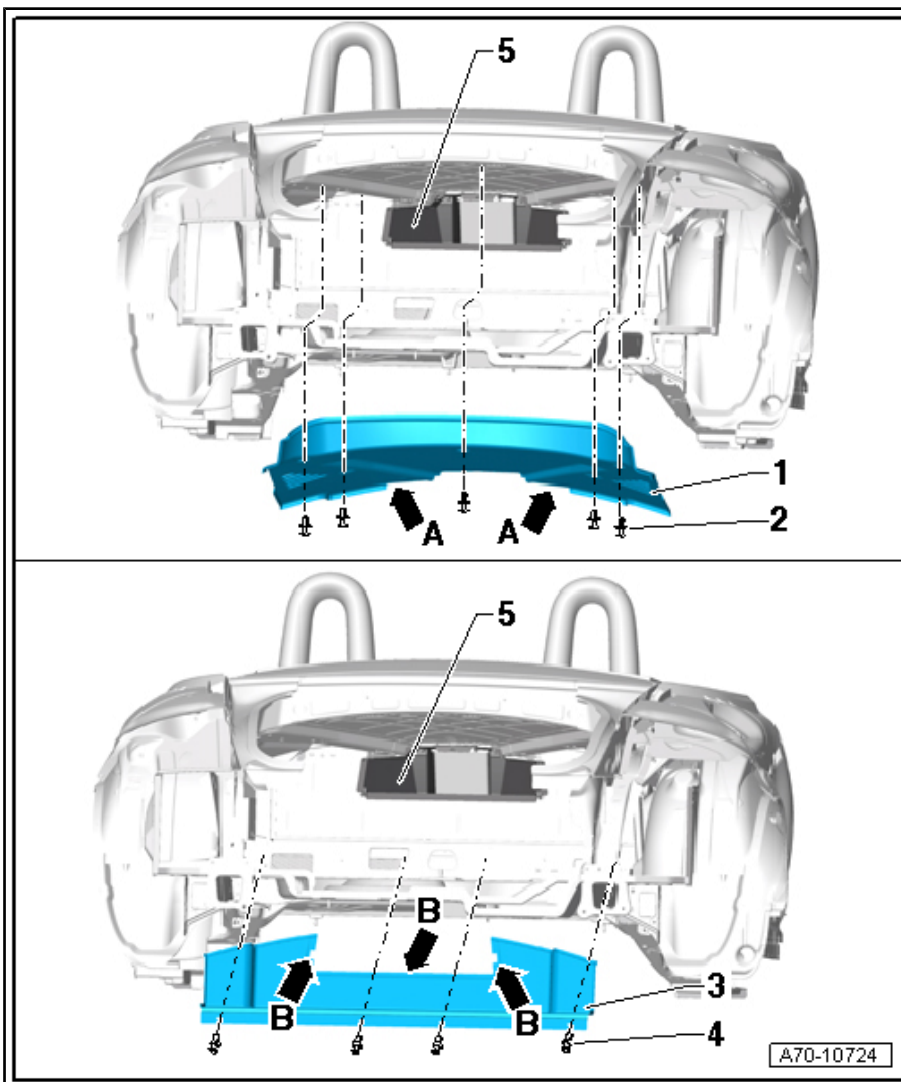
4 - Fastener

- ❑ For luggage compartment trim (front)
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Use removal lever -80 - 200- to remove

5 - Centre storage compartment (bottom)

- ❑ If centre storage compartment (bottom) is fitted:

- ◆ Luggage compartment trim (top) must be wedged behind storage compartment in area of -arrows A-
- ◆ Luggage compartment trim (front) must be wedged behind storage compartment in area of -arrows B-



Removing and installing luggage compartment trim (top)

- Fold the entire luggage compartment floor covering forwards.
- Take floor covering out of luggage compartment.
- Remove luggage compartment side trim (left and right)
⇒ [page 224](#) .

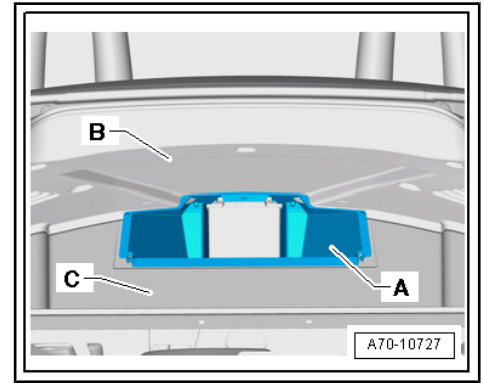


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Detach lid of centre storage compartment (bottom) -A-.
- Remove luggage compartment trim (front) -C- => [page 227](#) .
- Remove fasteners (5x) using removal lever -80 - 200- .
- Remove luggage compartment trim (top) -B- towards rear (detach from centre storage compartment (bottom) -A-).

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

- Luggage compartment trim (top) -B- must be wedged behind edge of centre storage compartment (bottom) -A- => [Item 5 \(page 226\)](#) .
- Fold lip of rear lid seal over luggage compartment trim (top).



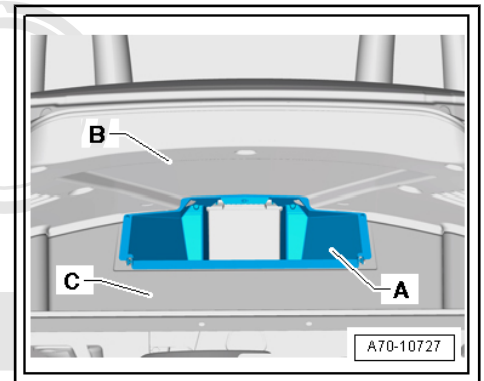
Removing and installing luggage compartment trim (front)

- Fold the entire luggage compartment floor covering forwards.
- Take floor covering out of luggage compartment.
- Remove luggage compartment side trim (left and right) => [page 224](#) .

- Detach lid of centre storage compartment (bottom) -A-.
- Remove fasteners (4x) using removal lever -80 - 200- .
- Remove luggage compartment trim (front) -C- towards rear (detach from centre storage compartment (bottom) -A-).

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

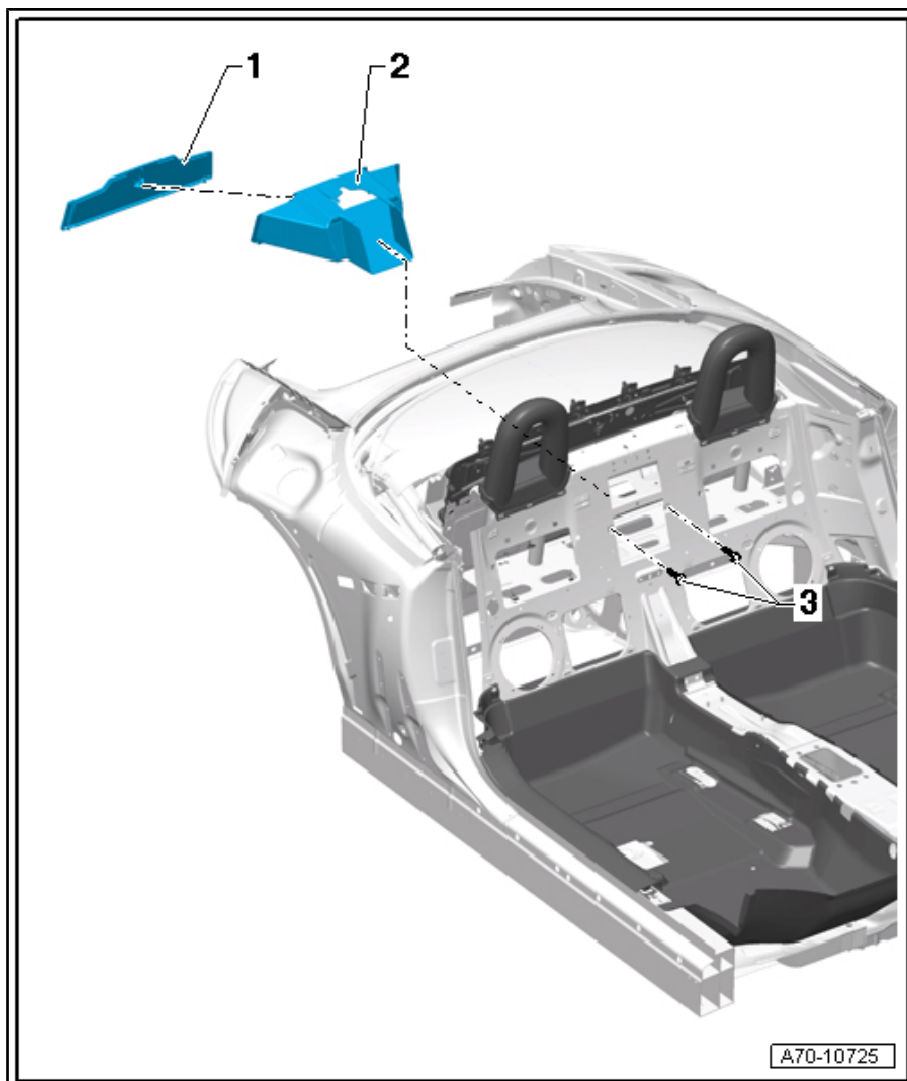
- Luggage compartment trim (front) -C- must be wedged behind edge of centre storage compartment (bottom) -A- => [Item 5 \(page 226\)](#) .



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.37 Exploded view of centre storage compartment (bottom)

- 1 - Lid
 - For centre storage compartment (bottom)
- 2 - Centre storage compartment (bottom)
 - Removing and installing ⇒ [page 228](#)
- 3 - Bolt
 - 2 Nm
 - 2x



5.38 Removing and installing centre storage compartment (bottom)

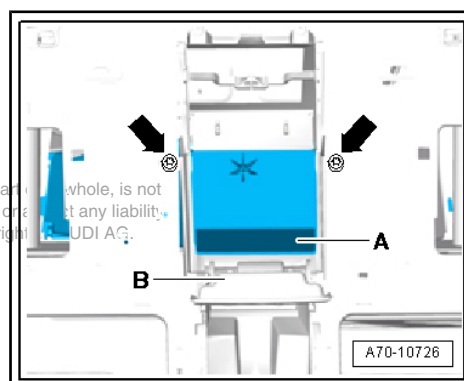
Removing

- Remove back panel cover ⇒ [page 214](#) .
- Remove back panel side trim (left and right) ⇒ [page 209](#) .
- Remove bolts -arrows-.
- Pull out centre storage compartment (bottom) -A- towards rear and remove from luggage compartment.



Note

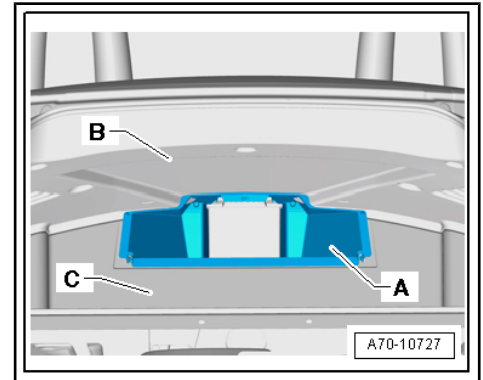
Centre storage compartment -B- does not have to be removed in order to install and remove centre storage compartment (bottom) -A-.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

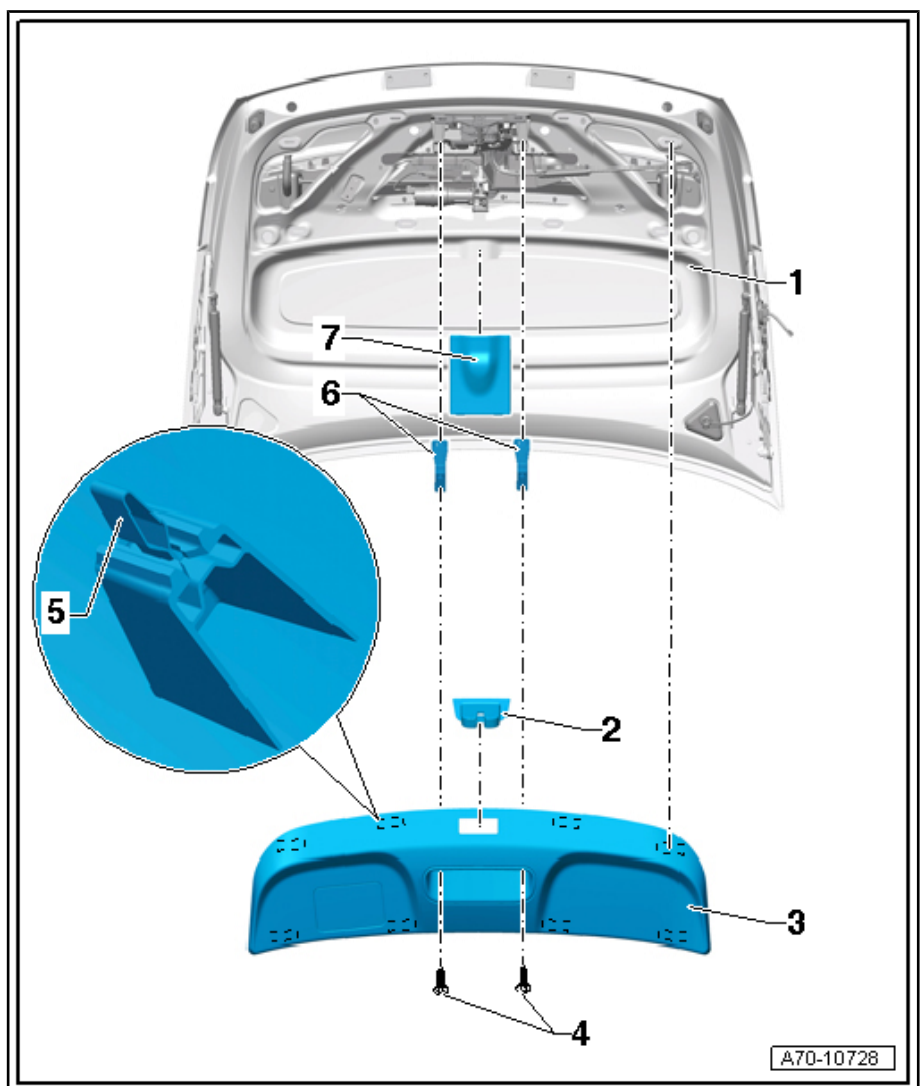
Luggage compartment trim (top) -B- and luggage compartment trim (front) -C- must be wedged behind edge of centre storage compartment (bottom) -A-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.39 Exploded view of rear lid trim panels

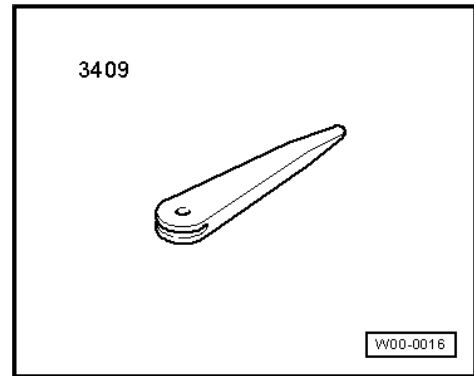
- 1 - Rear lid
- 2 - Trim for rear lid lock
 - Removing and installing
 ⇒ [page 230](#)
- 3 - Rear lid trim
 - Removing and installing
 ⇒ [page 229](#)
- 4 - Bolt
 - 1.8 Nm
 - 2x
- 5 - Clip
 - 8x
 - Renew if damaged or deformed
- 6 - Support
 - Engaged in rear lid and bolted to rear lid trim
- 7 - Trim
 - For SDARS aerial
 - Not installed on all vehicles. Note type of equipment on vehicle
 - Clip into rear lid



5.40 Removing and installing rear lid trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

◆ Removal wedge -3409-

**Removing**

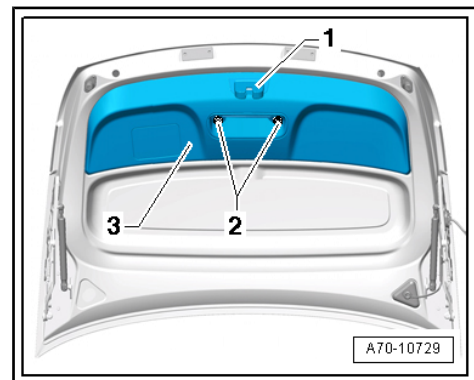
- Detach trim for rear lid lock -1- → [page 230](#) .
- If fitted, unclip trim for SDARS aerial from rear lid.
- Remove bolts -2-.
- Unclip rear lid trim -3- using removal wedge -3409- .

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

**Note**

- ◆ *If the clips for the trim have been left behind in the mounting points on the body, remove them and insert them in the trim.*
- ◆ *Check the clips for damage or deformation and renew them if necessary.*



Tightening torque → [page 229](#)

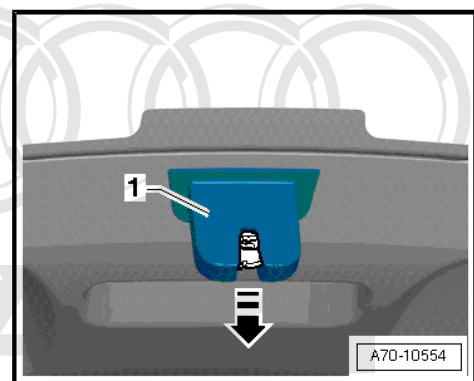
5.41 Removing and installing trim for rear lid lock

Removing

- Detach trim for rear lid lock -1- in direction of -arrow-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

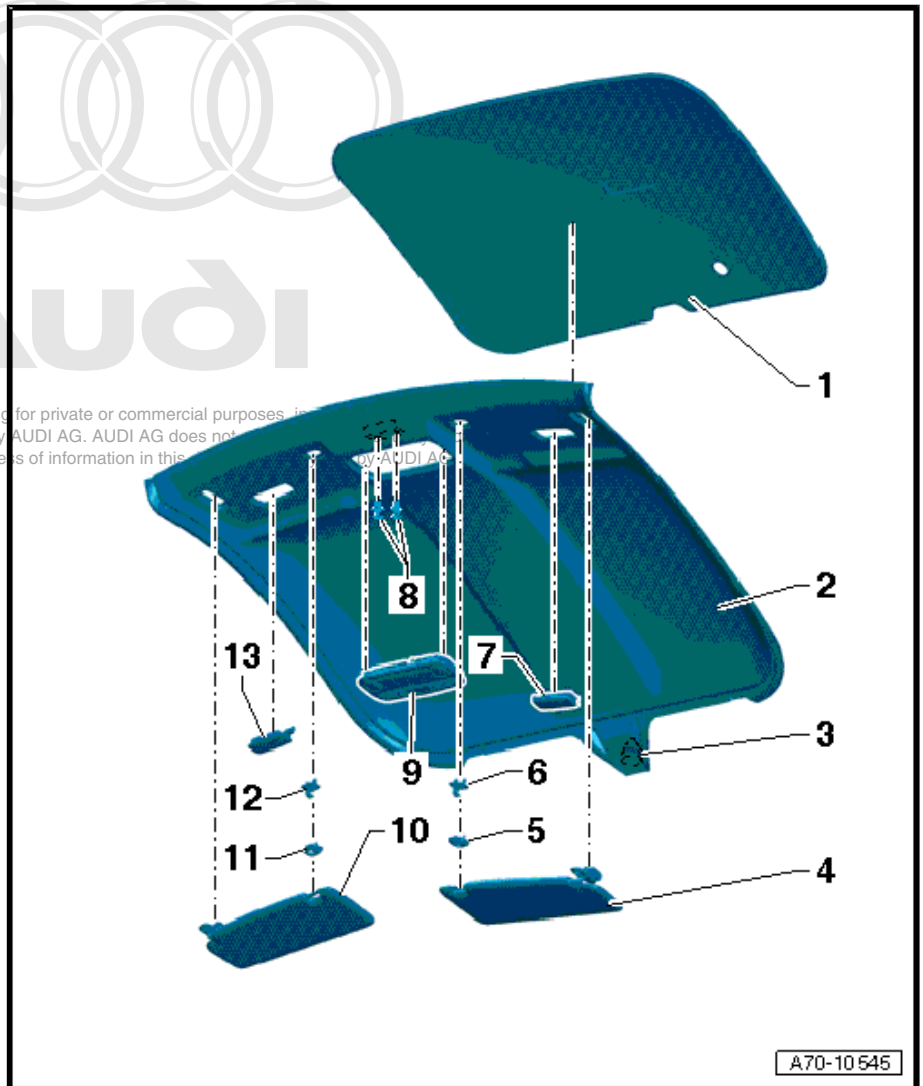


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

6 Roof trim (Coupé)

6.1 Exploded view of moulded headliner

- 1 - Insulation
- 2 - Moulded headliner
 - Removing and installing
 ⇒ [page 231](#)
- 3 - Retaining clip
 - Releasing ⇒ [page 232](#)
- 4 - Sun visor (left-side)
- 5 - Trim cover (left-side)
 - For centre bracket for sun visor
- 6 - Centre bracket for sun visor (left-side)
- 7 - Make-up mirror light (left-side)
- 8 - Fastener
 - 2x
 - Removing ⇒ [page 233](#)
- 9 - Interior light/reading light (front)
- 10 - Sun visor (right-side)
- 11 - Trim cover (right-side)
 - For centre bracket for sun visor
- 12 - Centre bracket for sun visor (right-side)
- 13 - Make-up mirror light (right-side)

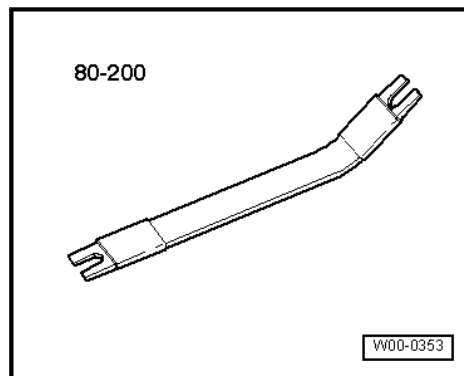


6.2 Removing and installing moulded headliner

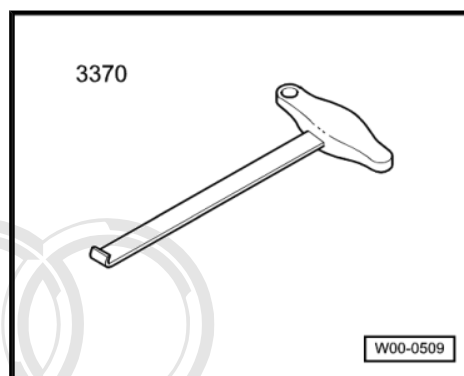
Special tools and workshop equipment required



◆ Removal lever -80-200-



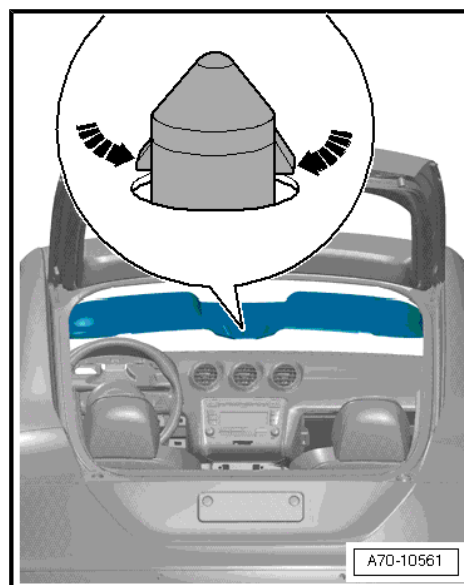
◆ Front-end hook -3370-



Removing

- Remove A-pillar trim (top) ⇒ [page 164](#) .
- Remove C-pillar trim ⇒ [page 172](#) .
- Remove roof end trim ⇒ [page 179](#) .
- Remove sun visors ⇒ [page 235](#) .
- Remove centre brackets for sun visors ⇒ [page 236](#) .
- Remove interior light ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 .
- Release fasteners -arrows- at retaining clip (rear).

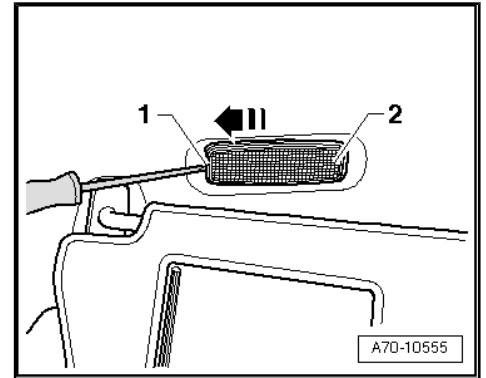
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted without the written permission of AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



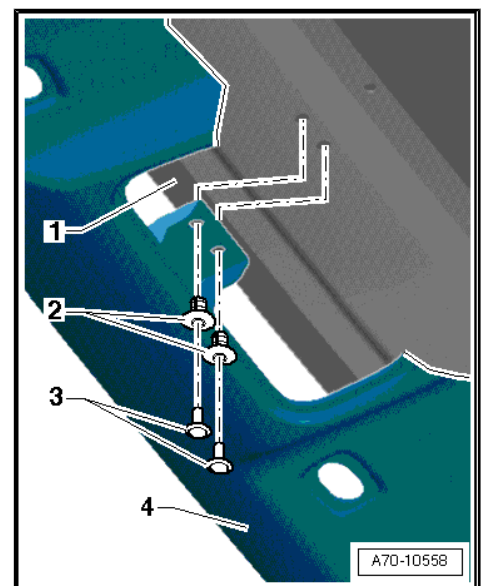
- Prise out make-up mirror light -2- on outer side at -1-.
- Detach make-up mirror light -2- in direction of -arrow- and unplug connector.
- Move seats as far to the front and downwards as possible.
- Move backrest as far to the rear as possible.

 **Note**

- ◆ *Take care not to kink moulded headliner. Kinked moulded headliners must be renewed.*
- ◆ *A second mechanic is required to unfasten the last connections and take out the moulded headliner.*



- Using removal lever -80-200- prise pins -3- out of sleeves -2-.
- Pull sleeves -2- out of moulded headliner -4- and roof -1-.



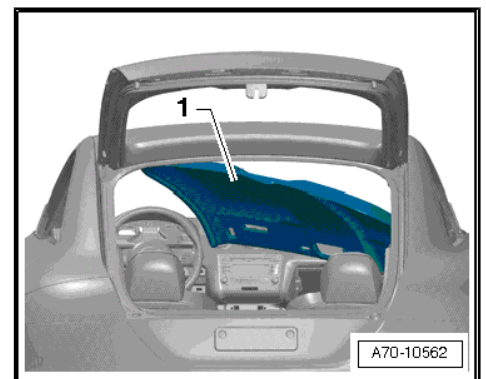
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Take out moulded headliner -1- through passenger's door.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

- Centre moulded headliner prior to attachment.



6.3 Exploded view of sun visors

1 - Sun visor

- ❑ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 235](#)

2 - Centre bracket for sun visor

- ❑ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 236](#)

3 - Moulded headliner

4 - Connector

- ❑ Of wiring harness

5 - Connector

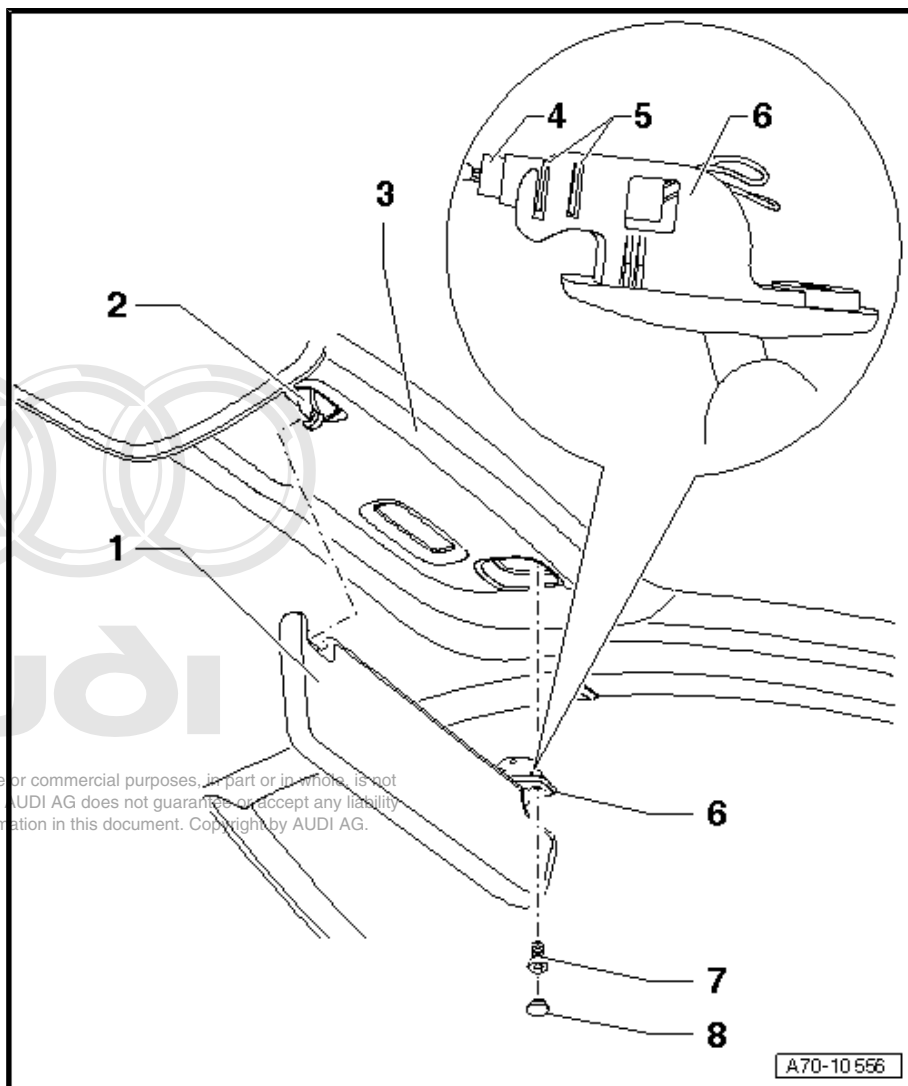
- ❑ Of sun visor

6 - Sun visor bracket

7 - Bolt

- ❑ 2 Nm

8 - Cap



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

A70-10 556

6.4 Removing and installing sun visors

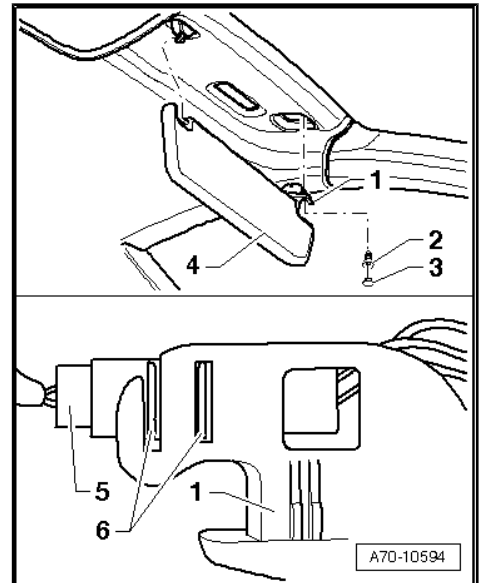
Removing

- Disengage sun visor -4- in centre of vehicle at sun visor centre bracket and fold it aside.
- Remove cap -3- from sun visor bracket -1-.
- Remove bolt -2- and detach sun visor -4-.
- Remove sun visor connector -6- from sun visor bracket -1-.
- Unplug sun visor connector -6- from wiring harness connector -5-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

Tightening torque ⇒ [page 234](#)



Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

6.5 Exploded view of centre bracket for sun visor

1 - Centre bracket for sun visor

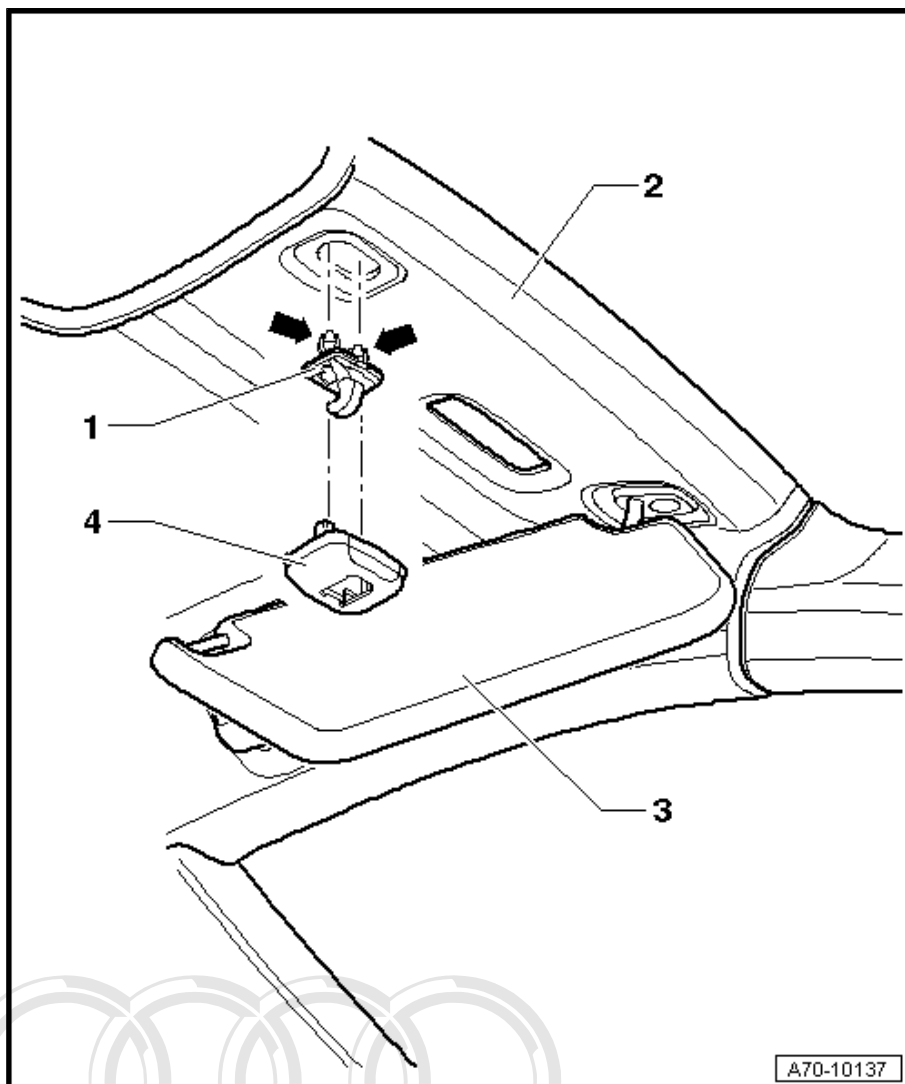
- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 236](#)
- Renew centre bracket for sun visor if spreader lugs are damaged
-arrows-

2 - Moulded headliner

3 - Sun visor

4 - Cap

- Clipped into centre bracket for sun visor

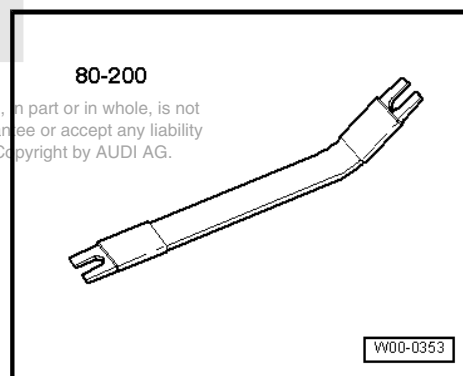


6.6 Removing and installing centre bracket for sun visor

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal lever -80-200-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Removing

- Unhook sun visor at centre bracket and fold sun visor to the side.
- Unclip cover panel for centre bracket for sun visor -1- using removal lever -80-200-. When doing so, only slide the removal lever -80-200- roughly 1 mm beneath the cap -arrows 2-.

Note

Inserting removal lever -80-200- further would position it beneath centre bracket for sun visor. Cover can then not be prised off.

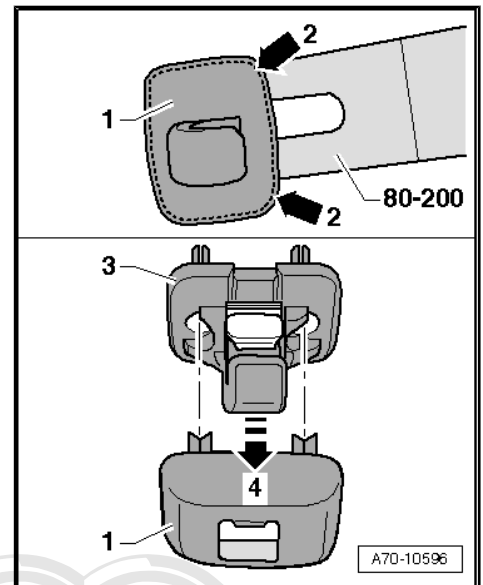
- Pull out centre bracket for sun visor -3- -arrow 4-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

Note

When installing centre bracket for sun visor make sure that spreader lugs are not damaged.



Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

72 – Seat frames

1 Overview of seat versions



Note

For illustration purposes, the front seats are shown as seats with electric adjustment.

1 - Driver's seat

Front seat with manual adjustment ⇒ [page 242](#)

- With manual backrest release (Coupé only)
- Without backrest release, with seat belt holder (Roadster only)
- Exploded view ⇒ [page 242](#)
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 243](#)
- Equipment versions:

- ◆ Seat and backrest heating
- ◆ Four-way lumbar support
- ◆ Storage compartment

Front seat with electric adjustment ⇒ [page 273](#)

- With manual backrest release (Coupé only)
- Without backrest release, with seat belt holder (Roadster only)
- Exploded view ⇒ [page 273](#)
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 274](#)
- Equipment version:

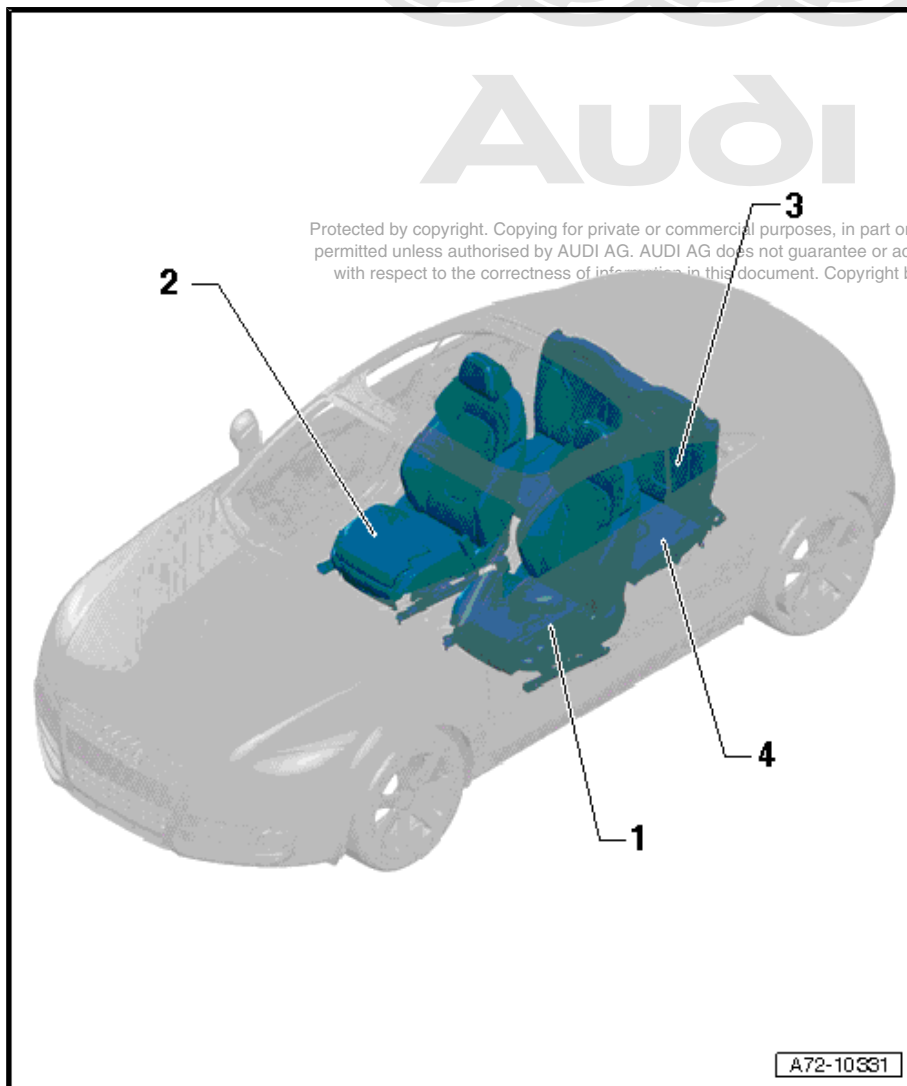
- ◆ Storage compartment

2 - Front passenger's seat

Front seat with manual adjustment ⇒ [page 242](#)

- With manual backrest release (Coupé only)
- Without backrest release, with seat belt holder (Roadster only)
- Exploded view ⇒ [page 242](#)
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 243](#)
- Equipment versions:

- ◆ Seat and backrest heating
- ◆ Four-way lumbar support
- ◆ Storage compartment
- ◆ ISOFIX child seat anchor



Front seat with electric adjustment ⇒ page 273

- With manual backrest release (Coupe only)
- Without backrest release, with seat belt holder (Roadster only)
- Exploded view ⇒ [page 273](#)
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 274](#)
- Equipment versions:
- ◆ Storage compartment
- ◆ ISOFIX child seat anchor

3 - Seat bench

- One-piece
- Exploded view ⇒ [page 382](#)
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 383](#)

4 - Backrest

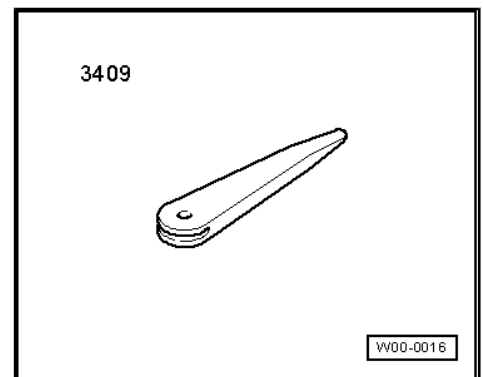
- Symmetrically split
- Exploded view ⇒ [page 385](#)
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 386](#)
- Equipment version:
- ◆ ISOFIX child seat anchor
 - Country-specific versions:
- ◆ Child seat anchor (at backrest frame)
- ◆ Top Tether (child seat anchor in backrest pan)

ected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.1 Moving front seats to service position

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal wedge -3409-



Setting service position

- Move head restraint to lowest detent position.
- Move seat as far towards rear and top as possible.

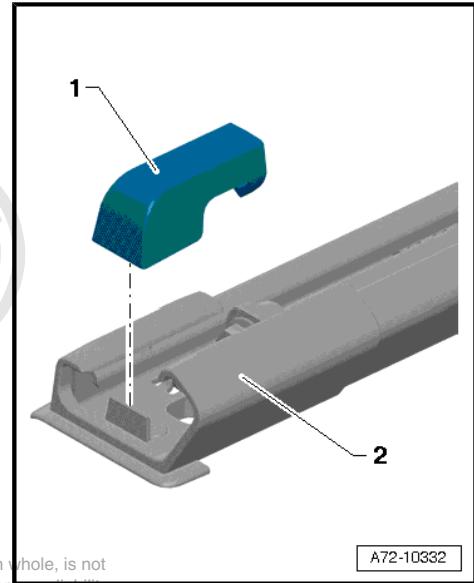
Seat with electric adjustment only



Note

For greater clarity the surrounding area is not shown in the illustration.

- Using removal wedge -3409- prise caps -1- off seat rail covers and seat longitudinal adjustment spindle -2-.



All vehicles (continued)

- Using removal wedge -3409- unclip cover -1- at back and detach from connector point -2- in direction of -arrow-.



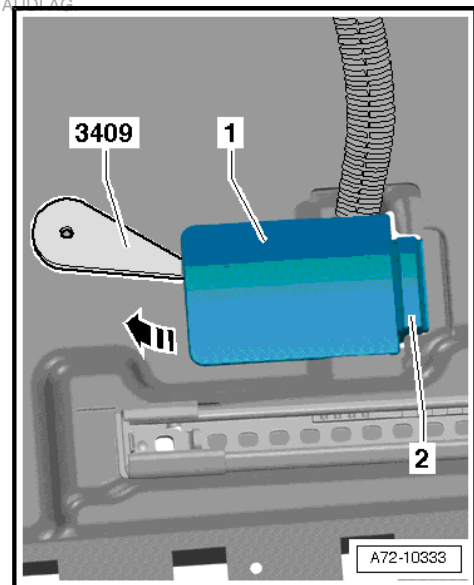
Note

Do not unplug electrical wiring.

Taking seat out of service position

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

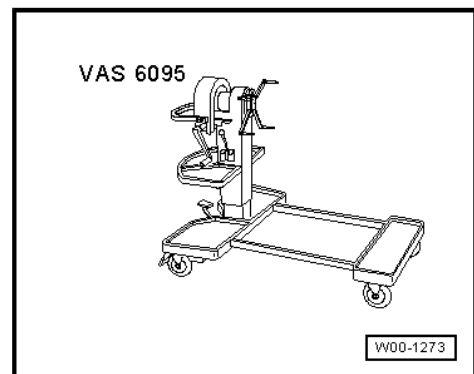
- Make sure lug on cover has been properly inserted in connector point.
- Engage cover properly with connector point.



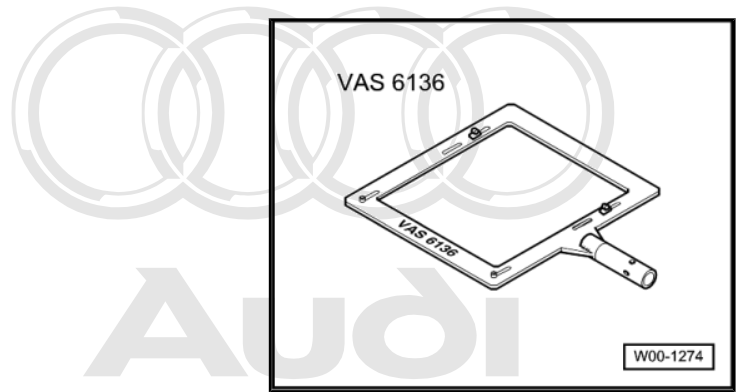
1.2 Attaching front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136-

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095-



◆ Seat repair stand -VAS 6136-



Attaching front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Front seat removed from vehicle
- Attach seat repair stand -VAS 6136- to engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095- .
- Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- .

2 Front seats with manual adjustment

2.1 Exploded view of front seat



Note

- ◆ The illustration is based on the driver's seat. The front passenger's seat is similar with the bolt-on parts fitted on the opposite sides.
- ◆ For reasons of clarity the floor covering is not shown in the illustration.

1 - Cover for seat rail

- Front right
- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 250](#)

2 - Bolt

- 40 Nm
- 4x

3 - Trim

- On tunnel side
- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 255](#)

4 - Front seat

- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 243](#)

5 - Handle

- For Easy Entry facility
- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 269](#)
- Coupé only

6 - Trim

- For Easy Entry facility
- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 269](#)
- Coupé only

7 - Holder with stud

- For seat belt
- Roadster only

8 - Backrest adjuster

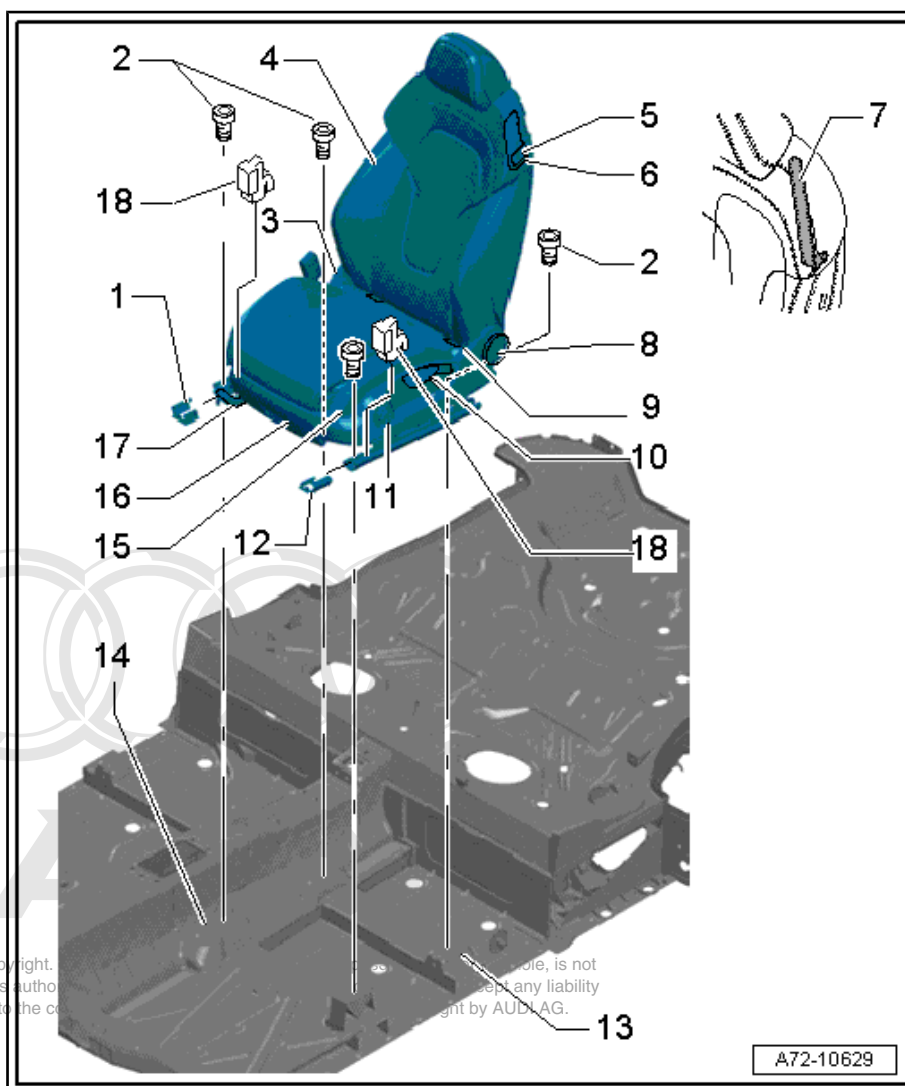
- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 251](#)

9 - ISOFIX child seat anchor

- Depending on equipment version
- For front passenger's seat only
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 75](#)
- Checks to be performed following an accident ⇒ [page 52](#)

10 - Seat height adjuster

- Exploded view ⇒ [page 257](#)



- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 258](#)

11 - Actuator for lumbar support

- Depending on equipment version
- Removing and installing driver seat lumbar support adjustment switch -E176- ⇒ [page 254](#)
- Removing and installing front passenger seat lumbar support adjustment switch -E177- ⇒ [page 254](#)
- Removing and installing four-way lumbar support ⇒ [page 306](#)



Note

12 - Cover for seat rail

- Front left
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 250](#)

13 - Console (rear)

- Welded to floor panel

14 - Console (front)

- Welded to floor panel

15 - Trim

- On sill side
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 252](#)

16 - Storage compartment

- Depending on equipment version
- Exploded view ⇒ [page 272](#)
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 272](#)
- Exploded view of storage compartment components ⇒ [page 272](#)
- Dismantling and assembling storage compartment ⇒ [page 272](#)

17 - Handle

- For seat longitudinal adjustment
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 260](#)

18 - Stop for longitudinal seat adjustment

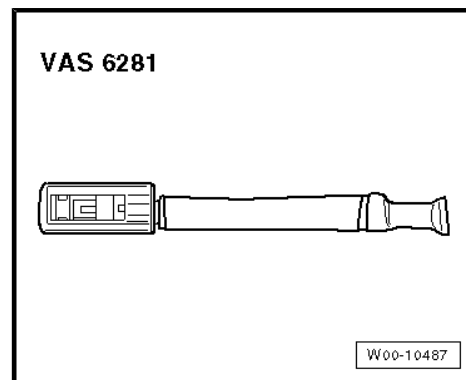
- 2x
- Clipped in
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 250](#)

Copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.2 Removing and installing front seat

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Airbag adapter -VAS 6281-



**Note**

Removal and installation are described for a driver's seat. The procedures for removal and installation are similar for the front passenger's seat.

Removing**WARNING**

- ◆ **Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components**
⇒ [page 42](#).

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Move seat to service position ⇒ [page 239](#).
- Switch off ignition.
- Disconnect the battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27.

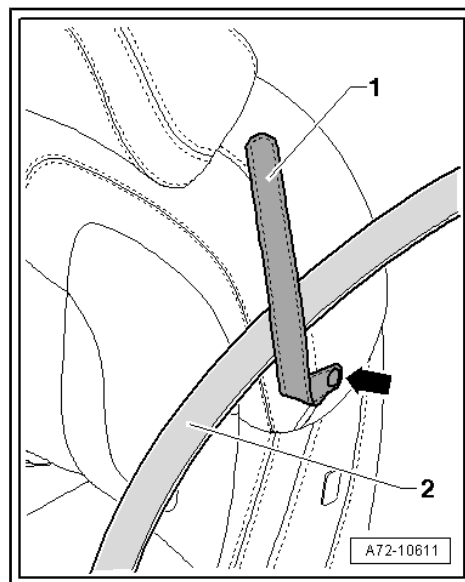
**WARNING**

- ◆ **Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.**

- Unplug connectors ⇒ [page 280](#) at connector point in floor.
- Connect airbag adapter -VAS 6281- ⇒ [page 283](#).

Roadster only

- Release stud -arrow- and open seat belt holder -1-.
- Remove seat belt -2- from seat belt holder.



All vehicles (continued)

- Remove bolts -1- (2x) at front.
- 3 - Console (rear)
- 4 - Console (front)
- Operate seat longitudinal adjustment handle and move seat -2- as far forwards as possible.
- Remove bolts -1- (2x) at rear.
- Lift seat -2- out of vehicle with the assistance of a second mechanic.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

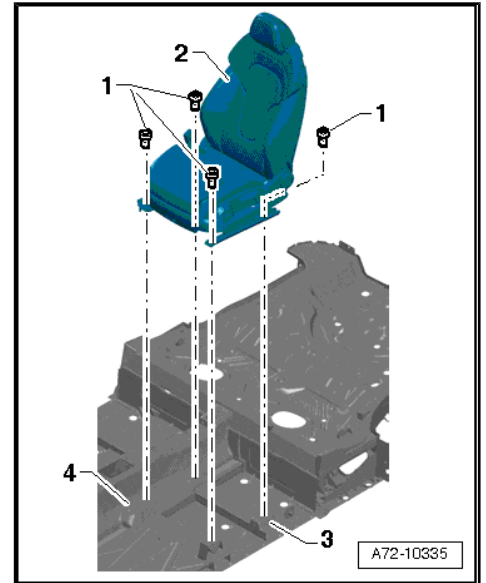


WARNING

◆ **Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components**
 ⇒ [page 42](#)

◆ **Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.**

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



- Install seat before detaching airbag adapter -VAS 6281-
 ⇒ [page 283](#) .



Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

- Plug in connectors at couplings of connector point in floor
 ⇒ [page 280](#) .
- Switch on ignition.



WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

- Connect battery earth wire with ignition switched on ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .
- If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following the installation, the fault memory must be interrogated, erased and interrogated again ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B- .

Tightening torque ⇒ [page 242](#)

2.3 Unplugging and plugging in connectors

The connector point is located in the vehicle floor under the front section of the seat. The procedures for unplugging and plugging

in the connectors is described for a front seat with electric adjustment.

Unplugging and plugging in connectors ⇒ [page 280](#)

2.4 Connecting airbag adapter

Plugging in the airbag adapter is described for a front seat with electric adjustment.

Connecting airbag adapter ⇒ [page 283](#)

2.5 Connector point connectors

The connector assignment of a front seat with manual adjustment is similar to that of a front seat with electric adjustment.

Connector point connectors ⇒ [page 286](#)

2.6 Exploded view of modular wire routing



Note

- ◆ Check the type of front seats and the vehicle model and perform the repair work accordingly.
- ◆ Note that there are two possible modular wire routing versions: Modular Light and Modular ⇒ [page 247](#).

1 - Bolt

- For cable clip
- 3.5 Nm

2 - Front seat

3 - Wiring harness

- Note information on routing of wiring harness in corrugated tube ⇒ [page 247](#)

4 - Cable tie

5 - Cable retainer

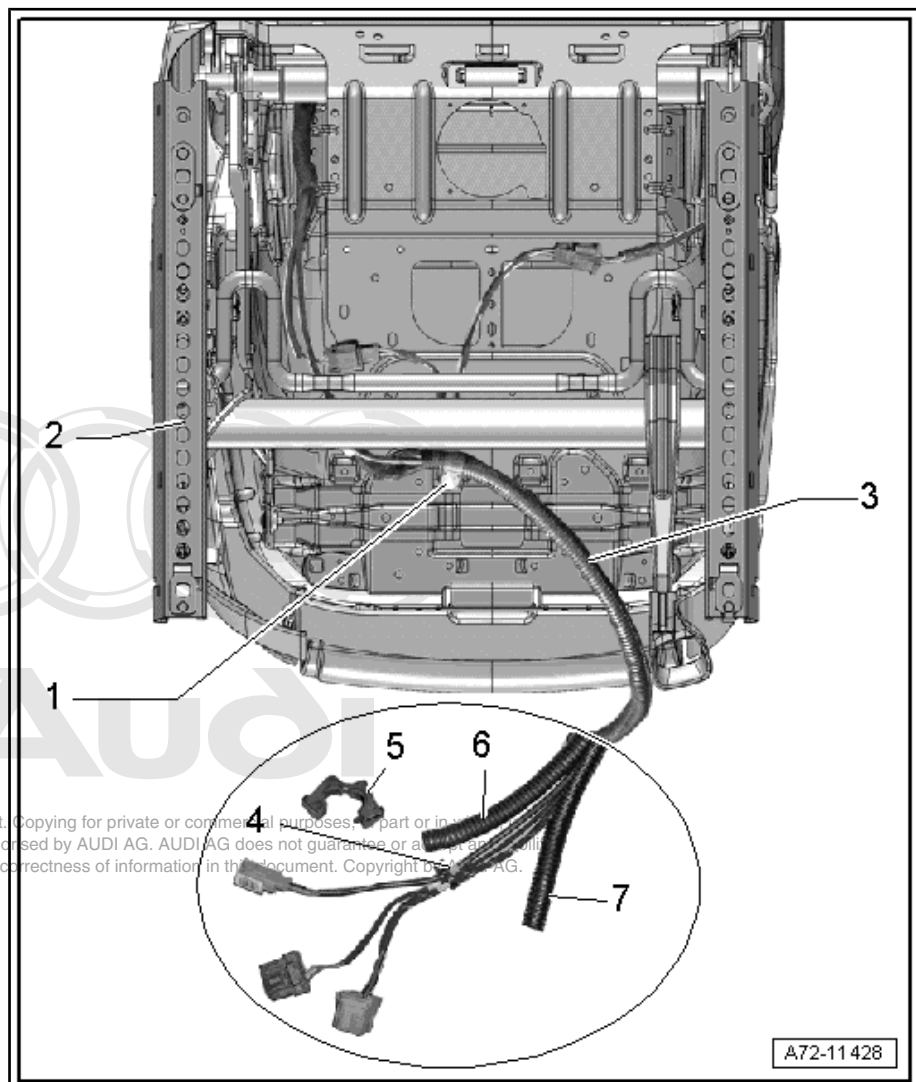
- Observe correct installation position ⇒ [page 247](#)

6 - Corrugated tube

- Upper pan
- Observe correct installation position ⇒ [page 247](#)

7 - Corrugated tube

- Lower pan
- Observe correct installation position ⇒ [page 247](#)



A72-11428

2.7 Modular wire routing versions

There are two modular wire routing versions:

- ◆ Modular Light ⇒ [page 247](#)
- ◆ Modular ⇒ [page 247](#)

»Modular Light« wire routing

The characteristic feature of the »Modular Light« version is that only the side airbag wiring harness is laid in one section right through to the connector point in the vehicle floor. There is no additional connector (intermediate coupling) in the side airbag wiring harness.

All other electrical and electronic components, for example the seat occupied sensor, the head restraints with electric adjustment, the seat and backrest heaters and the electric backrest adjuster feature an additional connector (intermediate coupling) -1-, -2-, -3- on the underside of the upper seat pan frame.

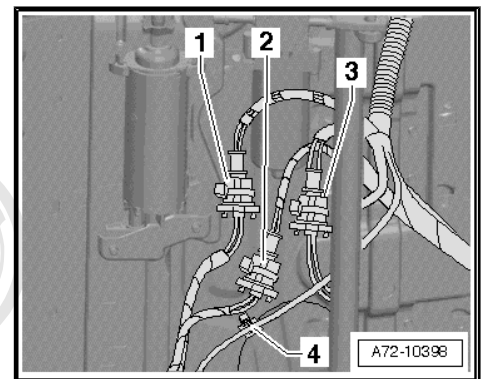
4 - Clip

In the seat/connector point area, all wiring harnesses are laid in a two-piece corrugated tube.

»Modular« wire routing

The characteristic feature of the »Modular« version is that all the wiring harnesses of the electric and electronic components, for example the side airbag, the seat occupied sensor, the bladder system, the head restraints with electric adjustment, the seat and backrest heaters and the electric backrest adjuster, are routed in one section right through to the connector point in the vehicle floor. There are no additional connectors (intermediate couplings) in the wiring harnesses of the electrical and electronic components.

In the seat/connector point area, all wiring harnesses are laid in a two-piece corrugated tube.

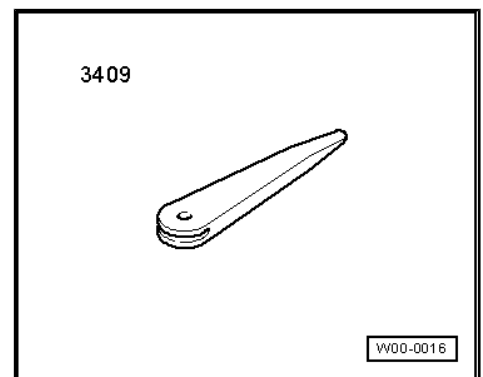


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with regard to the correctness of identification in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.8 Modular wire routing with corrugated tube at front seat

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal wedge -3409-



General notes

The full sheathing for the entire wiring harness with fabric tape between the seat pan and the connectors to the connector point was discontinued with the introduction of the modular wire routing (Modular Light/Modular). Instead, a two-shell corrugated tube is used in which the individual wires are laid separately.

Opening corrugated tube and removing individual wire

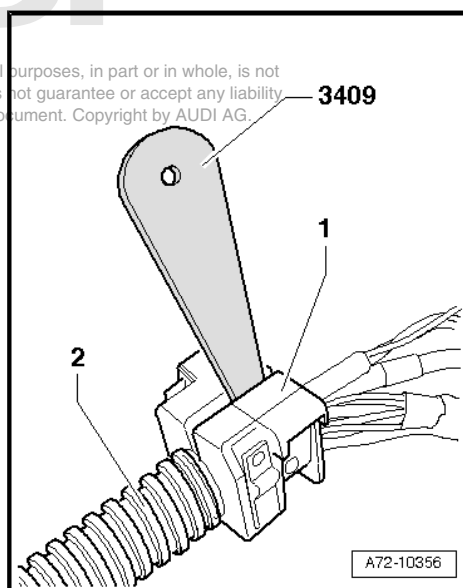


WARNING

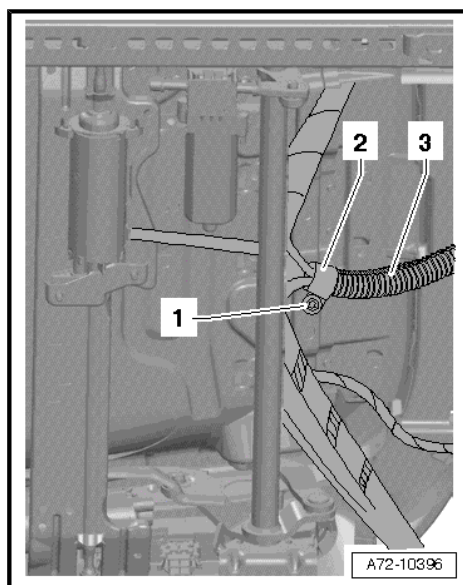
- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components*
⇒ *page 42* .

- Remove front seat:
- ◆ Removing and installing front seat (with manual adjustment)
⇒ [page 243](#)
- ◆ Removing and installing front seat (with electric adjustment)
⇒ [page 274](#)
- Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136-
⇒ [page 240](#) .
- Use removal wedge -3409- to unfasten cable retainer -1-.
- Detach cable retainer -1- from corrugated tube -2-

This document is not to be used for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



- Remove bolt -1-.
- Detach cable clip -2- from corrugated tube -3-.



- Unfasten fabric tape -2- in area of -arrow-.
- Open corrugated tube -1-.
- Renew defective wiring => Repair Group 97 or side airbag => [page 100](#).

Fitting individual wires and closing corrugated tube

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

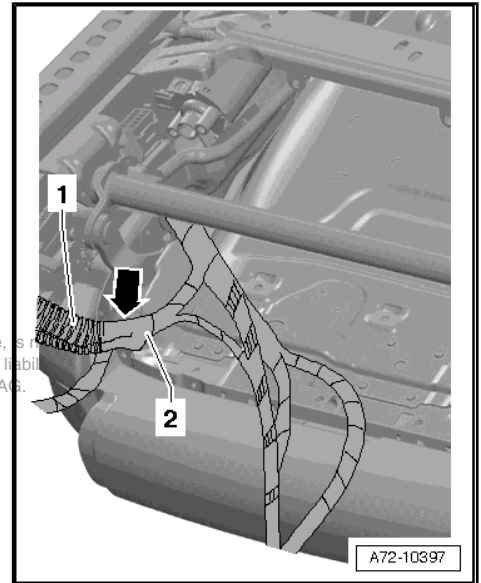
- Take care not to twist any wires when bunching the individual wires and fitting them in the corrugated tube.



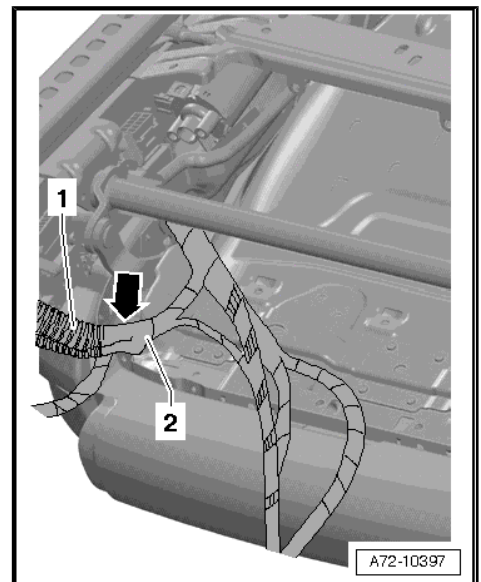
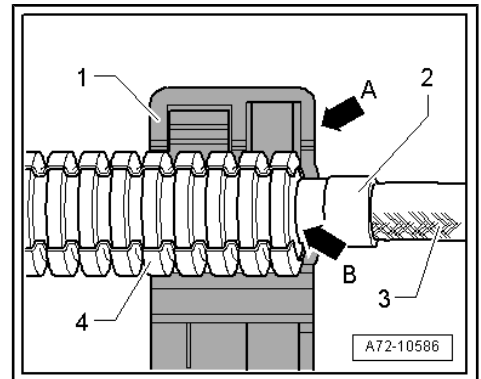
Note

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note the correct installation position of the two-piece corrugated tube in relation to the wiring harness and the cable retainer.



- The start of the corrugated tube -4- should be positioned immediately after the clip -2-/cable tie.
- 3 - Wiring harness to connector point
- Make sure the two-piece corrugated tube -4- is properly closed over its entire length.
- After joining the two halves of the corrugated tube, attach and clip shut the cable retainer -1- as shown in illustration.
- Make sure side -arrow A- of cable retainer -1- follows on immediately from last bead -arrow B- of corrugated tube -4-.
- Bind self-adhesive fabric tape -arrow- around the transition between the corrugated tube on the seat end -1- and the wiring harness -2-.

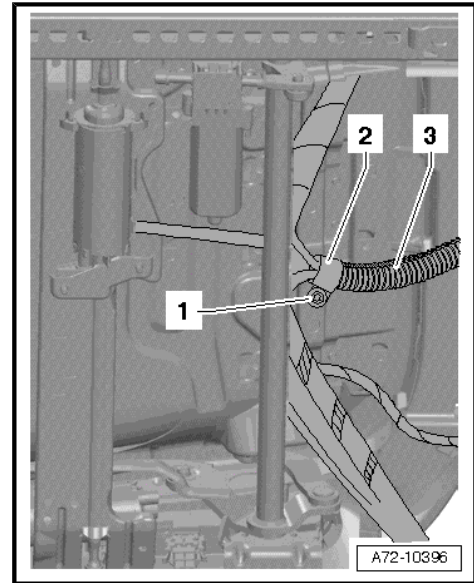


- Secure corrugated tube -3- and wiring harness with a cable clip -2- at the seat pan.

1 - Bolt

- Place cable ties, cable retainers and retaining clips in original positions (before removal).

Tightening torques ⇒ [page 246](#)



2.9 Removing and installing seat rail covers

- ◆ The procedures for removing and installing the covers are described for a front seat with electric adjustment.
- ◆ The procedures for removing and installing the seat rail covers are described for the driver's seat rail on the sill side. Removal and installation of cover (tunnel side) are similar.
- ◆ A spindle cover is only provided for the front seat with electric adjustment ⇒ [page 286](#).

Removing and installing seat rail covers ⇒ [page 286](#)

2.10 Removing and installing stop for longitudinal seat adjustment



Note

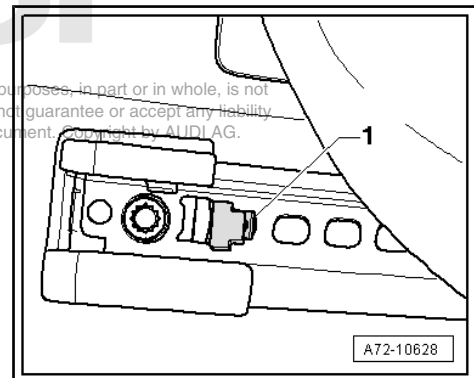
The stop for longitudinal seat adjustment can be removed and installed without removing the seat. For greater clarity only the stop on one side is shown in the illustration.

Removing

- Unclip stop -1- for longitudinal seat adjustment.

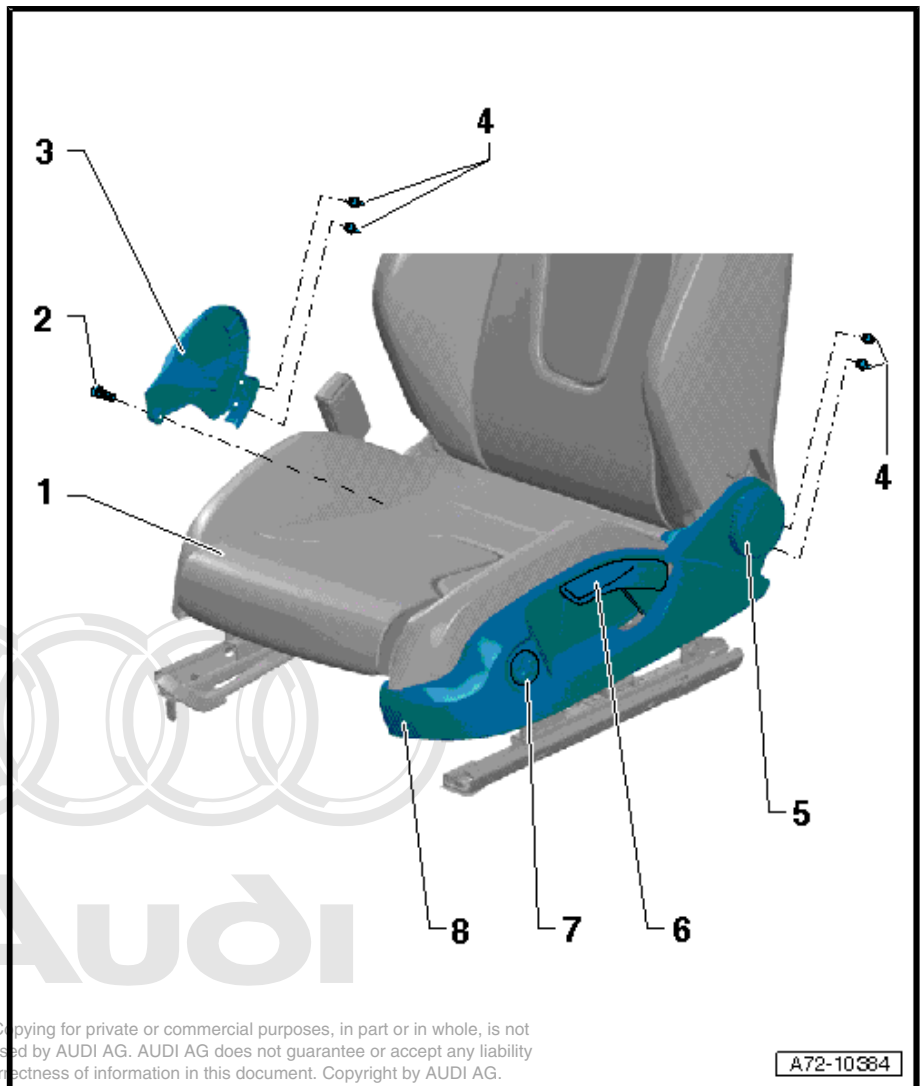
Installing

- Install in reverse order of removal.



2.11 Exploded view of trim (sill side and tunnel side)

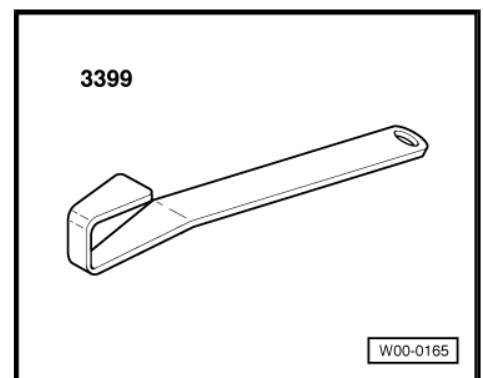
- 1 - Front seat
- 2 - Bolt
 - 2.5 Nm
- 3 - Trim (tunnel side)
 - Can only be renewed after removing seat
 - Removing and installing ⇒ [page 255](#)
- 4 - Spreader rivet
 - 4x
- 5 - Backrest adjuster
 - Removing and installing ⇒ [page 251](#)
- 6 - Seat height adjuster
 - Removing and installing ⇒ [page 258](#)
- 7 - Driver seat lumbar support adjustment switch -E176- / front passenger seat lumbar support adjustment switch - E177-
 - Depending on equipment version
 - Exploded view ⇒ [page 254](#)
- 8 - Trim (sill side)
 - Can be renewed with seat installed
 - Removing and installing ⇒ [page 252](#)



2.12 Removing and installing backrest adjuster

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Assembly tool -3399-



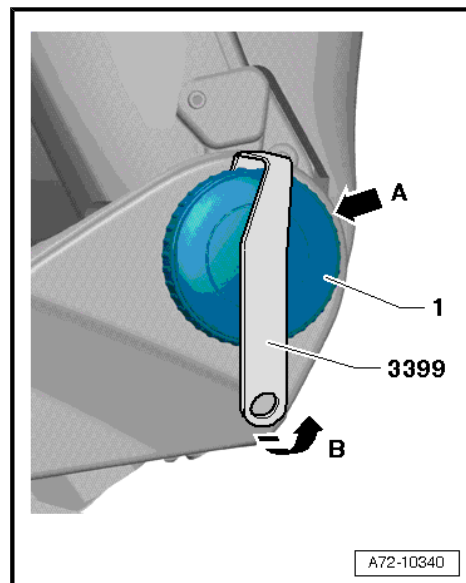
Removing

- Turn backrest adjuster -1- until detent is visible from rear -arrow A-. Use a torch if necessary.
- Hook in assembly tool -3399- and lever it in direction of -arrow B-.
- Turn backrest adjuster a further 120 °.
- Hook in assembly tool -3399- and lever it in direction of -arrow B-.
- Remove backrest adjuster.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

- Renew backrest adjuster if it is too loose after assembly.



2.13 Removing and installing trim (sill side)



Note

The trim (sill side) can be removed and installed with the front seat in position.

Removing



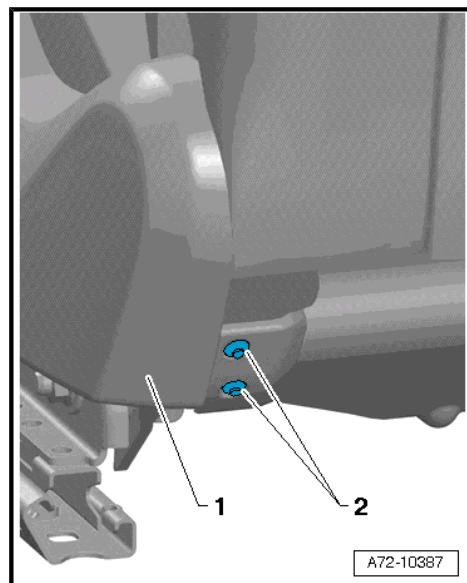
WARNING

- ◆ Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 42](#).

- Move seat to highest position.
- Remove backrest adjuster ⇒ [page 251](#).
- Remove seat height adjuster ⇒ [page 258](#).
- Remove spreader rivets -2- (2x).

1 - Trim (sill side)

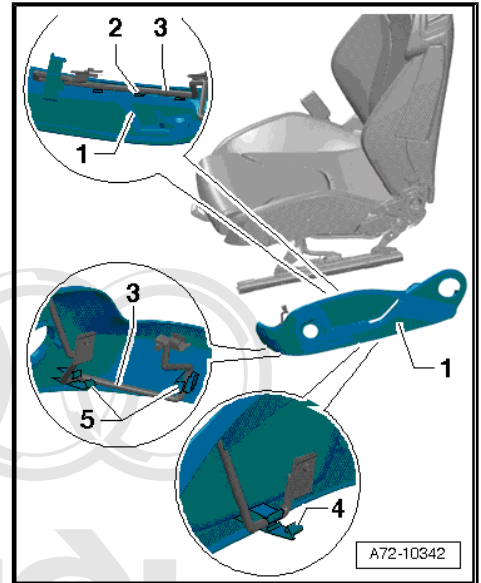
The illustration shows the spreader rivets on a front seat with electric adjustment.



- Unfasten clips -5- (2x) and -4-.
- Unclip trim -1- at retaining bracket -3-.
- Disengage trim in area of backrest adjuster at backrest and seat fitting.
- Detach trim from retaining bracket -3- upwards and towards front.

 **Note**

When detaching trim, take care not to damage retainers -2-.



Seat with four-way lumbar support

 **Note**

On vehicles with a front seat with manual adjustment and a seat occupied sensor (country-specific version), the lumbar support adjustment switch -E176- / -E177- must be installed so that the connector is plugged in from above.


- Unplug connector -1- from driver seat lumbar support adjustment switch -E176- -4-.
- 2 - Trim (sill side)
- 3 - Retaining bracket

All seats with manual adjustment (continued)

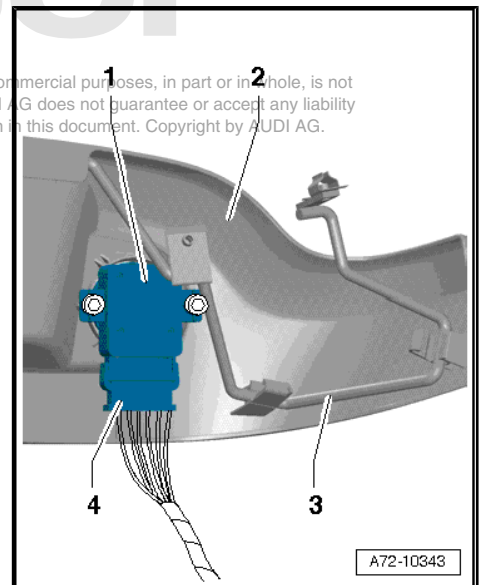
- Detach trim (sill side).

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

 **WARNING**

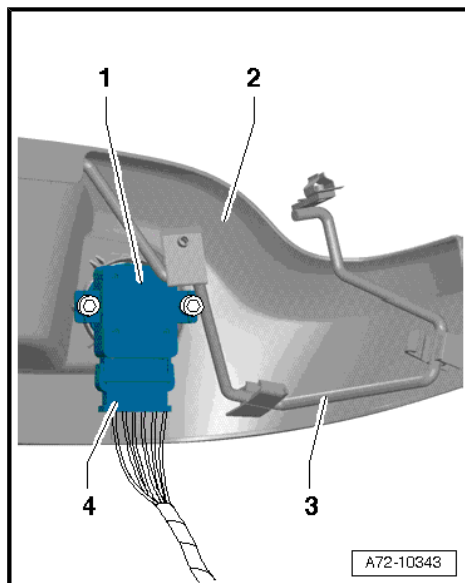
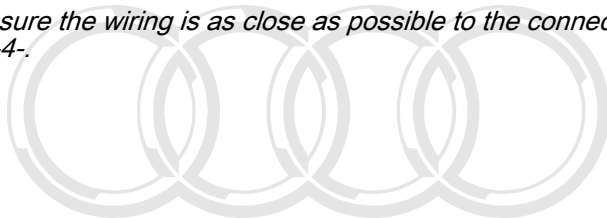
◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components
 ⇒ [page 42](#).*





Note

- ◆ Make sure that the trim (sill side) is properly engaged at the retaining bracket and that the lockable clips are fastened.
- ◆ Make sure the wiring is as close as possible to the connector point -4-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the accuracy of the information.

2.14 Exploded view of lumbar support adjustment switch -E176- / -E177-

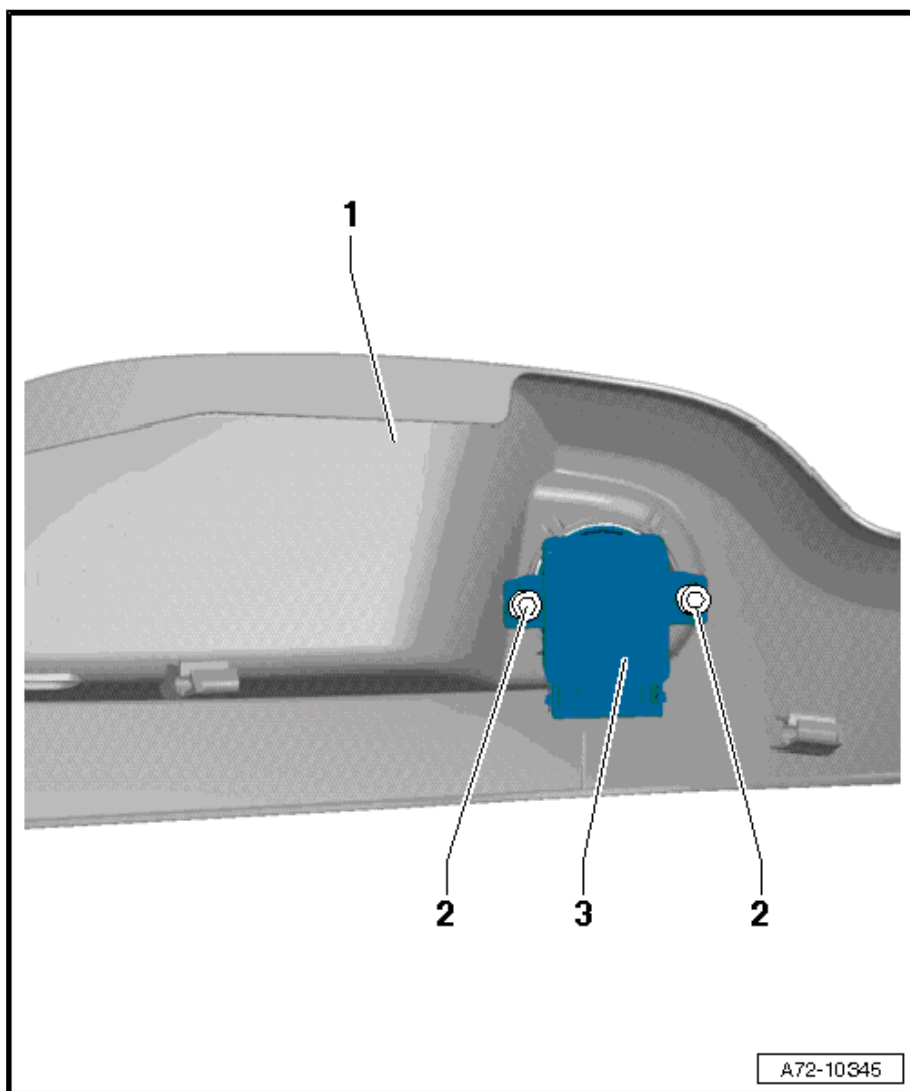
1 - Trim (sill side)

2 - Bolt

- 0.5 Nm
- 2x

3 - Lumbar support adjustment switch

- For driver's seat -E176-
- For front passenger's seat -E177-
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 255](#)
- Switch and control button cannot be separated
- ◆ Connector is plugged in from below
 - On front seats with manual adjustment and seat occupied sensor (country-specific version), lumbar support adjustment switch -E176- / -E177- is fitted the other way round (rotated by 180°)
- ◆ Connector is plugged in from above



2.15 Removing and installing lumbar support adjustment switch -E176- / -E177-

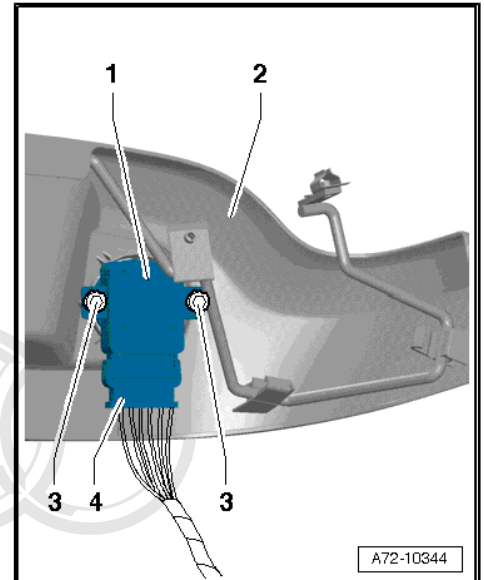
Removing

- Remove trim (sill side) ⇒ [page 252](#) .
- Unplug connector -4-.

Note

On vehicles with front seats with manual adjustment and seat occupied sensor (country-specific version), the connector -4- is plugged in from above and not as shown in illustration.

- Remove bolts -3- (2x).
- Detach driver seat lumbar support adjustment switch -E176- / front passenger seat lumbar support adjustment switch -E177- -1- from trim -2-.



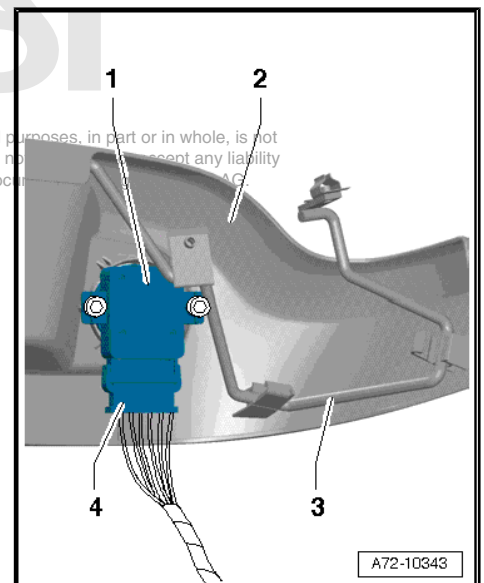
Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

- Install wiring as close as possible to connector point -4-.

Tightening torque ⇒ [page 254](#)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



2.16 Removing and installing trim (tunnel side)

Note

- ◆ *The trim (sill side) can only be removed and installed with the front seat removed.*
- ◆ *Removal and installation of the trim (sill side) are described for a front seat with electric adjustment.*

Removing and installing trim (tunnel side) ⇒ [page 291](#)

Tightening torque ⇒ [page 251](#)

2.17 Exploded view of retaining bracket for trim (sill side)

1 - Front seat

- With manual adjustment

2 - Retaining bracket (sill side)

- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 256](#)

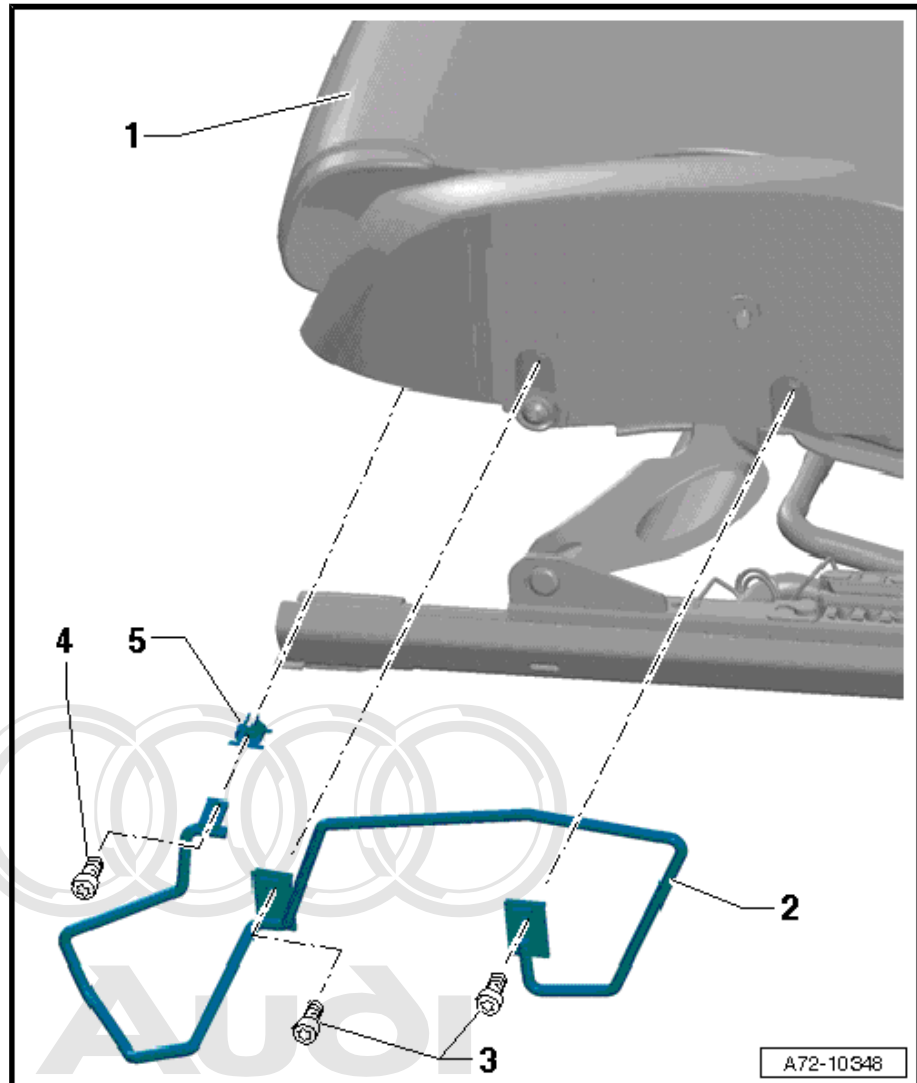
3 - Bolt

- 3.5 Nm
- 2x

4 - Bolt

- 3.5 Nm

5 - Speed nut



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability for errors or omissions. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.18 Removing and installing retaining bracket for trim (sill side)

Removing



WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components*
⇒ [page 42](#).

– Remove trim (sill side):

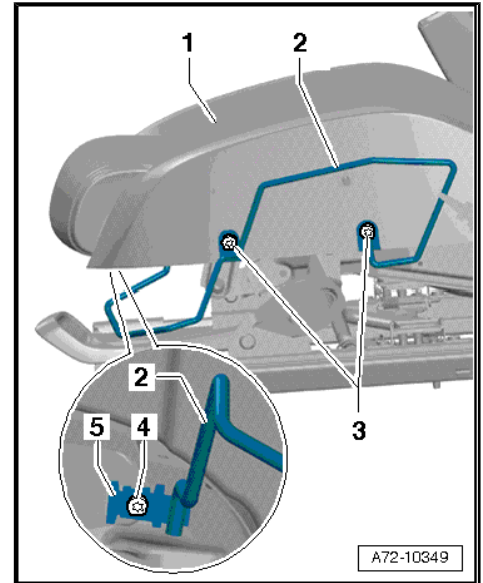
- ◆ Front seat with manual adjustment ⇒ [page 252](#)
- ◆ Front seat with electric adjustment ⇒ [page 289](#)

- Remove bolt -4-.
- Remove bolts -3- (2x).
- Detach retaining bracket -2- from front seat -1-.

Installing

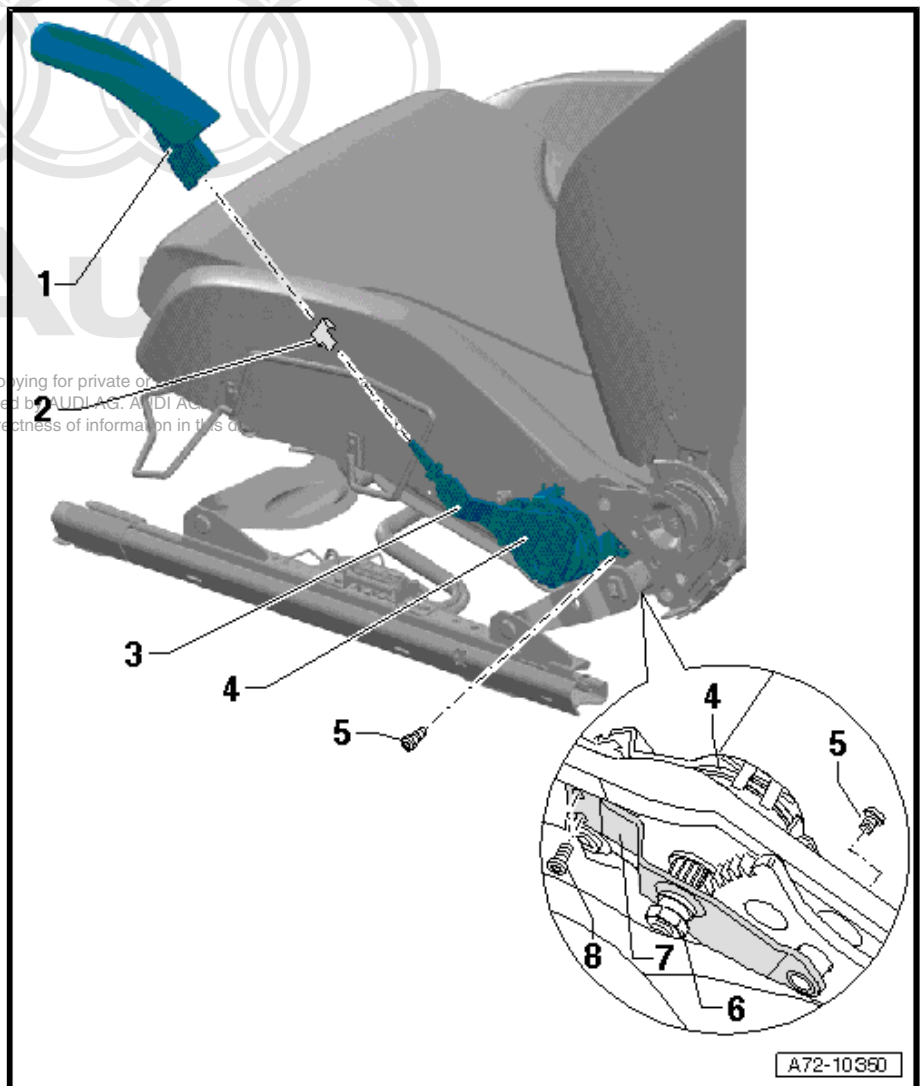
Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening torque => [page 256](#)



2.19 Exploded view of seat height adjustment unit and seat height adjuster

- 1 - Seat height adjuster**
 - Removing and installing => [page 258](#)
- 2 - Retaining clip**
 - Always renew after removing
 - Observe correct installation position => [page 258](#)
- 3 - Lever**
 - For seat height adjuster
- 4 - Seat height adjustment unit**
 - Removing and installing => [page 259](#)
- 5 - Bolt**
 - 8 Nm
- 6 - Nut**
 - 12 Nm
- 7 - Retaining plate**
- 8 - Bolt**
 - 8 Nm
 - 2x



2.20 Removing and installing seat height adjuster

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Improvised tool required ⇒ [page 258](#)



Note

The seat height adjuster can be renewed with the front seat in position.

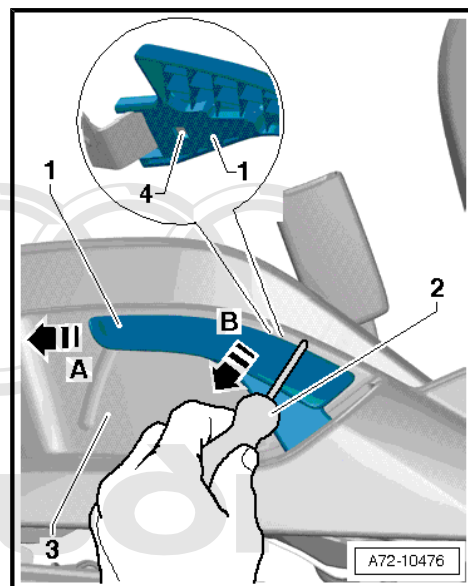
Removing

- Make improvised tool ⇒ [page 258](#) .
- Pull seat height adjuster -1- as far upwards as possible and hold it in this position.
- Carefully pull seat height adjuster -1- slightly off front seat.
- Insert improvised tool -2- in mounting -4-.
- Pull improvised tool -2- in direction of -arrow B- and press spring of retaining clip outwards.
- Detach seat height adjuster -1- from lever in direction of -arrow A-.

Installing

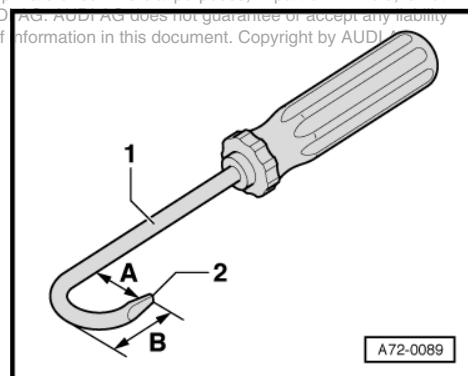
Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

- Renew retaining clip at seat height adjuster lever, observing correct installation position of retaining clip ⇒ [page 258](#) .
- Make sure seat height adjuster engages properly with fastener.



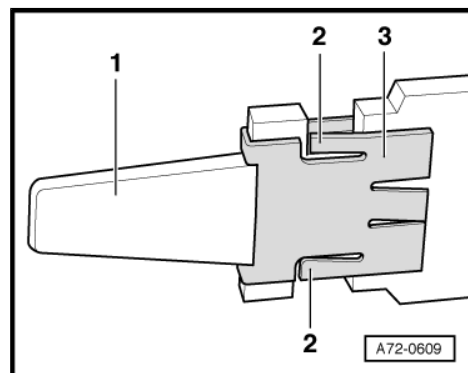
Making improvised tool

- Bend a screwdriver -1- with a width -2- of 3.5 mm to dimensions:
- ◆ A = 20.00 mm
- ◆ B = max. 15 mm



Installation position of retaining clip

- Make sure springs -2- (2x) of retaining clip -3- are positioned on the outside of the lever -1-.



2.21 Removing and installing seat height adjustment unit

Removing



WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 42](#).*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

- Remove front seat ⇒ [page 243](#).
- Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- ⇒ [page 240](#).
- Remove trim (sill side) ⇒ [page 252](#).
- Remove nut -3-.
- Remove bolts -5- (2x).
- Remove bolt -2-.
- Detach seat height adjustment unit -1- and retaining plate -4-.

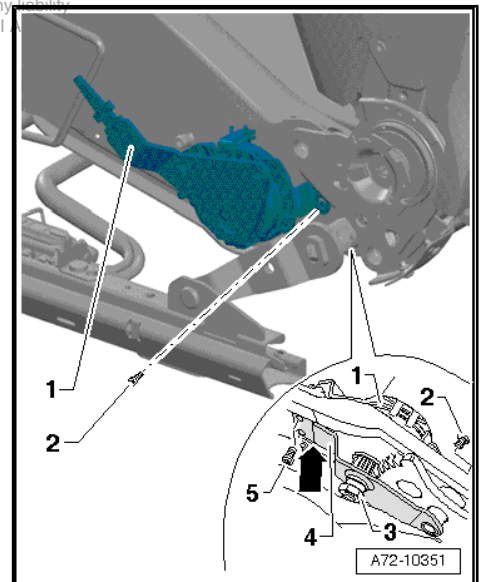
Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:



WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 42](#).*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*



**Note**

- ◆ Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.
- ◆ Make sure retaining plate -4- makes contact with backrest frame at point indicated by -arrow-.

– Switch on ignition.

**WARNING**

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

- Connect battery earth wire with ignition switched on ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .
- If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following the installation, the fault memory must be interrogated, erased and interrogated again ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B- .

Tightening torque ⇒ [page 257](#)

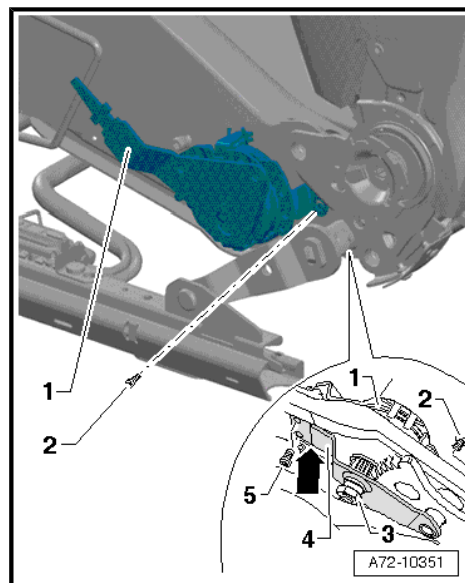
2.22 Removing and installing seat longitudinal adjustment handle

Removing

**Note**

The seat longitudinal adjustment handle cannot be removed without damaging it.

- Move front seat as far forwards as it will go.



- Use a rubber-headed or plastic-headed hammer to knock seat longitudinal adjustment handle -1- off handle mounting -2-.

 **Note**

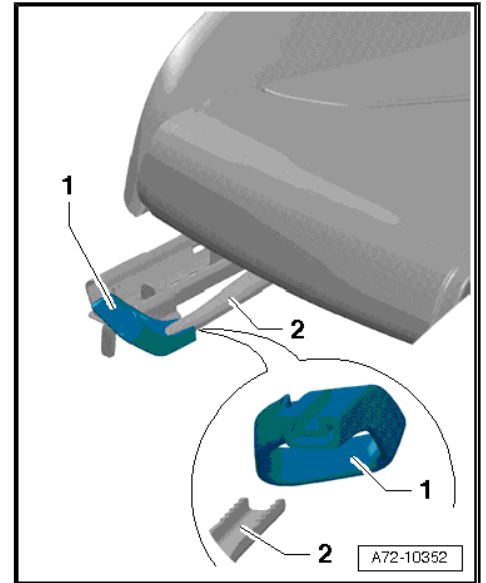
For greater clarity, the detail has been turned 180° in the illustration.

Installing

- Slide seat longitudinal adjustment handle onto handle mounting.
- Use a rubber-headed hammer to knock seat longitudinal adjustment handle onto handle mounting as far as stop.

 **Note**

When knocking on seat longitudinal adjustment handle, take care not to damage surface.



2.23 Exploded view of front seat backrest

1 - Seat pan

2 - Bolt, self-locking

- 36 Nm
- 4x
- Renew
- Always clean threaded holes for bolts (using a tap for example)

3 - Front seat backrest

- Removing and installing
 ⇒ [page 262](#)

4 - Head restraint

- Removing and installing
 ⇒ [page 270](#)

5 - Handle

- For Easy Entry facility
- Removing and installing
 ⇒ [page 269](#)
- Coupé only

6 - Trim

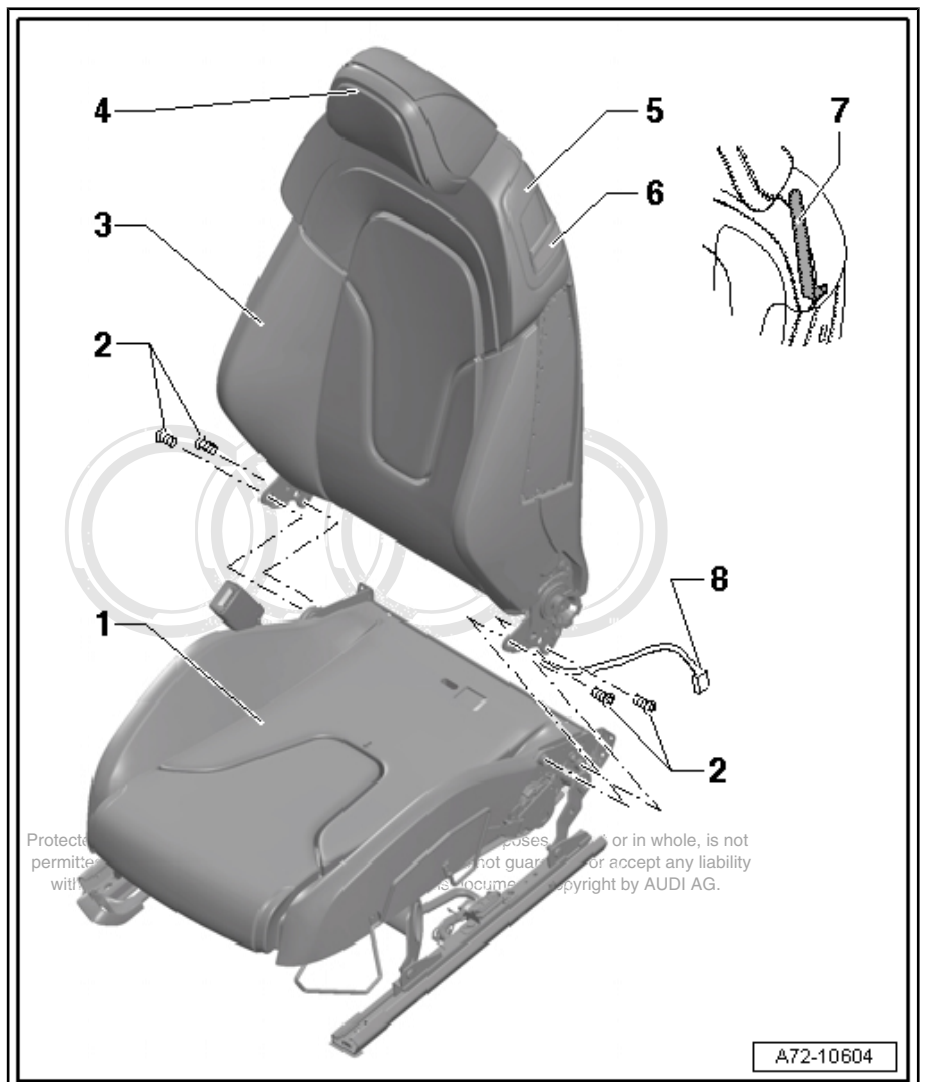
- For Easy Entry facility
- Removing and installing
 ⇒ [page 269](#)
- Coupé only

7 - Holder with stud

- For seat belt
- Roadster only

8 - Wire

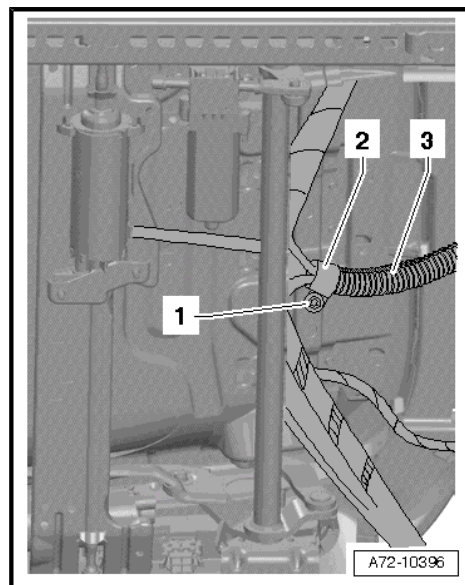
- For side airbag



- Depending on equipment version there may also be additional wires, e.g. for seat heating, lumbar support

Cable clamp at seat pan

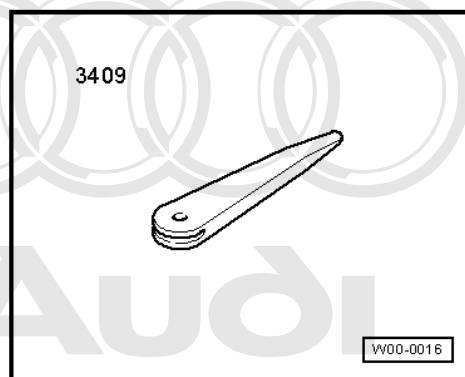
Item 1: 3.5 Nm



2.24 Removing and installing front seat backrest

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal wedge -3409-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Note

- ◆ *Removal and installation are described for a driver's seat. The removal and installation procedures for the front passenger's seat are similar.*
- ◆ *The procedure for unplugging the connectors is described for a front seat with electric adjustment.*

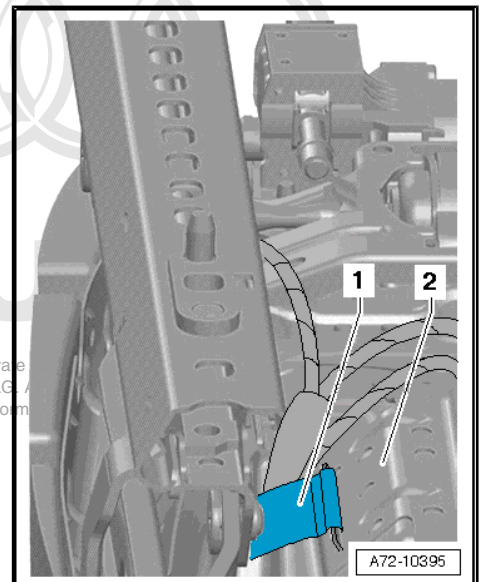
Removing



WARNING

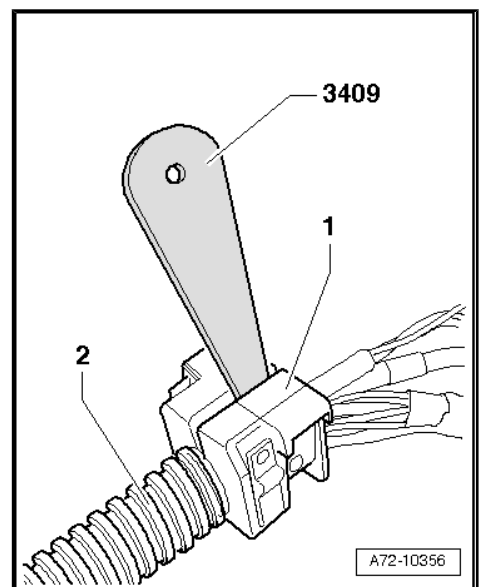
- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components*
 ⇒ [page 42](#) .
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

- Remove front seat ⇒ [page 243](#) .
- Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136-
 ⇒ [page 240](#) .
- Remove trim (sill side) ⇒ [page 252](#) .
- Remove trim (tunnel side) ⇒ [page 291](#) .
- Disengage lug -1- at seat pan -2-.

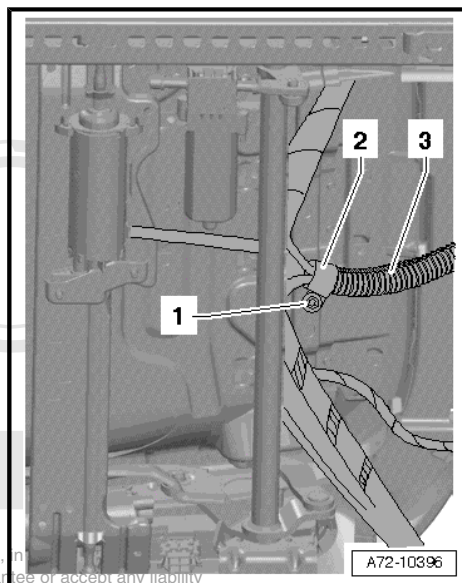


Protected by copyright. Copying for private use is permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. All rights reserved. with respect to the correctness of information.

- Use removal wedge -3409- to unclip cable retainer -1-.
- Detach cable retainer -1- from corrugated tube -2-.

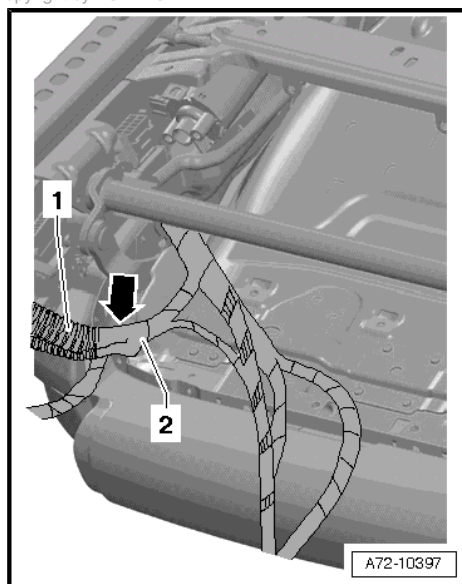


- Remove bolt -1-.
- Detach cable clamp -2- from corrugated tube -3-.

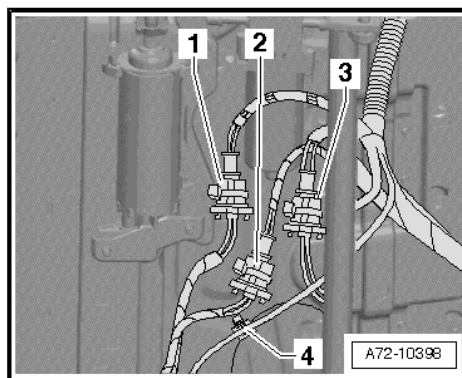


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in whole or in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee the accuracy or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Unfasten fabric tape -2- in area of -arrow-.
- Open corrugated tube -1-.
- Detach corrugated tube -1- from wiring harness.




- Unplug connectors, e.g. -1-, -2- and -3-.
- Detach clip with cable tie -4-.



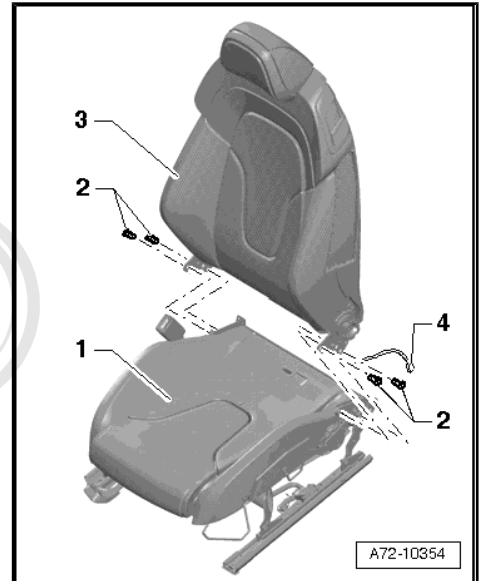
- Remove bolts -2- (4x).
- Swivel backrest -3- forwards onto seat pan -1-.
- Press padding to one side and carefully pull side airbag wire -4- and any other wires (depending on equipment version) out of seat pan.
- Detach backrest.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

 **WARNING**

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 42](#).*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Always clean threaded holes for bolts -2- (using e.g. a thread tap).
- Always renew bolts -2- (4x) after removal.
- Make sure upper and lower sections of corrugated tube fit together perfectly.

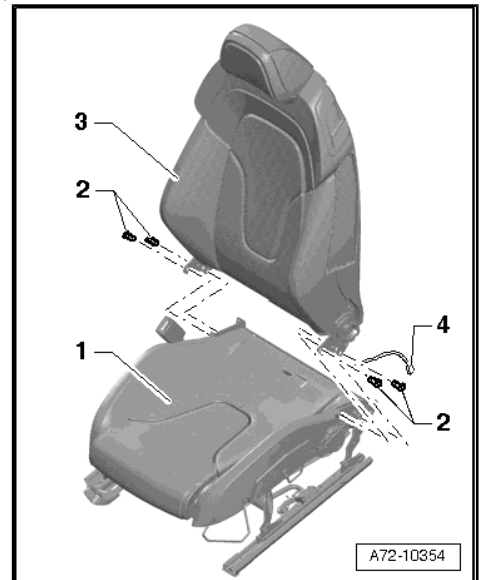
 **Note**

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

- Switch on ignition.

 **WARNING**

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.



- Connect battery earth wire with ignition switched on ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .
- If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following the installation, the fault memory must be interrogated, erased and interrogated again ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B- .

Tightening torque ⇒ [page 261](#)

2.25 Exploded view of backrest cover panel

The backrest cover panel of a front seat with manual adjustment is similar to that of a front seat with electric adjustment.

Exploded view of backrest cover panel ⇒ [page 301](#)

2.26 Removing and installing backrest cover panel

The procedures for removing and installing the backrest cover panel are described for a front seat with electric adjustment.

Removing and installing backrest cover panel ⇒ [page 302](#)

2.27 Exploded view of spring mat

1 - Spring mat

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 267](#)
- Can be removed and installed with and without extension springs

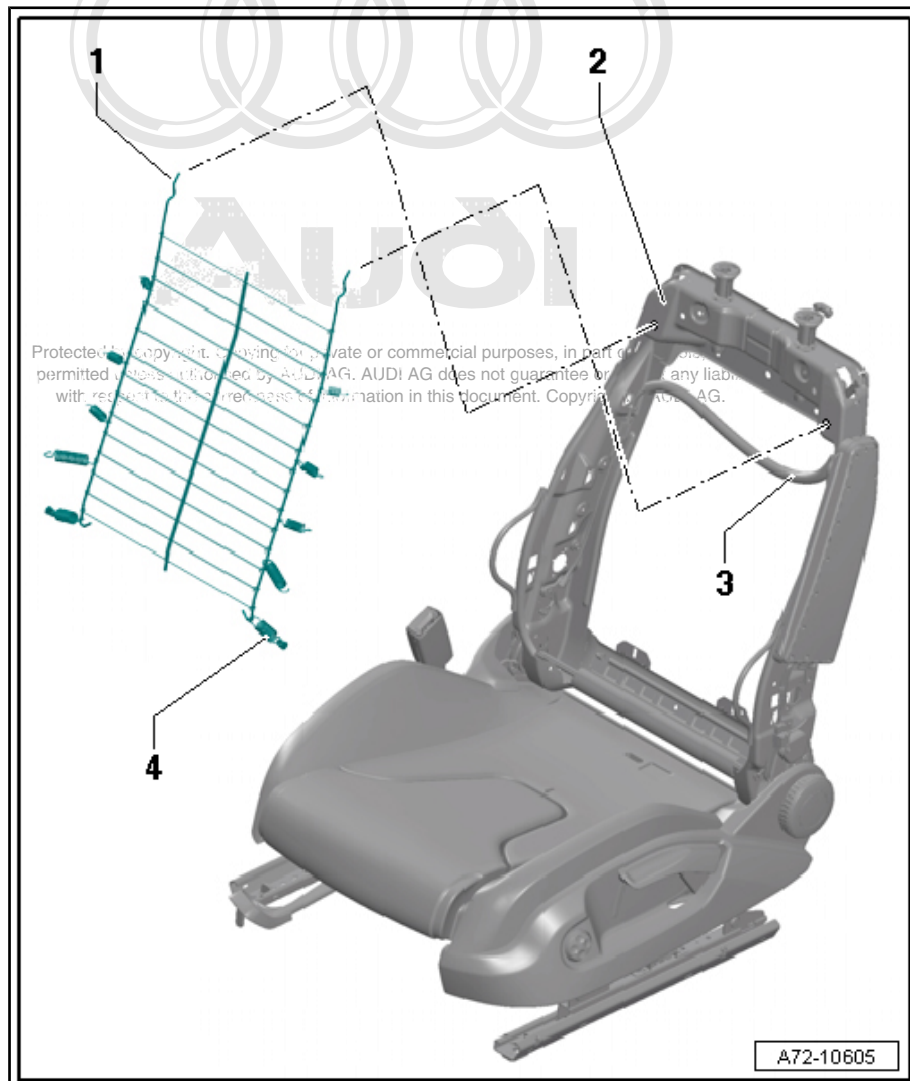
2 - Backrest frame

3 - Bowden cable

- For Easy Entry facility
- Coupé only

4 - Extension spring

- Five extension springs each with a different number of turns
- For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue



2.28 Removing and installing spring mat

Removing



WARNING

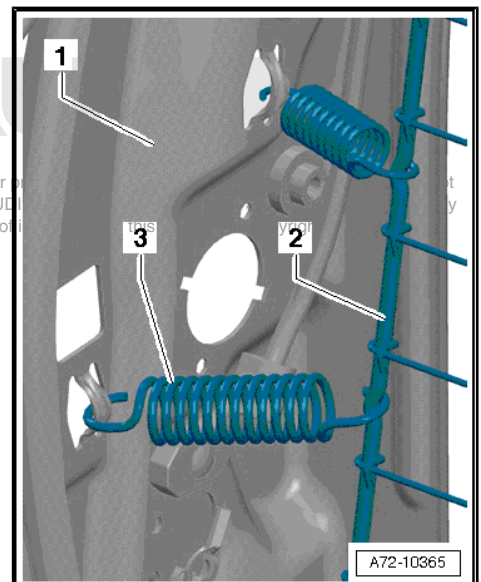
- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 42](#) .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

- Remove front seat ⇒ [page 243](#) .
- Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- ⇒ [page 240](#) .
- Remove backrest cover panel ⇒ [page 302](#) .
- Remove head restraint ⇒ [page 321](#) .
- Remove cover with padding ⇒ [page 407](#) .
- Disengage extension springs -3- at backrest frame -1-.



Note

However, extension springs -3- can also be left attached to backrest frame -1-, and spring mat -2- can be disengaged directly at extension springs.





- Swivel spring mat -3- forwards.
- Pull spring mat -arrows- out of backrest frame -1-.
- 2 - Extension spring

Installing

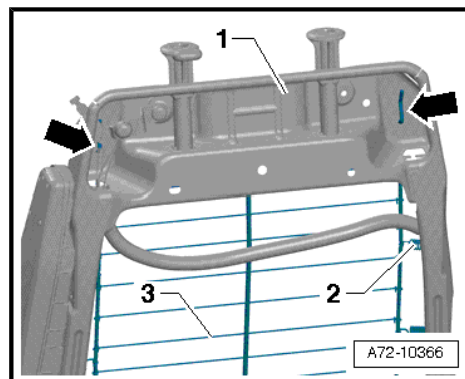
Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

**WARNING**

- ◆ **Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components**

⇒ page 42

- ◆ **Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.**



- Make sure you engage the correct extension spring (number of turns) at the specified location.

**Note**

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

- Switch on ignition.

**WARNING**

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

- Connect battery earth wire with ignition switched on ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .
- If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following the installation, the fault memory must be interrogated, erased and interrogated again ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B- .

2.29 Exploded view of four-way lumbar support

The four-way lumbar support of a front seat with manual adjustment is similar to that of a front seat with electric adjustment.

Exploded view of four-way lumbar support ⇒ [page 306](#)

2.30 Removing and installing four-way lumbar support

The procedures for removing and installing the four-way lumbar support are described for a front seat with electric adjustment.

Removing and installing four-way lumbar support ⇒ [page 307](#)

2.31 Exploded view of Easy Entry facility (Coupé only)

The Easy Entry facility of a front seat with manual adjustment is similar to that of a front seat with electric adjustment.

Exploded view of Easy Entry facility (Coupé only) ⇒ [page 311](#)

2.32 Removing and installing trim with Easy Entry handle (Coupé only)



Note

- ◆ *The trim and handle can be removed and installed with the front seat in position.*
- ◆ *If the trim and handle are removed, both components will be damaged irreparably.*
- ◆ *The procedures for removing and installing the trim with Easy Entry handle are described for a front seat with electric adjustment.*

Removing and installing trim with Easy Entry handle (Coupé only) ⇒ [page 312](#)

2.33 Removing and installing retainer for Easy Entry facility (Coupé only)



Note

- ◆ *The retainer for the Easy Entry facility can be removed and installed with the front seat in position.*
- ◆ *The procedures for removing and installing the retainer for the Easy Entry facility are described for a front seat with electric adjustment.*

Removing and installing retainer for Easy Entry facility (Coupé only) ⇒ [page 314](#)

2.34 Removing and installing Bowden cables, left and right (Coupé only)



Note

- ◆ *The Bowden cables (left and right) cannot be renewed separately.*
- ◆ *The procedures for removing and installing the left and right Bowden cables are described for a front seat with electric adjustment.*

Removing and installing Bowden cables, left and right (Coupé only) ⇒ [page 315](#)

2.35 Adjusting Bowden cables for Easy Entry facility (Coupé only)

Adjusting the Bowden cables is described for a front seat with electric adjustment.

Adjusting Bowden cables for Easy Entry facility (Coupé only)[⇒ page 318](#)**2.36 Exploded view of head restraints**Exploded view of head restraints [⇒ page 321](#)**2.37 Removing and installing head restraints with slide-in locking mechanism**Removing and installing head restraints with slide-in locking mechanism [⇒ page 321](#)**2.38 Removing and installing head restraint guides without and with release button**Removing and installing head restraint guides without and with release button [⇒ page 322](#)**2.39 Exploded view of seat pan****Note**

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted without the prior written consent of AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- ◆ **Do not separate upper and lower seat pan frames.**
- ◆ **If they are damaged, entire seat pan should be renewed.**

1 - Upper seat pan frame

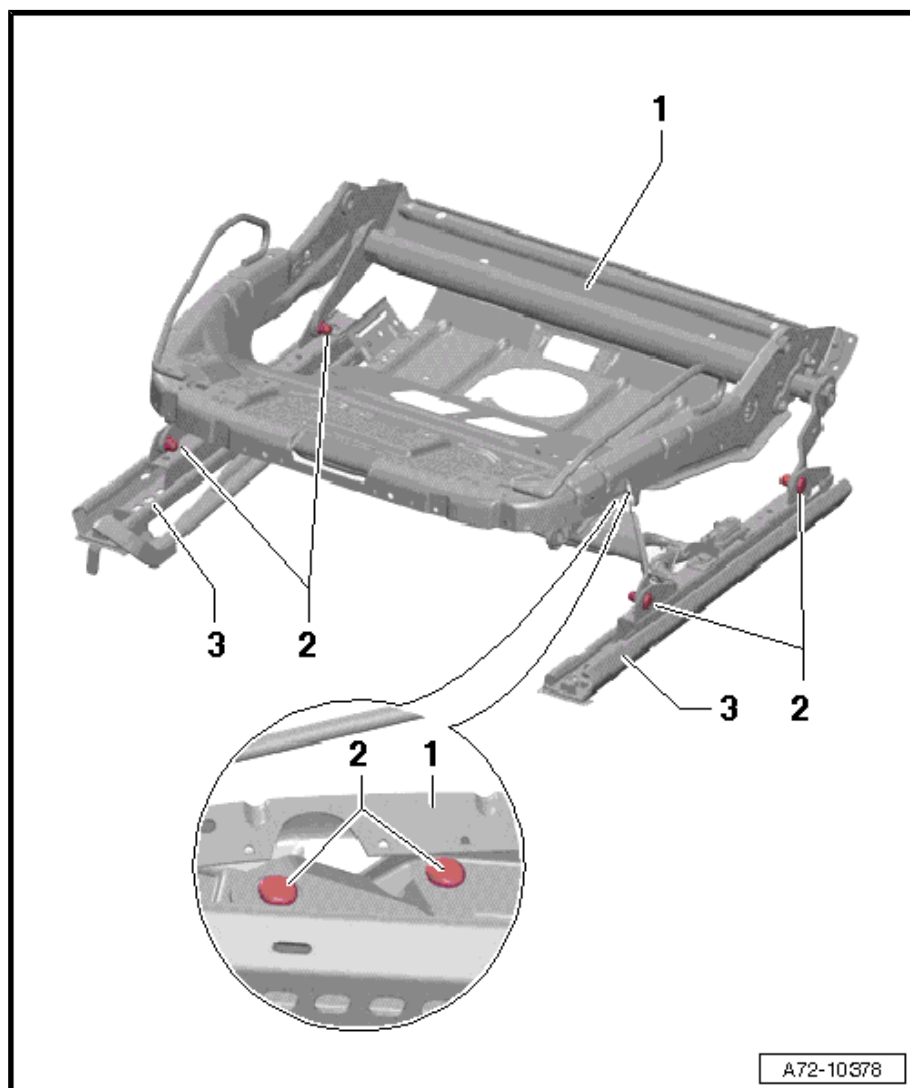
- ❑ Do not separate from lower seat pan frame
- ❑ Removing and installing [⇒ page 271](#)

2 - Anchor pin with locking ring

- ❑ 6x
- ❑ Do not drill out


3 - Lower seat pan frame

- ❑ Do not separate from upper frame
- ❑ Removing and installing [⇒ page 271](#)



2.40 Renewing seat pan

Removing

 **WARNING**


- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 42](#) .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

- Remove front seat ⇒ [page 243](#) .
- Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- ⇒ [page 240](#) .
- Remove front seat backrest ⇒ [page 262](#) .
- Detach cover with padding from seat pan ⇒ [page 401](#) .

Installing

- Insert cover and padding (removed earlier) in new seat pan.

Perform remaining installation in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

 **WARNING**


- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 42](#) .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*



Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

- Switch on ignition.

 **WARNING**

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

- Connect battery earth wire with ignition switched on ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .
- If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following the installation, the fault memory must be interrogated, erased and interrogated again ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B- .

2.41 Exploded view of storage compartment

Exploded view of storage compartment ⇒ [page 329](#)

2.42 Removing and installing storage compartment

Removing and installing storage compartment ⇒ [page 329](#)

2.43 Exploded view of storage compartment components

Exploded view of storage compartment components
⇒ [page 332](#)

2.44 Dismantling and assembling storage compartment

Dismantling and assembling storage compartment ⇒ [page 332](#)



Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3 Front seats with electric adjustment (electrically operated seats)

3.1 Exploded view of front seat

 **Note**

- ◆ *The illustration is based on the driver's seat. The front passenger's seat is similar with the bolt-on parts fitted on the opposite sides.*
- ◆ *For reasons of clarity the floor covering is not shown in the illustration.*

1 - Cover for seat rail

- Front right
- Removing and installing
 ⇒ [page 286](#)

2 - Spindle cover

- Clipped onto seat rails at front left and right
- Removing and installing
 ⇒ [page 286](#)

3 - Bolt

- 40 Nm
- 4x

4 - Trim

- On tunnel side
- Removing and installing
 ⇒ [page 289](#)

5 - Front seat

- Removing and installing
 ⇒ [page 274](#)

6 - Handle

- For Easy Entry facility
- Removing and installing
 ⇒ [page 311](#)
- Coupé only

7 - Trim

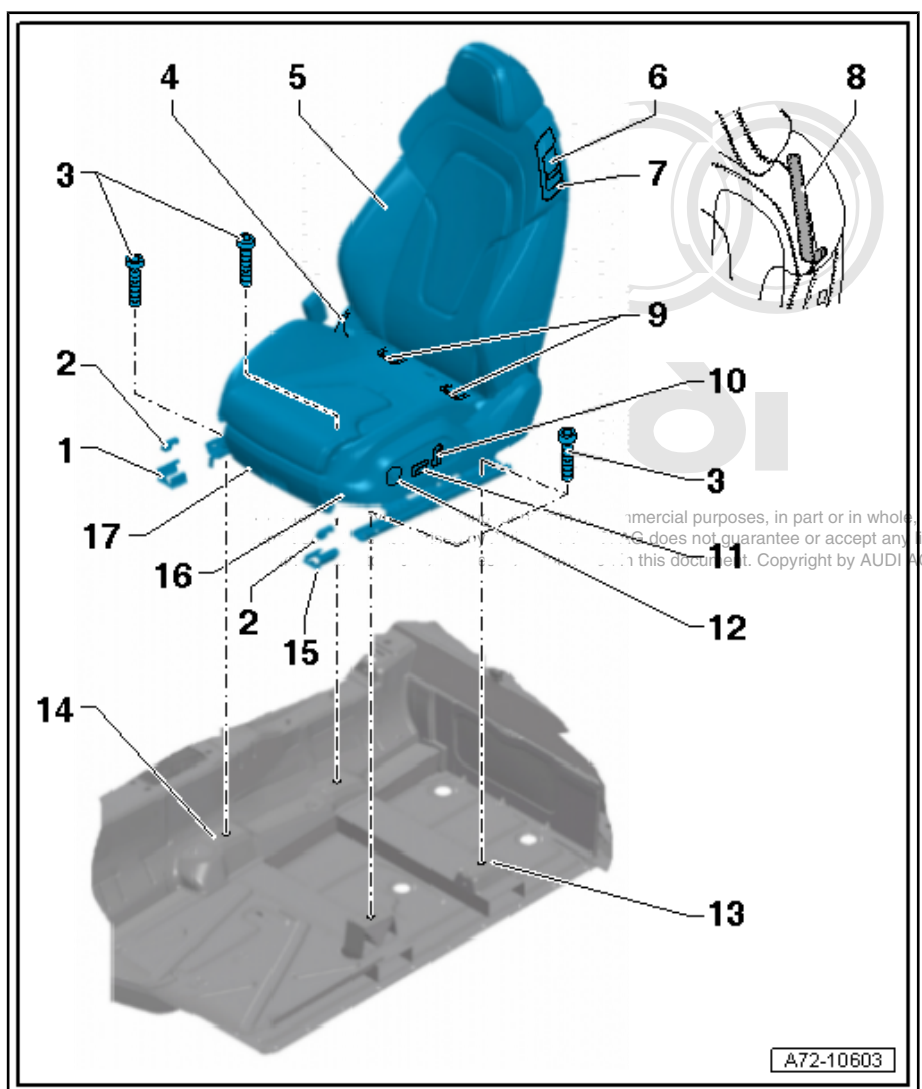
- For Easy Entry facility
- Removing and installing
 ⇒ [page 311](#)
- Coupé only

8 - Holder with stud

- For seat belt
- Roadster only

9 - ISOFIX child seat anchor

- Depending on equipment version
- For front passenger's seat only
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 75](#)
- Checks to be performed following an accident ⇒ [page 52](#)



10 - Actuator

- ◆ For driver seat backrest adjustment switch -E96- / -E98-
 - Removing and installing actuator ⇒ [page 294](#)
 - Removing and installing switch ⇒ [page 335](#)

11 - Actuator

- ◆ For driver seat longitudinal adjustment switch -E363- / -E64-
- ◆ For rake adjustment switch -E222- / -E334-
- ◆ For height adjustment switch -E364- / -E365-
 - Removing and installing actuator ⇒ [page 294](#)
 - Removing and installing switch ⇒ [page 335](#)

12 - Lumbar support adjustment switch -E176- / -E177-

- Removing and installing switch ⇒ [page 359](#)
- Removing and installing four-way lumbar support ⇒ [page 306](#)



Note

13 - Console (rear)

- Welded to floor panel

14 - Console (front)

- Welded to floor panel

15 - Cover for seat rail

- Front left
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 286](#)

16 - Trim

- On sill side
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 289](#)

17 - Storage compartment

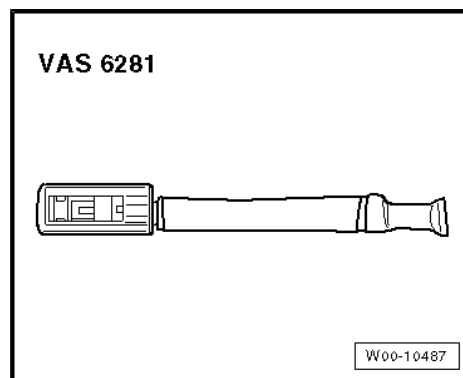
- Depending on equipment version
- Exploded view ⇒ [page 329](#)
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 329](#)
- Exploded view of storage compartment components ⇒ [page 332](#)
- Dismantling and assembling storage compartment ⇒ [page 332](#)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.2 Removing and installing front seat

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Airbag adapter -VAS 6281-



 Note

Removal and installation are described for a driver's seat. The procedures for removal and installation are similar for the front passenger's seat.

Removing

Roadster only

- Release stud -arrow- and open seat belt holder -1-.
- Remove seat belt -2- from seat belt holder.

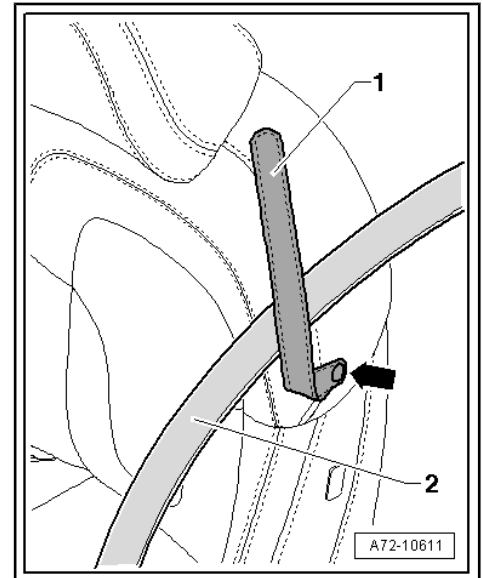
All vehicles (continued)



WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components*
⇒ page 42.

- Move seat to service position ⇒ [page 239](#).



Audi

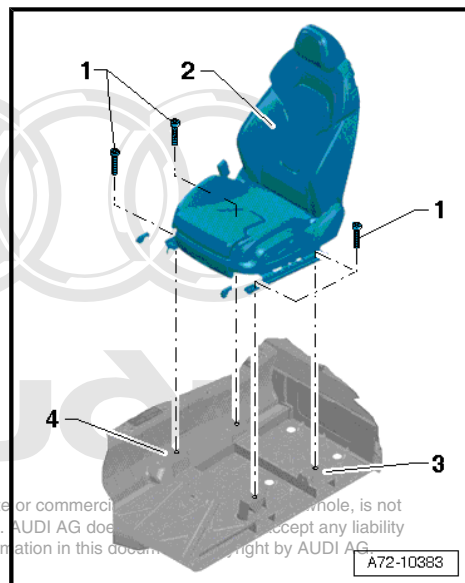
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



- Remove bolts -1- (2x) at front.
- Operate seat longitudinal adjuster and move seat -2- as far forwards as it will go.
- Remove bolts -1- (2x) at rear.
- 3 - Console (rear)
- 4 - Console (front)
- Switch off ignition.
- Disconnect the battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .

**WARNING**

- ◆ **Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.**



- Unplug connectors ⇒ [page 280](#) at connector point in floor.
- Connect airbag adapter -VAS 6281- ⇒ [page 283](#) .
- Lift front seat out of vehicle with the assistance of a second mechanic.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

**WARNING**

- ◆ **Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 42](#) .**
- ◆ **Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.**

- Install front seat before detaching airbag adapter -VAS 6281- ⇒ [page 283](#) .

**Note**

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

- Plug in connectors at couplings of connector point in floor ⇒ [page 280](#) .
- Switch on ignition.

**WARNING**

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

- Connect battery earth wire with ignition switched on ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .
- If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following the installation, the fault memory must be interrogated, erased and interrogated again ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B- .

Tightening torque ⇒ [page 273](#)

3.3 Removing front seat if seat longitudinal adjustment motor -V288- is defective



For greater clarity, the padding of the seat pan and the backrest have been removed in the illustrations.

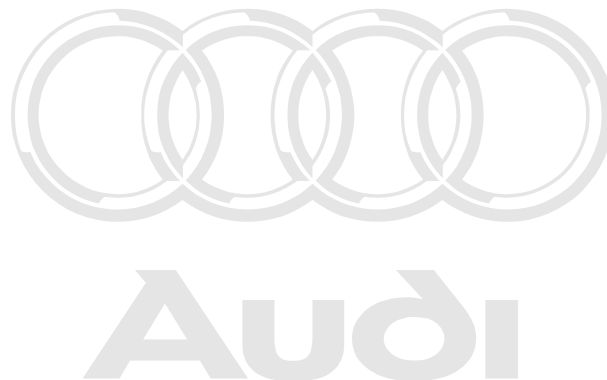
Removing



WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 42](#) .*

- If possible, move the seat to the highest position.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



- Remove bolt -3-.
- Remove bolt -4-.

**Caution**

Check electrical/electronic components and wiring before loosening bolts -2-.

After slackening off the bolts -2-, the lower seat pan frame -5- including the seat longitudinal adjustment motor -V288- with cross member must be renewed.

- Fold seat forwards. If necessary: Remove steering wheel => Running gear, front-wheel drive and four-wheel drive; Rep. gr. 48.

**WARNING**

- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

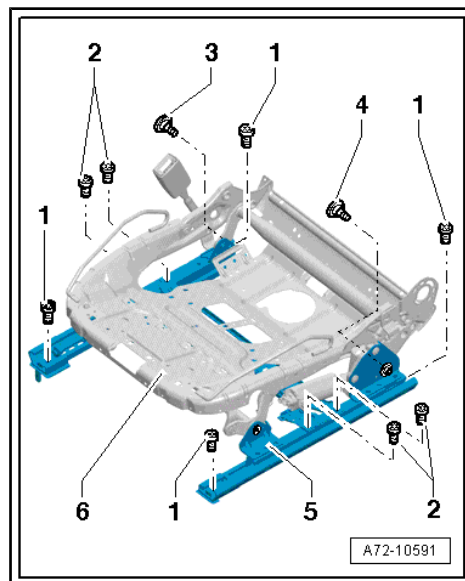
**Note**

To avoid unnecessary repair costs, check the electrical/electronic components and wiring before removing the seat any further.

- Perform the following checks:
 - ◆ Check fuse => Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations
 - ◆ Check voltage at connector point and perform Fault Finding if necessary => Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations
 - ◆ Check voltage at control unit => Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations
 - ◆ Check voltage at seat longitudinal adjustment motor -V288- => Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations
- Renew the fuse if it is defective => Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations.
- Repair or renew wire if there is no voltage at connector point => Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations.
- If seat longitudinal adjustment motor -V288- is defective, renew lower seat pan frame => [page 326](#) .

Further removal (only if seat longitudinal adjustment motor -V288- defective):

- Disconnect the battery earth wire => Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .



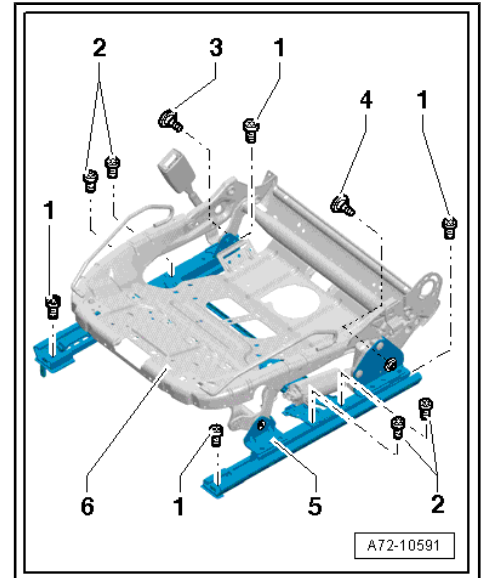
- Remove bolts -2- (4x) for the cross-piece on both sides.



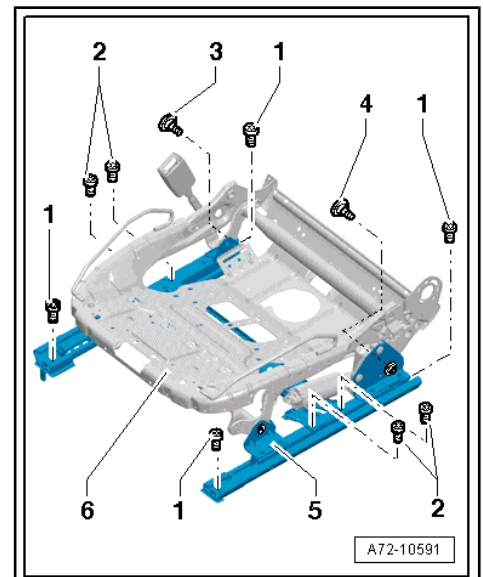
WARNING

- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

- Unplug connector at seat longitudinal adjustment motor - V288- .



- Move seat until bolts -1- (4x) are visible.
- Remove bolts -1- (4x).
- Unplug connectors at connector point ⇒ [page 280](#) .
- Connect airbag adapter -VAS 6281- ⇒ [page 283](#) .
- Lift front seat out of vehicle with the assistance of a second mechanic.
- Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- ⇒ [page 240](#) .



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



- Separate lower -5- and upper -6- seat pan frames
⇒ [page 326](#) .
- Renew lower seat pan frame -4- with seat longitudinal adjustment motor -V288- with cross member ⇒ [page 326](#) .

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:



WARNING

- ◆ **Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components**
⇒ [page 42](#) .
- ◆ **Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.**

- Install front seat before detaching airbag adapter -VAS 6281-
⇒ [page 283](#) .
- Plug in connectors at couplings of connector point in floor
⇒ [page 280](#) .



Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

- Switch on ignition.



WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

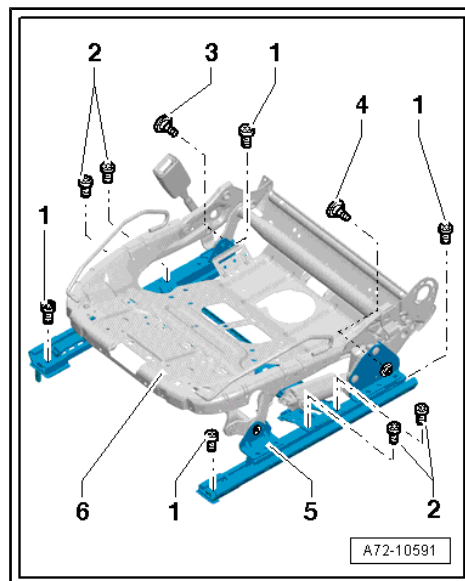
- Connect battery earth wire with ignition switched on ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .
- If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following the installation, the fault memory must be interrogated, erased and interrogated again ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B- .

Tightening torques:

- ◆ Exploded view of front seat ⇒ [page 273](#)
- ◆ Exploded view of seat pan ⇒ [page 325](#)

3.4 Unplugging and plugging in connectors

The connector point is located in the vehicle floor under the front section of the seat.



Unplugging connectors



WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components
⇒ [page 42](#).*

- Move seat to service position ⇒ [page 239](#) .
- Switch off ignition.
- Disconnect the battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep.
gr. 27 .



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



- Lift cable retainer -3- off connector point.



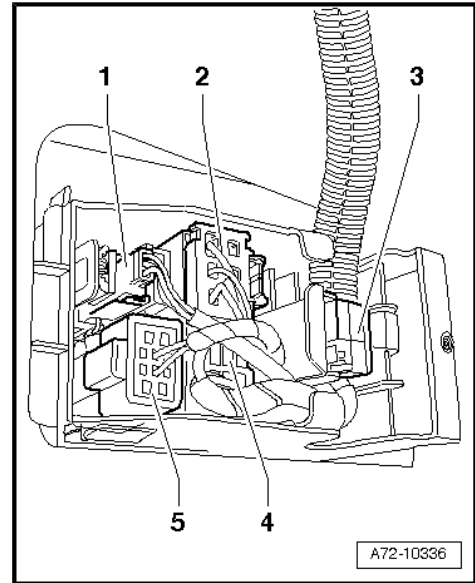
Note

*The number of connectors may vary depending on equipment.
The description relates to the version with maximum equipment.*



WARNING

- ◆ **Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.**



- Unplug side airbag connector -1-.
- Unplug seat heating connector -2-.
- Unplug connector for seat adjustment power supply -4-.
- Unplug belt buckle connector -5-.

- Plug in airbag adapter VAS 6281 at side airbag connector on front seat => [page 283](#).



Note

Make sure airbag adapter engages properly.

Plugging in connectors

Plug in the connectors in the reverse order. Observe the following:



WARNING

- ◆ **Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components => [page 42](#).**
- ◆ **Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.**



Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

- Switch on ignition.



WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

- Connect battery earth wire with ignition switched on ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .
- If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following the installation, the fault memory must be interrogated, erased and interrogated again ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B- .

The connector point is located in the vehicle floor under the front section of the front seat.

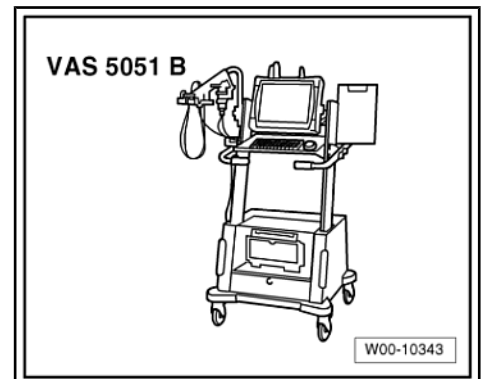
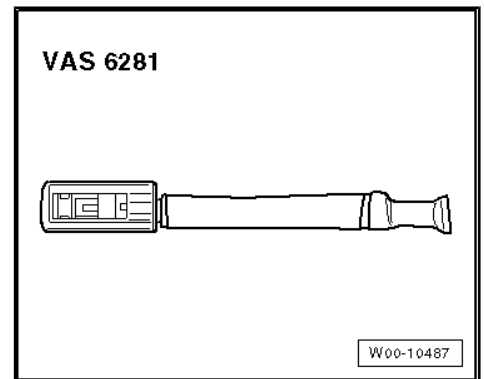
3.5 Connecting airbag adapter

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Airbag adapter -VAS 6281-




- ◆ Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B-




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Unplugging airbag connector

 **WARNING**

◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 42](#) .*

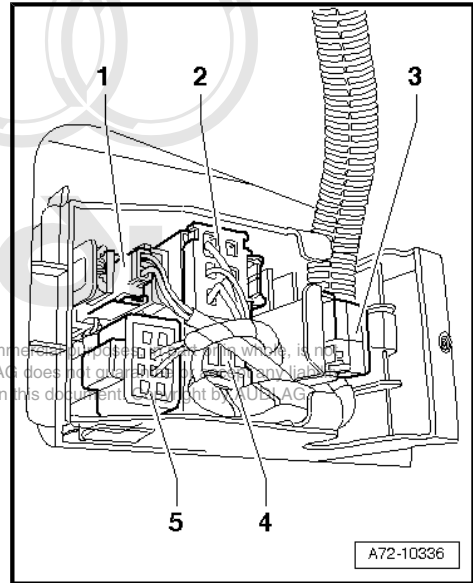
- Move seat to service position ⇒ [page 239](#) .
- Switch off ignition.
- Disconnect the battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .

 **WARNING**

◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*



- Release and unplug connector for side airbag -1-



- Plug in airbag adapter -VAS 6281- -4- at side airbag connector on seat -1-.



Caution

Leave airbag adapter -VAS 6281- connected to seat until seat has been re-installed.

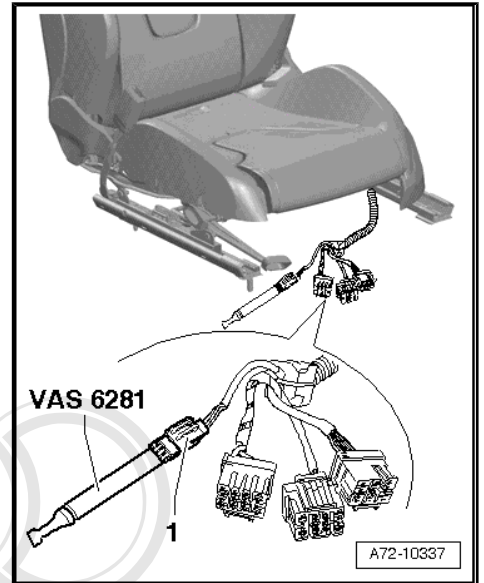
Plugging in airbag connector

Plug in connectors for airbag in reverse order; note the following:



WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components => page 42.*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*



Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Switch on ignition.



WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

- Connect battery earth wire with ignition switched on => Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .
- If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following the installation, the fault memory must be interrogated, erased and interrogated again => Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B- .

3.6 Connector point connectors

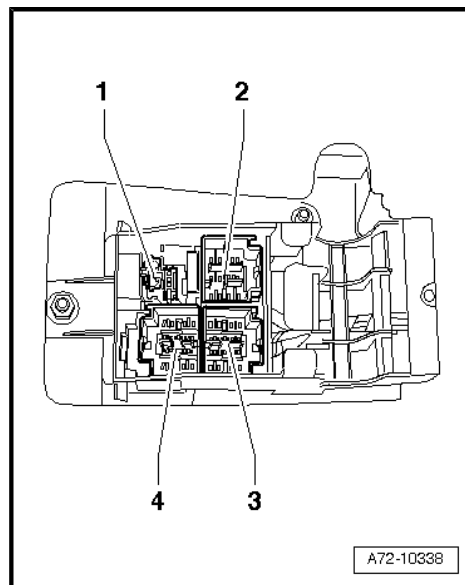
Connector assignment ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations

- 1 - Side airbag
- 2 - Seat heating
- 3 - Power supply for seat adjustment
- 4 - Belt buckle



Note

*The number of connectors may vary depending on equipment.
The description relates to the version with maximum equipment.*



3.7 Exploded view of modular wire routing

Exploded view of modular wire routing ⇒ [page 246](#)

3.8 Modular wire routing versions

This section explains the differences between the »Modular Light« and »Modular« versions.

Modular wire routing versions ⇒ [page 247](#)

3.9 Modular wire routing with corrugated tube at front seat

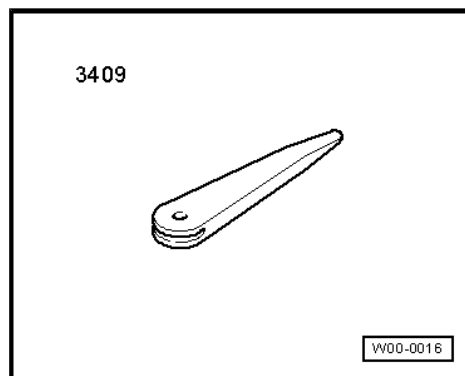
The following description contains the steps required for and notes on the removal and installation of the corrugated tube and wiring.

Modular wire routing with corrugated tube at front seat
⇒ [page 247](#)

3.10 Removing and installing spindle covers and seat rail covers

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal wedge -3409-



i Note

- ◆ *The procedures for removing and installing the spindle covers and seat rail covers are described for the driver's seat rail on the sill side. For greater clarity the surrounding area is not shown in the corresponding illustration.*
- ◆ *The spindle cover is only provided for the seat with electric adjustment.*

Removing spindle cover

- Move seat to service position ⇒ [page 274](#) .
- Use removal wedge -3409- to prise spindle cover -1- off seat rail cover -3- and seat longitudinal adjustment spindle -2-.

Installing spindle cover

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

- Make sure the spindle cover is properly engaged.

Removing seat rail cover

i Note

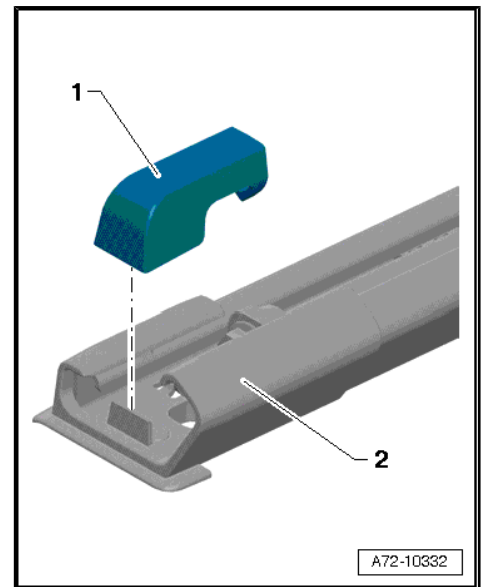
The procedures for removing and installing the seat rail covers are described for the driver's seat rail on the sill side. Removal and installation of cover (tunnel side) are similar.



WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 42](#) .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

- Remove front seat ⇒ [page 274](#) .



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Unclip retaining tabs -3-, -4- and -5- of cover -1- from seat rail -2-.
- Detach cover -1- towards front, keeping it as parallel as possible with seat rail.

Installing seat rail cover

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:



WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components => page 42 .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*



Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

- Switch on ignition.

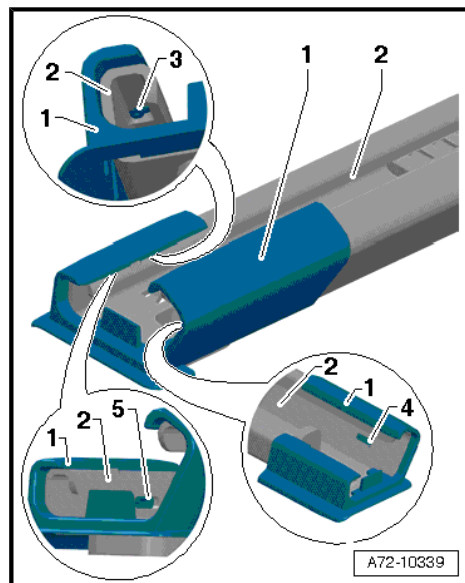


WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

- Connect battery earth wire with ignition switched on => Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .

- If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following the installation, the fault memory must be interrogated, erased and interrogated again => Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B- .



3.11 Exploded view of trim (sill side and tunnel side)

1 - Front seat

2 - Bolt

- 2.5 Nm

3 - Trim (tunnel side)

- Can only be renewed after removing seat
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 291](#)

4 - Spreader rivet

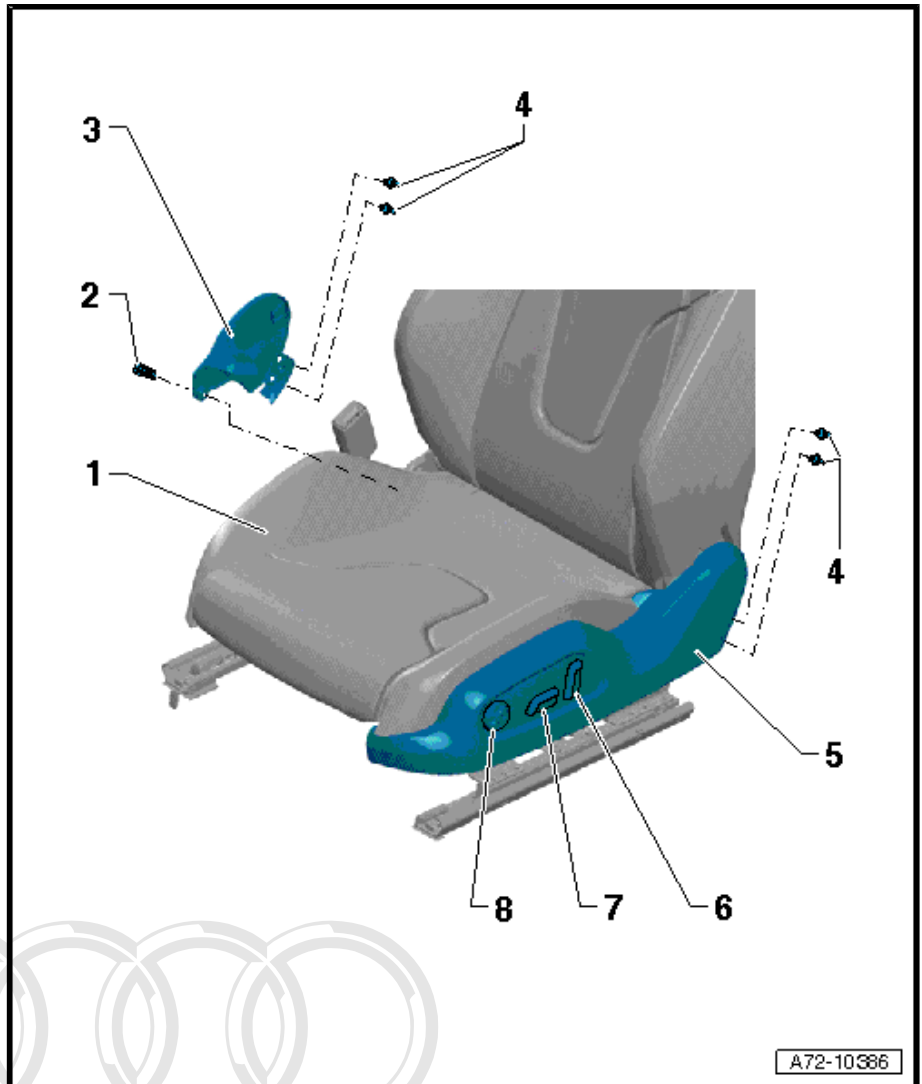
- 4x

5 - Trim (sill side)

- Can be renewed with seat installed
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 289](#)

6 - Actuator

- ◆ For driver seat backrest adjustment switch -E96- / front passenger seat backrest adjustment switch -E98-
- Exploded view ⇒ [page 294](#)
- Switches -E363-, -E222-, -E364- / switches or buttons -E64-, -E334- and -E365- ⇒ [Item 7 \(page 289\)](#) and switches -E96- / -E98- are accommodated in a joint housing.



7 - Actuator

- For driver seat longitudinal adjustment switch -E363- / front passenger seat longitudinal adjustment switch -E64-
- For driver seat rake adjustment switch -E222- / front passenger seat rake adjustment button -E334-
- For driver seat height adjustment switch -E364- / front passenger seat height adjustment switch -E365-
- Exploded view ⇒ [page 294](#)
- Switches -E363-, -E222-, -E364-, switches or buttons -E64-, -E334- and -E365- and switches -E96- / -E98- are accommodated in a joint housing ⇒ [Item 6 \(page 289\)](#).

8 - Driver seat lumbar support adjustment switch -E176- / front passenger seat lumbar support adjustment switch -E177-

- Exploded view ⇒ [page 294](#)

3.12 Removing and installing trim (sill side)



Note

The trim (sill side) can be removed and installed with the front seat in position.

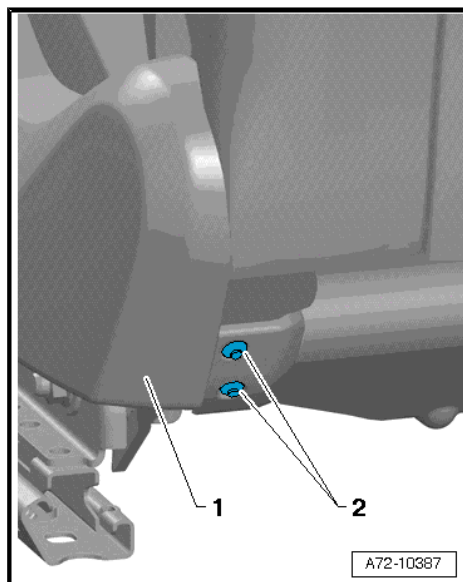
Removing



WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components*
⇒ page 42.

- Move seat to highest position.
- Remove spreader rivets -2- (2x).
- 1 - Trim (sill side)

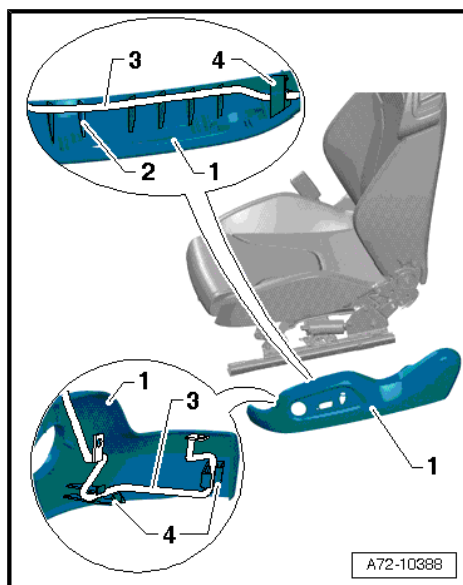


- Unfasten clips -4-.
- Unclip trim -1- at retaining bracket -3-.
- Disengage trim in area of seat/backrest fittings.
- Pull trim upwards off retaining bracket -3- to the extent permitted by wiring.



Note

- ◆ *When detaching trim, take care not to damage retainers -2-.*
- ◆ *On vehicles with a front seat with electric adjustment and seat occupied sensor (country-specific version), the lumbar support adjustment switch -E176- / -E177- and the housing for the switch -E363-, -E64-, -E222-, -E334-, -E364-, -E365-, -E96- and -E98- must be installed so that the connector is plugged in from above.*



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Unplug connector -3- for driver seat lumbar support adjustment switch -E176- .
- Unplug connectors -4- and -5- from housing -1-.

The following switches are installed in the housing -1-:

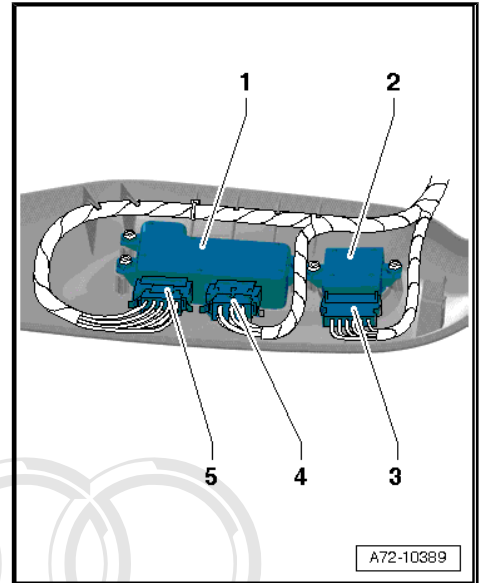
- ◆ Driver/front passenger seat longitudinal adjustment switch - E363- / -E64-
- ◆ Driver/front passenger seat rake adjustment switch -E222- / -E334-
- ◆ Driver/front passenger seat height adjustment switch -E364- / -E365-
- ◆ Driver/front passenger seat backrest adjustment switch -E96- / -E98-
- Detach trim (sill side).

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

⚠ WARNING

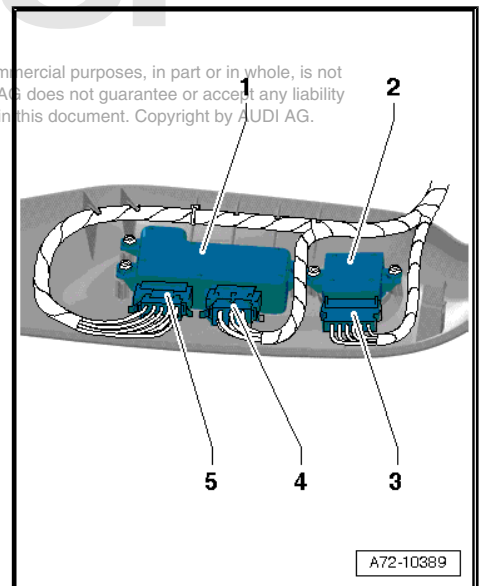
◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components*
 ⇒ **page 42** .



i Note

- ◆ *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- ◆ *Make sure that the trim (sill side) is properly engaged at the retaining bracket and that the lockable clips are fastened.*
- ◆ *Make sure the wiring is as close as possible to the connector points -3-, -4- and -5-.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability for errors or omissions in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



3.13 Removing and installing trim (tunnel side)

i Note

The trim (tunnel side) can only be removed and installed with the front seat removed.

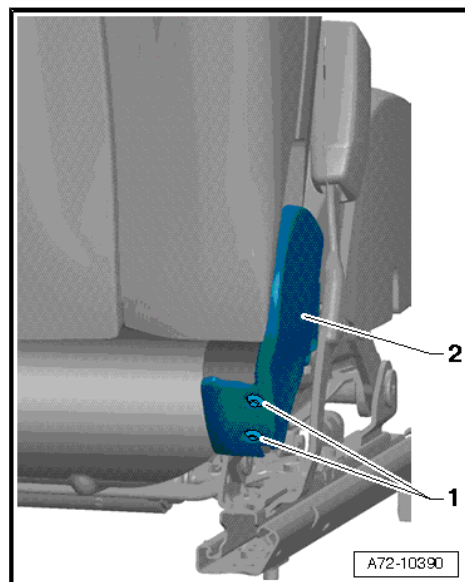
Removing



WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components*
⇒ [page 42](#) .
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

- Remove front seat:
 - ◆ Seat with manual adjustment ⇒ [page 243](#)
 - ◆ Seat with electric adjustment ⇒ [page 274](#)
- Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136-
⇒ [page 240](#) .
- Remove spreader rivets -1- (2x).
- 2 - Trim (tunnel side)



Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

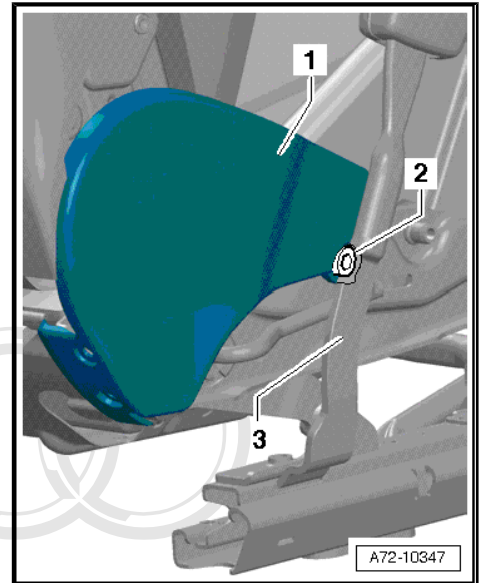
- Detach belt buckle -3- ⇒ [page 58](#) .
- Remove bolt -2-.
- Lift off trim (tunnel side) -1-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

⚠ WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 42](#) .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*



i Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

- Switch on ignition.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

⚠ WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

- Connect battery earth wire with ignition switched on ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .
- If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following the installation, the fault memory must be interrogated, erased and interrogated again ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B- .

Tightening torque ⇒ [page 289](#)

3.14 Exploded view of retaining bracket for trim (sill side)

The retaining bracket of a front seat with electric adjustment is similar to that of a front seat with manual adjustment.

Exploded view of retaining bracket for trim (sill side) ⇒ [page 256](#)

3.15 Removing and installing retaining bracket for trim (sill side)

The procedures for removing and installing the retaining bracket for the trim (sill side) are described for a front seat with manual adjustment.

Removing and installing retaining bracket for trim (sill side)

⇒ [page 256](#)

3.16 Exploded view of seat and backrest adjustment actuators

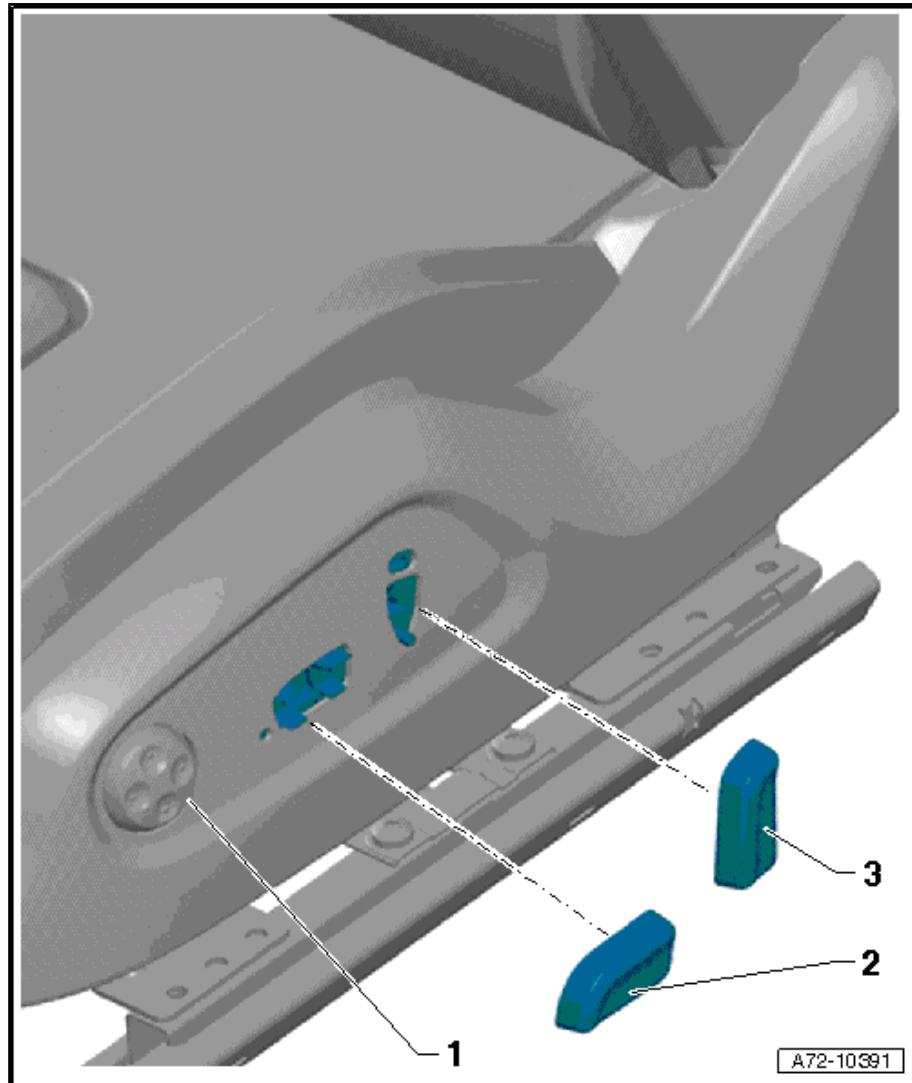
1 - Actuator

◆ For driver seat backrest adjustment switch -E96- / front passenger seat backrest adjustment switch -E98-

- ❑ Switches -E363- , -E222- , -E364- , switches or buttons -E64- , -E334- and -E365- and switches -E96- / -E98- are accommodated in a joint housing ⇒ [Item 2 \(page 294\)](#) .
- ❑ Removing and installing actuator ⇒ [page 295](#)
- ❑ Removing and installing switch ⇒ [page 361](#)

2 - Actuator

- ❑ For driver seat longitudinal adjustment switch -E363- / front passenger seat longitudinal adjustment switch -E64-
- ❑ For driver seat rake adjustment switch -E222- / front passenger seat rake adjustment button -E334-
- ❑ For driver seat height adjustment switch -E364- / front passenger seat height adjustment switch -E365-
- ❑ Switches -E363- , -E222- , -E364- , switches or buttons -E64- , -E334- and -E365- and switches -E96- / -E98- are accommodated in a joint housing ⇒ [Item 1 \(page 294\)](#) .
- ❑ Removing and installing actuator ⇒ [page 294](#)
- ❑ Removing and installing switch ⇒ [page 361](#)



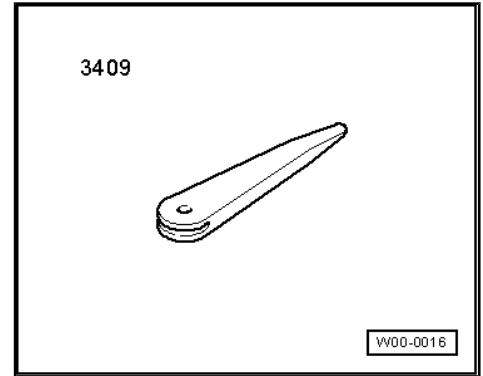
3 - Driver seat lumbar support adjustment switch -E176- / front passenger seat lumbar support adjustment switch -E177-

- ❑ Actuator and switch cannot be separated and can only be renewed as an entire unit.
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 359](#)

3.17 Removing and installing seat adjustment actuator

Special tools and workshop equipment required

◆ Removal wedge -3409-



 Note

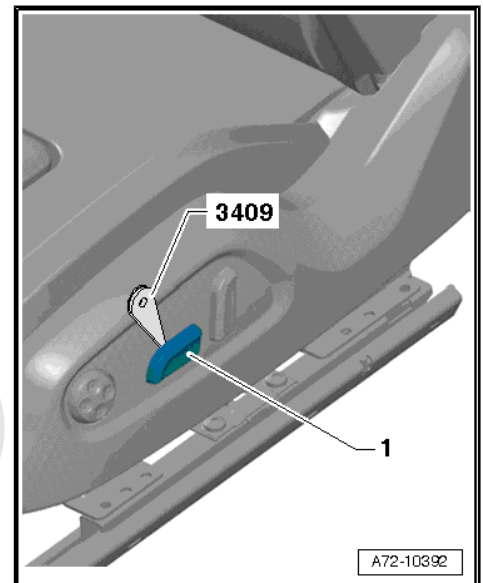
The seat adjustment actuator can be removed and installed with the front seat in position.

Removing

- Use removal wedge -3409- to prise actuator -1- off catch of:
- ◆ Driver/front passenger seat longitudinal adjustment switch - E363- / -E64-
- ◆ Driver/front passenger seat rake adjustment switch -E222- / -E334-
- ◆ Driver/front passenger seat height adjustment switch -E364- / -E365-

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

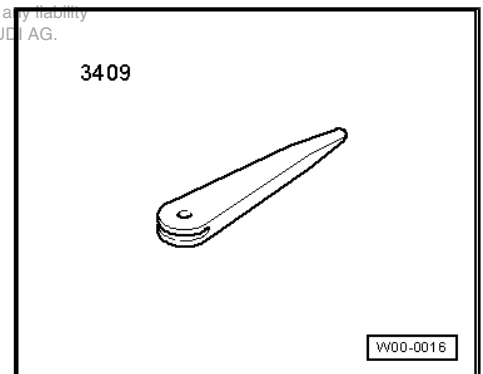


3.18 Removing and installing backrest adjustment actuator

Special tools and workshop equipment required

◆ Removal wedge -3409-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



 **Note**

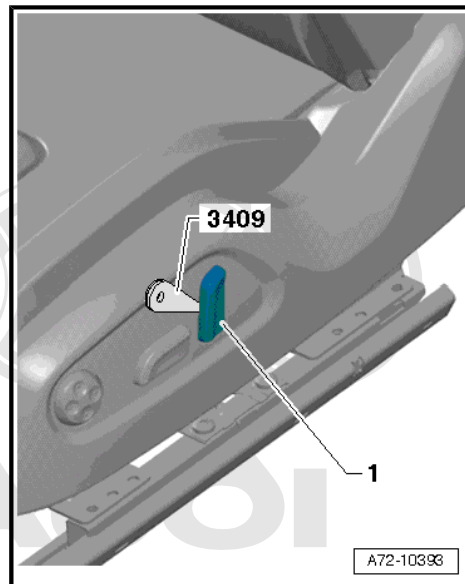
The backrest adjustment actuator can be removed and installed with the front seat in position.

Removing

- Use removal wedge -3409- to prise actuator -1- off catch of driver seat backrest adjustment switch -E96- / -E98- .

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.19 Exploded view of front seat backrest

1 - Seat pan

2 - Bolt, self-locking

- 35 Nm
- 4x
- Renew
- Always clean threaded holes for bolts (using a tap for example)

3 - Front seat backrest

- Removing and installing
 ⇒ [page 298](#)

4 - Head restraint

- Removing and installing
 ⇒ [page 321](#)

5 - Trim

- For Easy Entry facility
- Removing and installing
 ⇒ [page 311](#)
- Coupé only

6 - Handle

- For Easy Entry facility
- Removing and installing
 ⇒ [page 311](#)
- Coupé only

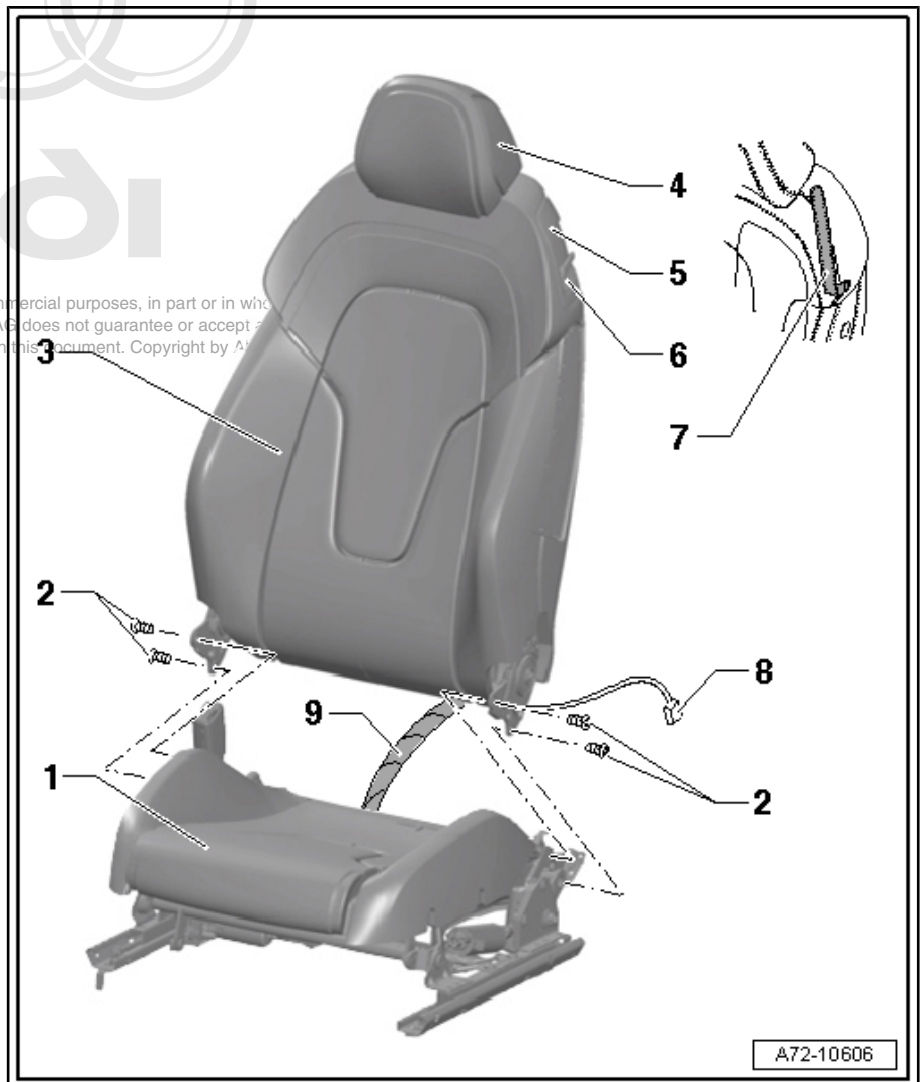
7 - Holder with stud

- For seat belt
- Roadster only

8 - Wire

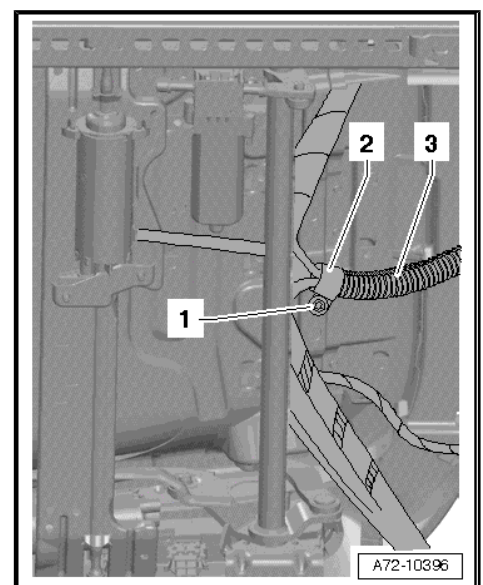
- For side airbag

9 - Wiring harness



Cable clamp at seat pan

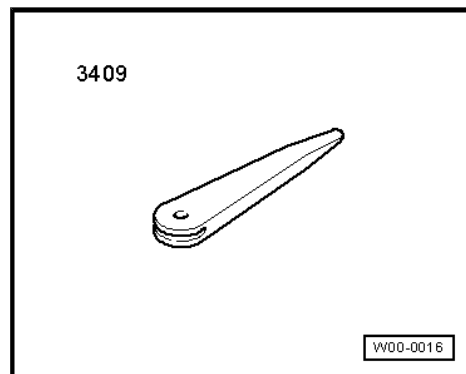
Item 1: 3.5 Nm



3.20 Removing and installing front seat backrest

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal wedge -3409-



Note

Removal and installation are described for a driver's seat. The removal and installation procedures for the front passenger's seat are similar.

Removing



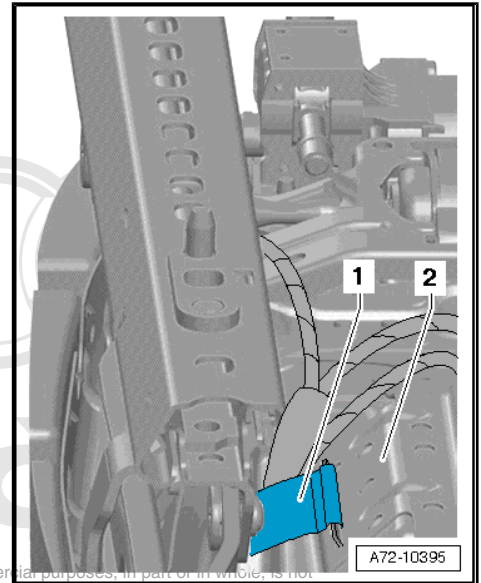
WARNING

- ◆ Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 42](#) .
- ◆ Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

- Remove front seat ⇒ [page 274](#) .
- Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- ⇒ [page 240](#) .
- Remove trim (sill side) ⇒ [page 289](#) .
- Remove trim (tunnel side) ⇒ [page 291](#) .

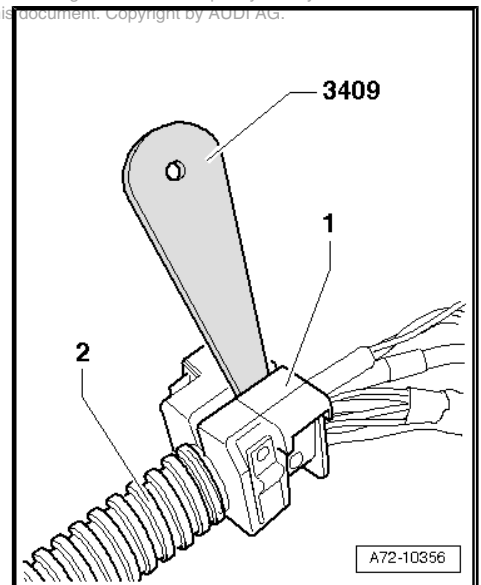
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Disengage lug -1- at seat pan -2-.

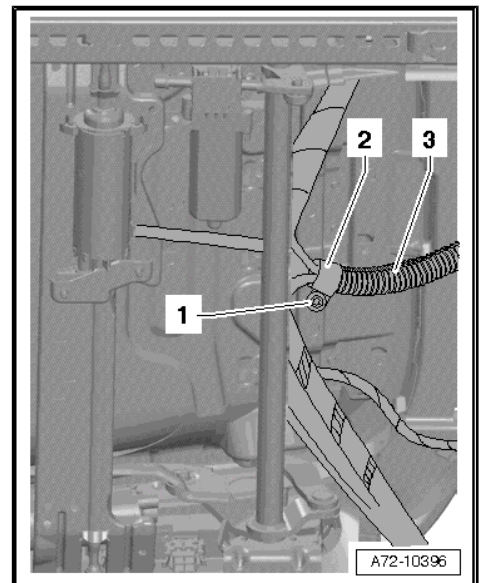


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

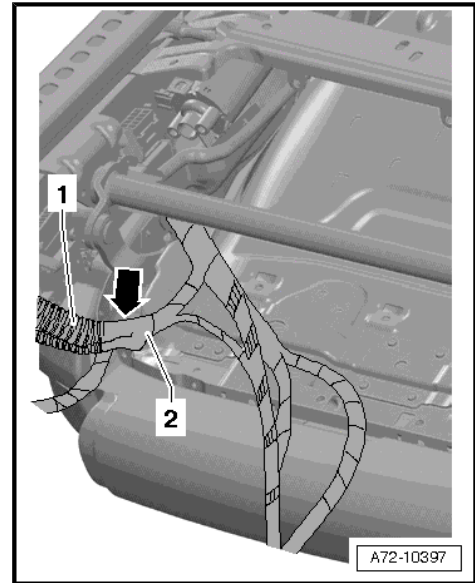
- Use removal wedge -3409- to unclip cable retainer -1-.
- Detach cable retainer -1- from corrugated tube -2-.



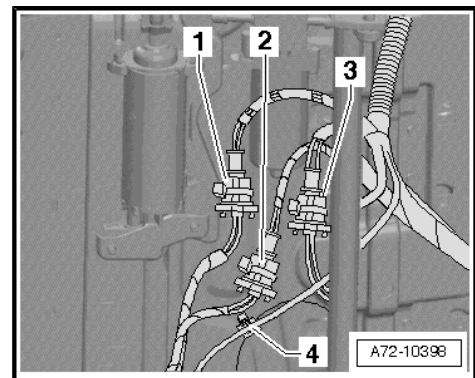
- Remove bolt -1-.
- Detach cable clamp -2- from corrugated tube -3-.



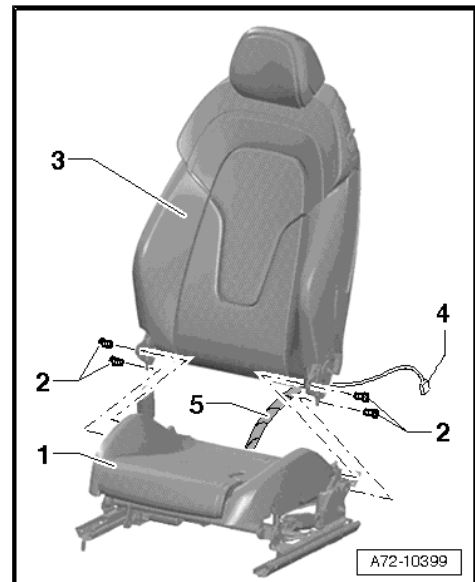
- Unfasten fabric tape -2- in area of -arrow-.
- Open corrugated tube -1-.
- Detach corrugated tube -1- from wiring harness.



- Unplug connectors, e.g. -1-, -2- and -3-.
- Detach clip with cable tie -4-.



- Remove bolts -2- (4x).
- Swivel backrest -3- forwards onto seat pan -4-.
- Press padding to one side and carefully pull side airbag wire -5- and any other wires -5- (depending on equipment version) out of seat pan.
- Detach backrest -3-.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

WARNING

- ◆ **Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components => page 42 .**
- ◆ **Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.**

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Always clean threaded holes for bolts -2- (using e.g. a thread tap).
- Always renew bolts -2- (4x) after removal.
- Make sure upper and lower sections of corrugated tube fit together perfectly.

i Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

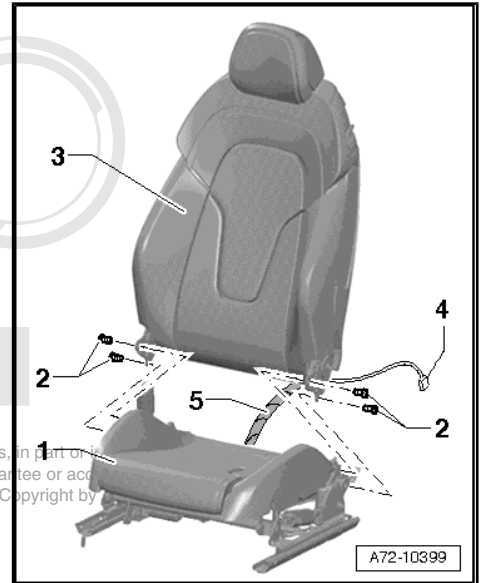
- Switch on ignition.



WARNING

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in full, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Audi AG.

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.



- Connect battery earth wire with ignition switched on ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .
- If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following the installation, the fault memory must be interrogated, erased and interrogated again ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B- .

Tightening torque ⇒ [page 297](#)

3.21 Exploded view of backrest cover panel

i Note

The illustration shows the front seat with the backrest cover panel of a Coupé. The backrest cover panels on the Coupé and Roadster are similar.



1 - Front seat

2 - Bowden cable

- For Easy Entry facility

3 - Lug

- Moulded to backrest cover panel

4 - Backrest cover panel

- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 302](#)

5 - Retainer

- 2x
- Moulded to backrest cover panel

6 - Groove

- For engaging backrest cover

7 - Clip

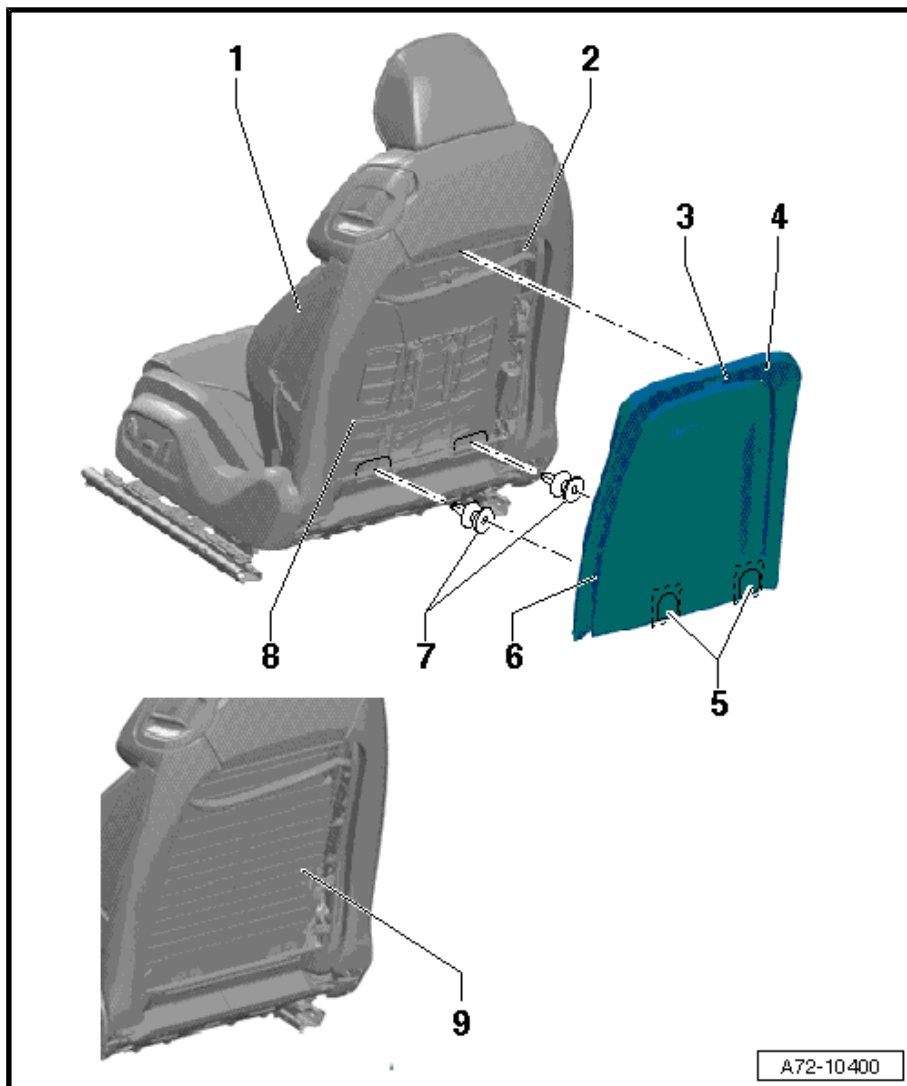
- 2x
- Clipped into backrest cover panel
- Renew if damaged

8 - Four-way lumbar support

- Seat with manual adjustment:
- ◆ Exploded view ⇒ [page 268](#)
- ◆ Removing and installing
⇒ [page 268](#)
- Seat with electric adjustment:
- ◆ Exploded view
⇒ [page 306](#)
- ◆ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 307](#) ⇒ [page 307](#)

9 - Spring mat

- Seat with manual adjustment:
- ◆ Exploded view ⇒ [page 266](#)
- ◆ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 267](#)

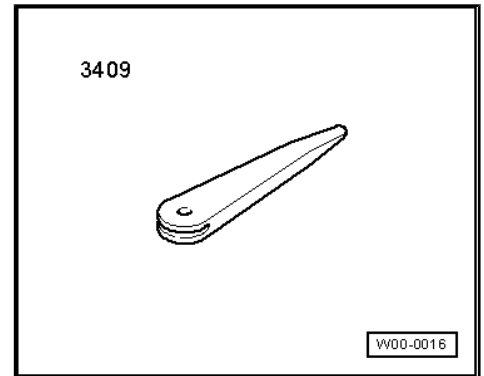


3.22 Removing and installing backrest cover panel

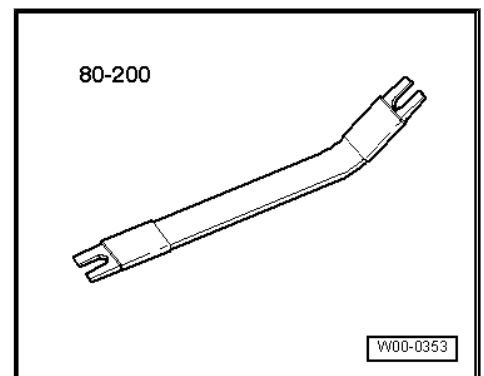
Special tools and workshop equipment required

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

◆ Removal wedge -3409-



◆ Removal lever -80 - 200-



Removing



WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 42](#).*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted without the written permission of Audi AG.

- Remove front seat ⇒ [page 274](#).
- Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- ⇒ [page 240](#).



Caution

Never pull on the cover when performing the next steps (refer to items A, B and C in the following illustration), as otherwise the cover could tear.

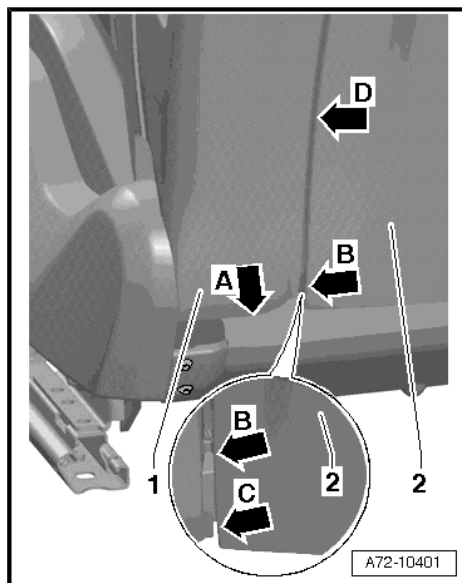


- Fold out bottom edge of cover -1- in area of -arrow A-.
- Disengage cover -1- (bottom) from slots -arrow C- of backrest cover panel -2-.



Note

- ◆ *Considerable force is required to unclip fastening strip of cover from groove of backrest cover panel.*
- ◆ *Unclip fastening strip using removal wedge -3409-.*
- Start unclipping fastening strip in area around -arrow B- on backrest cover panel -2-.
- Unclip rest of fastening strip from all-round groove by pulling fastening strip.

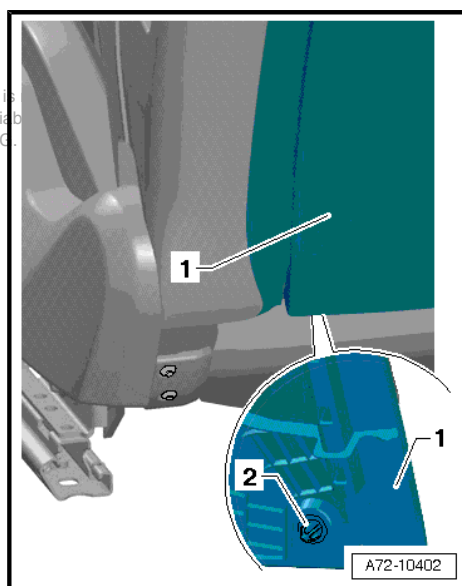


- Unclip backrest cover panel -1- at bottom on both sides.

2 - Clip (2x)

- Unclip using removal lever -80-200-.
- Detach backrest cover panel -1- from backrest by pulling downwards.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is prohibited. Audi AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Installing

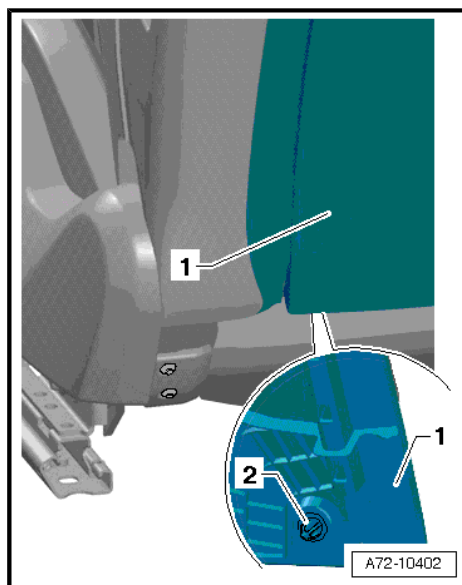
Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:



WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components => page 42.*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

- Check whether clip -2- is still in backrest cover panel after unclipping backrest cover panel -1-.
- If this is not the case, unfasten clip -2- from backrest frame and clip it into backrest cover panel -1-.



- When inserting backrest cover panel -1- from underneath, make sure tab -arrow- is in front of backrest frame -2-.

 **Note**

- ◆ *Illustration shows backrest cover panel being inserted in backrest frame of Coupé. The procedure for inserting the backrest cover panel is similar on the Roadster.*
- ◆ *For greater clarity padding and cover are not shown in illustration.*
- ◆ *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*

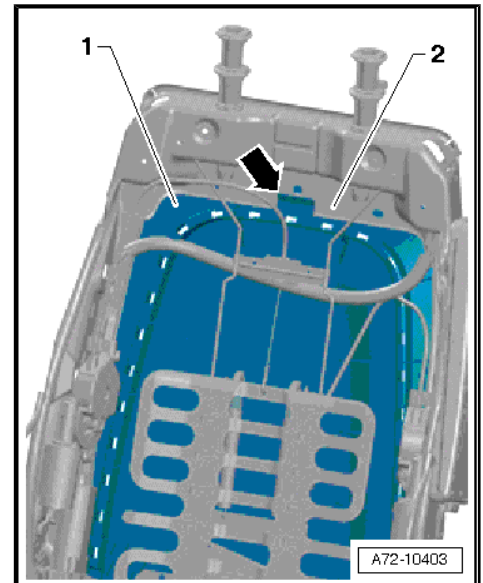
- Switch on ignition.



WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

Protected by copyright. All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or by any information storage and retrieval system, without the prior written permission of Audi AG.



- Connect battery earth wire with ignition switched on ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .
- If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following the installation, the fault memory must be interrogated, erased and interrogated again ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B- .

3.23 Exploded view of four-way lumbar support



Note

For reasons of clarity, the cover with padding in the backrest is not shown in the illustration.

1 - Four-way lumbar support

- Removing and installing
=> [page 307](#)

2 - Bowden cable

- For Easy Entry facility
- Coupé only

3 - Clip

- For guiding Bowden cable
=> [Item 4 \(page 306\)](#)

4 - Bowden cable

- For lumbar support height adjustment
- Can only be renewed together with driver seat lumbar support height adjustment motor - V129- / front passenger seat lumbar support height adjustment motor -V130-

5 - Driver seat lumbar support height adjustment motor - V129- / front passenger seat lumbar support height adjustment motor -V130-

- Removing and installing
=> [page 351](#)

6 - Backrest frame

7 - Rivet

- Set rivet using special pop rivet pliers -V.A.G 1753A-

- A plastic washer must be inserted between lumbar support and backrest frame before riveting on
=> [Item 10 \(page 306\)](#)

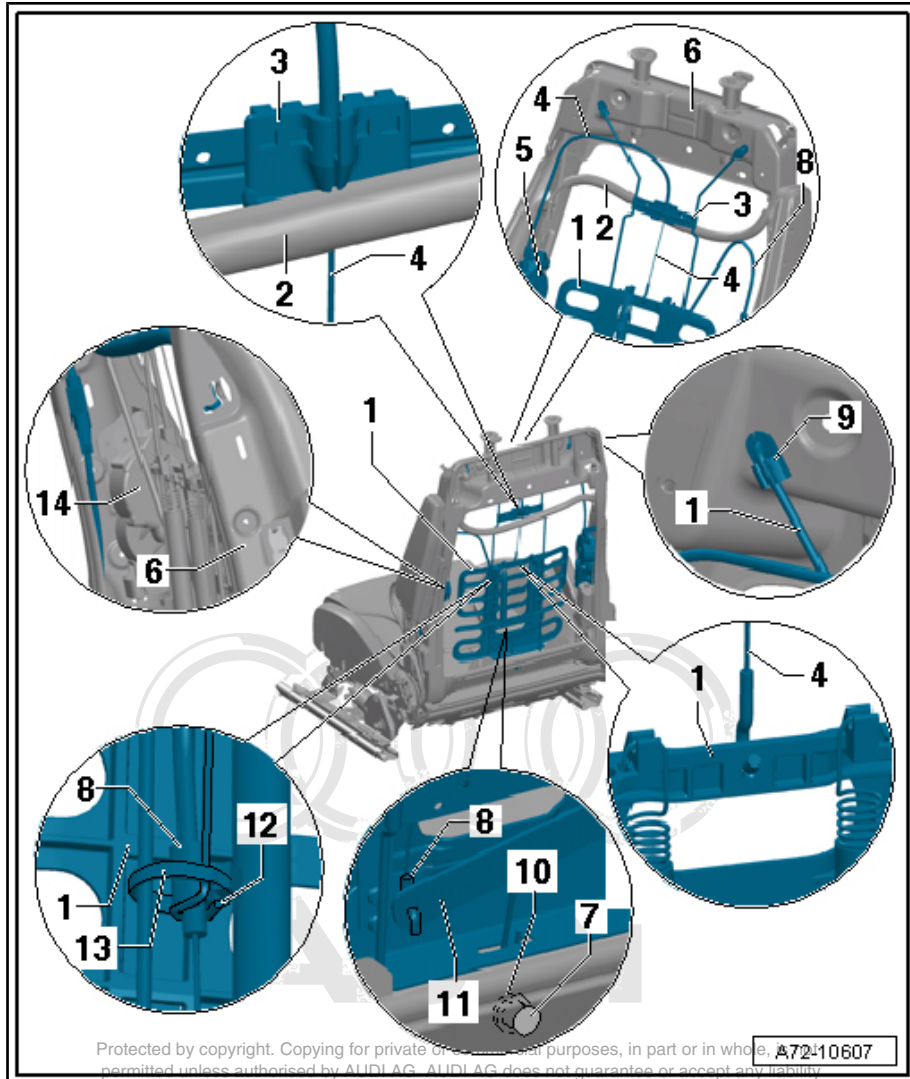
8 - Bowden cable

- For lumbar support longitudinal adjustment
- Can only be renewed together with driver seat lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor -V125- / front passenger seat lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor -V126-

9 - Clip

10 - Plastic washer

- Between four-way lumbar support and backrest frame



11 - Retaining plate

12 - Bracket

13 - Cable tie

14 - Driver seat lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor -V125- / front passenger seat lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor -V126-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 349](#)

3.24 Removing and installing four-way lumbar support

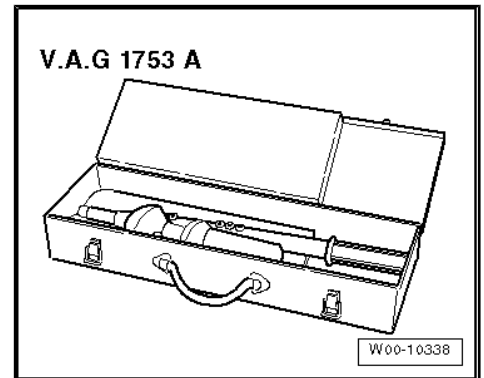


Illustrations show removal and installation of four-way lumbar support on seat of Coupé. The removal and installation procedures for the four-way lumbar support on the Roadster are similar.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Special pop rivet pliers -V.A.G 1753A-



Removing

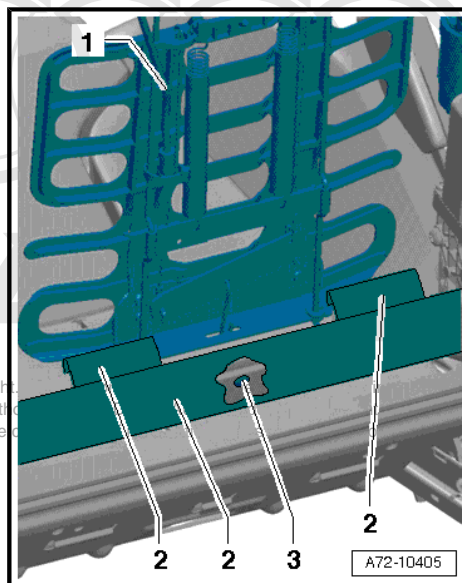


WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 42](#).*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

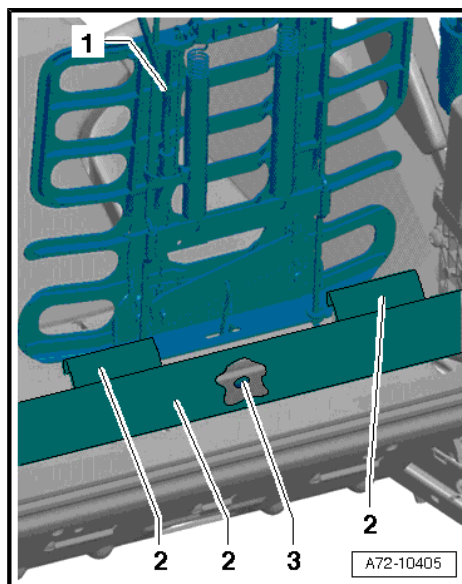
- Remove front seat ⇒ [page 274](#) .
- Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- ⇒ [page 240](#) .
- Remove backrest cover panel ⇒ [page 302](#) .

- Use screwdriver to prise out fastening strips -2- (3x).
- Remove cover with padding => [page 407](#) .

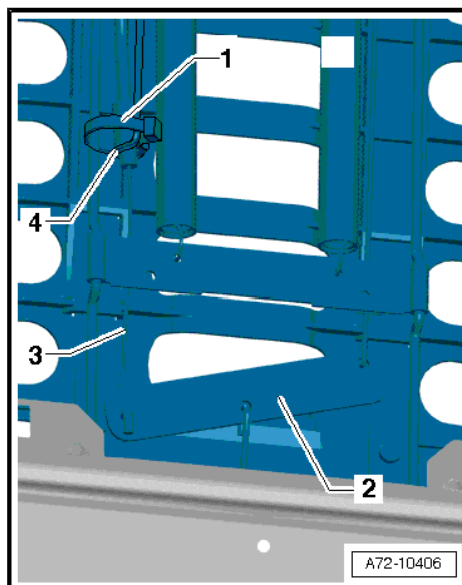


Protected by copyright. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or by any information storage and retrieval system, without the prior written permission of Audi AG.

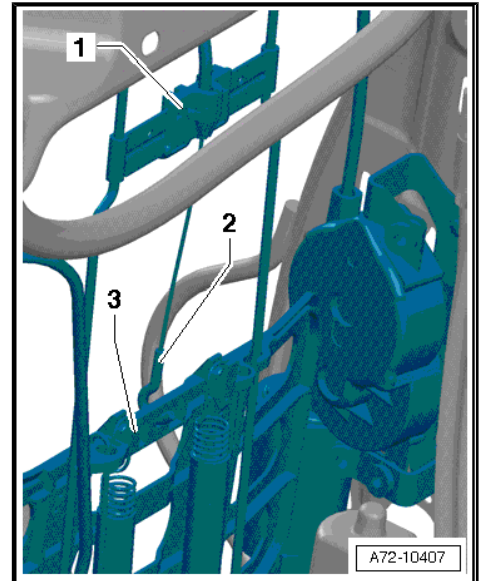
- Drill out rivet -3-.



- Disengage Bowden cable -3- from retaining plate -2-.
- Unfasten cable tie -1-.
- Thread Bowden cable -3- out of support -4-.




- Disengage Bowden cable -2- from four-way lumbar support -3-.
- Disengage Bowden cable -2- from clip -1-.



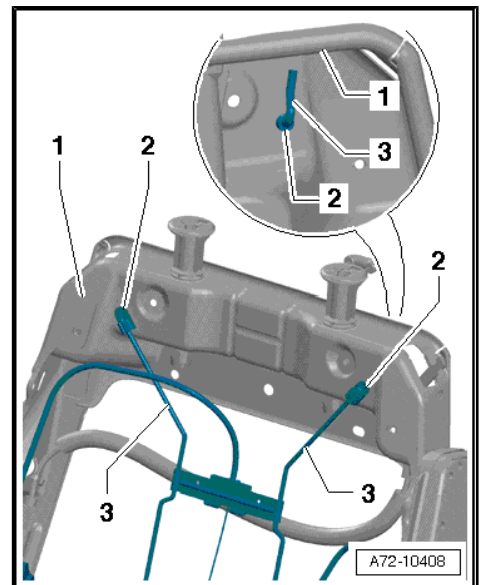
- Disengage four-way lumbar support -3- at top left and right from clips -2- and backrest frame -1-.
- Take out four-way lumbar support -3-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

 **WARNING**
 Copyright © Audi AG. All rights reserved. This document is not to be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without the prior written permission of Audi AG. Audi AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- ◆ **Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 42.**
- ◆ **Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.**





- Before riveting on lumbar support, fit a plastic washer -4- between lumbar support -1- and backrest frame -2-.
- 3 - Rivet



Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

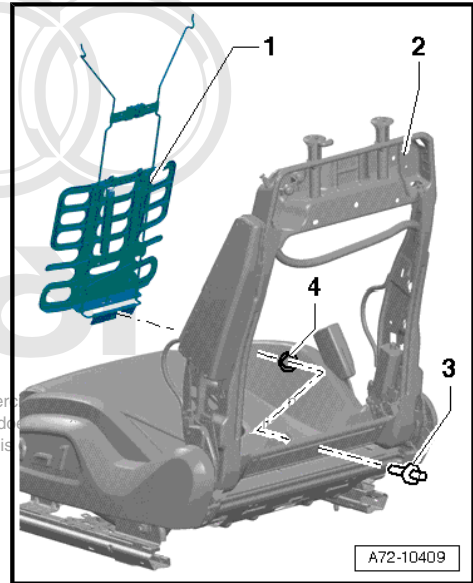
- Switch on ignition.



WARNING

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial use is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not accept any responsibility for the correctness of information in this document.

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.



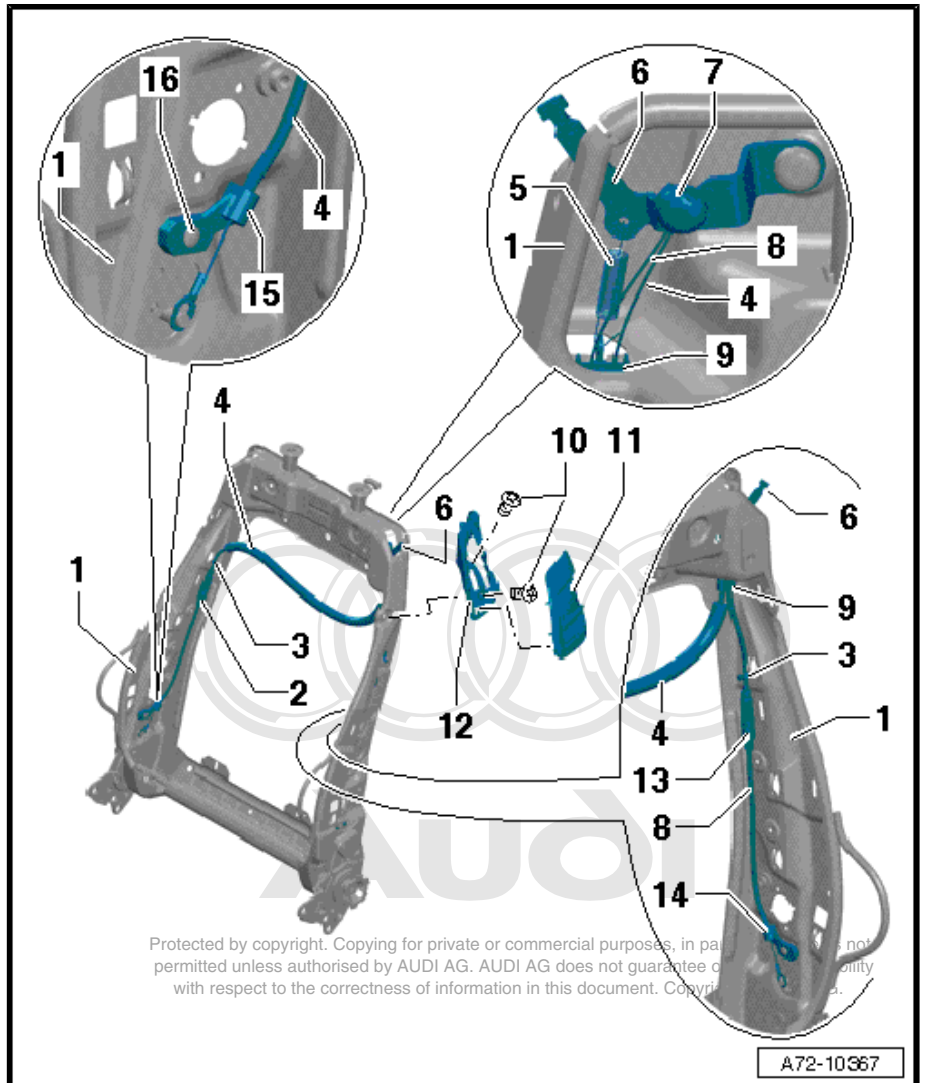
- Connect battery earth wire with ignition switched on => Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .
- If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following the installation, the fault memory must be interrogated, erased and interrogated again => Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B- .

3.25 Exploded view of Easy Entry facility (Coupé only)

 **Note**

For greater clarity four-way lumbar support is not shown in illustration.

- 1 - Backrest frame**
- 2 - Bowden cable adjuster**
 - For Bowden cable (right-side)
- 3 - Cable tie**
- 4 - Bowden cable (right-side)**
 - Removing and installing ⇒ [page 315](#)
- 5 - Extension spring**
 - Engaged in operating lever and mounting for Bowden cables
- 6 - Lever**
 - For Easy Entry handle
 - Riveted to backrest frame
- 7 - Retaining knob**
 - For Bowden cable (left and right)
 - Bowden cables cannot be disengaged from retainer
- 8 - Bowden cable (left-side)**
 - Removing and installing ⇒ [page 315](#)
- 9 - Mounting**
 - For Bowden cable (left and right)
 - Bowden cables cannot be disengaged from mounting
 - Mounting clipped into backrest frame
- 10 - Bolt**
 - 4 Nm
 - 2x
- 11 - Trim with handle**
 - For Easy Entry facility
 - Cannot be removed without damaging it irreparably (up to 10.2006)
 - Trim is clipped to bracket ⇒ [Item 12 \(page 311\)](#)
 - Removing and installing up to 10.2006 ⇒ [page 312](#)
 - Removing and installing from 11.2006 onwards ⇒ [page 313](#)
- 12 - Retainer**
 - For Easy Entry facility
 - Bolted to backrest frame



- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 314](#)

13 - Bowden cable adjuster

- ❑ For Bowden cable (left-side)

14 - Retainer for Bowden cable (left-side)

- ❑ Riveted to backrest frame

15 - Retainer for Bowden cable (right-side)

- ❑ Riveted to backrest frame

16 - Rivet

- ❑ 2x

3.26 Removing and installing trim with Easy Entry handle (Coupé only) up to 10.2006

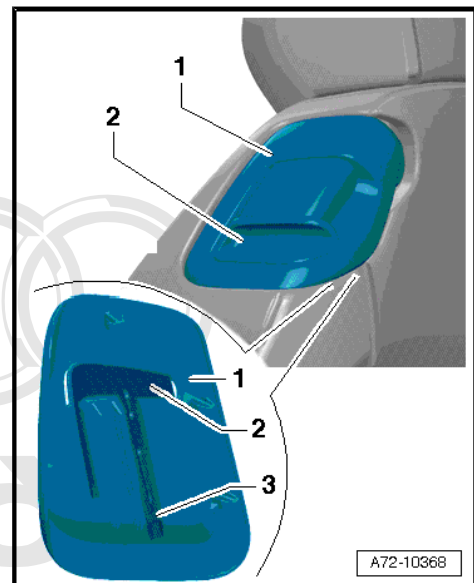


Note

- ◆ *The trim and handle can be removed and installed with the front seat in position.*
- ◆ *If the trim and handle are removed, both components will be damaged irreparably.*

Removing

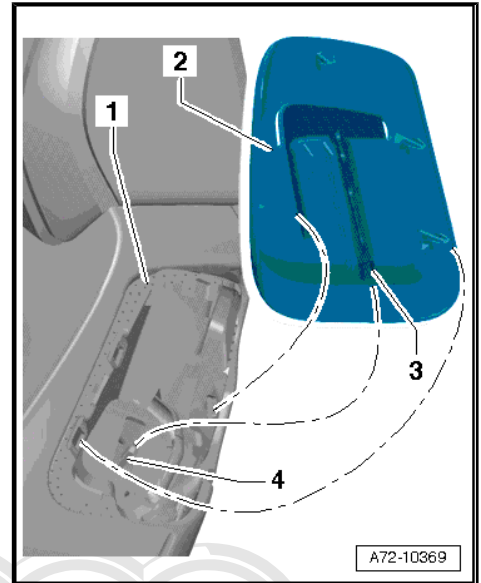
- Destroy trim -1- and attachment piece -3- of handle -2-.
- Take care not to damage cover.
- Make sure no plastic remnants have dropped into the cover or between the padding and the retainer for the Easy Entry facility.
- Detach destroyed trim -1- with Easy Entry handle -2- from front seat.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installing

- Slide new handle -3- onto lever -4- as far as stop.
- At the same time, clip trim -2- to retainer -1- at backrest frame.
- Make sure trim -2- covers opening in cover properly.
- Check operation of Easy Entry handle.



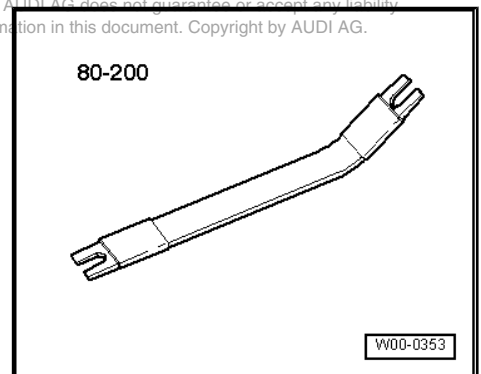
3.27 Removing and installing trim with Easy Entry handle (Coupé only) from 11.2006 onwards

i Note

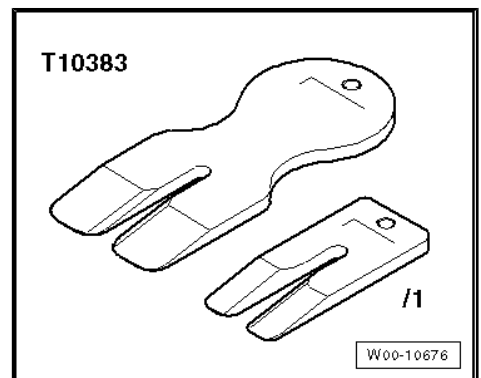
The trim and handle can be removed and installed with the front seat in position.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal lever -80 - 200-

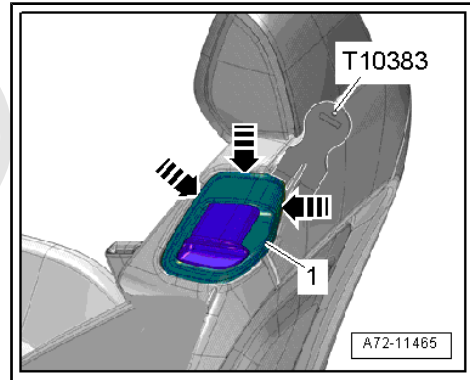


- ◆ Wedges -T10383-



Removing

- Carefully release top section of trim -1- using wedge -T10383- from fasteners -arrows-.

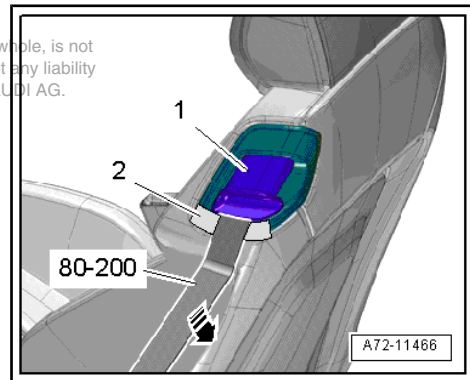


- To prevent dents, mask trim with reinforced adhesive tape -2- at points indicated in illustration.
- Use removal lever -80-200- to prise handle -1- off together with trim -arrow-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

- Press on handle -1- together with trim until it engages audibly.
- Check operation of Easy Entry handle.



3.28 Removing and installing retainer for Easy Entry facility (Coupé only)



Note

The retainer for the Easy Entry facility can be removed and installed with the front seat in position.

Removing

- Remove trim with Easy Entry handle: up to 10.2006 => [page 312](#) , from 11.2006 onwards => [page 313](#) .
- Remove bolts -1- (2x).
- Detach retainer for Easy Entry facility -2-.



Note

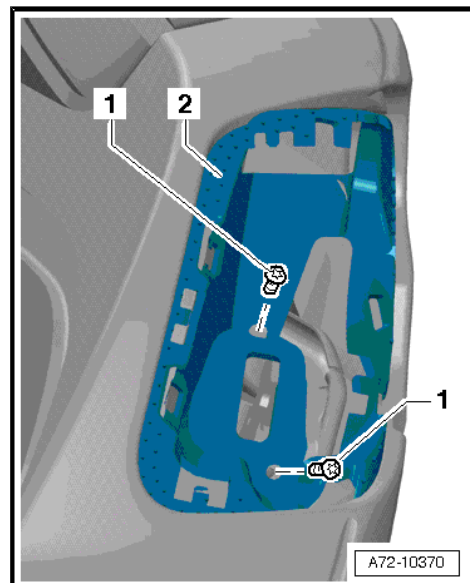
For greater clarity cover is not shown in illustration.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

- Carefully slide retainer for Easy Entry facility under opening in cover. Take care not to damage cover.
- Fit trim with Easy Entry handle => [page 312](#) .

Tightening torque => [page 311](#)



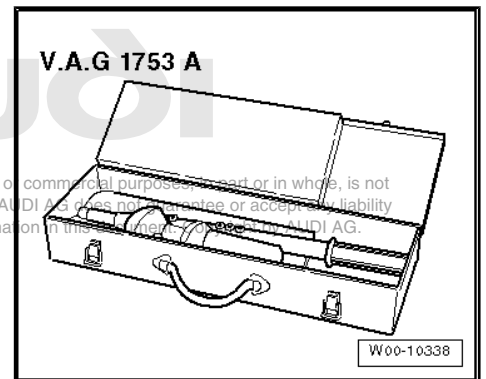
3.29 Removing and installing Bowden cables, left and right (Coupé only)

 **Note**

The Bowden cables (left and right) cannot be renewed separately.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Special pop rivet pliers -V.A.G 1753A-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. © Audi AG.

Removing

 **WARNING**

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 42](#) .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

- Remove front seat ⇒ [page 274](#) .
- Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- ⇒ [page 240](#) .
- Remove backrest cover panel ⇒ [page 302](#) .
- Remove head restraint ⇒ [page 321](#) .
- Remove trim with Easy Entry handle ⇒ [page 312](#) .
- Remove backrest cover and padding ⇒ [page 407](#) .

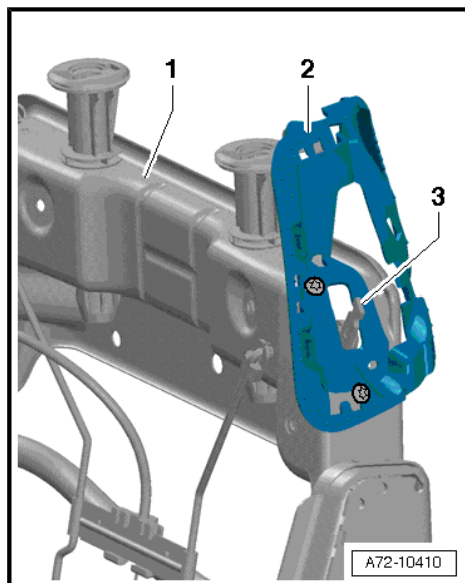
 **Note**

It is not necessary to remove lumbar support when removing or installing Bowden cables.

– Operate lever -3- for Easy Entry handle and fold backrest down.

1 - Backrest frame

2 - Bracket

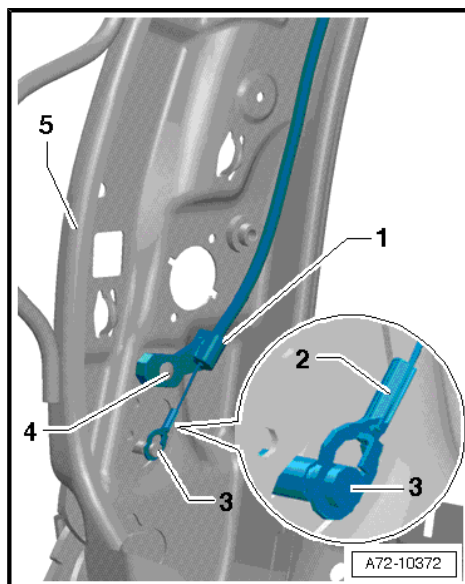


– Use pliers to disengage lugs -2- (2x) from pins -3- (2x).

– Drill out rivets -4- at retainers for Bowden cable -1- (left and right).

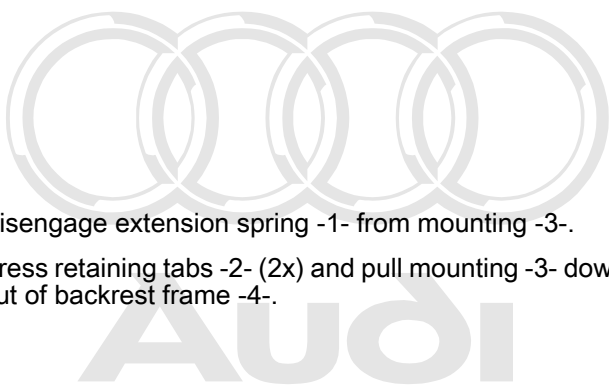
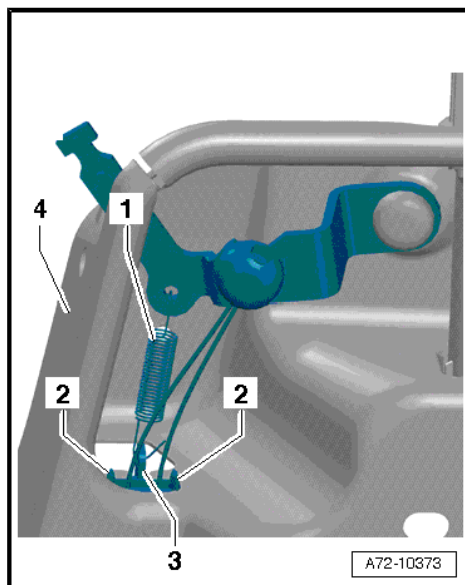
5 - Backrest frame

– Unfasten cable ties on both sides.



– Disengage extension spring -1- from mounting -3-.

– Press retaining tabs -2- (2x) and pull mounting -3- downwards out of backrest frame -4-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Turn knob -2- in direction of -arrow- until nipple of Bowden cable -arrow A- faces centre of backrest (horizontally).
- Hold knob -2- in this position.
- Press knob -2- upwards out of lever -1-.
- Guide knob -2- through Bowden cable opening -arrow B- in backrest frame -3-.
- Take Bowden cables out of backrest frame (left and right).

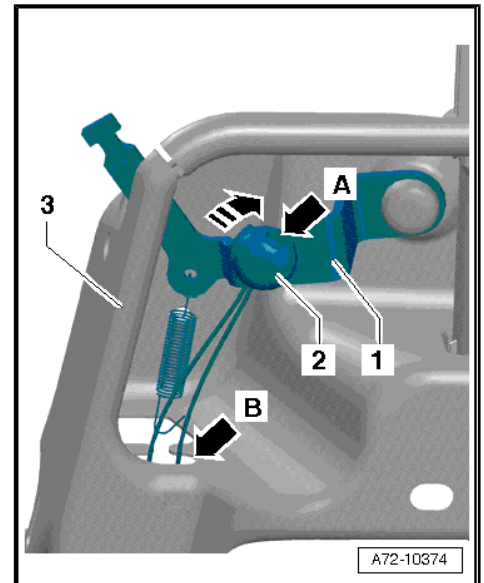
Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:



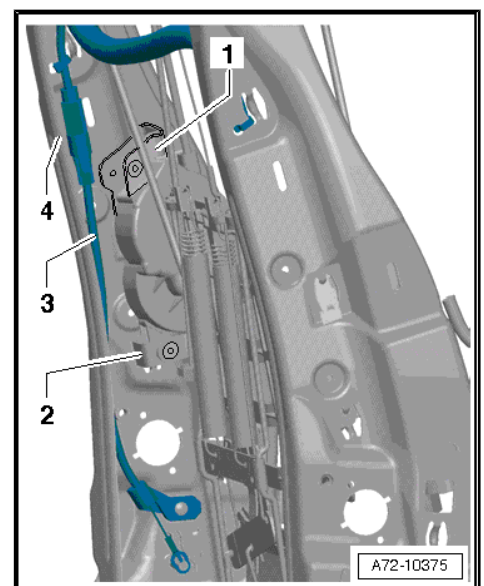
WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 42.*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*



- Make sure Bowden cables -3- (2x) are routed behind retaining plates -1- and -2- (2x).
- 4 - Backrest frame
- Adjust Bowden cables (2x) with Bowden cable adjusters (2x) ⇒ page 318.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



- Make sure pins -3- (2x) are released simultaneously when Easy Entry handle is actuated.

**Note**

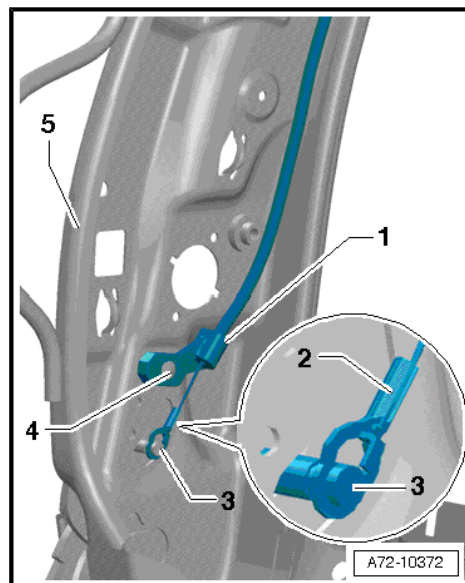
Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

- Switch on ignition.

**WARNING**

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

- Connect battery earth wire with ignition switched on => Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .
- If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following the installation, the fault memory must be interrogated, erased and interrogated again => Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B- .



3.30 Adjusting Bowden cables for Easy Entry facility (Coupé only)

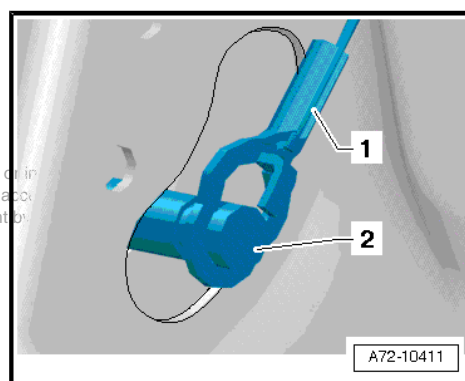
**WARNING**

Make sure that backrest is in engaged position, as it could otherwise tilt forwards unintentionally.

- Cover and padding removed => [page 407](#)
- Bowden cables (left and right) installed => [page 315](#)

Pins (release pins) -2- in locked position on both sides (position on delivery, i.e. basic position at bottom).

1 - Bowden cable

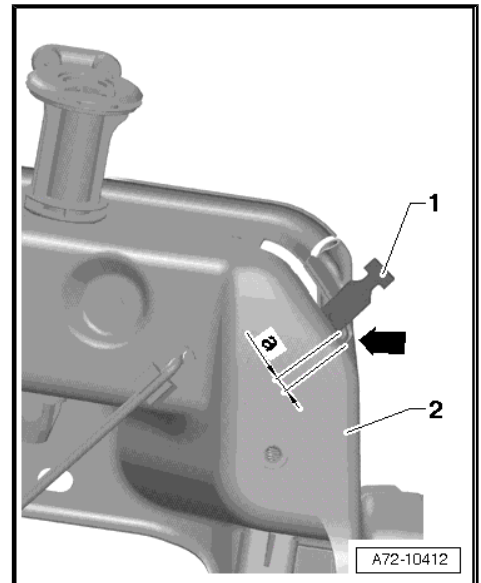


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in full, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Audi AG.

- Set lever -1- to a distance $a = 3$ mm from edge of opening -arrow-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

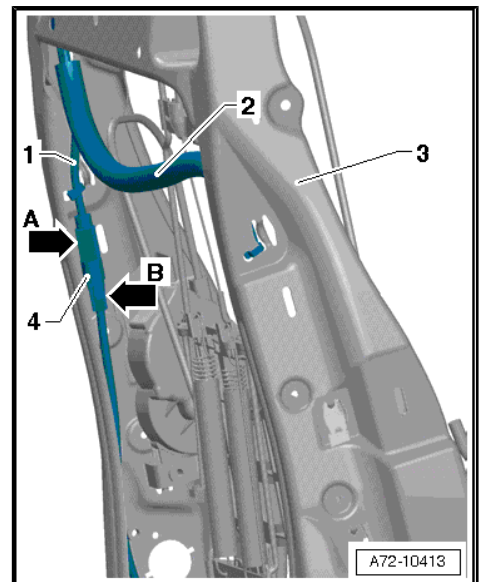


- Adjust Bowden cables -1- and -2- at Bowden cable adjusters -4- (left and right).

i Note

For reasons of clarity, Bowden cable adjuster (right-side) is not shown in illustration.

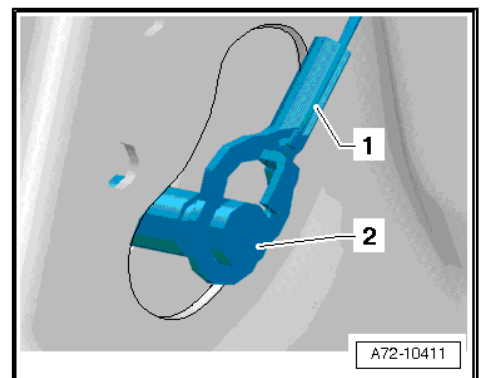
- To set, turn upper section -arrow A- and lower section -arrow B- of Bowden cable adjuster -4- in opposite directions.
- Set Bowden cable adjuster -4- so that there is no strain on Bowden cable -1- and Bowden cable is slack.



i Note

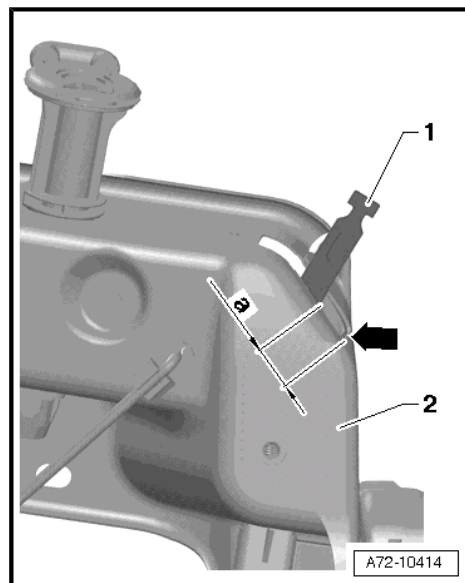
- ◆ *Proceed in a similar manner with the Bowden cable not shown.*
- ◆ *There must not be any strain on release pin -2- when adjusting Bowden cable.*

- After adjusting Bowden cables, check locking function of back-rest.





- When lever -1- is actuated, backrest must be released at a distance $a = 9$ mm from edge of opening.
- If there is no or only partial release, check the routing of the Bowden cables or repeat the adjustment of the Bowden cables.



Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.31 Exploded view of head restraints

i Note

- ◆ For reasons of clarity, the cover with padding for the backrest is not shown in the illustration.
- ◆ Illustration shows backrest frame on Coupé. The procedure for locating and securing the head restraint guides and head restraints on the Coupé and Roadster is similar.

1 - Front seat backrest

2 - Head restraint guide without release button

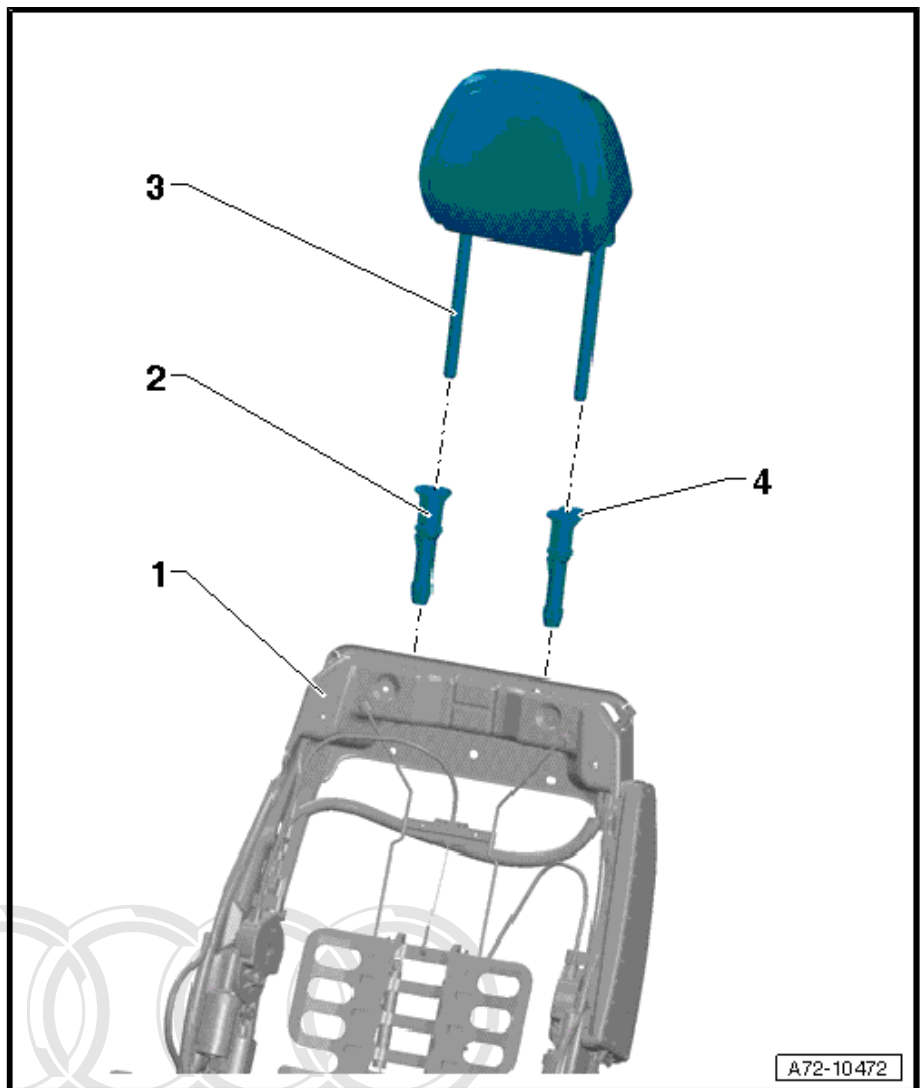
- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 322](#)
- Always fitted on right side of backrest

3 - Head restraint

- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 321](#)

4 - Head restraint guide with release button

- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 322](#)
- Always fitted on left side of backrest



3.32 Removing and installing head restraints with slide-in locking mechanism

i Note

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability for errors or omissions. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- ◆ *The head restraints can be removed with the front seats in position.*
- ◆ *The pressure point for release (release button) is on the outer left of the driver's seat and on the inner left of the front passenger's seat (in the direction of travel).*

Removing



Note

Illustration shows backrest on Coupé. The procedure for releasing the head restraint on the Coupé and Roadster is similar.

- Locate pressure point of release button -3-.

The release button is located approx. a = 95 mm beneath the top edge of the backrest.

- Press release button in direction of -arrow- towards centre of seat.
- Keep release button -3- pressed in this position.
- Lift head restraint -1- out of head restraint guides -2- and -4-.

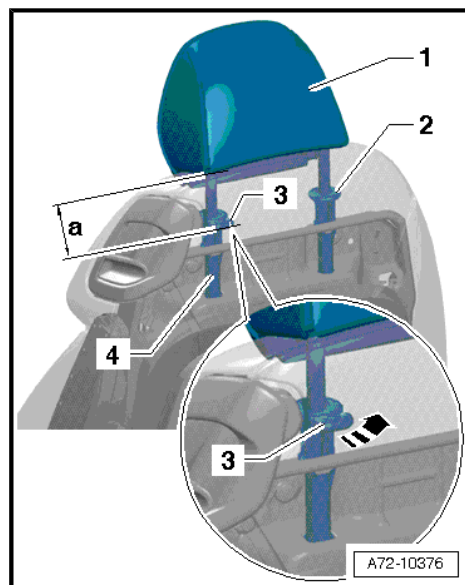
Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:



Note

Make sure head restraint is properly engaged in head restraint guides.



3.33 Removing and installing head restraint guides without and with release button

Removing



WARNING

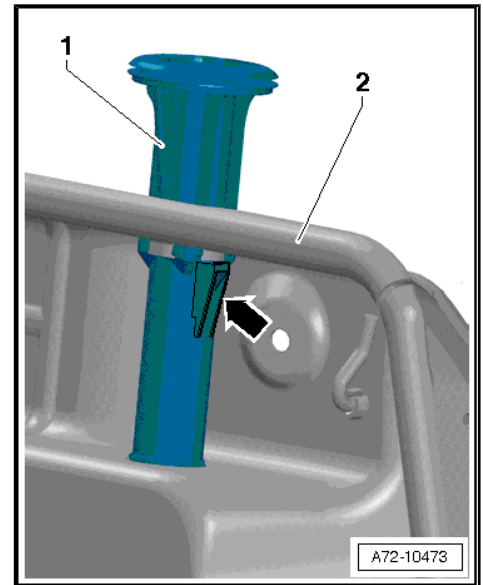
- ◆ Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 42](#) .
- ◆ Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

- Remove front seat:
- ◆ Seat with manual adjustment ⇒ [page 243](#)
- ◆ Seat with electric adjustment ⇒ [page 274](#)
- Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- ⇒ [page 240](#) .
- Remove backrest cover panel:
- ◆ Seat with manual adjustment ⇒ [page 302](#)
- ◆ Seat with electric adjustment ⇒ [page 302](#)
- Remove head restraint ⇒ [page 321](#) .
- Remove cover with padding ⇒ [page 407](#) .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted without the express written authorisation of AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Head restraint guide without release button

- Press retaining tab -arrow- of head restraint guide -1- towards centre of head restraint guide.
- Keep retaining tab -arrow- pressed.
- Lift head restraint guide -1- out of backrest frame -2-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Head restraint guide with release button

- Press retaining tab of head restraint guide -1- towards centre of head restraint guide.
- Keep retaining tab -arrow- pressed.
- Lift head restraint guide -1- out of backrest frame -2-.

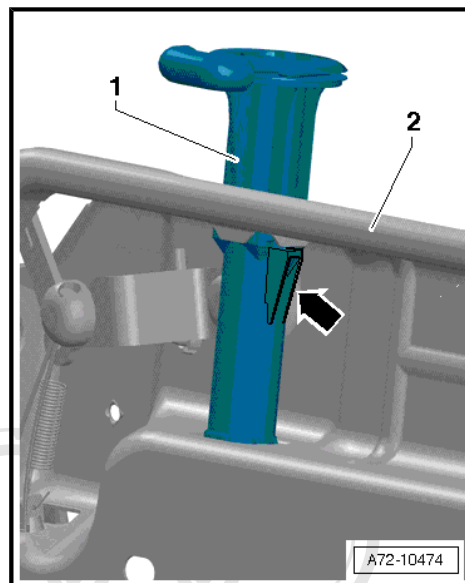
Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:



WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components => page 42 .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*



Note

- ◆ *Make sure retaining tab engages properly with backrest frame.*
- ◆ *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*

- Switch on ignition.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

- Connect battery earth wire with ignition switched on => Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .
- If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following the installation, the fault memory must be interrogated, erased and interrogated again => Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B- .

3.34 Exploded view of seat pan

Note

- ◆ Upper and lower frames of seat pan can be separated and renewed separately on front seats with electric adjustment.
- ◆ When removing seat pan, take care not to damage bushes in pivot points (bolt connection between upper and lower frame). These bushes cannot be renewed with the equipment available to workshops.

1 - Bolt, self-locking

- 29 Nm
- 3x
- Renew
- Always clean threaded holes for bolts (using a tap for example)

2 - Upper seat pan frame

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 326](#)

3 - Bush

- Inserted in all pivot points
- Cannot be renewed with the equipment available to workshops
- Component must be renewed if bush is damaged; for assignment, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

4 - Lower seat pan frame

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 326](#)

5 - Bolt

- 27 Nm
- Always renew after removing
- Clean threads of nuts in seat pan before fitting new bolts

6 - Driver seat height adjustment motor -V245- / front passenger seat height adjustment motor -V246-

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 354](#)

7 - Seat longitudinal adjustment motor -V288-

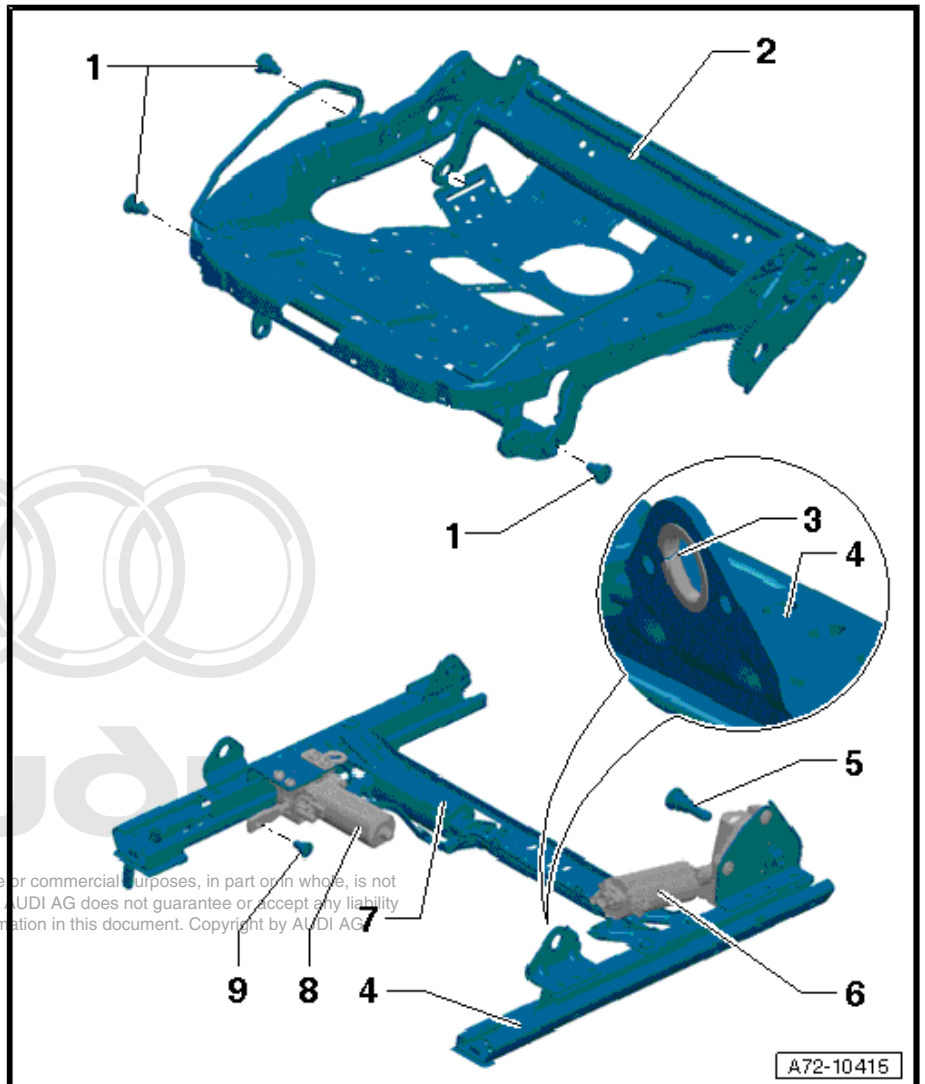
- Cannot be removed and installed with the equipment available to workshops
- Leave in position on lower seat pan frame ⇒ [Item 4 \(page 325\)](#)

8 - Driver seat rake adjustment motor -V243- / front passenger seat rake adjustment motor -V244-

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 337](#)

9 - Bolt, self-locking

- Tightening torque ⇒ [Item 3 \(page 336\)](#)
- Renew



- ❑ Always clean threaded holes for bolts (using a tap for example)

3.35 Dismantling and assembling seat pan

Dismantling seat pan



WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 42](#) .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

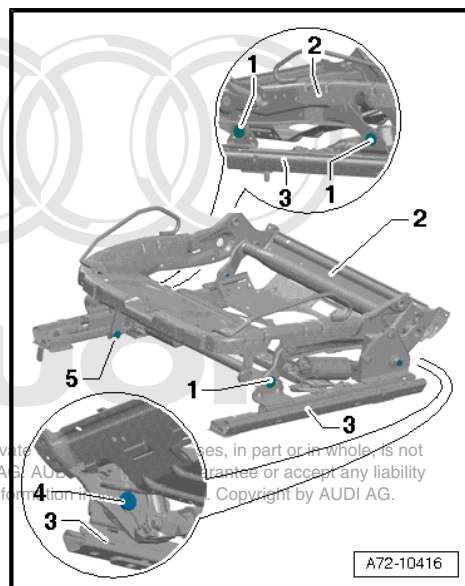
- Remove front seat ⇒ [page 274](#) .
- Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- ⇒ [page 240](#) .
- Remove backrest ⇒ [page 298](#) .
- Remove seat pan cover with padding ⇒ [page 401](#) .
- Unplug any electrical connectors.

Renewing upper seat pan frame


- Detach wiring harnesses and individual wires from upper seat pan frame.

Renewing upper/lower frame (continued)

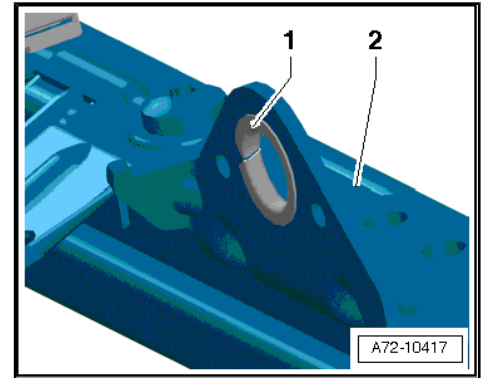
- Remove bolts -1- (3x).
- Remove bolt -4-.
- Remove bolt -5-.
- Lift upper frame -2- off lower frame -3- of seat pan.



- Pay attention to bushes -1- in pivot points.
- 2 - Lower seat pan frame

 **Caution**


- ◆ *When separating or assembling upper and lower frame, take care not to damage bushes -1- inserted in all pivot points.*
- ◆ *The bushes cannot be renewed with the equipment available to workshops.*
- ◆ *The corresponding bolt-on parts must be renewed if the bushes are damaged.*



- Remove driver seat height adjustment motor -V245- / front passenger seat height adjustment motor -V246-
 => [page 354](#) .
- Remove driver seat rake adjustment motor -V243- / front passenger seat rake adjustment motor -V244- => [page 337](#) .

Assembling seat pan

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

 **WARNING**

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components => [page 42](#) .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

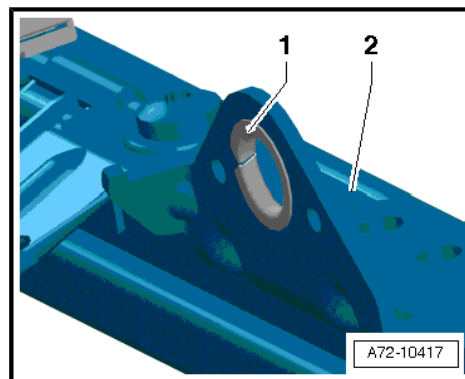
- Install driver seat height adjustment motor -V245- / front passenger seat height adjustment motor -V246- removed earlier in new lower seat pan frame => [page 354](#) .
- Install driver seat rake adjustment motor -V243- / front passenger seat rake adjustment motor -V244- removed earlier in new lower seat pan frame => [page 337](#) .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Take care not to damage bushes -1- in course of further assembly work.

**Caution**

- ◆ *When separating or assembling upper and lower frame, take care not to damage bushes -1- inserted in all pivot points.*
- ◆ *The bushes cannot be renewed with the equipment available to workshops.*
- ◆ *The corresponding bolt-on parts must be renewed if the bushes are damaged.*

**Note**

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

- Switch on ignition.

**WARNING**

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

- Connect battery earth wire with ignition switched on ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .
- If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following the installation, the fault memory must be interrogated, erased and interrogated again ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B- .

Tightening torque ⇒ [page 325](#)

3.36 Exploded view of storage compartment

1 - Storage compartment

- Removing and installing
 ⇒ [page 329](#)
- Exploded view of stor-
 age compartment com-
 ponents ⇒ [page 332](#)
- Dismantling and assem-
 bling ⇒ [page 332](#)

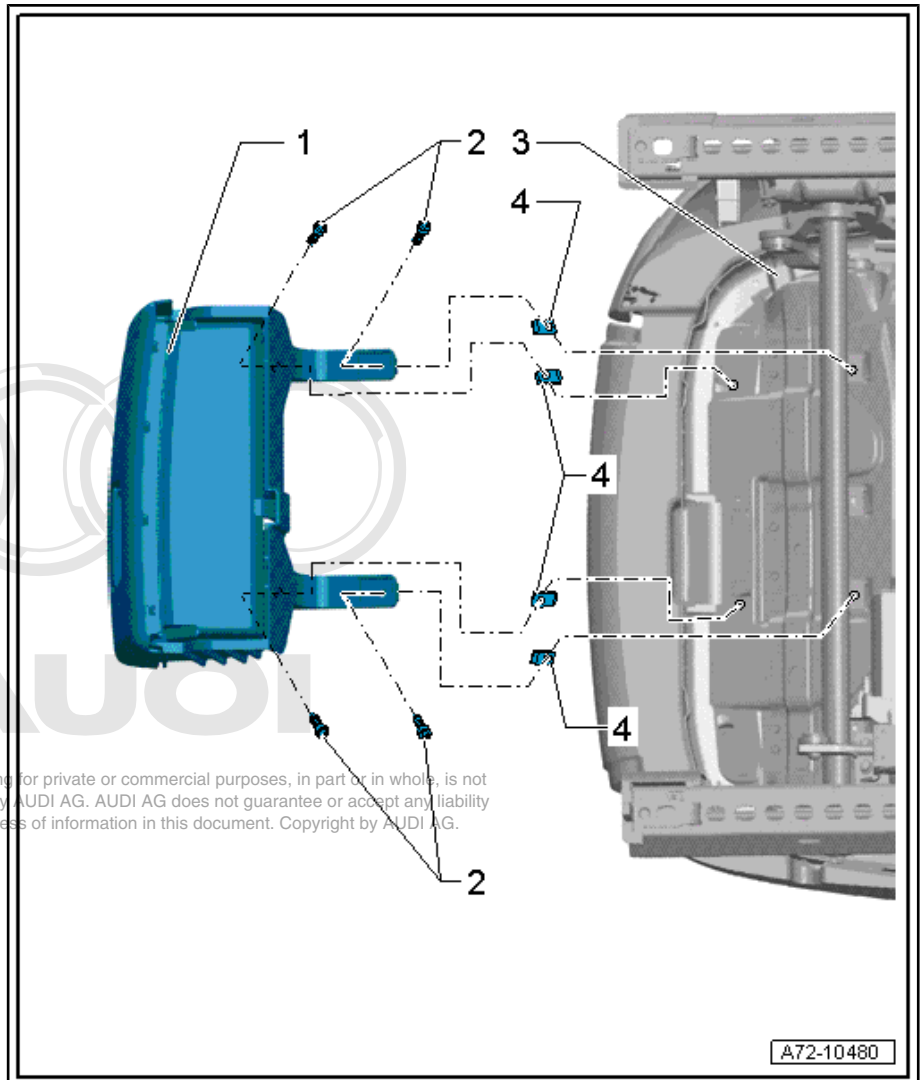
2 - Bolt

- 3.5 Nm
- 4x

3 - Seat pan

4 - Speed nut

- 4x



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.37 Removing and installing storage compartment



Note

The removal and installation of the storage compartment is described for a seat with electric adjustment. The removal and installation procedures are similar for a seat with manual adjustment.

Removing



WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 42](#) .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

- Remove front seat:
 - ◆ With manual adjustment ⇒ [page 243](#) .
 - ◆ With electric adjustment ⇒ [page 274](#) .
- Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- ⇒ [page 240](#) .
- **Open storage compartment**

This document is not to be used for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Remove bolts -2- (4x).

 **Note**

For greater clarity the storage compartment is shown closed in the illustration.

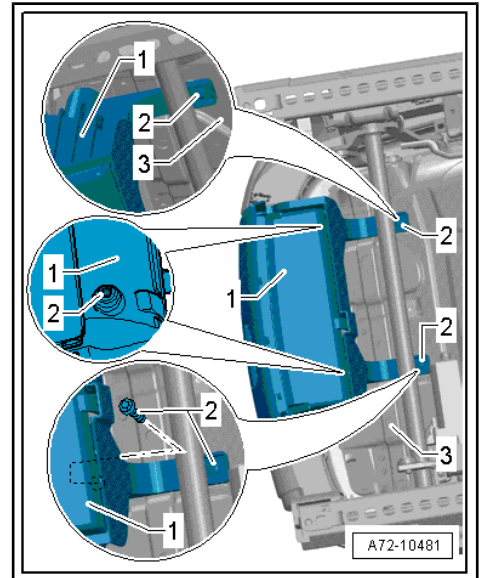
- Detach entire storage compartment -1- from front seat -3-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

 **WARNING**

- ◆ **Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components**
 ⇒ [page 42](#).
- ◆ **Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.**



 **Note**

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

- Switch on ignition.

 **WARNING**

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

- Connect battery earth wire with ignition switched on ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27.
- If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following the installation, the fault memory must be interrogated, erased and interrogated again ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B-.

Tightening torque ⇒ [page 329](#)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.38 Exploded view of storage compartment components

1 - Shaft

- For handle with locking mechanism
⇒ [Item 3 \(page 332\)](#)

2 - Torsion spring

- Replacement part: Only available with handle with locking mechanism
⇒ [Item 3 \(page 332\)](#) and shaft
⇒ [Item 1 \(page 332\)](#)

3 - Handle with locking mechanism

- Replacement part: Available with shaft
⇒ [Item 1 \(page 332\)](#) and torsion spring
⇒ [Item 2 \(page 332\)](#)

4 - Trim

- Clipped onto inner section

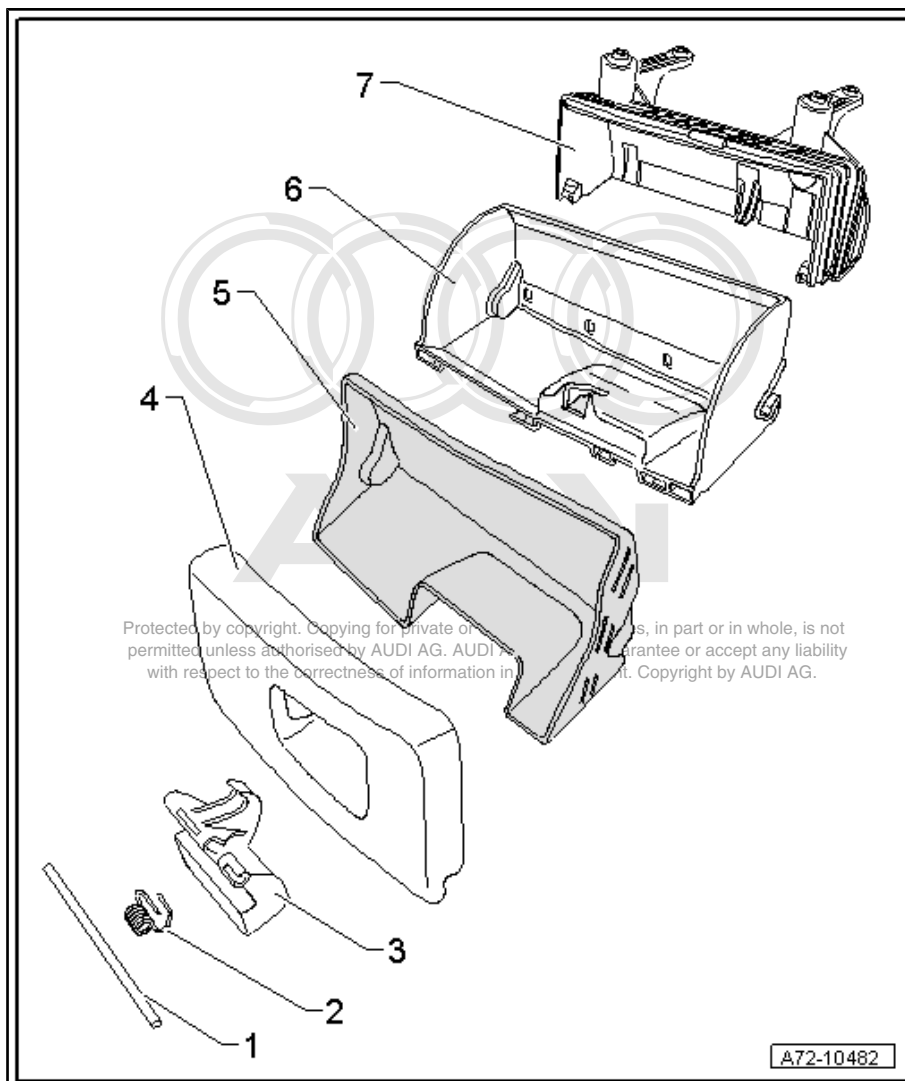
5 - Insert

6 - Inner section

- Replacement part: Only available with outer section
⇒ [Item 7 \(page 332\)](#)

7 - Outer section

- Replacement part: Only available with inner section
⇒ [Item 6 \(page 332\)](#)



3.39 Dismantling and assembling storage compartment

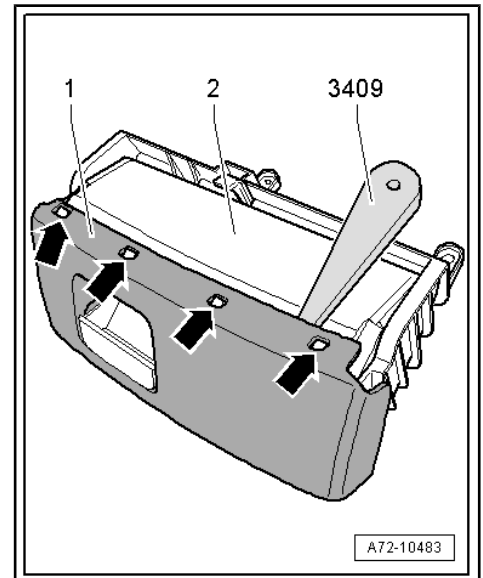


Note

- ◆ *You do not have to remove the front seat to dismantle and assemble the storage compartment.*
- ◆ *The storage compartment does not have to be removed to be dismantled and assembled.*
- ◆ *To renew the outer section ⇒ [Item 7 \(page 332\)](#), the front seat and the storage compartment must be removed.*

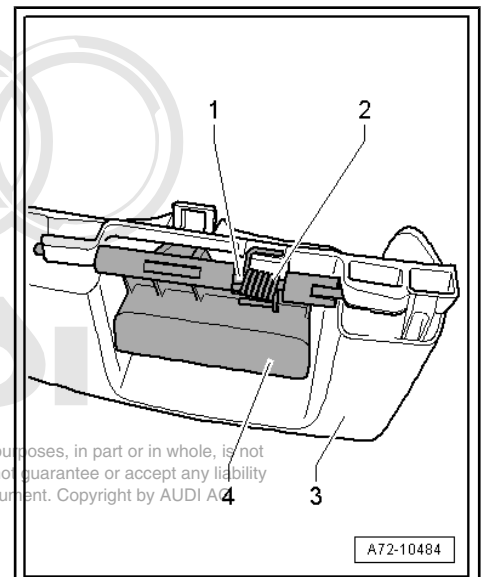
Removing trim

- Take inner section out of outer section => [page 334](#) .
- Use removal wedge -3409- to unclip trim -1- from retaining tabs -arrows- (4x) on inner section -2-.



Removing handle with locking mechanism

- Remove trim => [page 333](#) .
- Pull shaft -1- out of inner section -3-.
- Detach handle with locking mechanism -4-, torsion spring -2- and shaft -1-.

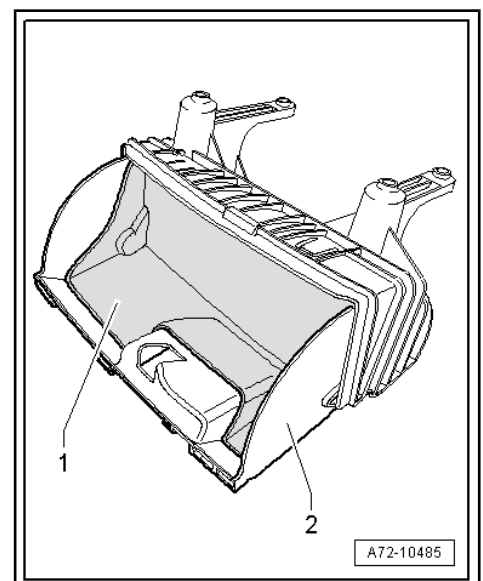


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG

Removing insert

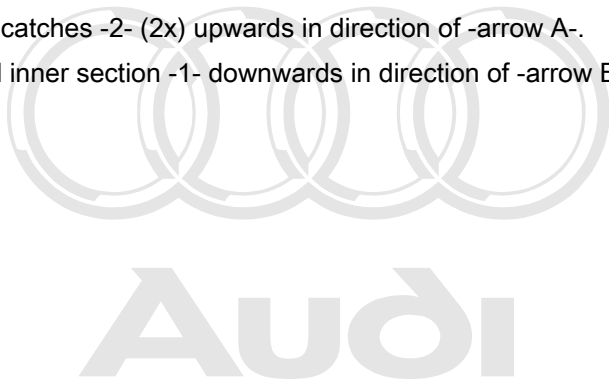
Note

- ◆ *The insert is only placed in the inner section and not secured.*
- ◆ *For greater clarity, the storage compartment is shown removed from the vehicle and without the trim and the handle with locking mechanism in the following illustrations.*
- Open storage compartment.
- Take insert -1- out of inner section -2-.



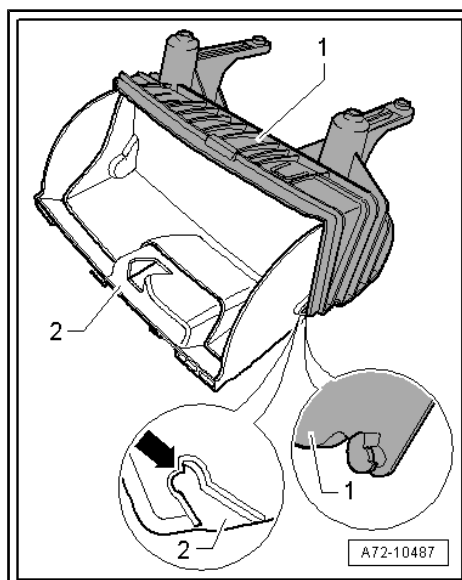
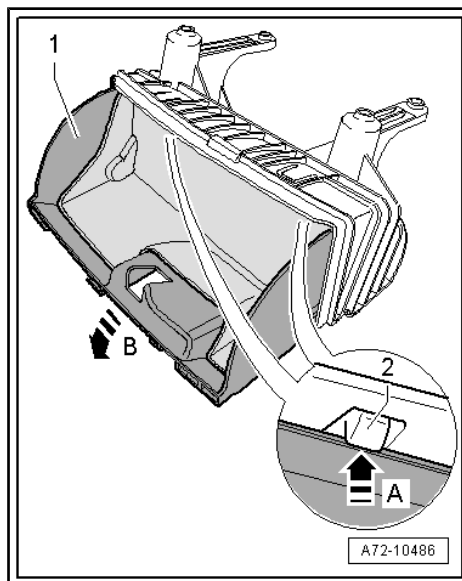
Taking inner section out of outer section

- Open storage compartment.
- Press catches -2- (2x) upwards in direction of -arrow A-.
- Swivel inner section -1- downwards in direction of -arrow B-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

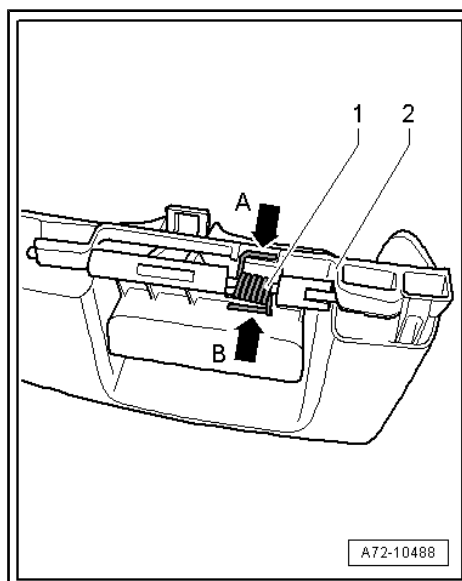
- Pull outer section -1- out of guide -arrow- on inner section -2-.



Assembling storage compartment

Assemble in reverse order. Observe the following:

- Engage torsion spring -1- so that short arm -arrow A- rests on inner section -2- and long arm -arrow B- rests on handle.



3.40 Overview of electrical and electronic components

1 - Seat rake adjustment motor

- For driver's seat -V243-
- For front passenger's seat -V244-
- Exploded view
⇒ [page 336](#)
- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 337](#)

2 - Seat longitudinal adjustment motor -V288-

- Exploded view
⇒ [page 339](#)
- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 339](#)

3 - Backrest adjustment motor

- For driver's seat -V45-
- For front passenger's seat -V46-
- Exploded view
⇒ [page 342](#)
- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 343](#)

4 - Lumbar support height adjustment motor

- For driver's seat -V129-
- For front passenger's seat -V130-
- Exploded view
⇒ [page 348](#)
- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 351](#)

5 - Lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor

- For driver's seat -V125-
- For front passenger's seat -V126-
- Exploded view ⇒ [page 348](#)
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 349](#)

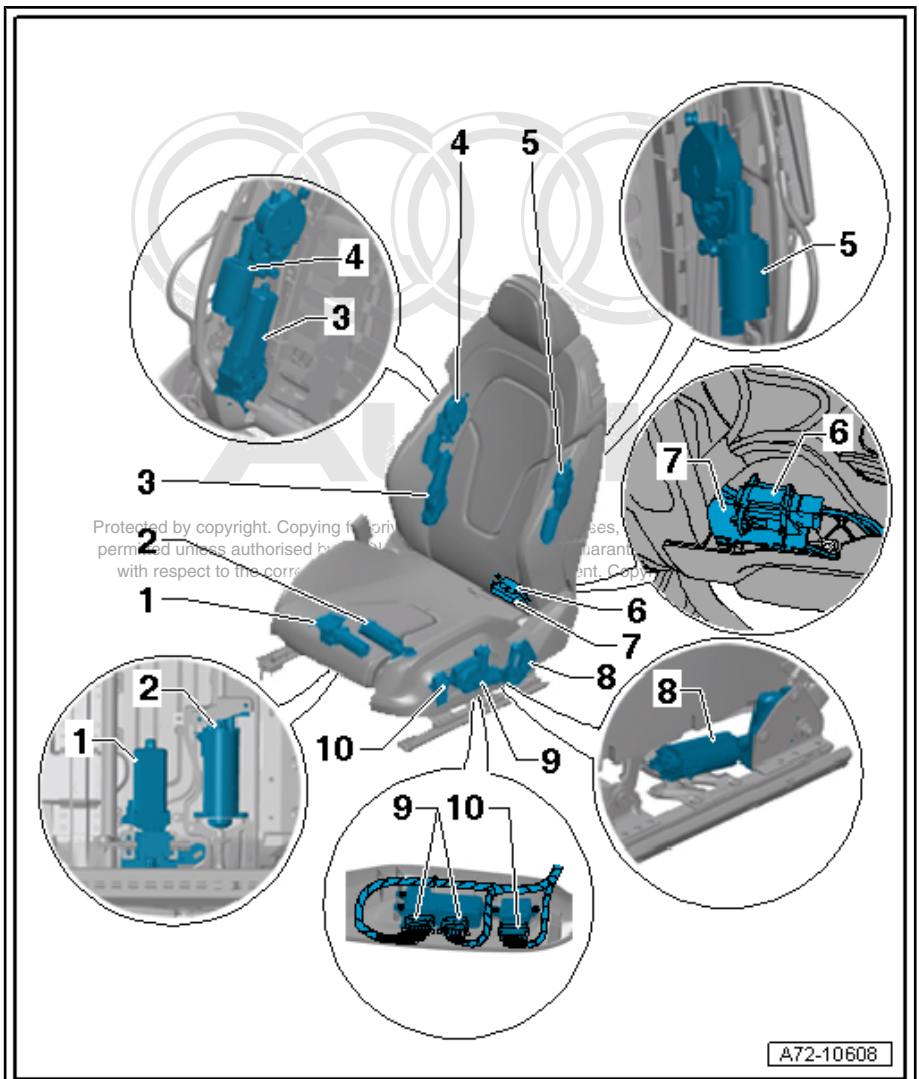
6 - Connection for limit switch

7 - Housing with limit switch

- For driver seat backrest -E69-
- For front passenger seat backrest -E70-
- Exploded view ⇒ [page 345](#)
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 346](#)
- Only limit switch should be removed and installed

8 - Seat height adjustment motor

- For driver's seat -V245-
- For front passenger's seat -V246-
- Exploded view ⇒ [page 354](#)
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 354](#)



9 - Switch

- For driver/front passenger seat longitudinal adjustment -E363- / -E64-
- For driver/front passenger seat backrest adjustment -E96- / -E98-
- For driver/front passenger seat rake adjustment -E222- / -E334-
- For driver/front passenger seat height adjustment -E364- / -E365-



Note

- Exploded view ⇒ [page 361](#)
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 362](#)

10 - Lumbar support adjustment switch

- For driver's seat -E176-
- For front passenger's seat -E177-
- Exploded view ⇒ [page 359](#)
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 360](#)

3.41 Exploded view of seat rake adjustment motor -V243- / -V244-

1 - Seat rake adjustment motor

- For driver's seat -V243-
- For front passenger's seat -V244-
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 337](#)

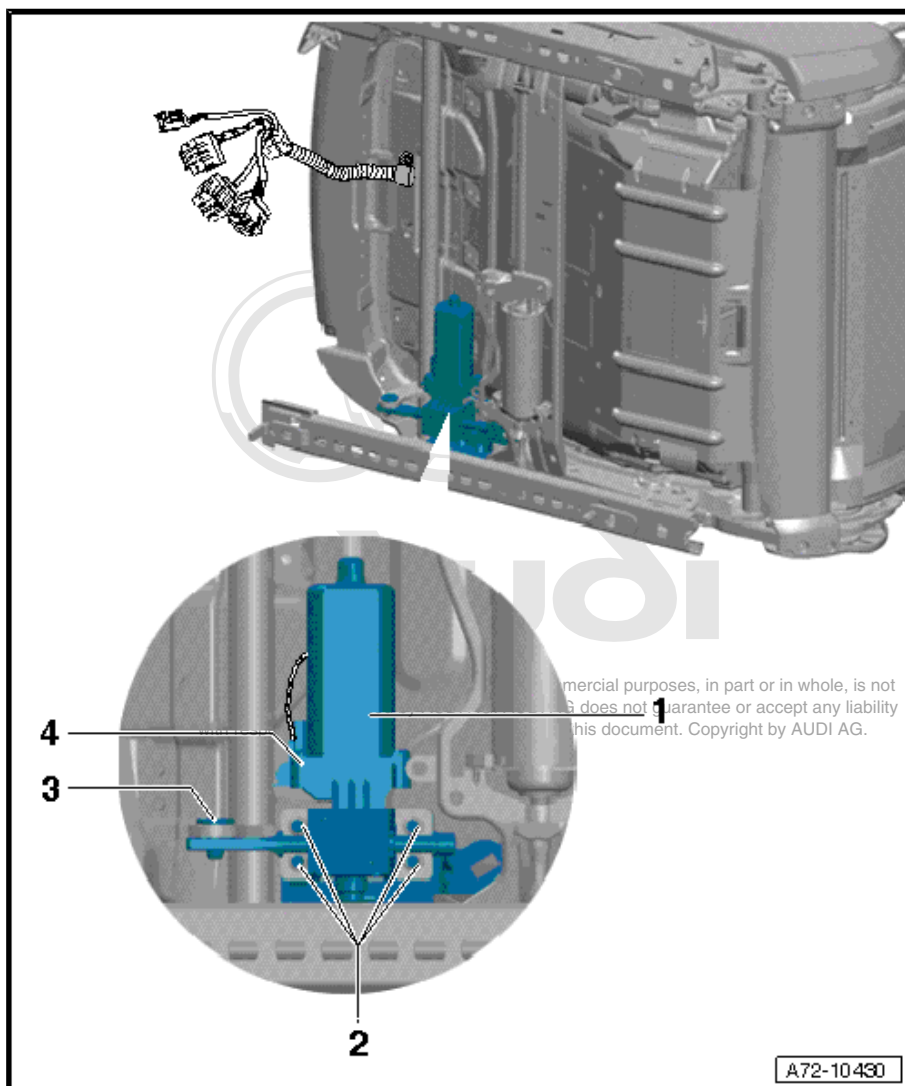
2 - Bolt

- 14 Nm
- 4x

3 - Bolt, self-locking

- 22 Nm
- Renew
- Always clean threaded holes for bolts (using a tap for example)

4 - Connector



3.42 Removing and installing seat rake adjustment motor -V243- / -V244-

Removing



WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components*
⇒ [page 42](#).
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

- Remove seat ⇒ [page 274](#) .
- Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136-
⇒ [page 240](#) .



- Remove bolts -2- (4x).
- Remove bolt -3-.
- Unplug connector -4-.
- Remove driver seat rake adjustment motor -V243- / front passenger seat rake adjustment motor -V244- -1-.

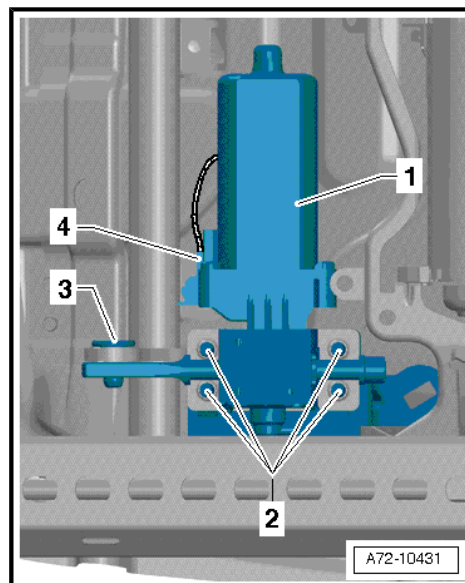
Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:



WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 42](#).*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*



Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

- Switch on ignition.



WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

- Connect battery earth wire with ignition switched on ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .
- If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following the installation, the fault memory must be interrogated, erased and interrogated again ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B- .

Tightening torque ⇒ [page 336](#)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.43 Exploded view of seat longitudinal adjustment motor -V288-

1 - Upper seat pan frame

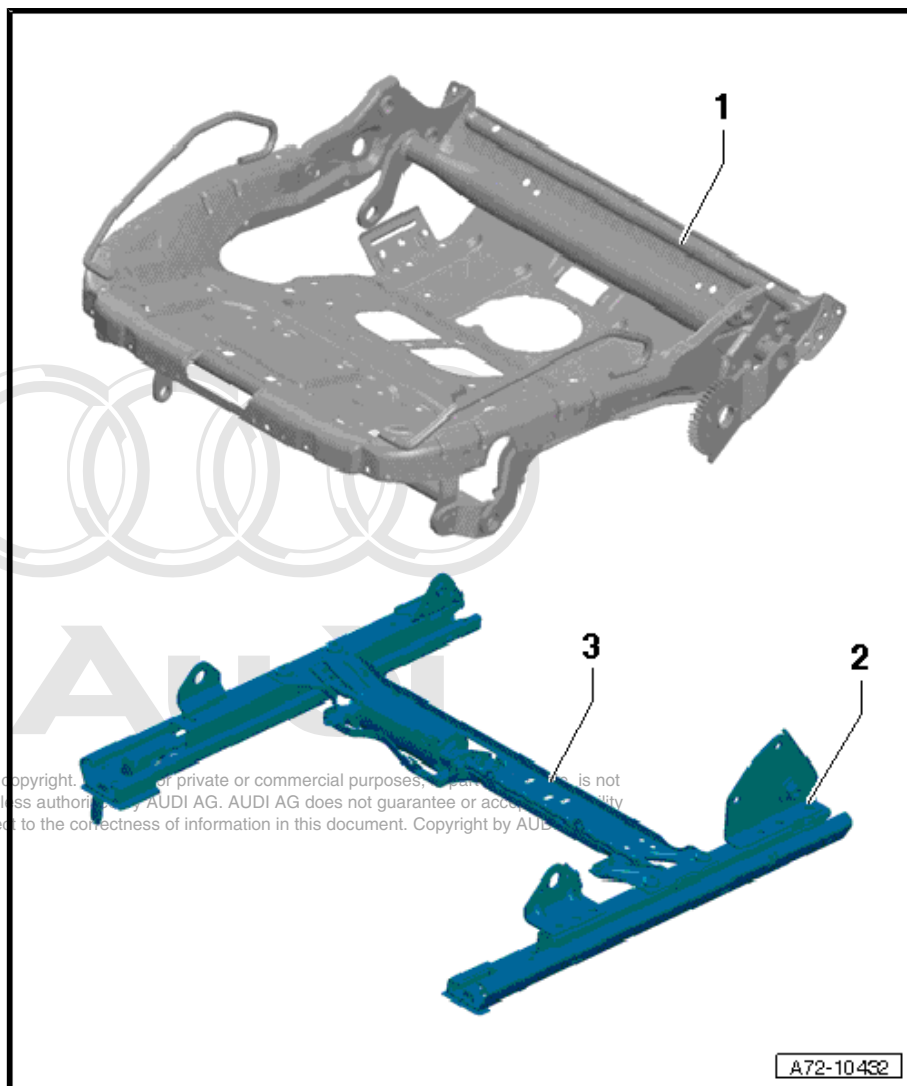
- ❑ Separating upper seat pan frame from lower seat pan frame and assembling ⇒ [page 326](#)

2 - Lower seat pan frame

- ❑ Separating upper seat pan frame from lower seat pan frame and assembling ⇒ [page 326](#)

3 - Seat longitudinal adjustment motor -V288-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 339](#)



3.44 Removing and installing seat longitudinal adjustment motor -V288-



Note

- ◆ *If motor is defective, lower seat pan frame must be renewed.*
- ◆ *For greater clarity, the illustration shows the seat pan without padding or backrest.*

Removing



WARNING

- ◆ **Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components**
⇒ [page 42](#) .
- ◆ **Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.**

- Remove seat ⇒ [page 274](#) .
- Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136-
⇒ [page 240](#) .
- Separate upper from lower seat pan frame ⇒ [page 326](#) .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Note

The seat rake and height adjustment motors must be transferred to the new lower seat pan frame.

- Remove seat rake adjustment motor -V243- / -V244- -1-
⇒ [page 337](#) .
 - Remove seat height adjustment motor -V245- / -V246- -3-
⇒ [page 354](#) .
- 2 - Driver seat rake adjustment motor -V243- / front passenger seat rake adjustment motor -V244-
4 - Lower seat pan frame

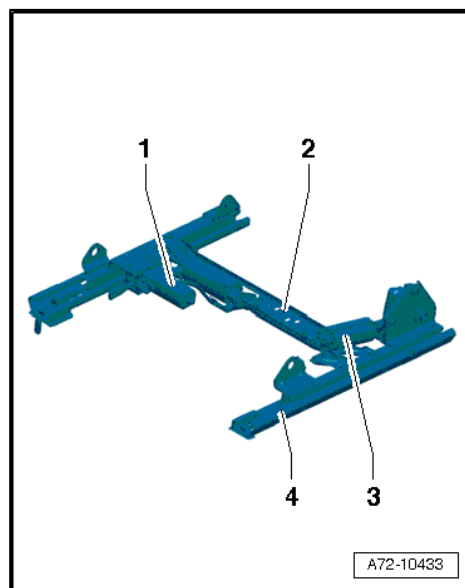
Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:



WARNING

- ◆ **Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components**
⇒ [page 42](#) .
- ◆ **Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.**



- Install seat height adjustment motor -V245- / -V246- -3- in new lower seat pan frame -4-.
- Install seat rake adjustment motor -V243- / -V244- -1- in new lower seat pan frame -4-.

 **Note**

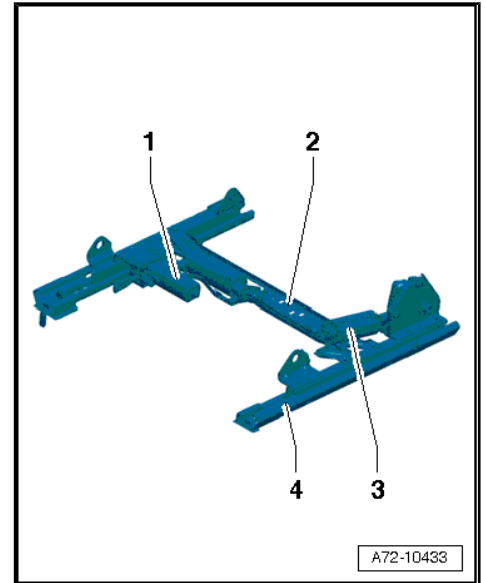
Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

- Switch on ignition.

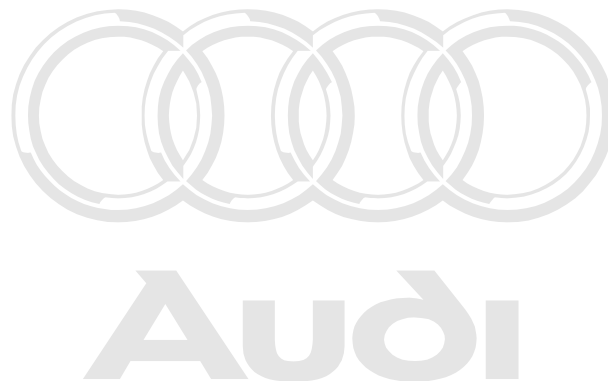


WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.



- Connect battery earth wire with ignition switched on ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .
- If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following the installation, the fault memory must be interrogated, erased and interrogated again ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B- .



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.45 Exploded view of backrest adjustment motor -V45- / -V46-



Note

- ◆ For greater clarity, the backrest is shown without lumbar support, padding and cover.
- ◆ Illustration shows backrest frame of Coupé. The backrest frame on the Roadster is similar; however, the Bowden cable (shown in illustration) for the Easy Entry facility is not installed.

1 - Backrest adjustment motor

- For driver's seat -V45-
- For front passenger's seat -V46-
- Do not renew
⇒ [page 343](#)
- In the event of motor damage, renew backrest frame with motor for backrest adjustment, shaft and housing
⇒ [page 343](#)

2 - Front seat backrest

- Only backrest frame is shown

3 - Rivet

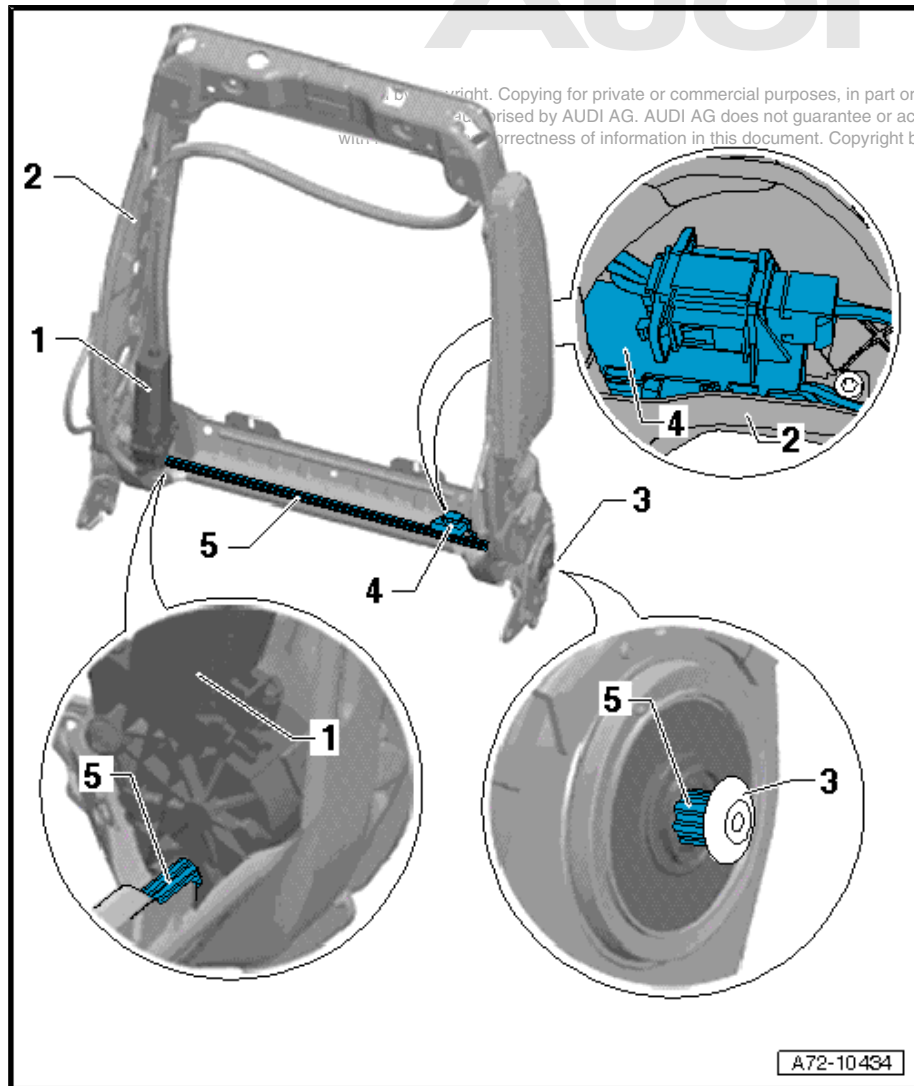
- Do not remove

4 - Housing with connection for limit switch

- Housing accommodates driver seat backrest limit switch -E69- / front passenger seat backrest limit switch -E70-
- To avoid damaging component, never detach housing from shaft
⇒ [Item 5 \(page 342\)](#)
- The driver seat backrest limit switch -E69- / front passenger seat backrest limit switch -E70- can be renewed
⇒ [page 346](#)

5 - Shaft

- Do not remove



A72-10434

3.46 Removing and installing backrest adjustment motor -V45- / -V46-

Removing



Caution

- ◆ *As the end positions cannot be re-established, the driver seat backrest adjustment motor -V45- / front passenger seat backrest adjustment motor -V46- must not be renewed.*
- ◆ *In the event of motor damage, renew backrest frame with driver seat backrest adjustment motor -V45- / front passenger seat backrest adjustment motor -V46- as well as shaft and housing for driver seat backrest limit switch -E69- / front passenger seat backrest limit switch -E70- .*
- ◆ *Remove side airbag, four-way lumbar support with motors, limit switch and head restraint guides from backrest frame with defective backrest adjustment motor -V45- / -V46- and install these components in new backrest frame.*



WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 42](#) .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

- Remove backrest ⇒ [page 298](#) .
- Remove backrest cover panel ⇒ [page 302](#) .
- Remove cover with padding ⇒ [page 407](#) .
- Remove side airbag ⇒ [page 100](#) .
- Remove four-way lumbar support ⇒ [page 307](#) .
- Unplug electrical connectors.
- Remove driver seat lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor -V125- / front passenger seat lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor -V126- ⇒ [page 349](#) .
- Remove driver seat lumbar support height adjustment motor -V129- / front passenger seat lumbar support height adjustment motor -V130- ⇒ [page 351](#) .
- Remove driver seat backrest limit switch -E69- / front passenger seat backrest limit switch -E70- ⇒ [page 346](#) .
- Remove head restraint guides ⇒ [page 322](#) .

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

**WARNING**

- ◆ **Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components**
⇒ page 42 .
- ◆ **Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.**

- Re-install removed components ⇒ [page 343](#) in new backrest frame.
- Make sure head restraint guides are properly engaged in backrest frame.
- Switch on ignition.

**Note**

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

**WARNING**

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

- Connect battery earth wire with ignition switched on ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .
- If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following the installation, the fault memory must be interrogated, erased and interrogated again ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B- .

3.47 Exploded view of limit switch -E69- / -E70-

1 - Backrest frame

2 - Connection for limit switch

3 - Housing

- For driver seat backrest limit switch -E69- / front passenger seat backrest limit switch -E70-



Caution

Do not separate the housing with actuator => Item 5 (page 345) from the shaft => Item 4 (page 345) as the end positions cannot be re-established.

4 - Shaft



Caution

Do not pull shaft out of housing with actuator.

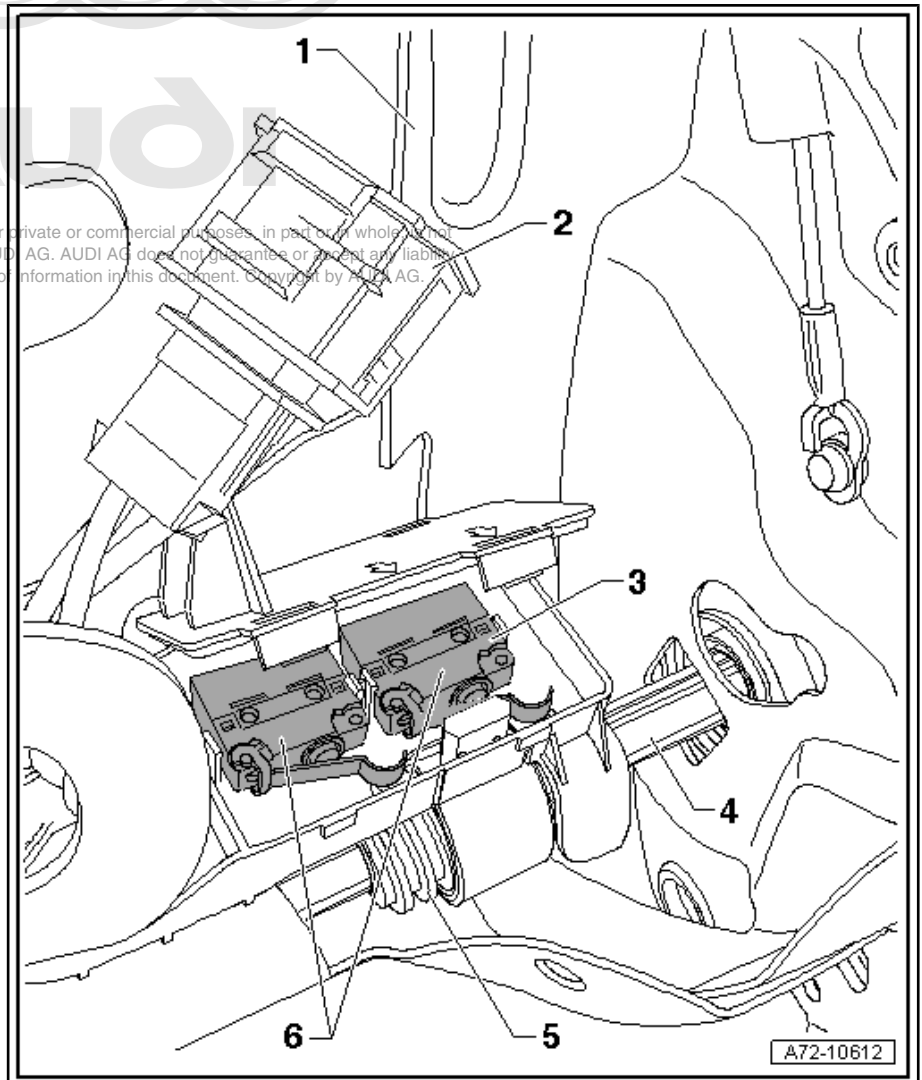
5 - Actuator

- For driver seat backrest limit switch -E69- / front passenger seat backrest limit switch -E70-
- Do not detach from shaft => Item 4 (page 345)



Caution

Do not separate the housing with actuator => Item 4 (page 345) from the shaft as the end positions cannot be re-established.



6 - Driver seat backrest limit switch -E69- / front passenger seat backrest limit switch -E70-

- Removing and installing => page 346

3.48 Removing and installing limit switch - E69- / -E70-

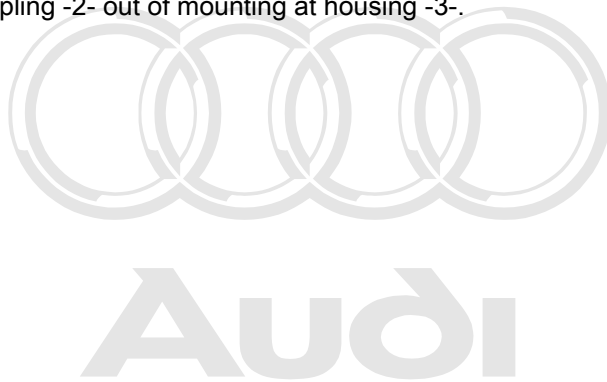
Removing



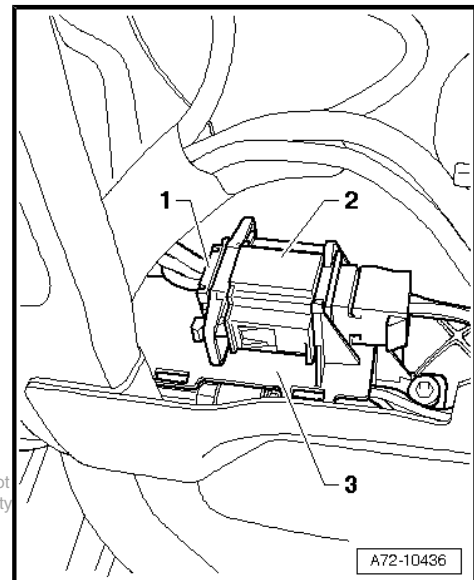
WARNING

- ◆ **Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components** ⇒ [page 42](#) .
- ◆ **Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.**

- Remove backrest ⇒ [page 298](#) .
- Remove backrest cover panel ⇒ [page 302](#) .
- Unplug connector -1- from coupling -2-.
- Lift coupling -2- out of mounting at housing -3-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



A72-10436


- Unclip cover of housing -3-.
- Take driver seat backrest limit switch -E69- / front passenger seat backrest limit switch -E70- -2- with wire and coupling out of housing -1-.

 **Note**

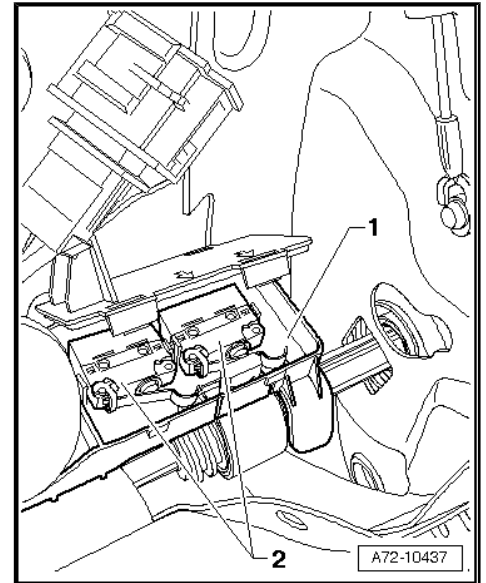
The two limit switches contained in the housing cannot be separated and can only be renewed together with the wire and coupling.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

 **WARNING**


- ◆ **Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components**
⇒ [page 42](#).
- ◆ **Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.**



 **Note**

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

- Switch on ignition.

 **WARNING**

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

- Connect battery earth wire with ignition switched on ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .
- If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following the installation, the fault memory must be interrogated, erased and interrogated again ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B- .

3.49 Exploded view of lumbar support longitudinal and height adjustment motors

1 - Clip

- For guiding Bowden cable
=> [Item 3 \(page 348\)](#)

2 - Bowden cable

- For Easy Entry facility
- Coupé only

3 - Bowden cable

- For adjusting height of four-way lumbar support
- Can only be renewed together with driver seat lumbar support height adjustment motor - V129- / front passenger seat lumbar support height adjustment motor -V130-

4 - Driver seat lumbar support height adjustment motor - V129- / front passenger seat lumbar support height adjustment motor -V130-

- Removing and installing
=> [page 351](#)

5 - Driver seat lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor - V125- / front passenger seat lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor -V126-

- Removing and installing
=> [page 349](#)

6 - Backrest frame

7 - Four-way lumbar support

8 - Rivet

- 2 per motor
- Set rivet using special pop rivet pliers -V.A.G 1753A-

9 - Connector

10 - Bowden cable

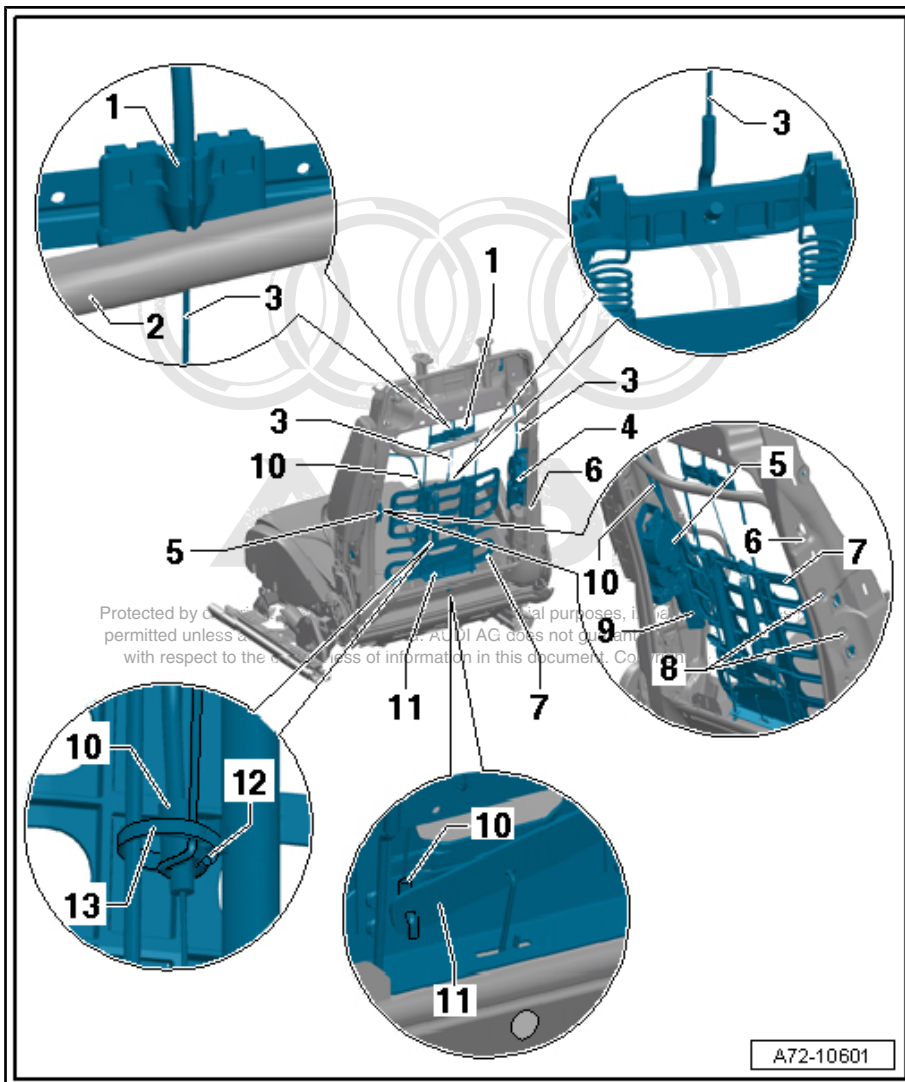
- For longitudinal adjustment of four-way lumbar support
- Can only be renewed together with driver seat lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor -V125- / front passenger seat lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor -V126-

11 - Retaining plate

12 - Clip

- For guiding Bowden cable => [Item 10 \(page 348\)](#)

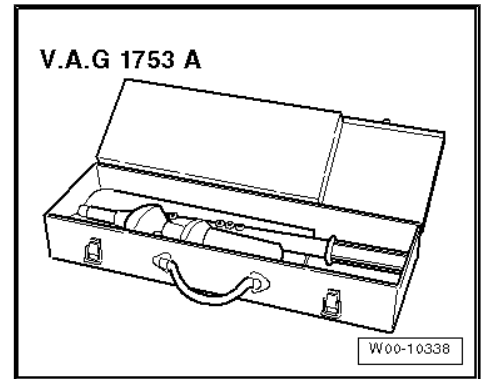
13 - Cable tie




3.50 Removing and installing lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor -V125- / -V126-

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Special pop rivet pliers -V.A.G 1753A-



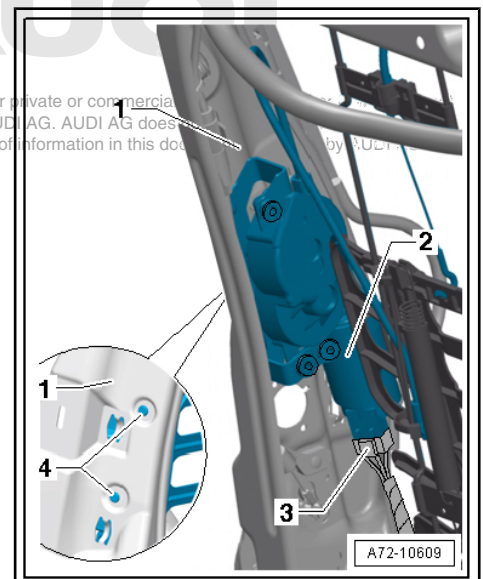
Removing

 **WARNING**

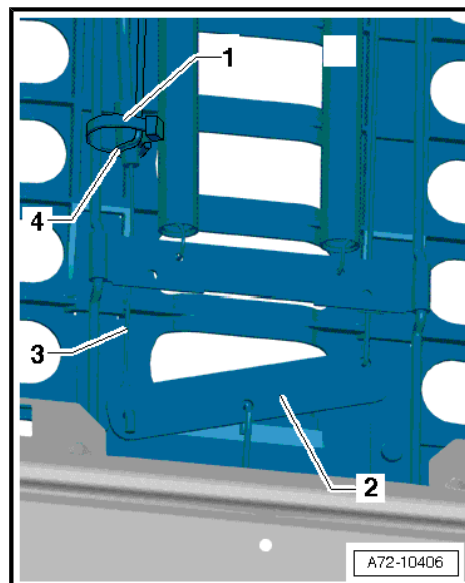
- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 42](#).*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

- Remove backrest cover panel ⇒ [page 302](#) .
- Remove cover with padding ⇒ [page 407](#) .
- Remove side airbag ⇒ [page 100](#) .
- Unplug electrical connector -3-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial use is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. © AUDI AG 2007



- Disengage Bowden cable -3- at retaining plate -2-.
- Unfasten cable tie -1-.
- Disengage Bowden cable -3- from clip -4-.



- Drill out the rivets -4- (2x).
- 1 - Backrest frame
- Remove driver seat lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor -V125- -2- / front passenger seat lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor -V126- with Bowden cable.

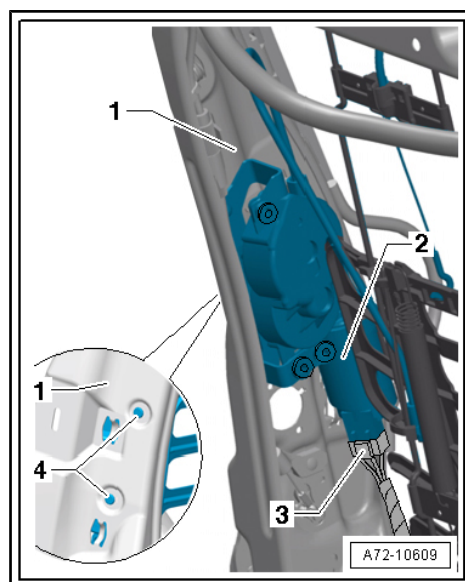
Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:



WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components => page 42.*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Rivet driver seat lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor -V125- -2- / front passenger seat lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor -V126- to backrest frame -1- using special pop rivet pliers -V.A.G 1753A- .

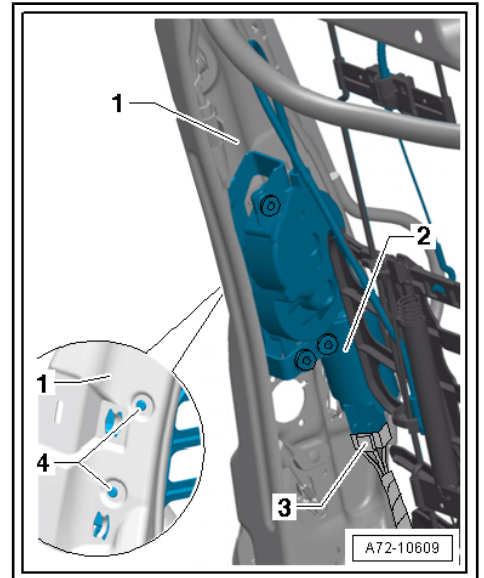
 **Note**

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

- Switch on ignition.

 **WARNING**

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted without the prior written permission of Audi AG. Information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

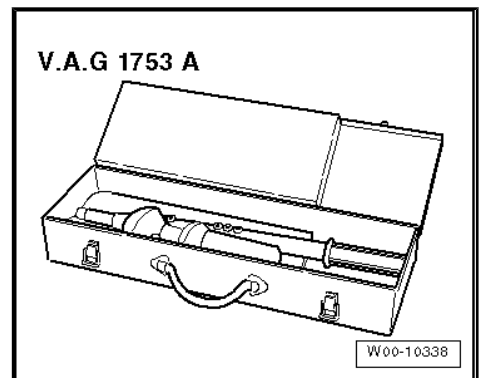
Connect battery earth wire with ignition switched on ⇒ Electrical system; Rep gr 27.

- If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following the installation, the fault memory must be interrogated, erased and interrogated again ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B- .

3.51 Removing and installing lumbar support height adjustment motor -V129- / -V130-

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Special pop rivet pliers -V.A.G 1753A-



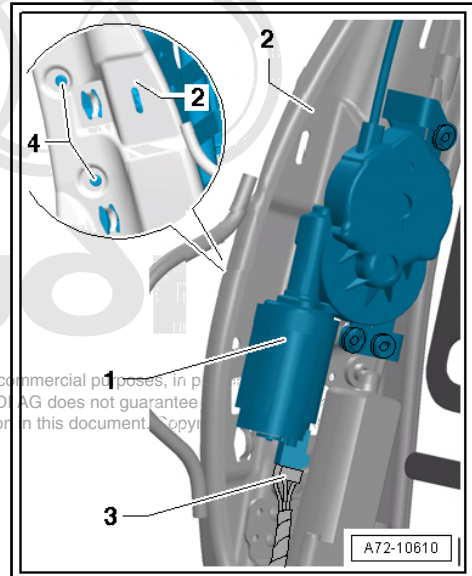
Removing

 **WARNING**

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 42 .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

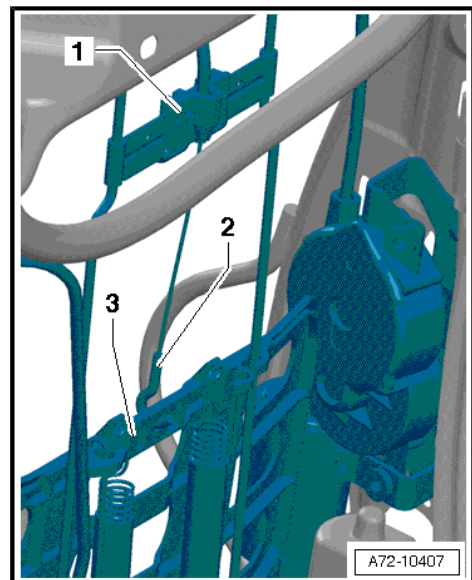
- Remove backrest cover panel ⇒ page 302 .
- Remove cover with padding ⇒ page 407 .

- Unplug electrical connector -3-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in full, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee the accuracy of the information with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copy

- Disengage Bowden cable -2- from clip -1-.
- Disengage Bowden cable -2- from four-way lumbar support -3-.



- Drill out the rivets -4- (2x).
- 2 - Backrest frame
- Remove driver seat lumbar support height adjustment motor - V129- -1- / front passenger seat lumbar support height adjustment motor -V130- with Bowden cable.

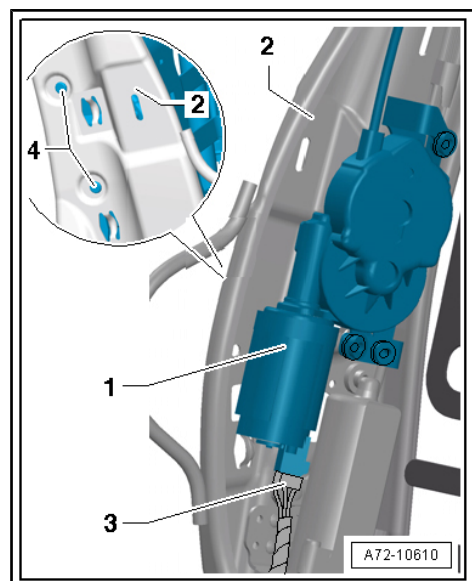
Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:



WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 42 .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*



- Rivet driver seat lumbar support height adjustment motor - V129- -1- / front passenger seat lumbar support height adjustment motor -V130- to backrest frame -2- using special pop rivet pliers -V.A.G 1753A- .

 **Note**

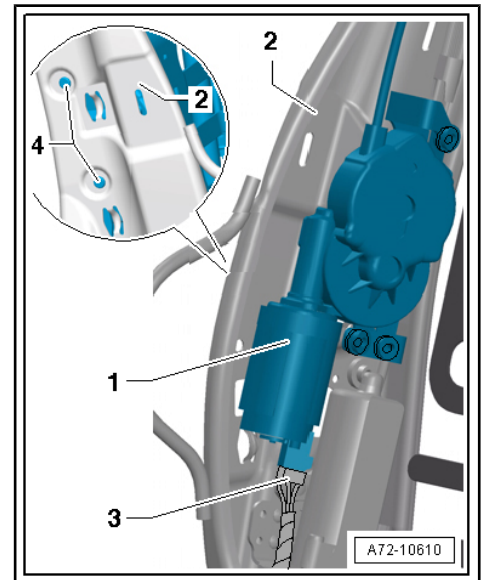
Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

- Switch on ignition.



WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.



- Connect battery earth wire with ignition switched on ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .
- If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following the installation, the fault memory must be interrogated, erased and interrogated again ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B- .



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.52 Exploded view of seat height adjustment motor -V245- / -V246-

1 - Upper seat pan frame

- With cover and padding
- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 326](#)

2 - Toothed segment

- Plastic toothed segment
- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 356](#)
- Clipped to fitting

3 - Driver seat height adjustment motor -V245- / front passenger seat height adjustment motor -V246-

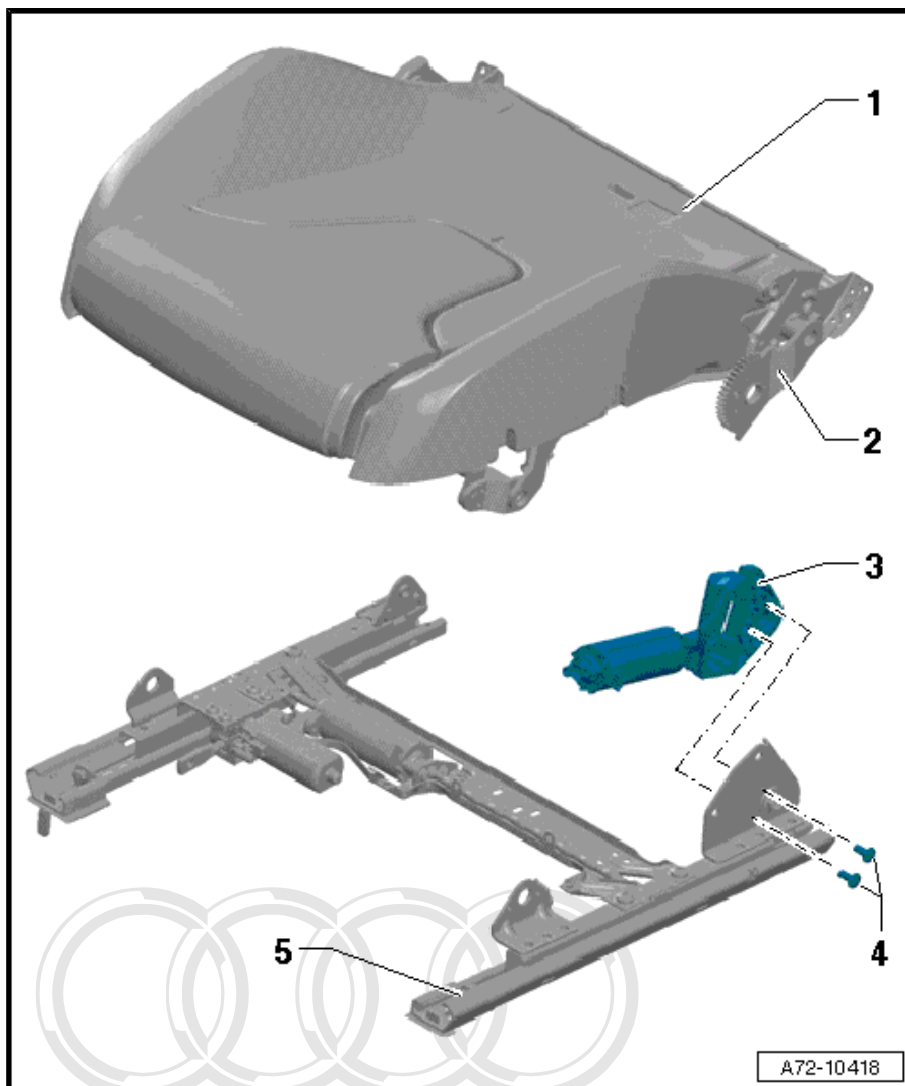
- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 354](#)

4 - Bolt, self-locking

- 31 Nm
- 2x
- Renew
- Always clean threaded holes for bolts (using a tap for example)

5 - Lower seat pan frame

- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 326](#)



3.53 Removing and installing seat height adjustment motor -V245- / -V246-

Removing



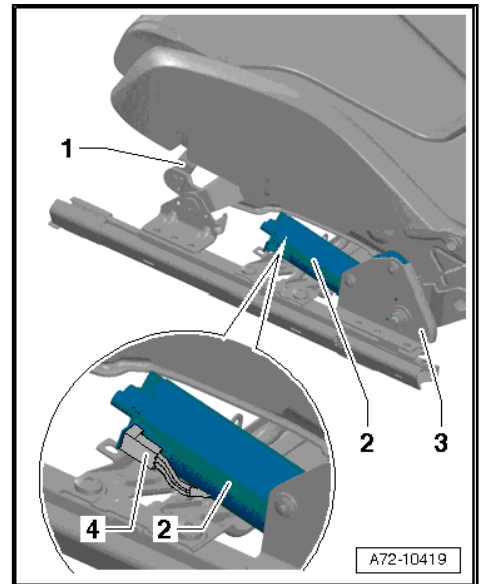
WARNING

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- ◆ **Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components**
⇒ [page 42](#) .
- ◆ **Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.**

- Remove seat ⇒ [page 274](#) .
- Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136-
⇒ [page 240](#) .
- Remove trim (sill side) ⇒ [page 289](#) .


- Remove trim (tunnel side) ⇒ [page 291](#) .
- Remove front seat backrest ⇒ [page 298](#) .
- Unplug connector -4- at driver seat height adjustment motor -V245- -2- / front passenger seat height adjustment motor -V246- .
- Separate upper seat pan frame -1- from lower seat pan frame -3- ⇒ [page 326](#) .
- Detach upper seat pan frame with cover and padding from lower seat pan frame.



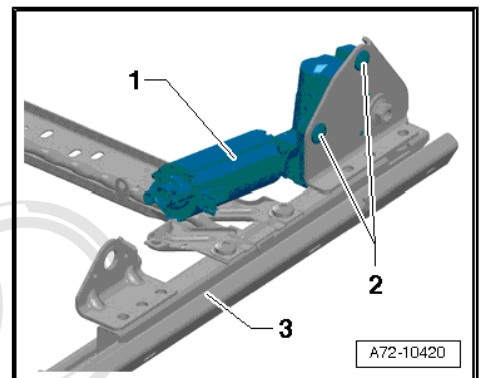
- Unscrew bolts -2-.
- Detach driver seat height adjustment motor -V245- -1- / front passenger seat height adjustment motor -V246- towards centre of seat from lower seat pan frame -3-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

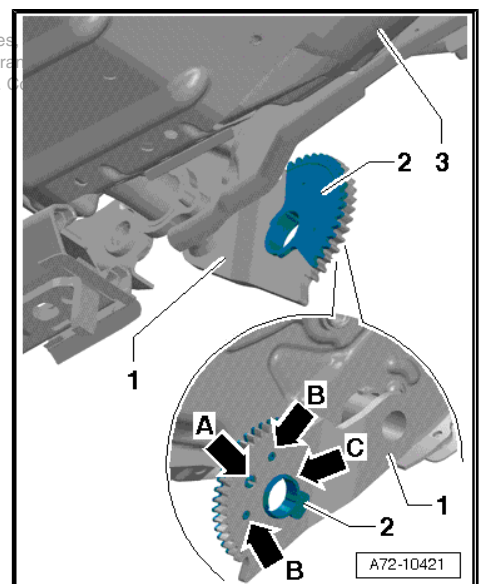
 **WARNING**

- ◆ **Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components** ⇒ [page 42](#) .
- ◆ **Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.**



- Make sure clip -A-, collar of plastic toothed segment -2- and locking lugs -arrows B- are properly inserted in holes in fitting -1-.
- Make sure plastic toothed segment -2- is properly clipped to fitting -1-.

Collar of plastic toothed segment -arrow C- must make uniform contact with fitting -1-.



- Make sure locking lugs -arrows A- are properly inserted in holes -arrows B- of link plate -1-.

**Note**

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop and engage audibly).

- Switch on ignition.

**WARNING**

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

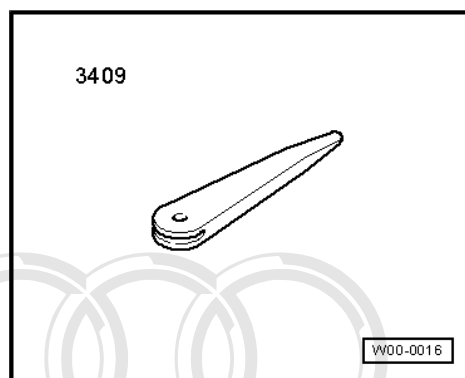
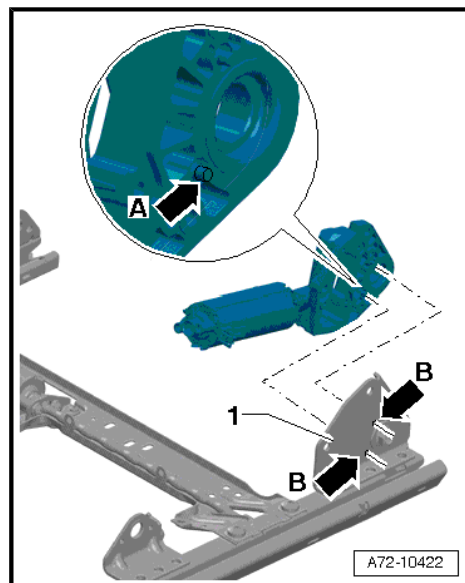
- Connect battery earth wire with ignition switched on => Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .
- If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following the installation, the fault memory must be interrogated, erased and interrogated again => Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B- .

Tightening torque => [page 354](#)

3.54 Removing and installing toothed segment for seat height adjustment

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal wedge -3409-

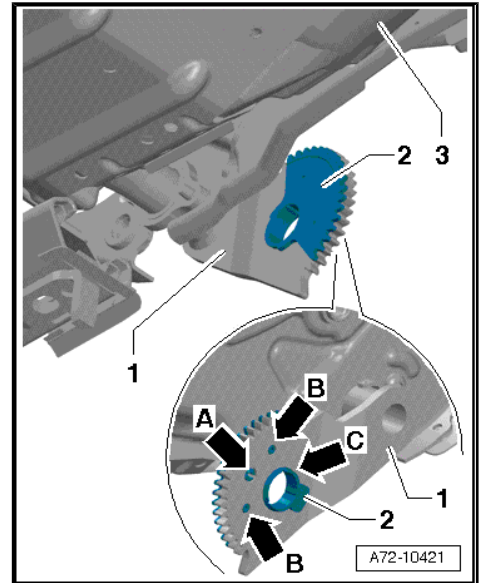
**Removing****WARNING**

- ◆ Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components => [page 42](#) .
- ◆ Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

- Remove driver seat height adjustment motor -V245- / front passenger seat height adjustment motor -V246- => [page 354](#) .

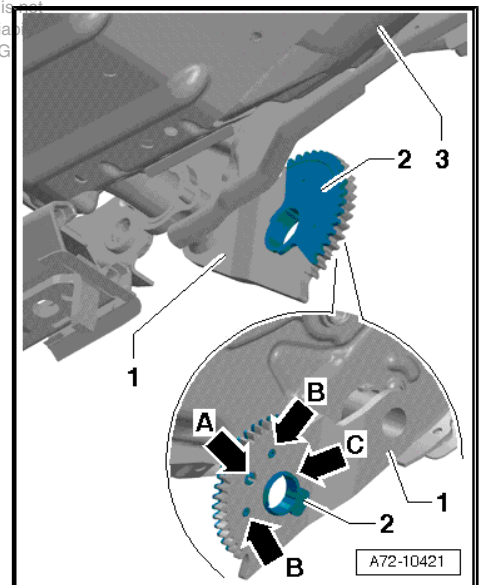
- Use removal wedge -3409- to unclip plastic toothed segment -2- from fitting -1-.

Installing



- Clip plastic toothed segment -2- into fitting -1-.
- Make sure clip -A-, collar of plastic toothed segment -2- and locking lugs -arrows B- are properly inserted in holes in fitting -1-.
- Make sure plastic toothed segment -2- is properly clipped to fitting -1-.

Collar of plastic toothed segment -arrow C- must make uniform contact with fitting -1-.





- Make sure locking lugs -arrows A- are properly inserted in holes -arrows B- of link plate -1-.

Perform remaining installation in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:



WARNING

- ◆ **Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components**
⇒ page 42 .
- ◆ **Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.**



Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

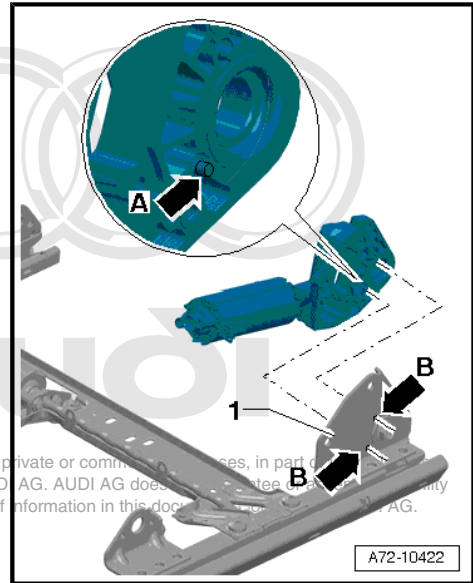
- Switch on ignition.



WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

- Connect battery earth wire with ignition switched on ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .
- If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following the installation, the fault memory must be interrogated, erased and interrogated again ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B- .



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial use, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. © AUDI AG.

3.55 Exploded view of lumbar support adjustment switch -E176- / -E177-

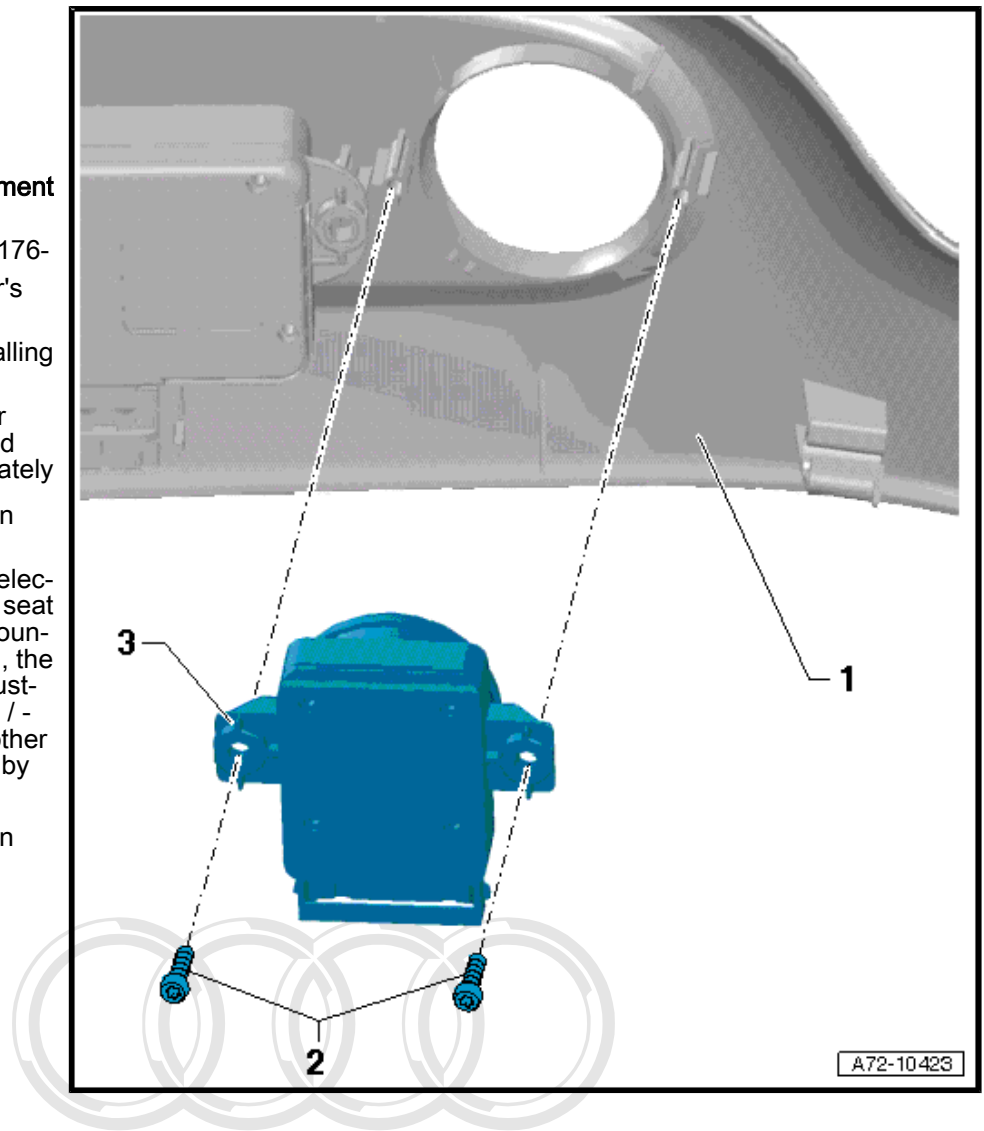
1 - Trim (sill side)

2 - Bolt

- 0.5 Nm
- 2x

3 - Lumbar support adjustment switch

- For driver's seat -E176-
 - For front passenger's seat -E177-
 - Removing and installing
⇒ [page 360](#)
 - Switch and actuator cannot be separated and renewed separately
- ◆ Connector is plugged in from below
- On front seats with electric adjustment and seat occupied sensor (country-specific version), the lumbar support adjustment switch -E176- / -E177- is fitted the other way round (rotated by 180°)
- ◆ Connector is plugged in from above



Audi

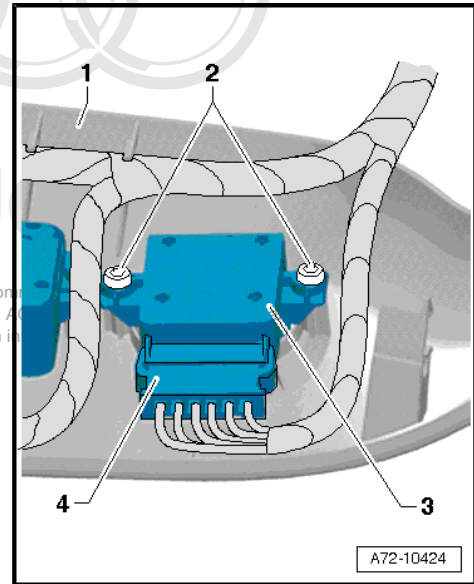
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.56 Removing and installing lumbar support adjustment switch -E176- / -E177-

Removing

- Remove trim (sill side) -1- ⇒ [page 289](#) .
- Unplug connector -4-.
- Remove bolts -2- (2x).
- Detach driver seat lumbar support adjustment switch -E176- -3- / front passenger seat lumbar support adjustment switch -E177- from trim (sill side) -1-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial use is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG is not liable with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

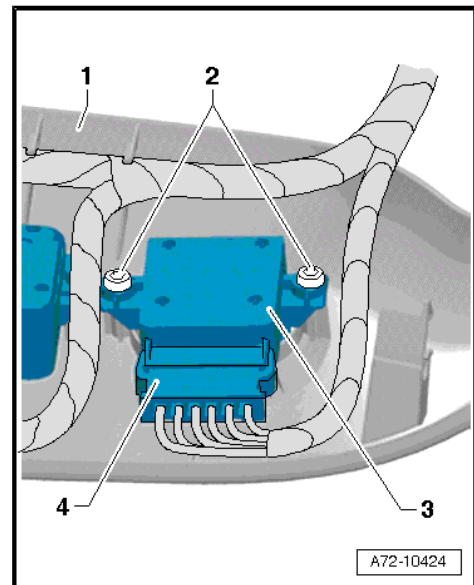


Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

- Install wiring as close as possible to connector point -4-.

Tightening torque ⇒ [page 359](#)



3.57 Exploded view of switches for seat longitudinal adjustment, rake adjustment, seat height adjustment and backrest adjustment (-E418- , -E421- , -E424- , -E425-)

1 - Trim (sill side)

- Removing and installing
 ⇒ [page 289](#)

2 - Actuator for backrest adjustment ⇒ [page 294](#)

- Removing and installing
 ⇒ [page 295](#)
- Clipped onto switch

3 - Actuator for seat longitudinal, rake and height adjustment ⇒ [page 294](#)

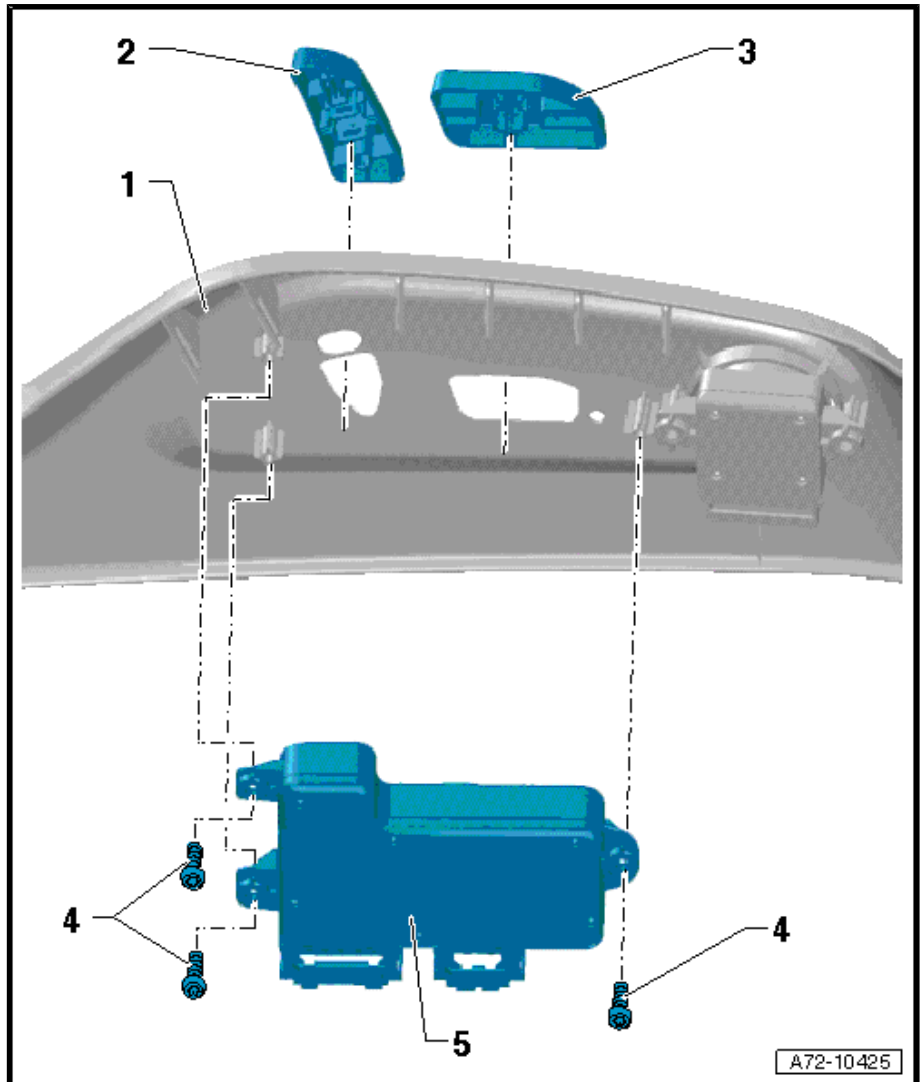
- Removing and installing
 ⇒ [page 294](#)
- Clipped onto switch

4 - Bolt

- 0.5 Nm
- 3x

5 - Switch/button

- For driver/front passenger seat longitudinal adjustment -E363- / -E64-
- For driver/front passenger seat rake adjustment -E222- / -E334-
- For driver/front passenger seat height adjustment -E364- / -E365-
- For driver/front passenger seat backrest adjustment -E96- / -E98-
- Removing and installing
 ⇒ [page 362](#)
- Fitted in a joint housing; cannot be renewed separately



- ◆ Connectors are plugged in from below
 - On front seats with electric adjustment and seat occupied sensor (country-specific version), adjustment switches are fitted the other way round (rotated by 180°)
- ◆ Connectors are plugged in from above



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.58 Removing and installing seat longitudinal adjustment button, rake adjustment button, seat height adjustment button and backrest adjustment button (- E418- , -E421- , -E424- , -E425-)

Removing

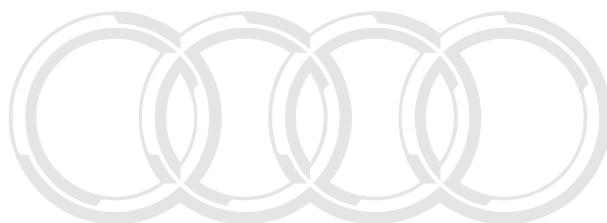
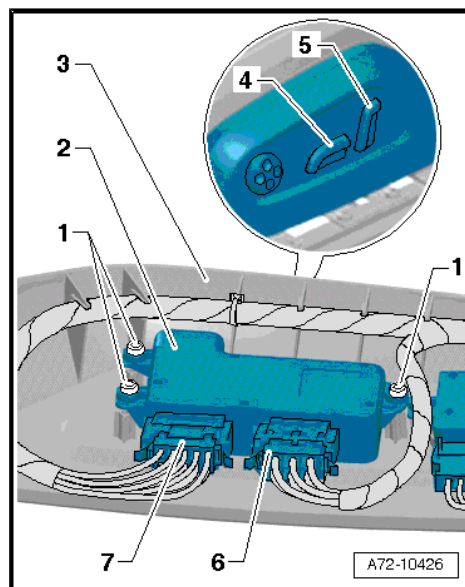
- Remove trim (sill side) -3- ⇒ [page 289](#) .
- Unplug connectors -6- and -7-.
- Remove seat and backrest adjustment actuators -4- and -5- ⇒ [page 294](#) .
- Remove bolts -1- (3x).
- Detach seat longitudinal adjustment button, rake adjustment button, seat height adjustment button and backrest adjustment button -2-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

- Install wiring as close as possible to connector points -6- and -7-.

Tightening torque ⇒ [page 361](#)



Audi

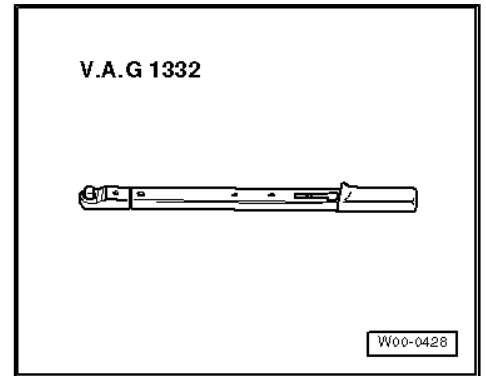
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4 Front bucket seat

4.1 Removing and installing seat

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque wrench -V.A.G 1332-



Note

- ◆ *The bucket seat has no side airbag. For this reason, the electrical connection for the side airbag on the vehicle wiring harness must be provided with a terminating resistor.*
- ◆ *The terminating resistor is designed as a separate connector housing ⇒ [page 365](#) .*



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Front seat

Removing

- Move front seat -1- as far upwards and to rear as possible.
- Unscrew bolts -3- (2x) at front.
- Move seat forwards.
- Unscrew bolts -4- (2x) at rear.
- Tilt front seat -1- backwards.
- Unplug electrical connectors ⇒ [page 365](#).
- Take out seat.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

2 - Seat rail covers

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 364](#)

3 - Front bolts (2x)

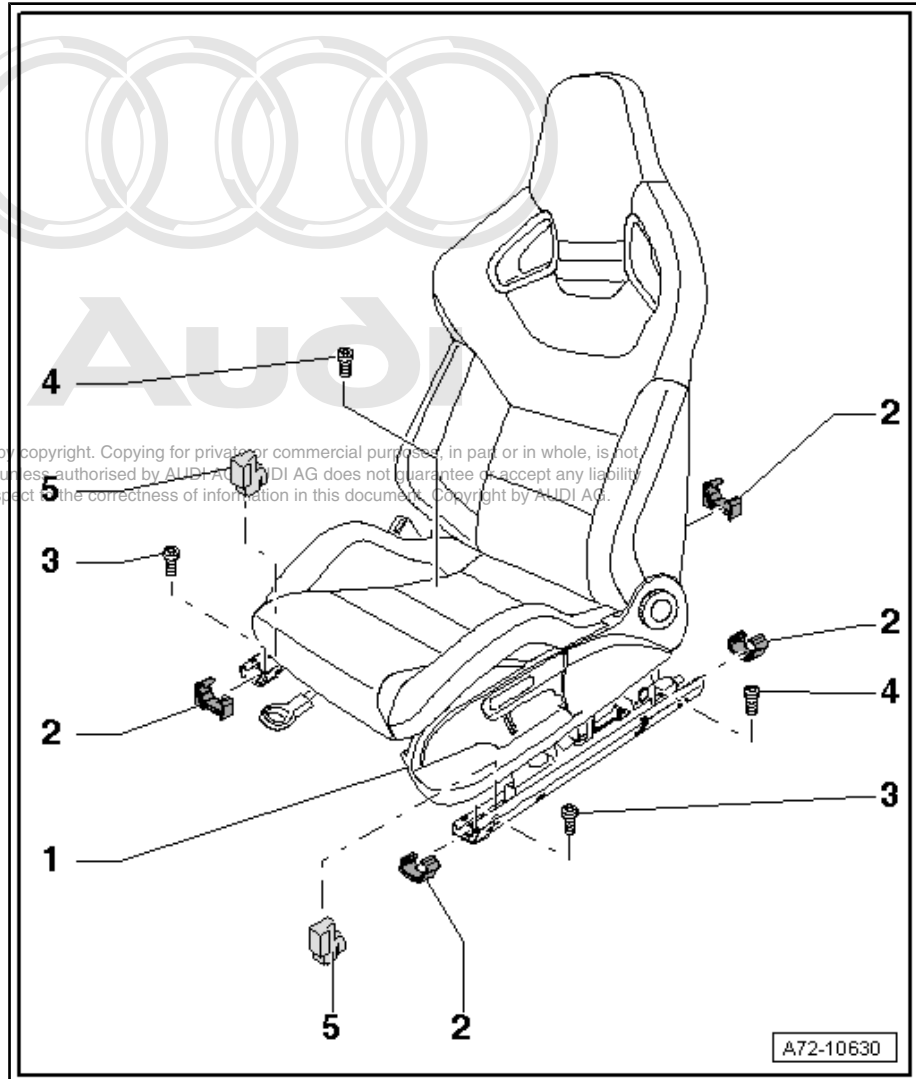
- Tightening torque: 50 Nm

4 - Rear bolts (2x)

- Tightening torque: 50 Nm

5 - Stop for longitudinal seat adjustment

- 2x
- Clipped in
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 250](#)



4.2 Stop for longitudinal seat adjustment

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 250](#).

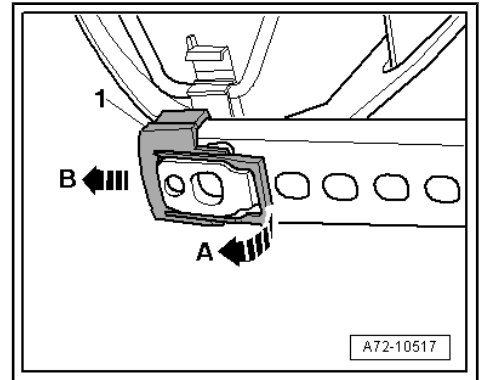
4.3 Removing and installing seat rail cover

Removing

- Remove seat ⇒ [page 363](#).

Seat rail cover (front):

- Carefully release retaining bracket in direction of -arrow A- and pull seat rail cover -1- off in direction of -arrow B-.



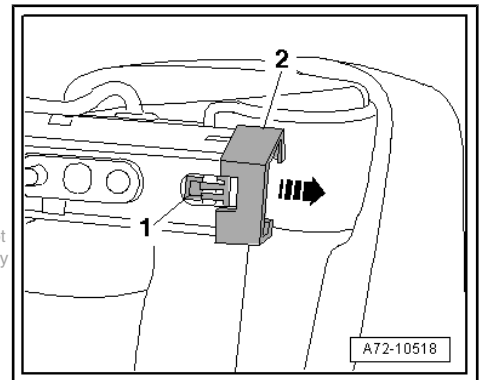
Seat rail cover (rear):

- Carefully release retaining tab -1-.
- Then pull off seat cover -2- in direction of -arrow-.

Installing

- Slide on seat rail cover until it engages audibly.

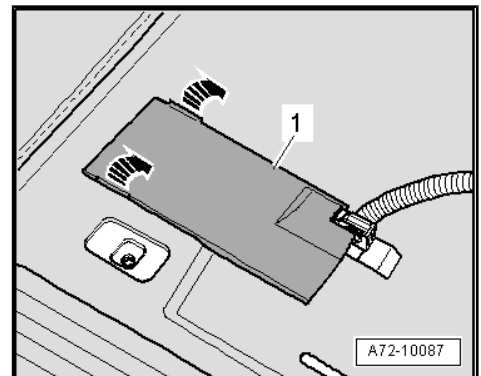
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG



4.4 Unplugging electrical connectors

Procedure

- Slacken off seat attachment bolts => [page 363](#) .
- Tilt front seat backwards.
- Release cover -1- in direction of -arrow-.



- Detach cable retainer -3-.
- Use a small screwdriver to release retaining clip in direction of -arrow- and unplug electrical connector -1- with terminating resistor for side airbag.

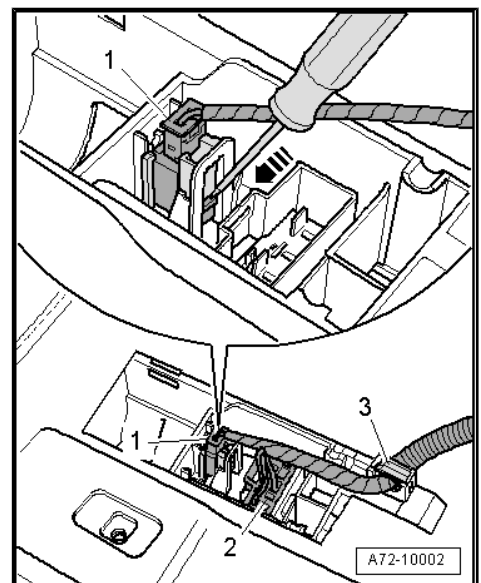
 **Note**

The terminating resistor for the side airbag is a separate connector housing without a cable. In the TT there is no cable for the side airbag (cable shown in illustration above).

- Press in lug at seat heating connector -2- (tunnel side) and unplug seat heating connector.

Vehicles with belt buckle sensor:

- Press in lug at belt buckle sensor connector (tunnel side) and unplug belt buckle sensor connector.

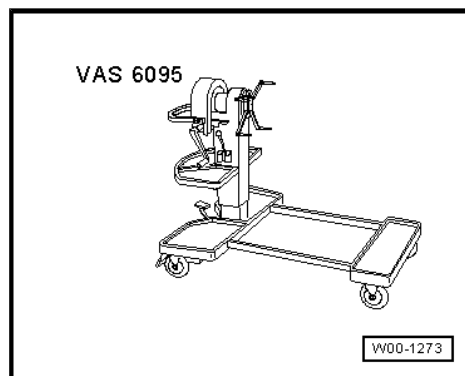




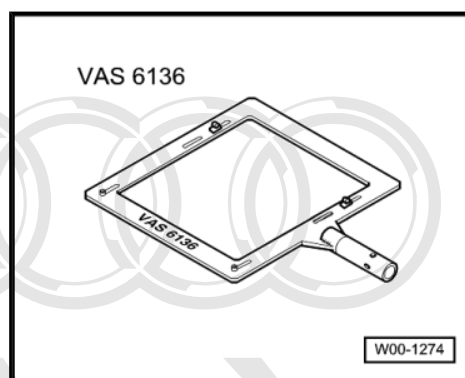
4.5 Removing and installing side trim panels

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095-



- ◆ Seat repair stand -VAS 6136-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

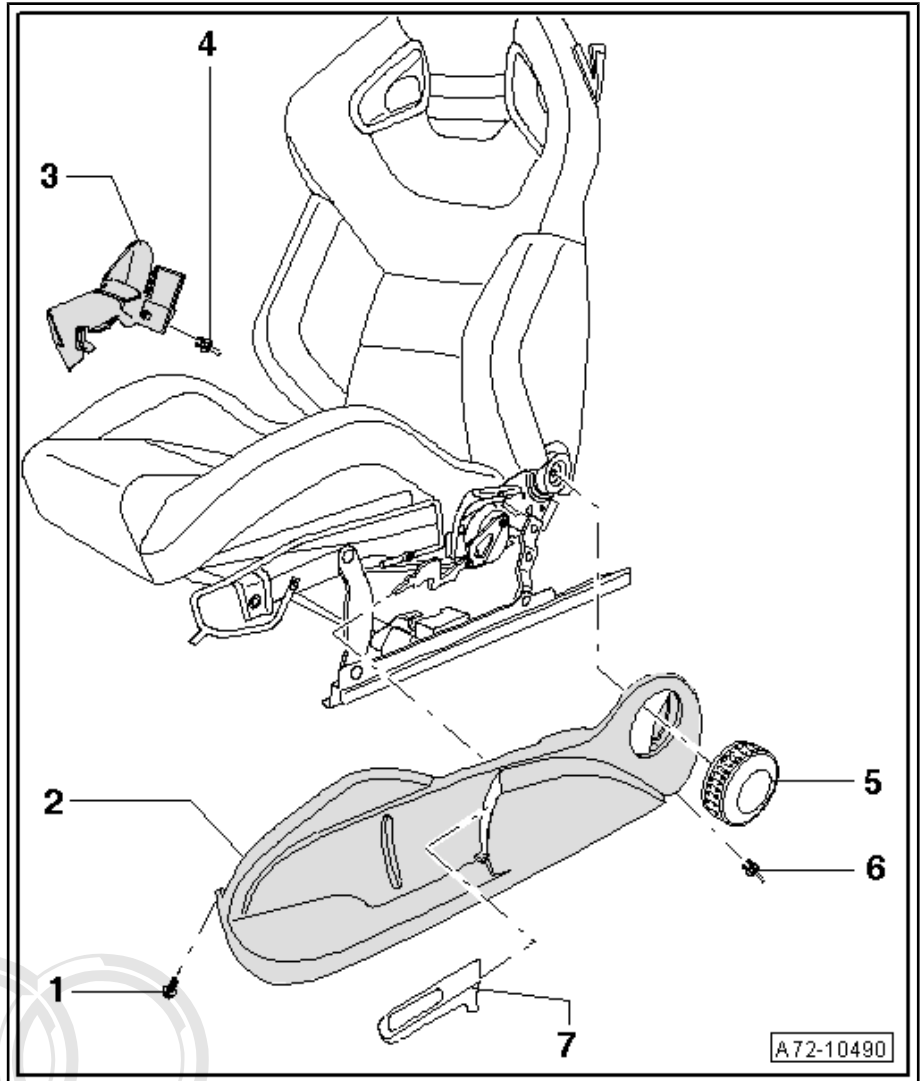
1 - Bolt

- Tightening torque:
1.2 Nm

2 - Side trim (sill side)

Removing

- Remove seat
⇒ [page 363](#) .
- Attach seat repair stand -VAS 6136- to engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095- .
- Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- .
- Remove backrest adjuster knob -5- .
- Remove seat height adjuster -7- ⇒ [page 368](#) .
- Push in pin to remove fastener -6- .
- Remove retaining bolt -1- .
- Detach side trim -2- starting at lower edge of retaining bracket on seat.
- Fold side trim upwards at front edge.
- Remove side trim towards the side.
- Pull out tab at rear of side trim (under backrest trim).



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

3 - Side trim (tunnel side)

Removing

- Remove seat ⇒ [page 363](#) .
- Attach seat repair stand -VAS 6136- to engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095- .
- Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- .
- Push in pin to remove fastener -4- .
- Release retaining catch at rear of side trim (tunnel side).
- Detach trim.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

4 - Fastener

5 - Backrest adjuster knob

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 368](#)

6 - Fastener

7 - Seat height adjuster

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 368](#)

4.6 Removing and installing backrest adjuster knob

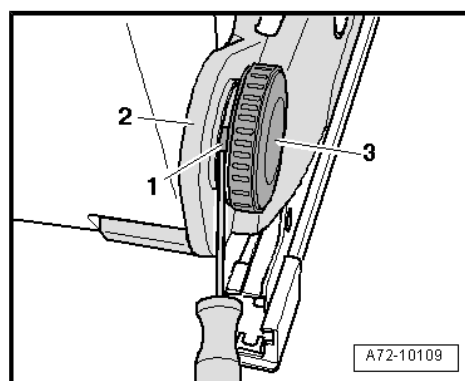
Removing

- Push side trim -2- slightly towards backrest.
- Use a screwdriver to lift retaining catch -1- up slightly and disengage.
- Turn backrest adjuster knob -3- and disengage another retaining catch.
- Remove backrest adjuster knob.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- Push on adjuster knob until it engages audibly.



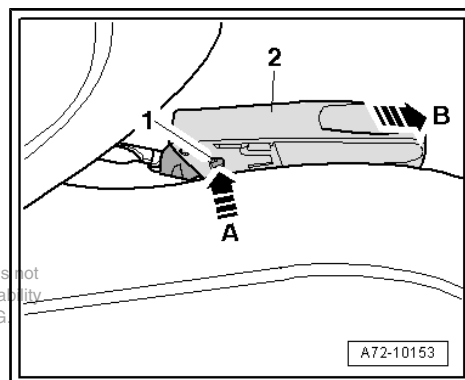
Note

If backrest adjuster knob has come loose on adjusting shaft, backrest adjuster knob must be renewed.

4.7 Removing and installing seat height adjuster

Removing

- Pull seat height adjuster upwards and hold it.
- Use a narrow-bladed screwdriver to press retaining clip -1- inwards -arrow A- and pull seat height adjuster -2- off lever -arrow B-.

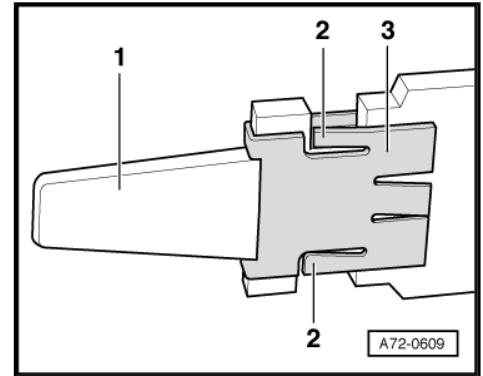


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- Make sure springs -2- (2x) of retaining clip -3- are positioned on outside of lever -1-.

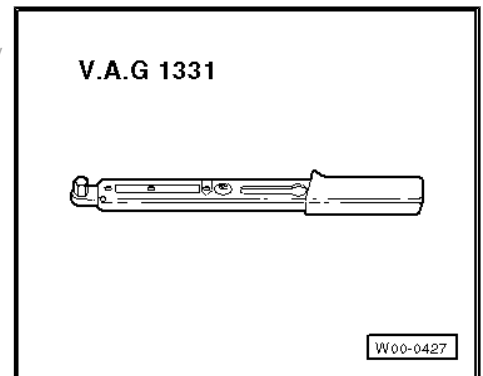


4.8 Removing and installing backrest and seat pan (front)

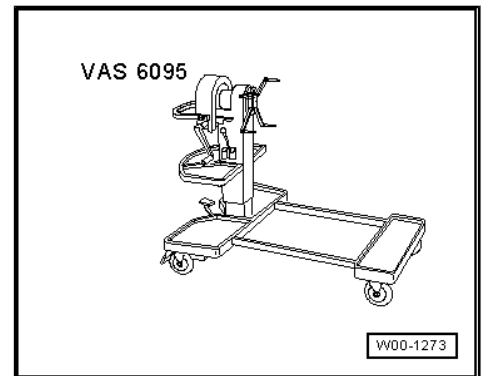
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque wrench -V.A.G 1331-

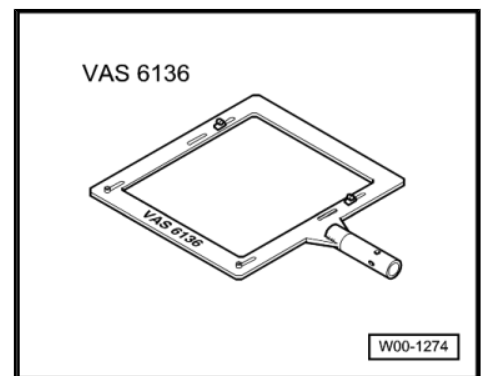
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



- ◆ Engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095-



- ◆ Seat repair stand -VAS 6136-



1 - Bolt

- Tightening torque: 24 Nm
- Apply locking fluid when fitting
- Locking fluid ⇒ Parts catalogue

2 - Seat longitudinal adjustment handle

- Remove by pulling handle off operating rod

3 - Bolt

- Tightening torque: 24 Nm
- Apply locking fluid when fitting
- Locking fluid ⇒ Parts catalogue

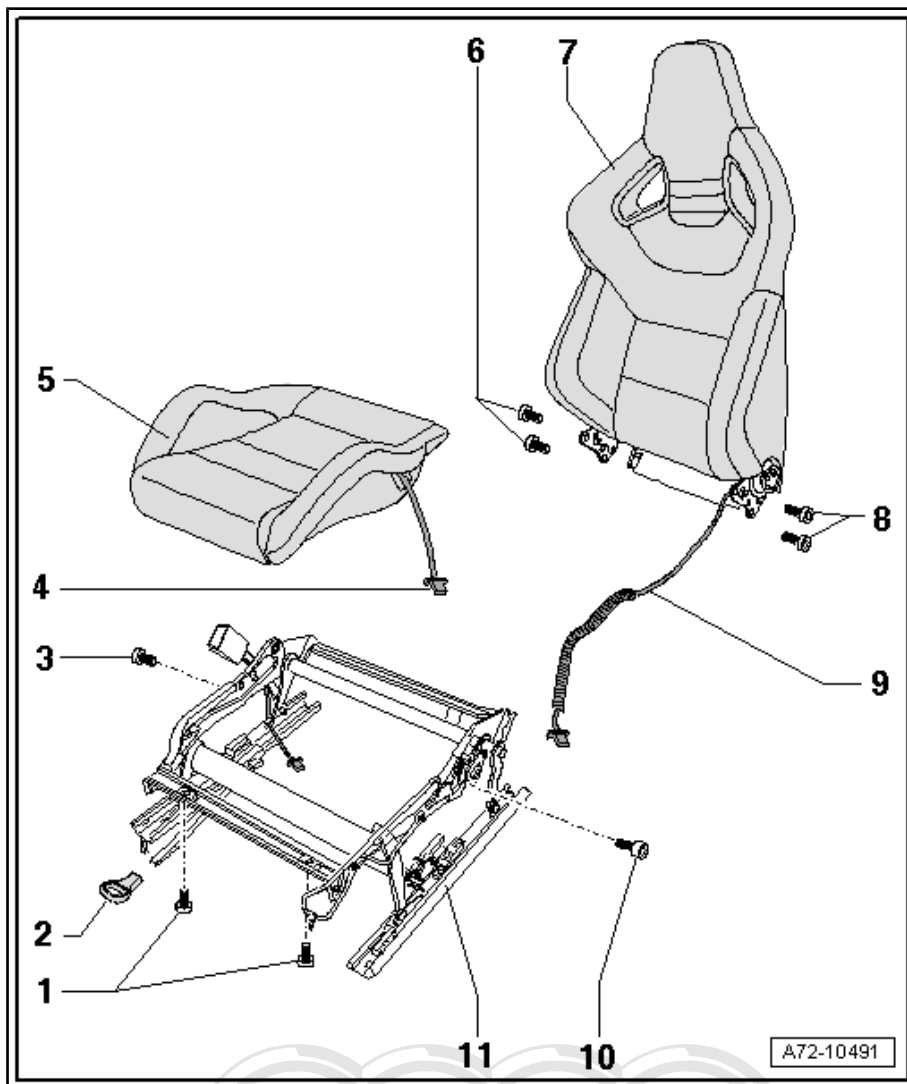
4 - Electrical wiring

- For seat heating

5 - Seat pan

Removing

- Remove seat ⇒ [page 363](#) .
- Attach seat repair stand -VAS 6136- to engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095- .
- Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- .



- Remove side trim (sill side) ⇒ [page 366](#) .
- Remove side trim (tunnel side) ⇒ [page 366](#) .
- Unplug electrical connector for seat heating ⇒ [page 371](#) .
- Drill out two pop rivets on retaining plate for connectors using \varnothing 4.0 mm bit and guide electrical wiring for seat heating out from beneath retaining plate ⇒ [page 371](#) .
- Move electrical wiring clear at seat pan.
- Unscrew bolts -1, 3, 10-.
- Unscrew bolts -6 and 8- and set down **backrest behind seat pan**.
- Remove seat pan.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- Renew seat pan if threads have been damaged or torn out.
- Apply locking fluid when fitting bolts (locking fluid ⇒ Parts catalogue) .

6 - Bolt

- Tightening torque: 20 Nm

- Apply locking fluid when fitting
- Locking fluid ⇒ Parts catalogue

7 - Backrest

Removing

- Remove seat ⇒ [page 363](#) .
- Attach seat repair stand -VAS 6136- to engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095- .
- Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- .
- Remove side trim (sill side) ⇒ [page 366](#) .
- Remove side trim (tunnel side) ⇒ [page 366](#) .
- Unplug connector for backrest heating ⇒ [page 371](#) .
- Drill out two pop rivets on retaining plate for connectors using \varnothing 4.0 mm bit and guide electrical wiring for backrest heating out from beneath retaining plate ⇒ [page 371](#) .
- Unscrew bolts -1, 3, 10-.
- Unscrew bolts -6 and 8- and set down backrest behind seat pan.
- Remove seat pan -5-.
- Detach backrest and remove wiring harness from seat frame.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- Apply locking fluid when fitting bolts (locking fluid ⇒ Parts catalogue).

8 - Bolt

- Tightening torque: 20 Nm
- Apply locking fluid when fitting
- Locking fluid ⇒ Parts catalogue

9 - Electrical wiring

- For backrest heating

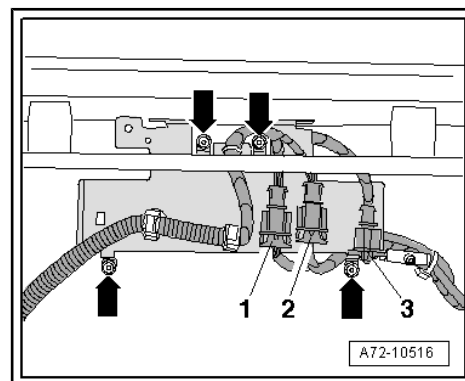
10 - Bolt

- Tightening torque: 24 Nm
- Apply locking fluid when fitting
- Locking fluid ⇒ Parts catalogue

11 - Seat frame

Drilling off pop rivet, connectors

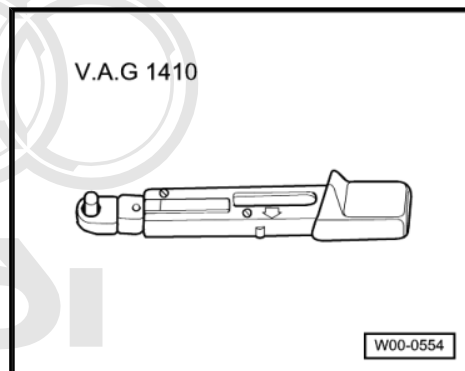
- Use \varnothing 4.0 mm bit to drill out pop rivets -arrows-.
 - Unplug electrical connectors:
- 1- Connector for seat heating.
 - 2- Connector for backrest heating.
 - 3- Connector for belt buckle.



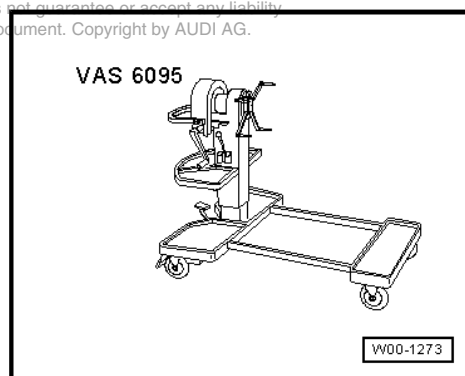
4.9 Removing and installing seat height adjustment unit

Special tools and workshop equipment required

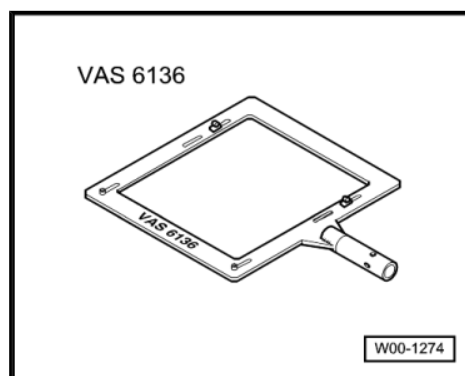
- ◆ Torque wrench -V.A.G 1410-



- ◆ Engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095-



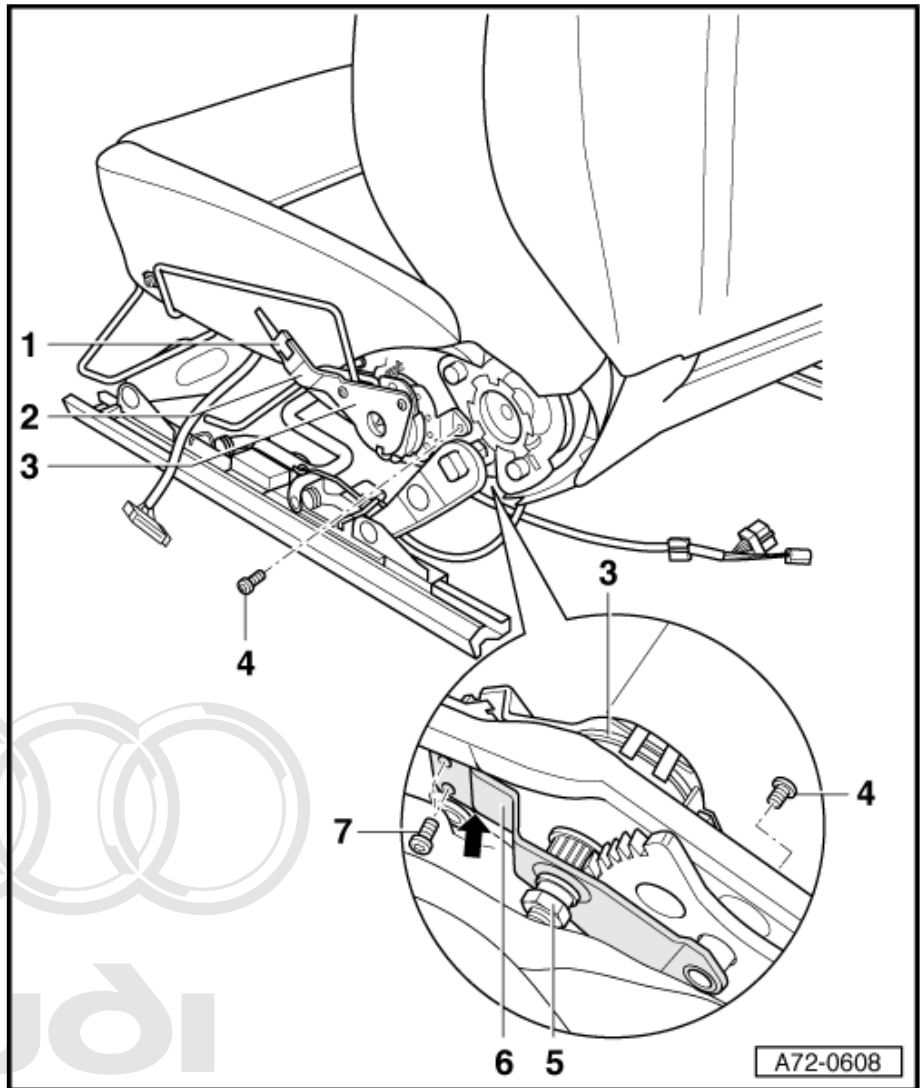
- ◆ Seat repair stand -VAS 6136-



- 1 - Retaining clip
- 2 - Seat height adjuster lever
- 3 - Seat height adjustment unit

Removing

- Remove seat
 => [page 363](#) .
- Attach seat repair stand -VAS 6136- to engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095- .
- Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- .
- Remove backrest and seat pan (front)
 => [page 369](#) .
- Unscrew nut -5-.
- Unscrew bolts -7- (2x).
- Remove bolt -4-.
- Detach seat height adjustment unit -3- and retaining plate -6-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- Make sure retaining plate -6- makes contact with backrest frame at point indicated by arrow

Protektion der Rechte der Audi AG. Die Audi AG ist für die Richtigkeit der Informationen in diesem Dokument nicht haftbar. Audi AG does not guarantee or accept any liability in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability in respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4 - Bolt

- Tightening torque: 8 Nm

5 - Nut

- Tightening torque: 12 Nm

6 - Retaining plate

7 - Bolts (2x)

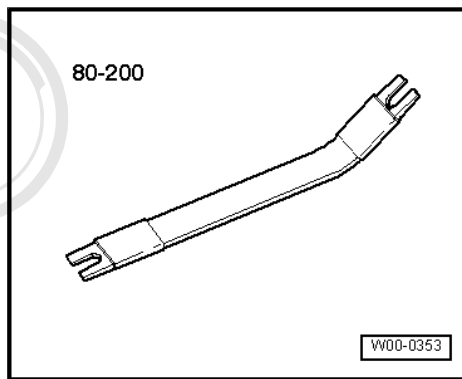
- Tightening torque: 8 Nm

4.10 Removing and installing backrest cover panels

Special tools and workshop equipment required



◆ Removal lever -80 - 200-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability for the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Backrest cover panel (right side)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 375](#)

2 - Backrest cover panel (left side)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 375](#)

3 - Retaining clip

4 - Bolt

- ❑ Tightening torque: 2.5 Nm
- ❑ Apply locking fluid when fitting
- ❑ Locking fluid ⇒ Parts catalogue

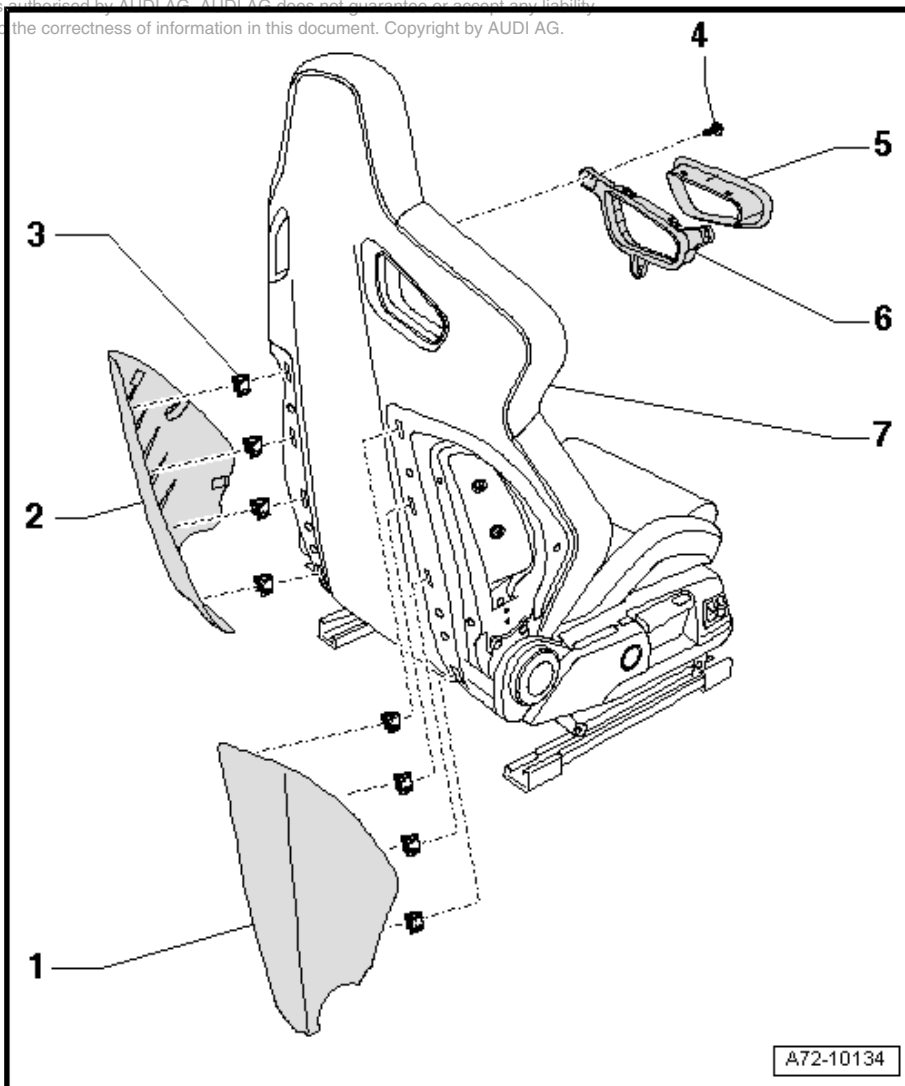
5 - Outer part of belt guide

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 375](#)

6 - Inner part of belt guide

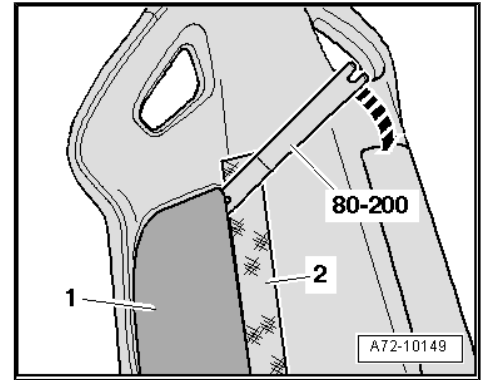
- ❑ With release lever
- ❑ Illustration shows version without release lever
- ❑ Removing: Remove backrest cover first ⇒ [page 417](#)
- ❑ Dismantling ⇒ [page 378](#)

7 - Backrest frame



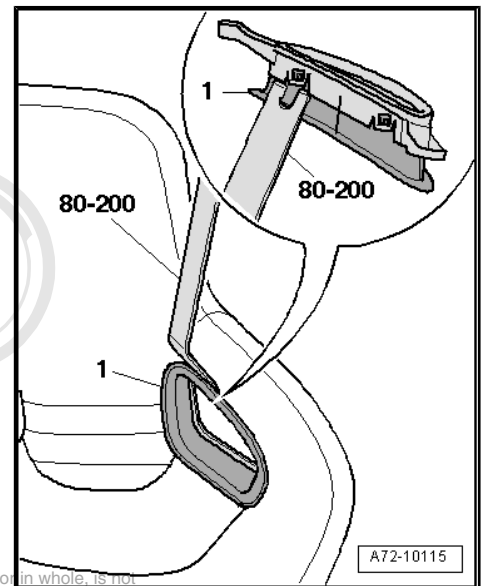
Removing and installing backrest cover panel

- Protect backrest pan in area surrounding trim -1- with adhesive tape -2-.
- Using removal lever -80-200- , prise off backrest cover panel from backrest pan starting from top (on inside).
- Using great care, detach clip at front corner of backrest cover.



Removing and installing outer part of belt guide

- Carefully insert removal lever -80-200- between backrest cover and outer part of belt guide.
- Carefully press outer part of belt guide off inner part.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4.11 Exploded view of operating cable for locking backrest

1 - Operating cable for locking backrest

- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 377](#)

2 - Operating cable adjusters

- Left-side

3 - Bolt

- Tightening torque:
2.5 Nm
- Apply locking fluid when
fitting
- Locking fluid ⇒ Parts
catalogue

4 - Cover for release lever (left-side)

5 - Edge protection strip

6 - Bolt

- Tightening torque:
2.5 Nm
- Apply locking fluid when
fitting
- Locking fluid ⇒ Parts
catalogue

7 - Cover for release lever (right-side)

8 - Edge protection strip

9 - Release lever for locking backrest (right-side)

- Removing and installing
⇒ [4.12 Removing and
installing operating ca-
ble for locking backrest](#),
[page 377](#)

10 - Plastic washer

- For release lever

11 - Mounting for release lever (right-side)

12 - Mounting for release lever (left-side)

13 - Backrest frame

14 - Mounting for backrest frame

15 - Bolt

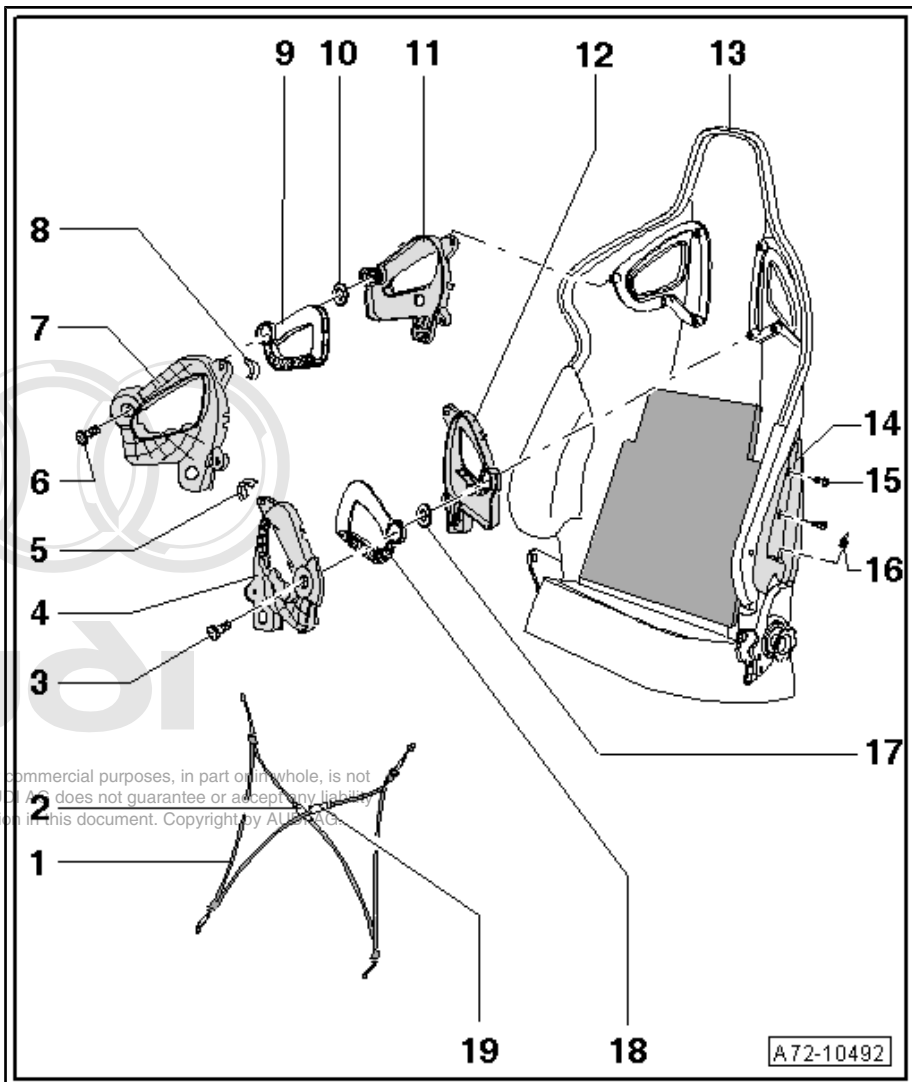
- Tightening torque: 22 Nm
- Apply locking fluid when
fitting
- Locking fluid ⇒ Parts
catalogue

16 - Pop rivet

- Ø 6 mm (steel)

17 - Plastic washer

- For release lever



18 - Release lever for locking backrest (left-side)

- Removing and installing
⇒ „4.12 Removing and installing operating cable for locking backrest“, page 377

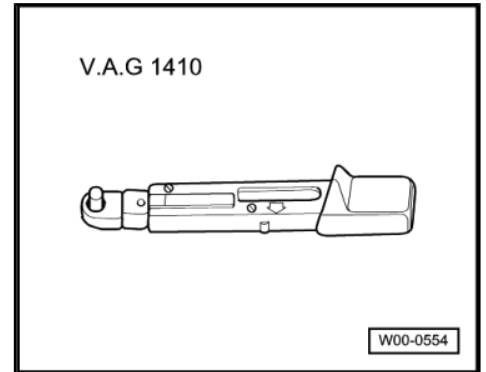
19 - Operating cable adjusters

- Right-side

4.12 Removing and installing operating cable for locking backrest

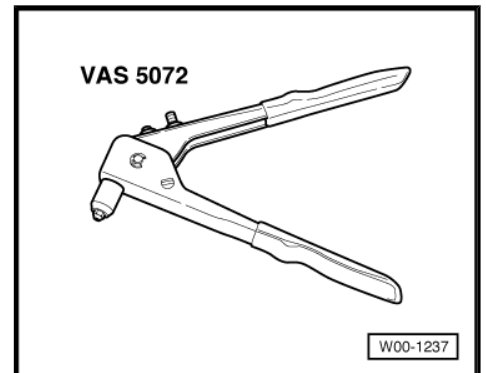
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque wrench -V.A.G 1410-

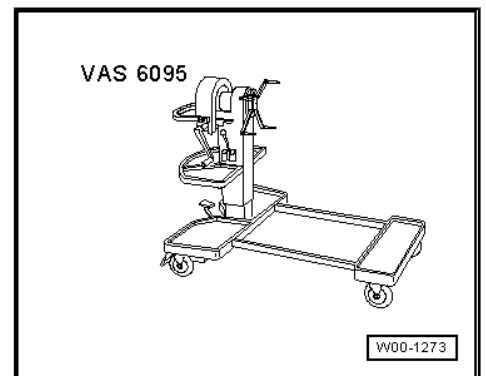


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

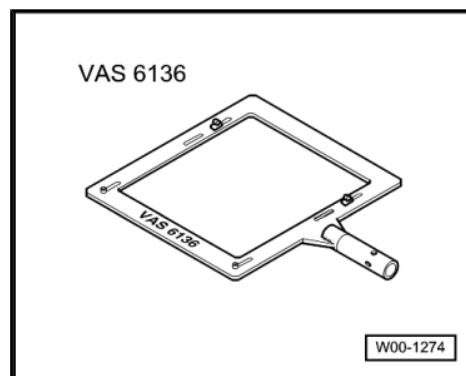
- ◆ Pop rivet pliers -VAS 5072-



- ◆ Drill
- ◆ Drill bit \varnothing 6.0 mm
- ◆ Engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095-

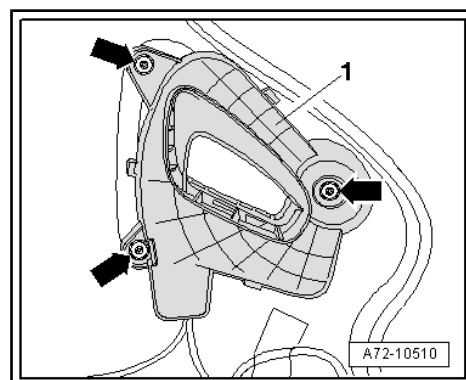


◆ Seat repair stand -VAS 6136-

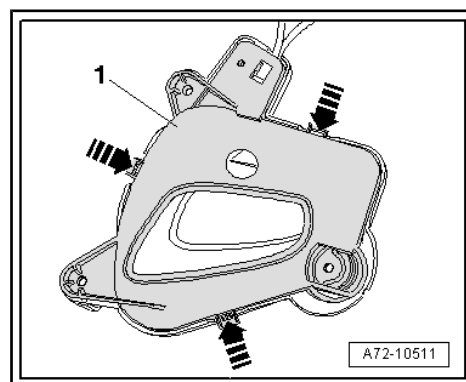


Removing

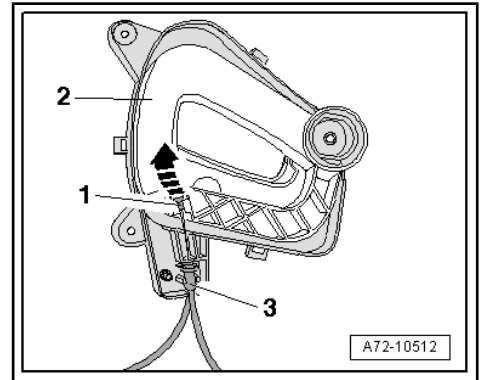
- Remove seat ⇒ [page 363](#) .
- Attach seat repair stand -VAS 6136- to engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095- .
- Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- .
- Remove backrest and seat pan (front) ⇒ [page 369](#) .
- Remove backrest cover ⇒ [page 417](#) .
- Unscrew bolts -arrows- from inner part of belt guide.
- Detach inner part of belt guide -1-.



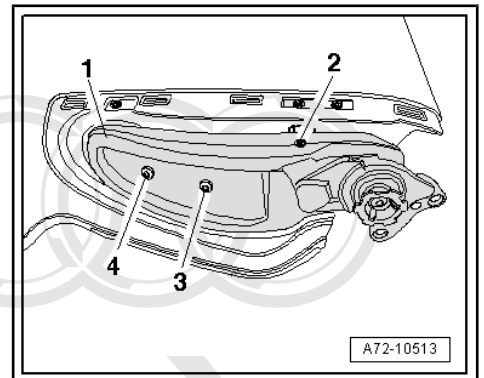
- Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability
- Turn inner part of belt guide over and release retaining tabs -arrows-.
 - Detach cover -1-.



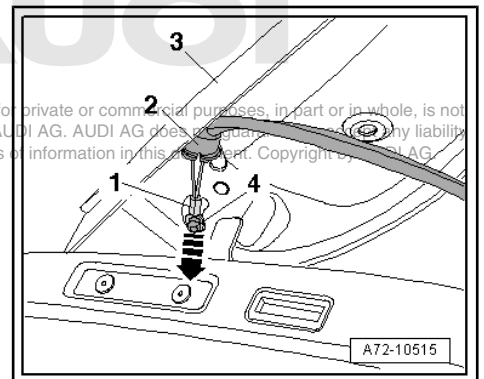
- Detach cable support bracket -3- for backrest locking operating cables from inner part of belt guide.
- Take out release lever for locking backrest -2-.
- Disengage operating cables -1- in direction of -arrow-.
- Repeat these steps on opposite side.



- Remove backrest cover from backrest frame ⇒ [page 373](#) .
- Unscrew bolts -3 and 4-.
- Using \varnothing 6.0 mm bit, drill out pop rivet -2- on mounting -1- for backrest frame.



- Swivel mounting for backrest frame to the side and detach cable support bracket -2- for operating cables at mounting -3- for backrest frame.
- Disengage eyelet -1- for operating cables at backrest locking release lever -4-. To do so, slide eyelet forwards -arrow- and detach.
- Pull operating cables up and out of backrest frame.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- Apply locking fluid when fitting bolts (locking fluid ⇒ [Parts catalogue](#)).
- Adjust operating cables for locking backrest ⇒ [page 380](#) .

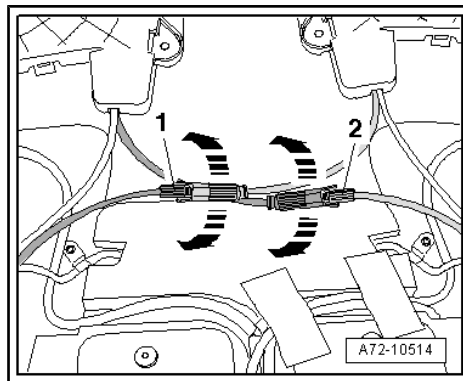
4.13 Adjusting operating cables for locking backrest

Procedure

- Remove backrest cover first.

When one of the two release levers for locking the backrest is operated, the release pins on the left and right of the seat frame should be operated at the same time.

- Operate release lever for locking backrest:
- Release pins (left and right) should be operated simultaneously.
- Let go of release lever for locking backrest:
- Operating cables should cause release pins at backrest hinge to engage correctly.
- The operating cables should then be slack.
- If necessary, turn operating cable adjusters -1- and -2-
-arrows-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5 Rear seats (Coupé only)

5.1 Exploded view of rear seats

1 - Seat bench

- One-piece
- Exploded view
⇒ [page 382](#)

2 - Belt buckle

- Exploded view
⇒ [page 391](#)

3 - Cap

- For centre mounting for backrest
- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 389](#)

4 - Release mechanism (right-side)

- Exploded view
⇒ [page 391](#)

5 - 1/2 section of backrest (right-side)

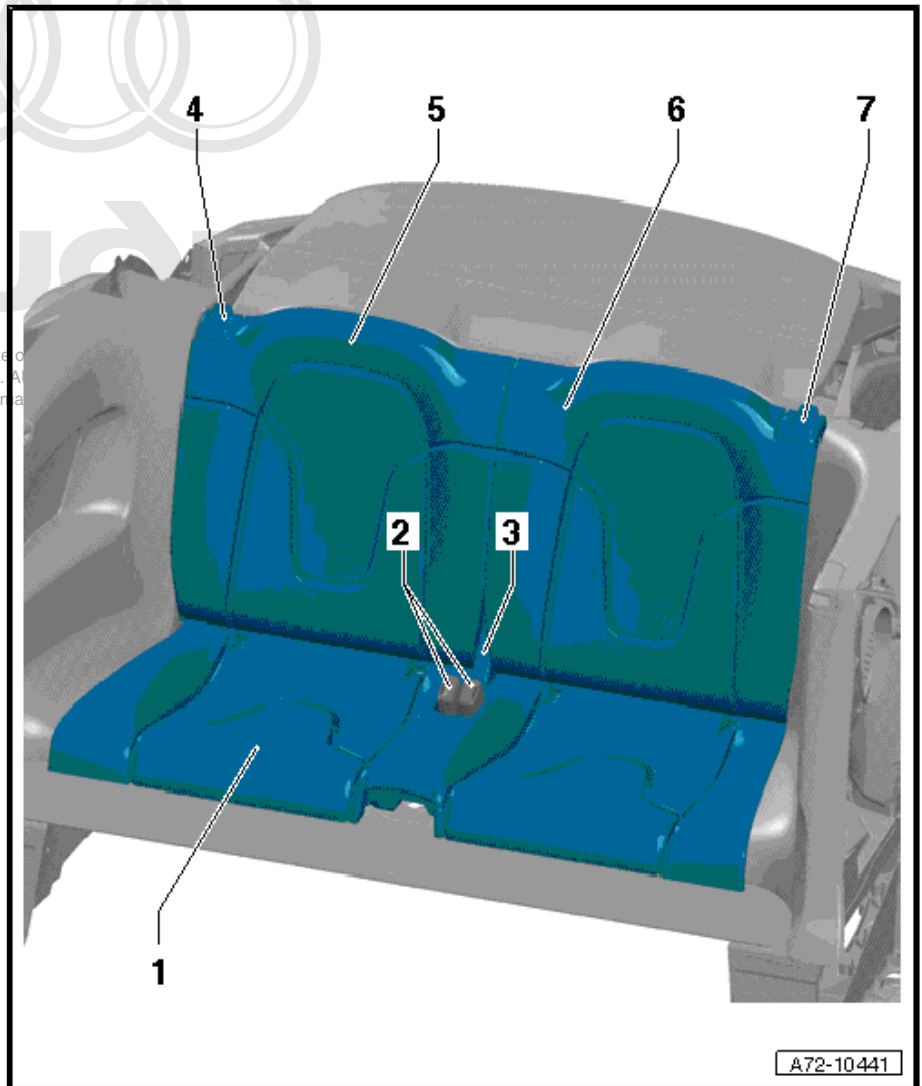
- Exploded view
⇒ [page 385](#)

6 - 1/2 section of backrest (left-side)

- Exploded view
⇒ [page 385](#)

7 - Release mechanism (left-side)

- Exploded view
⇒ [page 391](#)



5.2 Exploded view of seat bench

1 - Seat bench

- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 383](#)

2 - 1/2 section of backrest (right-side)

3 - 1/2 section of backrest (left-side)

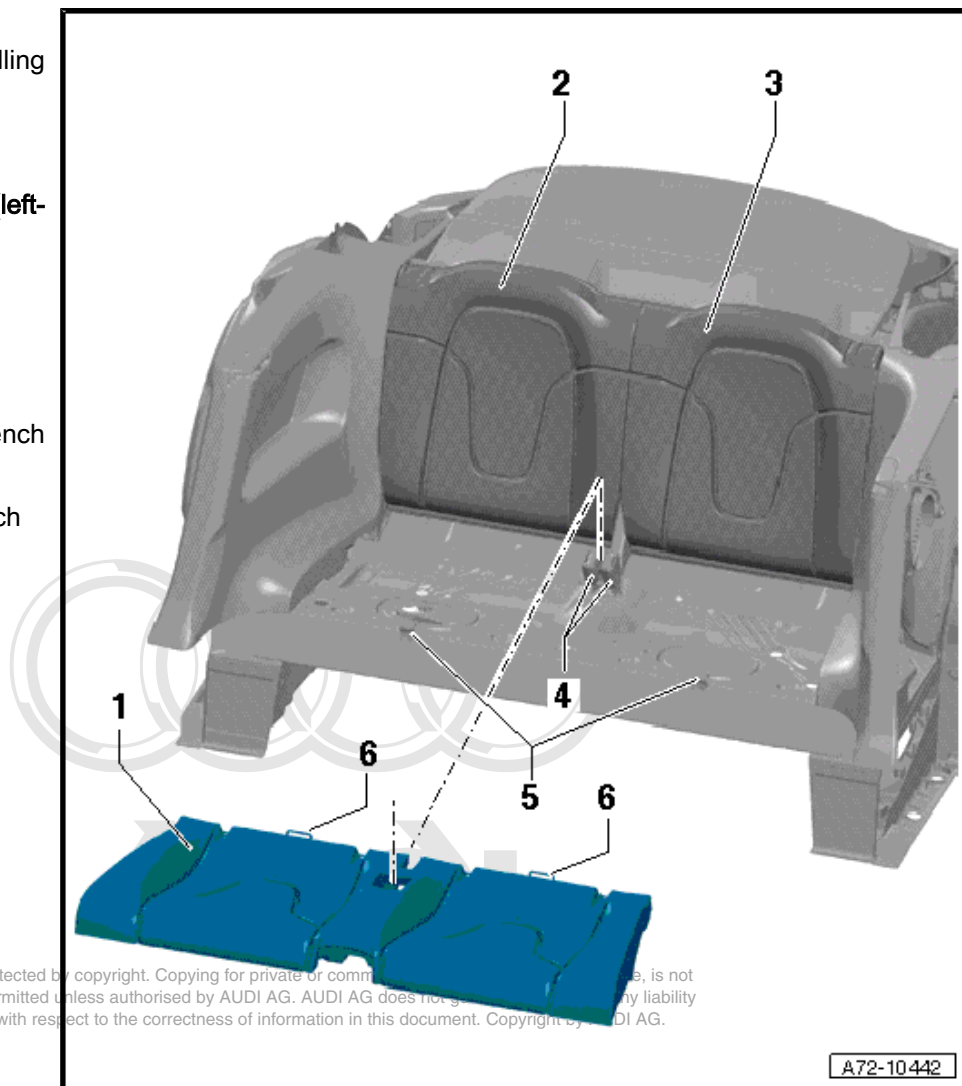
4 - Belt buckle

5 - Omega clip

- 2x
- Cannot be renewed
- For securing seat bench

6 - Retainers

- Welded to seat bench

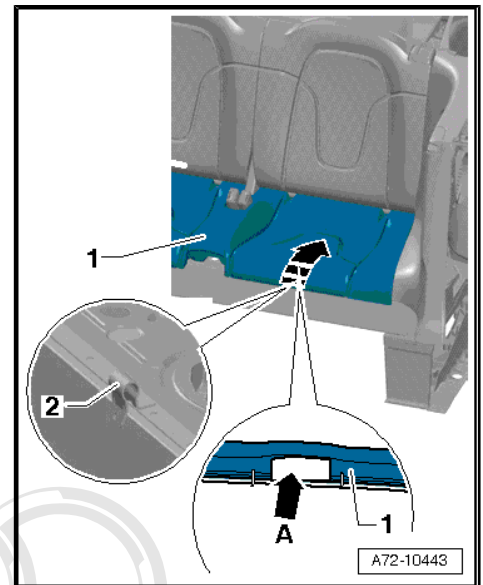


5.3 Removing and installing seat bench

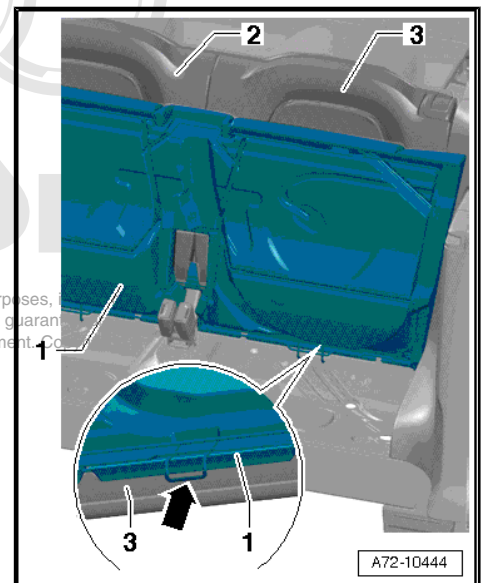
Removing

- Fold backrest of front seats as far down as possible.
- Move front seats as far forwards as possible.
- Pull front edge of seat bench -1- off omega clips -2- (2x) in direction of -arrow-.

Pfeil A - Mounting for omega clip



- Swivel seat bench -1- as far as backrest -2- / -3-.
- Disengage retainers -arrow- of seat bench -1- at tubular frame of backrest -2- / -3- (left and right).
- Take seat bench -1- out of vehicle.

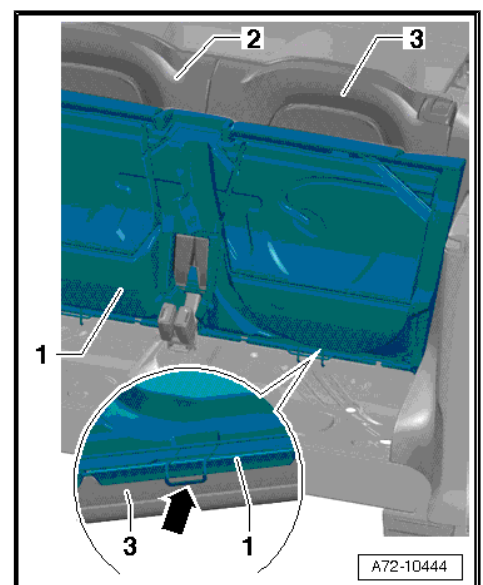


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

- Make sure retaining lugs -arrow- of seat bench -1- are properly fitted around tubular connection of backrest frame.
- 2 - 1/2 section of backrest (right-side)
 3 - 1/2 section of backrest (left-side)



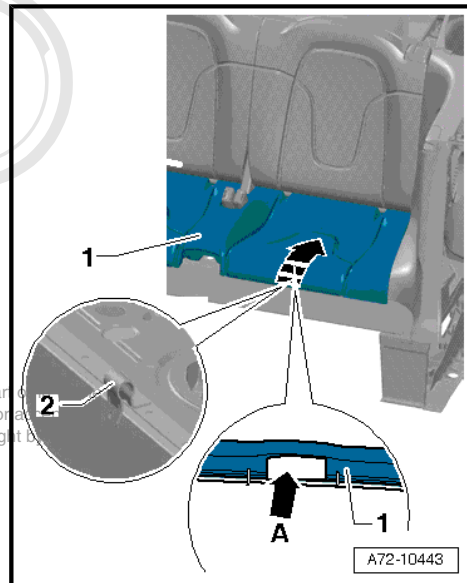


- Make sure seat bench -1- is properly engaged with omega clips -2- (2x).



Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in full, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright © Audi AG



5.4 Exploded view of seat frame

1 - Seat frame

- Removing and installing => [page 385](#)

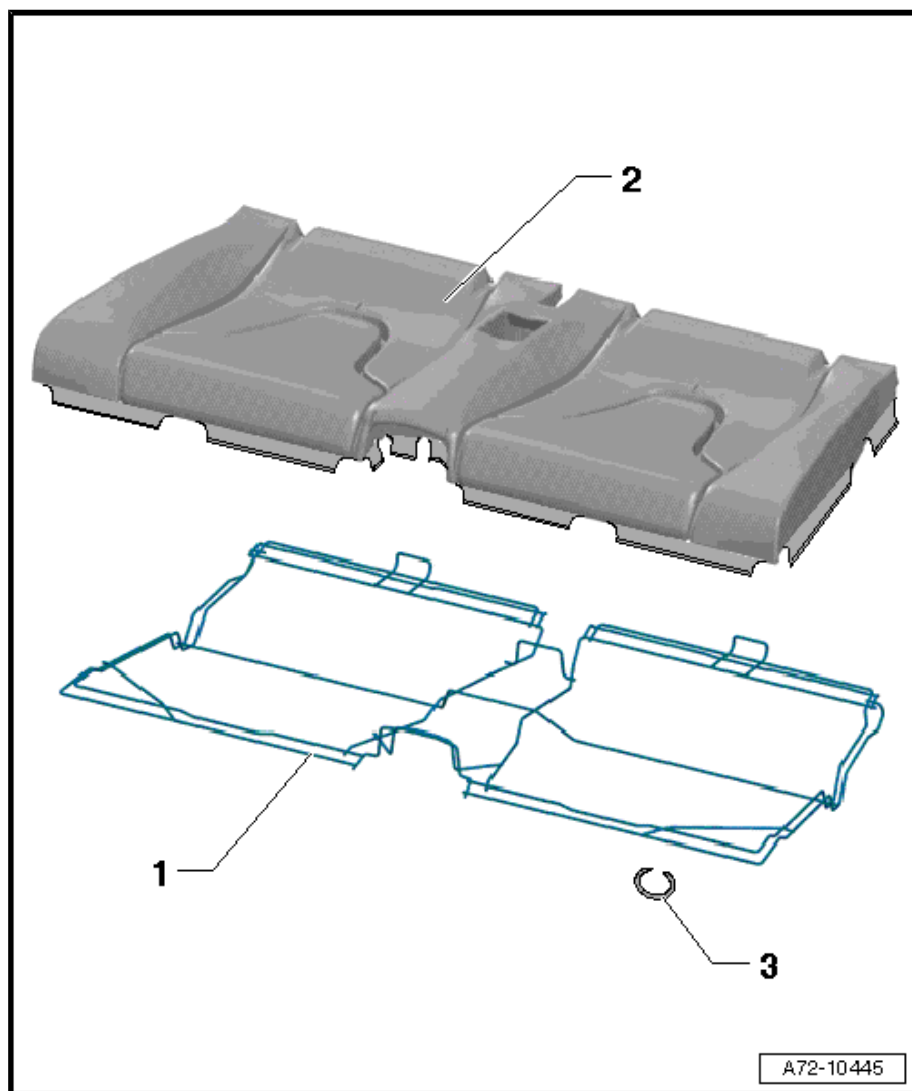
2 - Cover with padding

- Do not separate when removing seat frame

3 - Upholstery clip

- 48x
- Renew
- Re-attach at same location

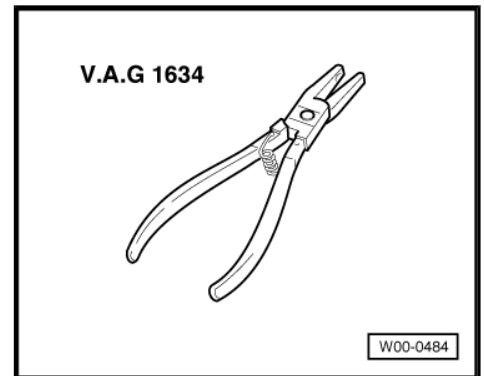
! WARNING
After fitting, the ends of the upholstery clips must face towards the padding and must be properly closed to prevent possible injury.



5.5 Removing and installing seat frame

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Upholstery clip pliers -V.A.G 1634-




Removing

- Remove seat bench ⇒ [page 383](#) .
- Cut through upholstery clips -arrows-.
- Detach cover with padding -1- from seat frame -2-.

Installing

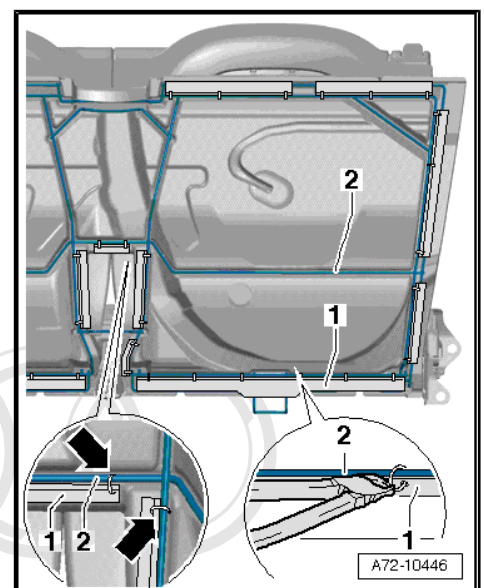
Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:



WARNING

After fitting, the ends of the upholstery clips must face towards the padding and must be properly closed to prevent possible injury.

- Use new upholstery clips.
- Use upholstery clip pliers -V.A.G 1634- to fasten upholstery clips.
- Fit upholstery clips in their original positions.



5.6 Exploded view of 1/2 section of backrest (left and right)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Observe installation sequence for bolt connections when installing 1/2 sections of backrest (left and right).

- Position and hand-tighten bolt/nut -9-. Position bolts -1- and tighten to specified torque. Position nut -5- and tighten to specified torque. Tighten bolt/nut -9- to specified torque.

1 - Bolt

- 40 Nm
- 4x

2 - Release mechanism (right-side)

- Exploded view
⇒ [page 391](#)

3 - 1/2 section of backrest (right-side)

- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 386](#)

4 - 1/2 section of backrest (left-side)

- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 386](#)

5 - Nut

- 55 Nm

6 - Release mechanism (left-side)

- Exploded view
⇒ [page 391](#)

7 - Cap for centre mounting

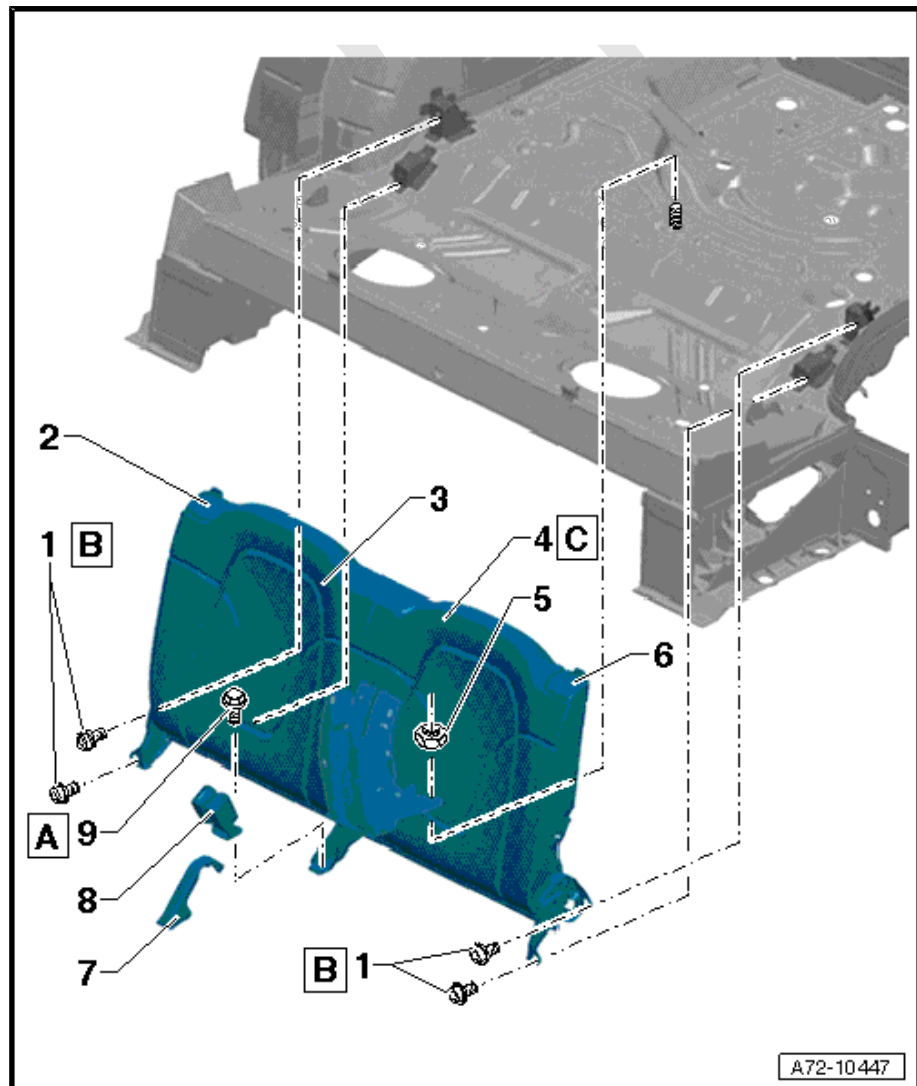
- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 389](#)

8 - Belt buckle

- Exploded view
⇒ [page 391](#)
- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 391](#)

9 - Bolt/nut

- 55 Nm



5.7 Removing and installing backrest

**Note**

The 1/2 sections of the backrest (left and right) can only be removed from the vehicle and installed together.

Removing

- Fold backrest of front seats as far down as possible.
- Move front seats as far forwards as possible.
- Remove seat bench ⇒ [page 383](#).
- Take floor covering out of luggage compartment.
- Remove side trim (left and right) ⇒ [page 175](#).
- Release 1/2 sections of backrest (left and right) and fold down.

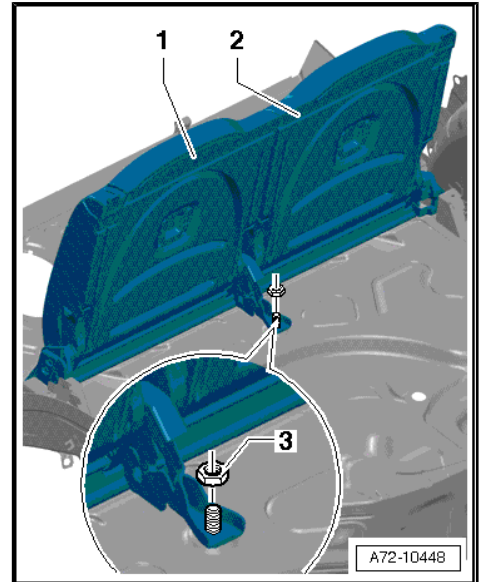


Caution

Do not kneel or lean on the folded backrest.

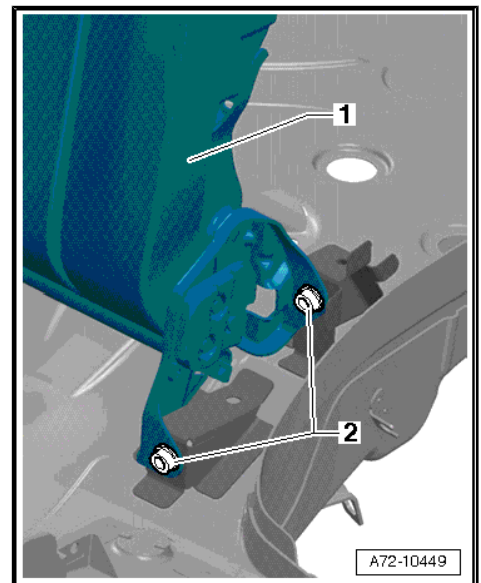
– Remove nut -3-.

- 1 - 1/2 section of backrest (left-side)
- 2 - 1/2 section of backrest (right-side)



– Remove bolts -2- (4x).

- 1 - 1/2 section of backrest (left-side)
- Return 1/2 sections of backrest (left and right) to normal position.



Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Remove bolt -2-.
- Detach belt buckle -1-.
- Remove 1/2 sections of backrest (left and right) from vehicle together.

Installing



Caution

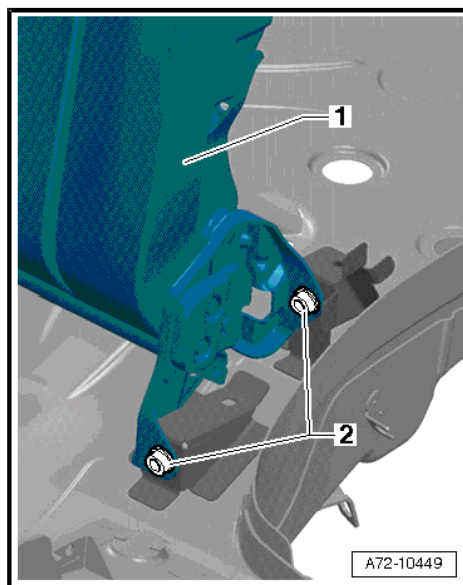
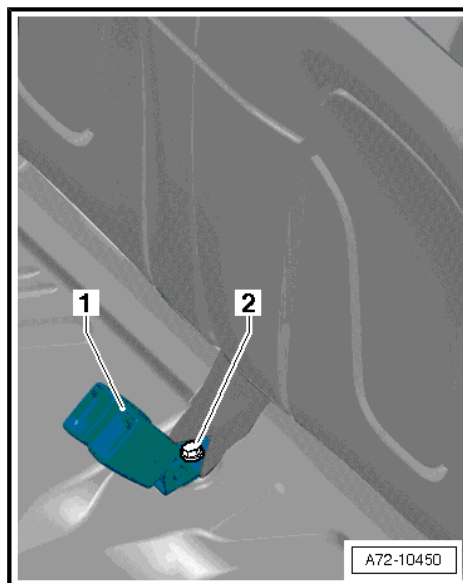
Do not kneel or lean on the folded backrest.



Note

Observe installation sequence for bolt connections when installing 1/2 sections of backrest (left and right).

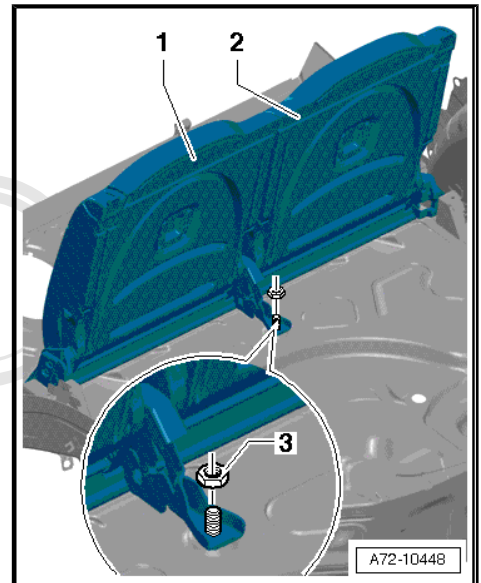
- Lift 1/2 sections of backrest (left and right) into vehicle simultaneously.
- Position belt buckle -1- and only hand-tighten bolt/nut -2-.
- Screw in bolts -2- (4x) and tighten to specified torque.



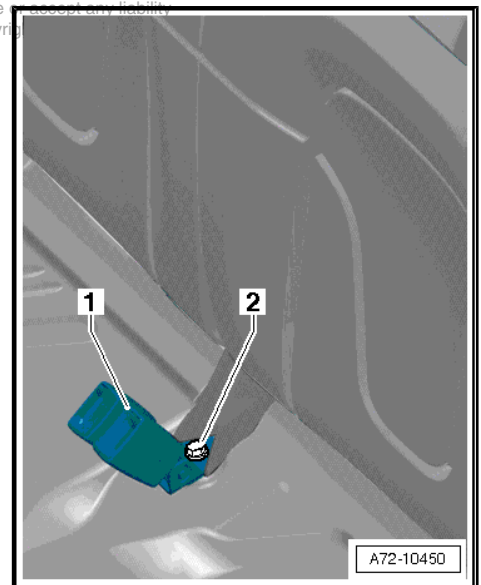
Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Screw in nut -3- and tighten to specified torque.



- Tighten bolt/nut -2- to specified torque.
- Perform remaining installation in reverse order of removal.
Tightening torque ⇒ [page 385](#)



5.8 Removing and installing cap for centre mounting

Removing

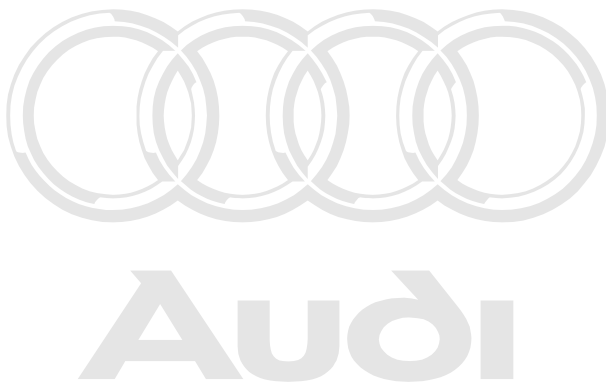
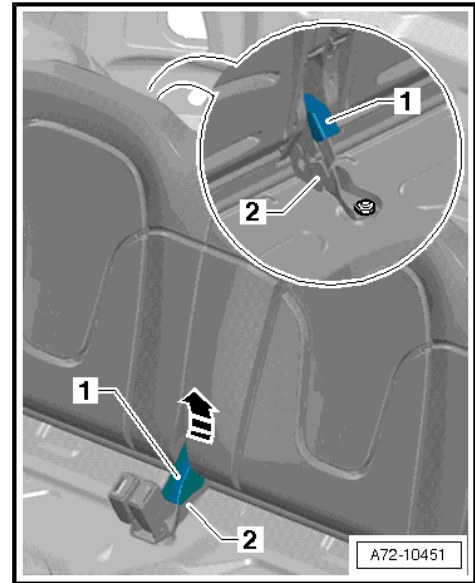
- Remove seat bench ⇒ [page 383](#) .



- Disengage cap -1- at centre mounting -2-.
- Lift out cap -1- towards front in direction of -arrow-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.9 Exploded view of belt buckle

Exploded view of belt buckle ⇒ [page 63](#)

5.10 Removing and installing belt buckle

Removing and installing belt buckle ⇒ [page 64](#)

5.11 Exploded view of release mechanism (left-side/right-side)

1 - Release mechanism (left-side/right-side)

- Without trim
- With Bowden cable
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 391](#)

2 - Bolt

- 2.0 Nm
- 6x

3 - Trim (left-side/right-side)

- Clipped to release mechanism ⇒ [Item 1 \(page 391\)](#)
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 395](#)

4 - Button

- For release mechanism
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 396](#)

5 - 1/2 section of backrest (left-side/right-side)

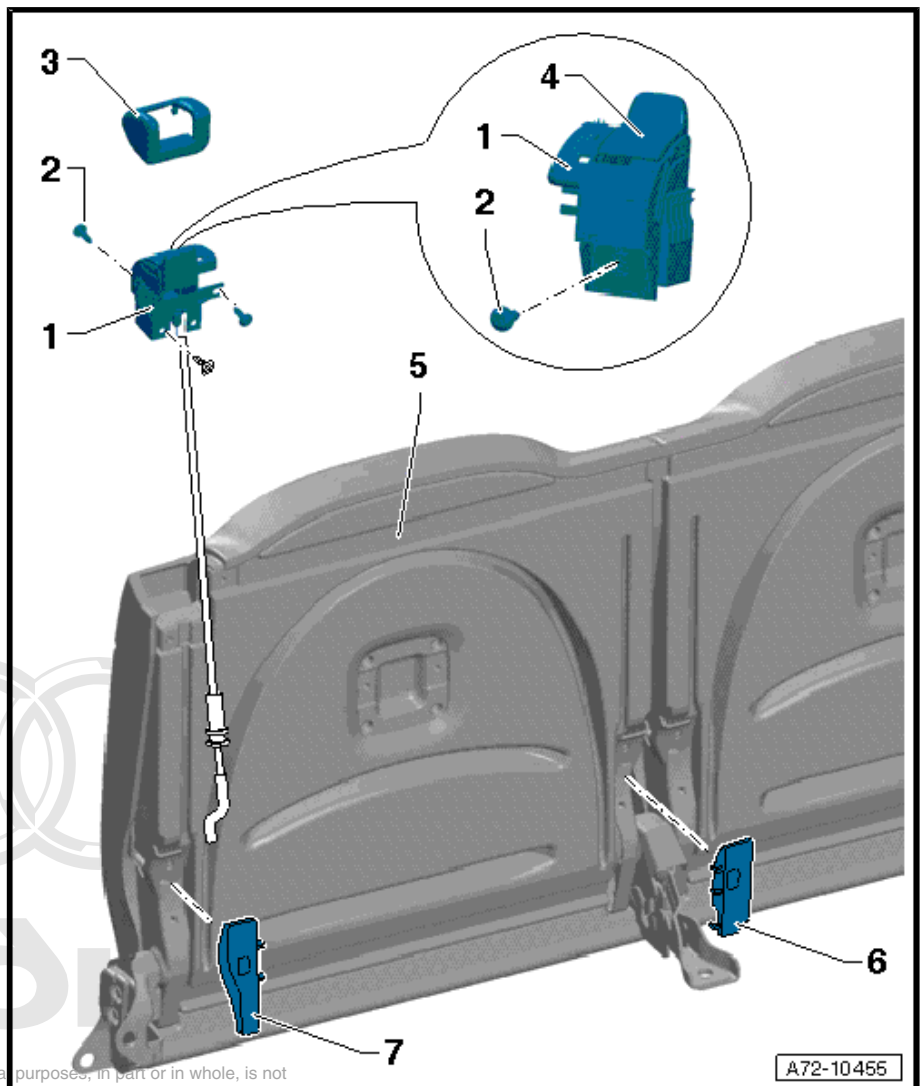
- Cover removed

6 - Inner filler piece (left-side)

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 398](#)

7 - Outer filler piece (left-side)

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 398](#)



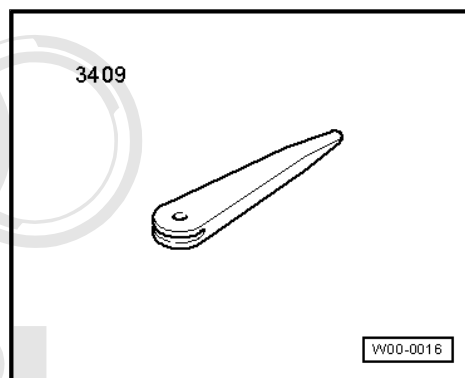
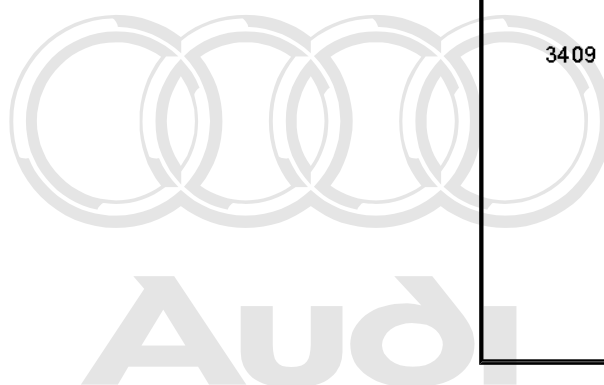
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

A72-10455

5.12 Removing and installing release mechanism (left-side/right-side)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

◆ Removal wedge -3409-

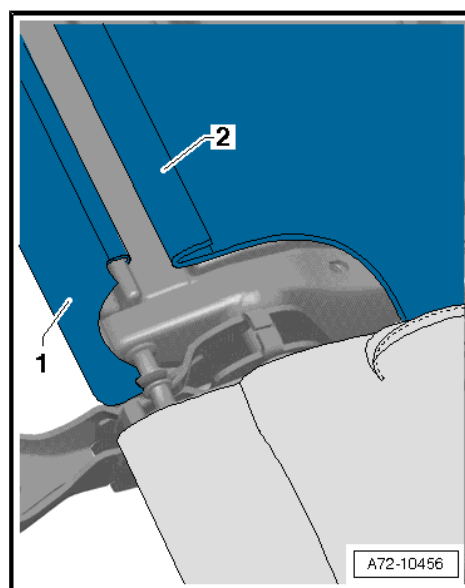
**Note**

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

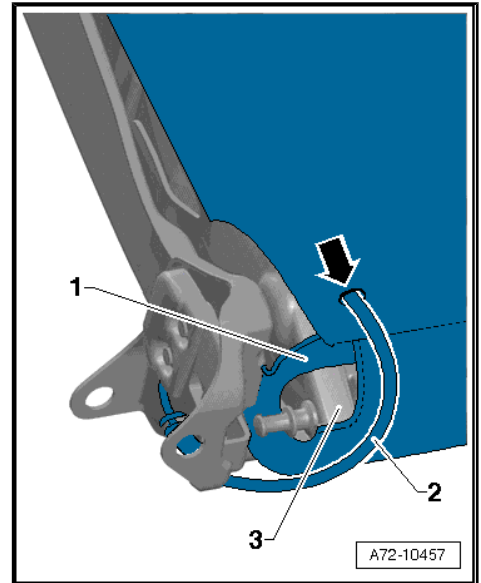
Removal and installation of the release mechanism (left-side) are described for 1/2 section of backrest (left-side). The removal and installation procedures for the release mechanism (right-side) are similar.

Removing

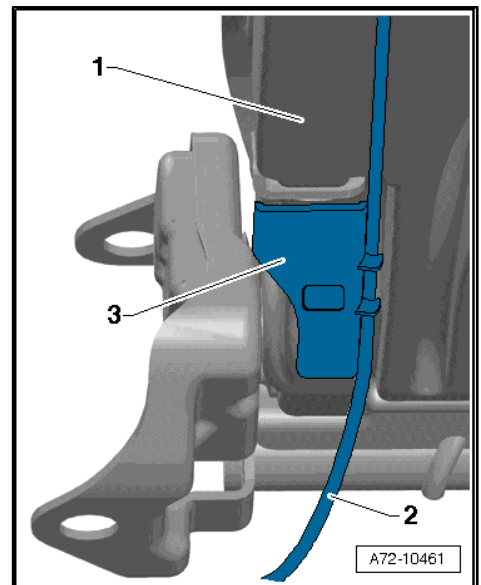
- Remove backrest ⇒ [page 386](#) .
- Remove trim (left-side) ⇒ [page 395](#) .
- Disengage piping of front section of cover -1- from fastening strip on back of cover -2-.



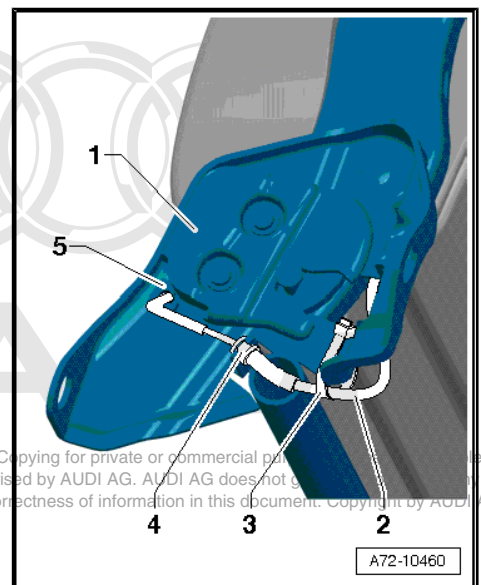
- Disengage tab on front section of cover -1- from backrest frame -3-.
- Unfasten cover zip.
- Fold cover aside.



- Remove filler piece -3- => [page 398](#) .
- 1 - Backrest pan
- 2 - Bowden cable

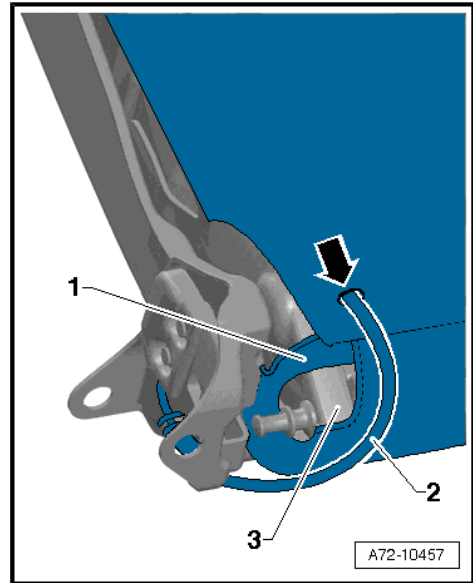


- Open cable tie -3-.
- Unclip Bowden cable -2- from mounting -4-.
- Disengage hook of Bowden cable -2- at lever -5-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

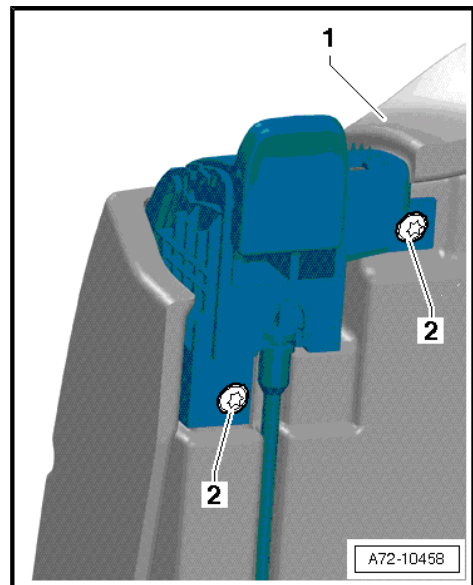
- Thread Bowden cable -2- through opening in back of cover -arrow-.



- Carefully pull cover -1- upwards until bolts -2- become visible.
- Unscrew bolts -2-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



- In area of release mechanism, detach padding from self-adhesive strip -4- on backrest pan.
- Press padding -1- to side in area of release mechanism -2- until bolt -3- becomes visible.
- Remove bolt -3-.
- Detach release mechanism with Bowden cable -2- from backrest pan -5-.



Note

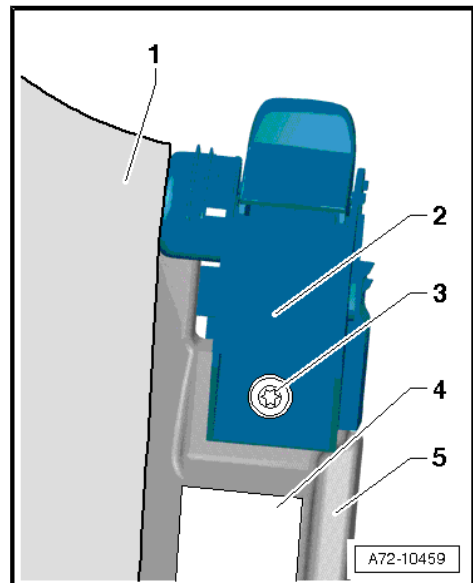
There is no provision for separating the Bowden cable from the release mechanism.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

- The Bowden cable cannot be adjusted.

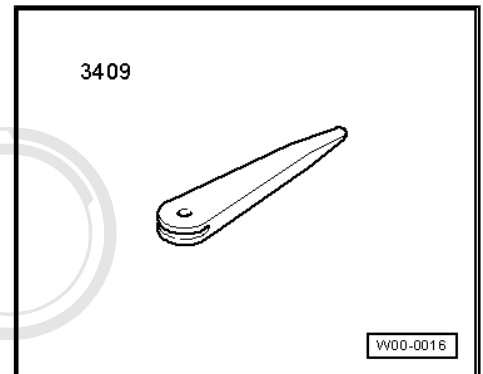
Tightening torque ⇒ [page 391](#)



5.13 Removing and installing trim (left-side/right-side)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal wedge -3409-



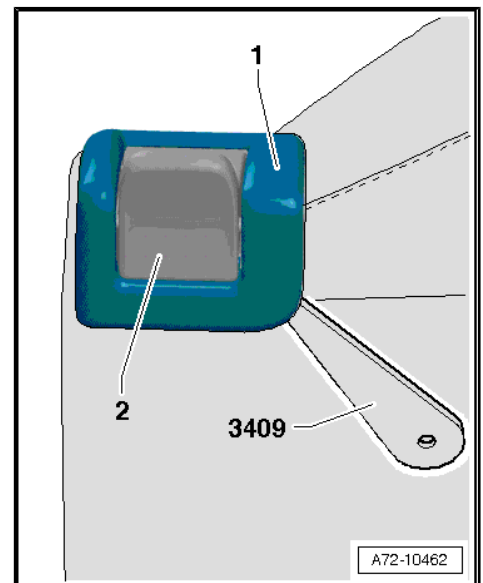
Note

Removal and installation of trim (left-side) are described for 1/2 section of backrest (left-side). The removal and installation procedures are similar for the trim (right-side).

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Audi AG. Audi AG does not guarantee or accept any liability for the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

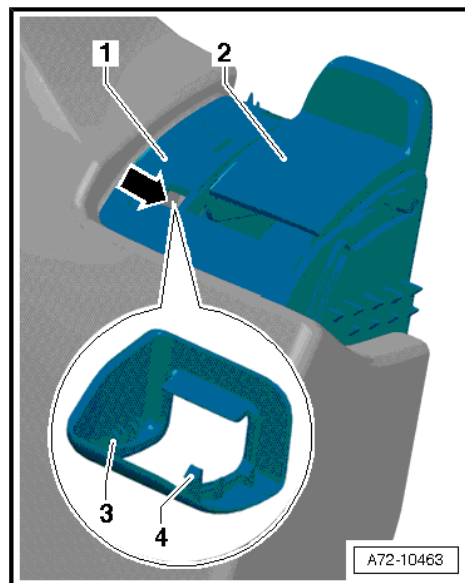
- Starting at the bottom rear right, unclip trim -1- using removal wedge -3409- .
- Press release mechanism button -2- as far forwards as it will go in the direction of travel and hold it in this position.
- Prise trim -1- off release mechanism using removal wedge -3409- .
- Detach trim -1- towards rear.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

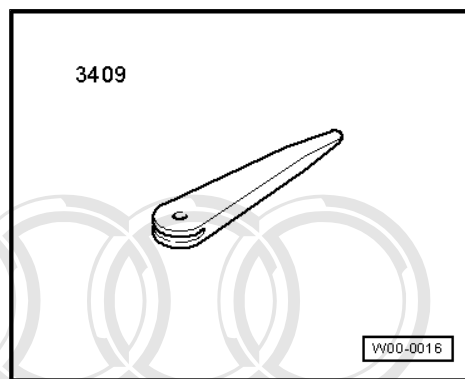
- First engage retaining tab -4- of trim -3- in opening -arrow- of release mechanism -1-.
- Press button -2- of release mechanism button -1- as far forwards as it will go (in direction of travel) and hold it in this position.
- Press down trim and engage it with release mechanism.
- Make sure that all retaining tabs are engaged.
- Make sure that opening in cover is properly covered and that there are no creases in cover in this area.



5.14 Removing and installing button for release mechanism

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal wedge -3409-



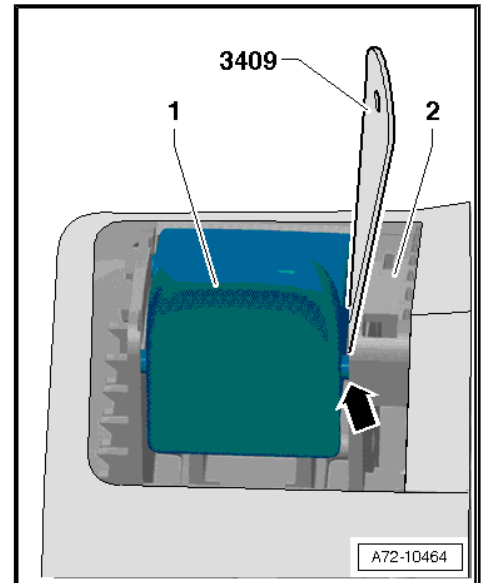
Note

Removal and installation of the button (left-side) are described for a 1/2 section of backrest (left-side). The removal and installation procedures are similar for the button (right-side).

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

- Remove trim (left-side/right-side) ⇒ [page 395](#) .
- Use removal wedge -3409- to first prise button -1- at rear out of release mechanism -2-.
- Start by prising out lug -arrow- facing centre of vehicle.



- Then prise out lug -arrow- facing towards outside of vehicle.

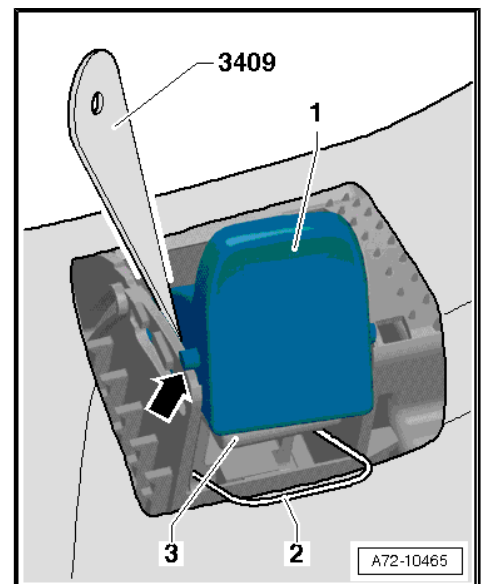
i Note

After prising the rear lugs out of the release mechanism, the long-arm spring -2- and the rocker -3- automatically become disengaged from the button -1-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright © AUDI AG.

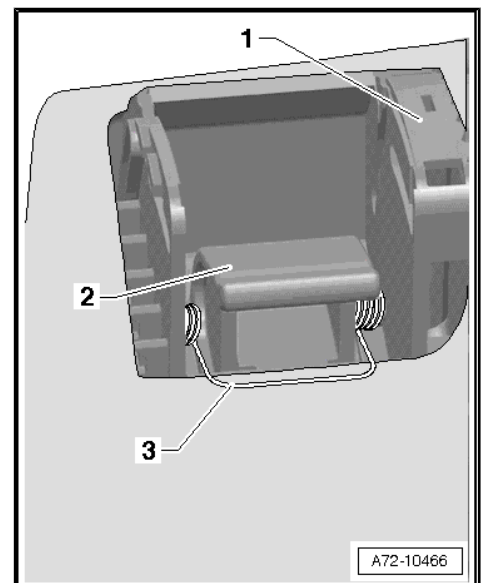
- Then use removal wedge -3409- to prise front lugs of button out of release mechanism in the same sequence.

- Detach button from rocker.



Installing

- Slide button from rear onto rocker -2- and long-arm spring -3-.
- 1 - Release mechanism
- Use removal wedge -3409- to engage rear lugs in release mechanism (left and right).
 - Use removal wedge -3409- to engage front lugs in release mechanism (left and right).
 - Make sure the long-arm spring is properly engaged in the button.
 - Install trim (left-side/right-side) ⇒ [page 395](#) .



5.15 Removing and installing outer filler piece (left-side/right-side)



Note

Removal and installation of the outer filler piece (left-side) are described for 1/2 section of backrest (left-side). The removal and installation procedures for the outer filler piece (right-side) are similar.

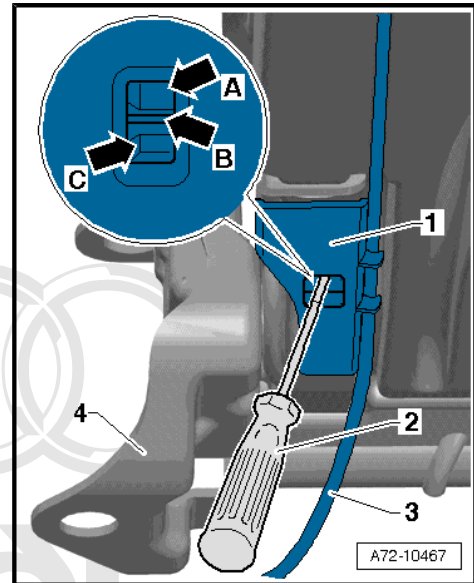
Removing

- Use a screwdriver -2- to unclip filler piece -1- at fitting -4-.
- Insert screwdriver -2- into upper opening -arrow A- and press first retaining tab towards centre web -arrow B-.
- Then insert screwdriver -2- into lower opening -arrow C- and press second retaining tab towards centre web -arrow B-.
- Pull filler piece -1- off Bowden cable of release mechanism -3-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

- Make sure that filler piece is properly engaged with fitting.



5.16 Removing and installing inner filler piece (left-side/right-side)

Removing and installing inner filler piece (left-side/right-side)

The removal and installation procedures for the inner filler pieces (left and right) are similar to those for the outer filler pieces (left and right) ⇒ [page 398](#).

5.17 Exploded view of child seat mounting (Top Tether) - country-specific version

Exploded view of child seat mounting (Top Tether) - country-specific version ⇒ [page 80](#)

5.18 Removing and installing child seat mounting (Top Tether)

Removing and installing child seat mounting (Top Tether) ⇒ [page 80](#)

5.19 Exploded view of backrest frame and backrest pan

1 - Backrest pan (right-side)

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 400](#)
- Double-sided adhesive tape on front side
- Adhesive film on back

2 - Backrest pan (left-side)

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 400](#)
- Double-sided adhesive tape on front side
- Adhesive film on back

3 - Bolt

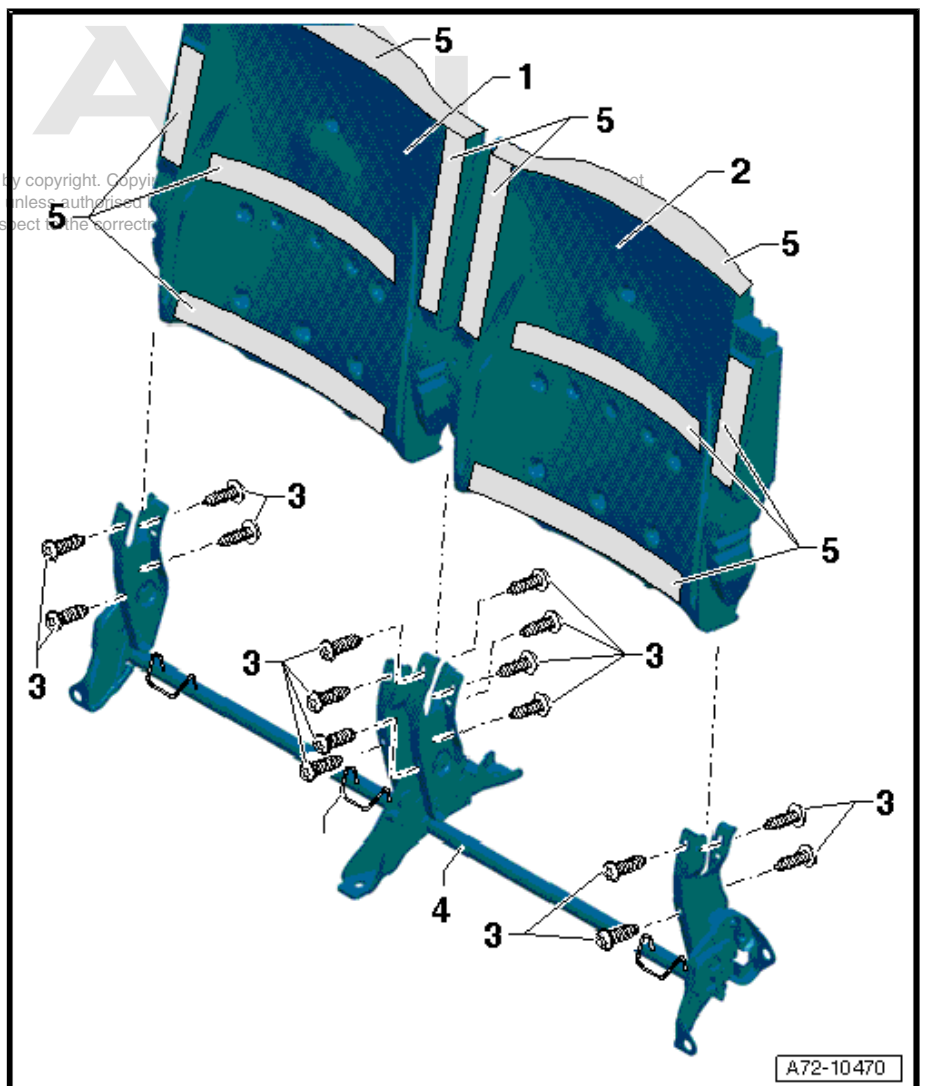
- 4.0 Nm
- 16x

4 - Backrest frame

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 399](#)
- Equipment versions:
 - ◆ With child seat mounting (ISOFIX)
 - ◆ Without child seat mounting

5 - Double-sided adhesive tape

- Affixed to front and top edge of backrest pan



5.20 Removing and installing backrest frame

Removing

- Remove backrest ⇒ [page 386](#) .
- Remove cap for the centre mounting ⇒ [page 389](#) .
- Remove trim ⇒ [page 395](#) .

Vehicles with Top Tether

- Remove Top Tether ⇒ [page 80](#) .
- Remove cover with padding ⇒ [page 424](#) .

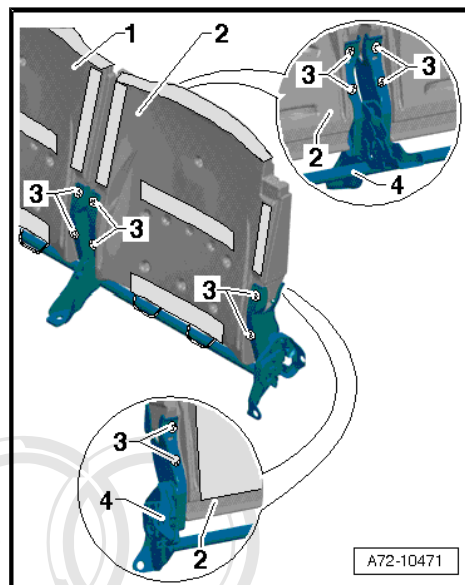
All vehicles (continued)

- Remove release mechanism ⇒ [page 391](#) .
- Remove filler pieces ⇒ [page 398](#) .
- Unscrew bolts -3-.
- Lift backrest pan (left-side -2- and right-side -1-) out of guides of backrest frame -4-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening torque ⇒ [page 399](#)



5.21 Removing and installing backrest pan



The procedures for removing and installing the backrest pan are similar to those for the backrest frame.

Removing and installing backrest pan ⇒ [page 399](#)

Tightening torque ⇒ [page 399](#)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted without the prior written authorisation of AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

74 – Seat - padding, covers

1 Covers and padding on front seat

The covers and padding are described for a front seat with electric adjustment. The covers and padding for a front seat with manual adjustment are similar and are not described separately.

1.1 Exploded view of seat pan cover and padding

1 - Fastening strip

2 - Cover with padding

- Removing and installing
 ⇒ [page 401](#)

3 - Upholstery clip

- For attaching cover to padding
- Always renew after removing
- Re-attach at same location

4 - Fastening strip

5 - Fastening strip

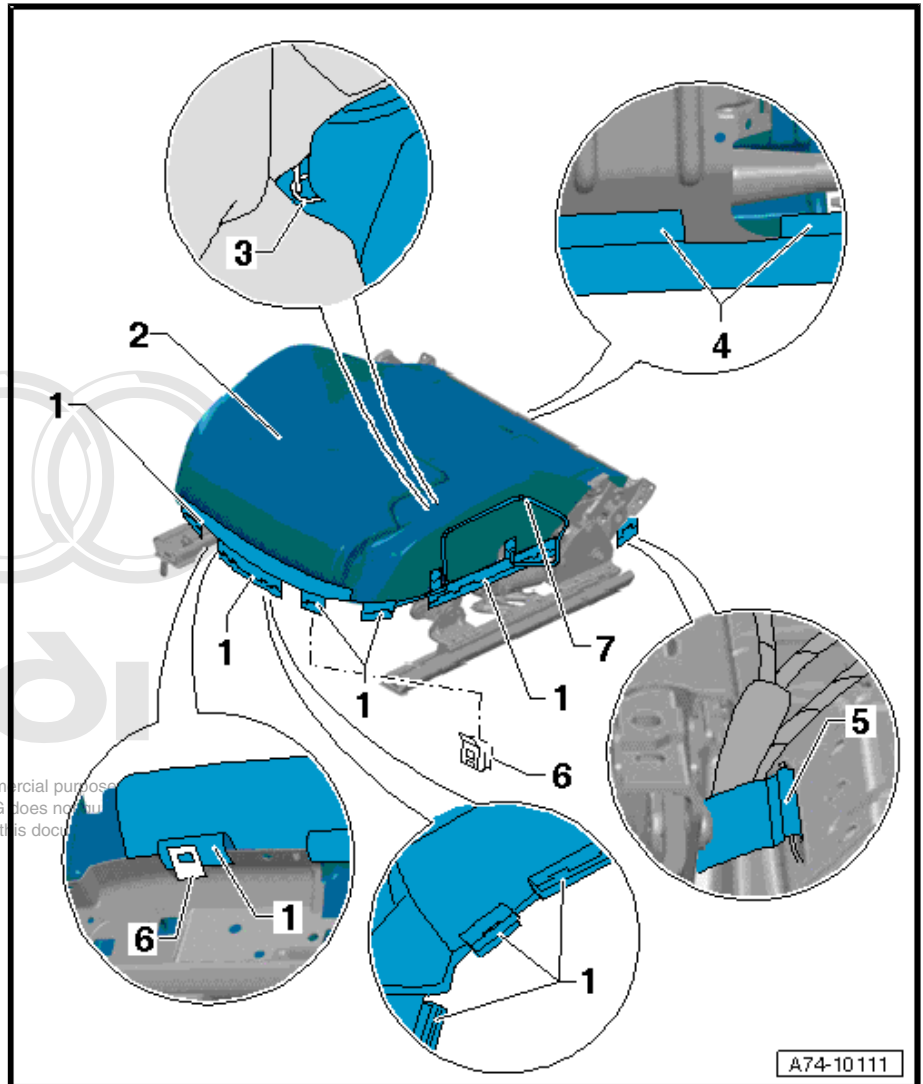
6 - Spring clip

- 2x / seat
- Attached to seat pan

7 - Retaining bracket

- For trim (sill side)
- Exploded view
 ⇒ [page 256](#)
- Removing and installing
 ⇒ [page 256](#)

Protected by copyright for private or commercial purposes. Reproduction or distribution is permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not assume any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



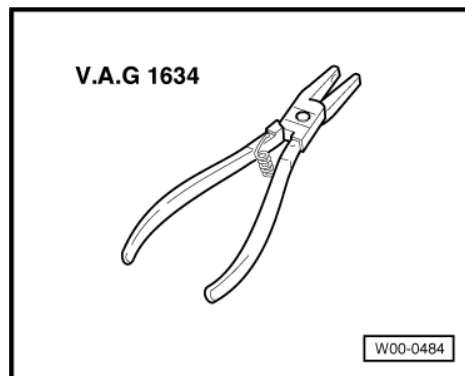
A74-10111

1.2 Removing and installing seat pan cover and padding

Special tools and workshop equipment required



- ◆ Upholstery clip pliers -V.A.G 1634-



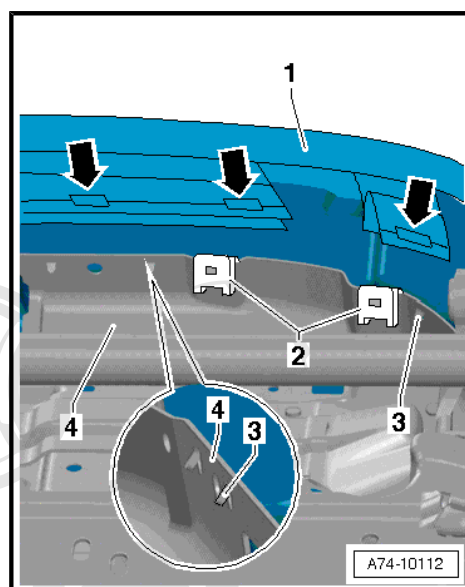
Removing



WARNING

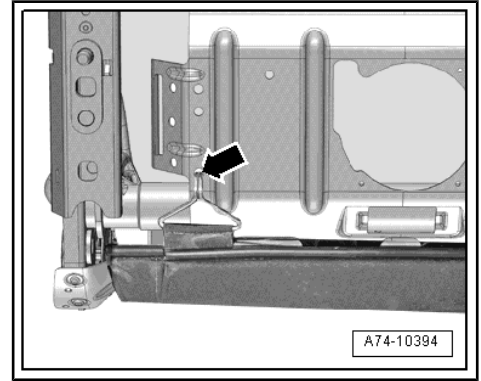
- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 42](#).*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

- Remove backrest:
- ◆ Front seat with manual adjustment ⇒ [page 262](#)
- ◆ Front seat with electric adjustment ⇒ [page 298](#)
- Remove retaining bracket:
- ◆ Front seat with manual adjustment ⇒ [page 256](#)
- ◆ Front seat with electric adjustment ⇒ [page 256](#)
- Disengage fastening strips -1- in front and side areas from catches -3- and spring clips -2-.
- Take care not to damage slots -arrows- in fastening strips.
- Make sure spring clips -2- remain attached to seat pan -4-.
- If this is not the case, attach spring clips to seat pan before fitting cover.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- If fitted, disengage securing straps (left and right) -arrow-.



- Disengage fastening strips -1-, -2- and -3- on back of seat pan -4-.
- Detach cover with padding from seat pan.

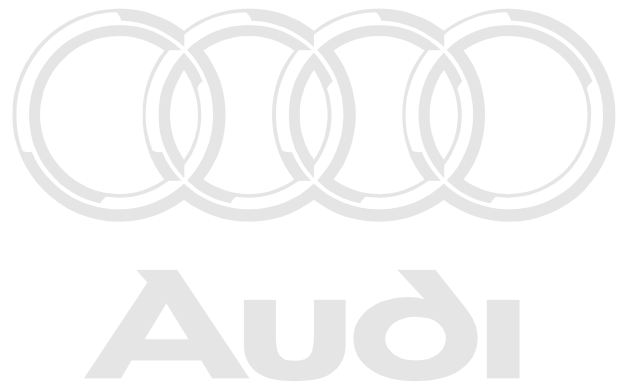
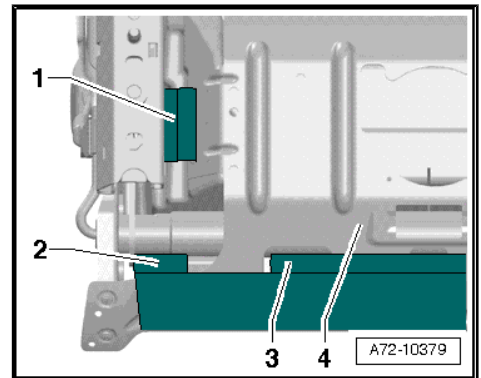
Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:



WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 42](#).*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

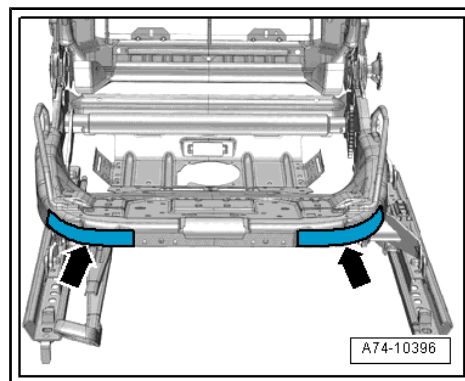


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Attach double-sided adhesive tape on seat pan at points indicated in illustration -arrows-; for double-sided adhesive tape refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .
- Align padding for seat pan centrally and secure on double sided adhesive strips.
- Starting at front, secure cover to seat pan and pull cover straight towards rear.

**Note**

On seats with ISOFIX child seat anchors, guide securing strap of seat cover underneath retaining bracket and engage at ISOFIX cross-piece.



- Make sure fastening strips engage properly and that there are no creases in cover.

**Note**

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

- Switch on ignition.

**WARNING**

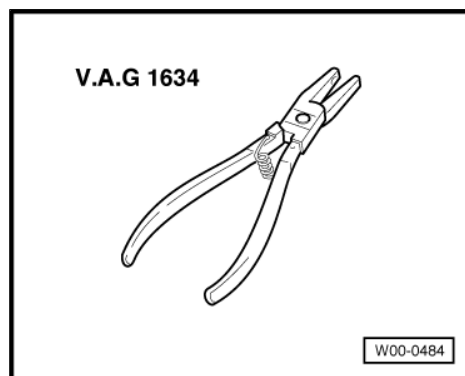
The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

- Connect battery earth wire with ignition switched on ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27.
- If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following the installation, the fault memory must be interrogated, erased and interrogated again ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B- .

1.3 Detaching seat cover from padding (seat pan)

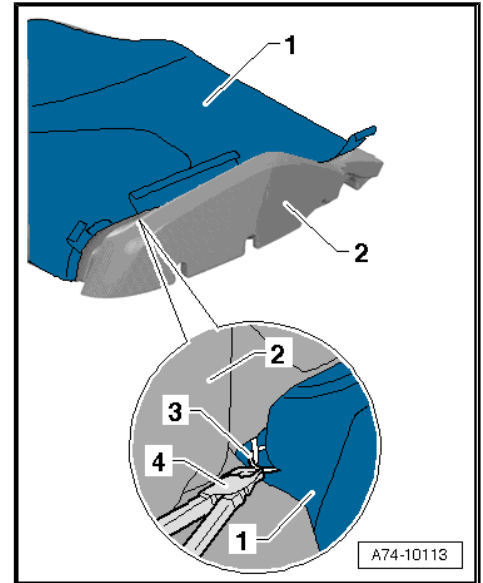
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Upholstery clip pliers -V.A.G 1634-



Removing

- Remove cover and padding from seat pan ⇒ [page 401](#) .
- Detach cover -1- as far as possible from padding -2-.
- Use pliers -4- to pinch off upholstery clips -3-.

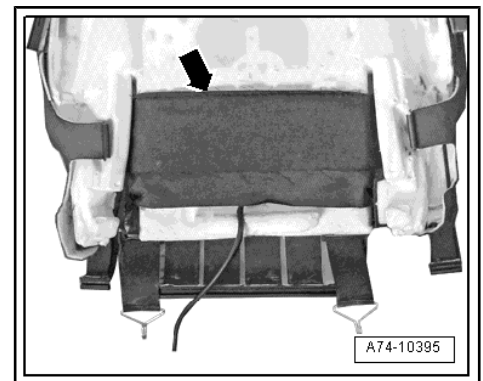


- Vehicles from 09.2009 onwards: Pull seat padding out of fabric strap -arrow- on cover.
- Detach cover from padding.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

- Use new upholstery clips.
- Use upholstery clip pliers -V.A.G 1634- to fasten upholstery clips.
- Fit upholstery clips in their original positions.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.4 Exploded view of backrest cover and padding

1 - Fastening strip

2 - Side airbag

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 100](#)

3 - Pouch for side airbag

- Stitched to cover

4 - Wire

- For side airbag

5 - Handle

- Coupé only

- Front seat with manual adjustment:

- ◆ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 269](#)

- Front seat with electric adjustment:

- ◆ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 312](#)

6 - Trim

- Coupé only

- Front seat with manual adjustment:

- ◆ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 269](#)

- Front seat with electric adjustment:

- ◆ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 312](#)

7 - Cover with padding

- Coupé only

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 407](#)

8 - Holder with stud

- For seat belt

- Roadster only

9 - Cover with padding

- Roadster only

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 407](#)

10 - Backrest cover panel

- Front seat with manual adjustment:

- ◆ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 266](#)

- Front seat with electric adjustment:

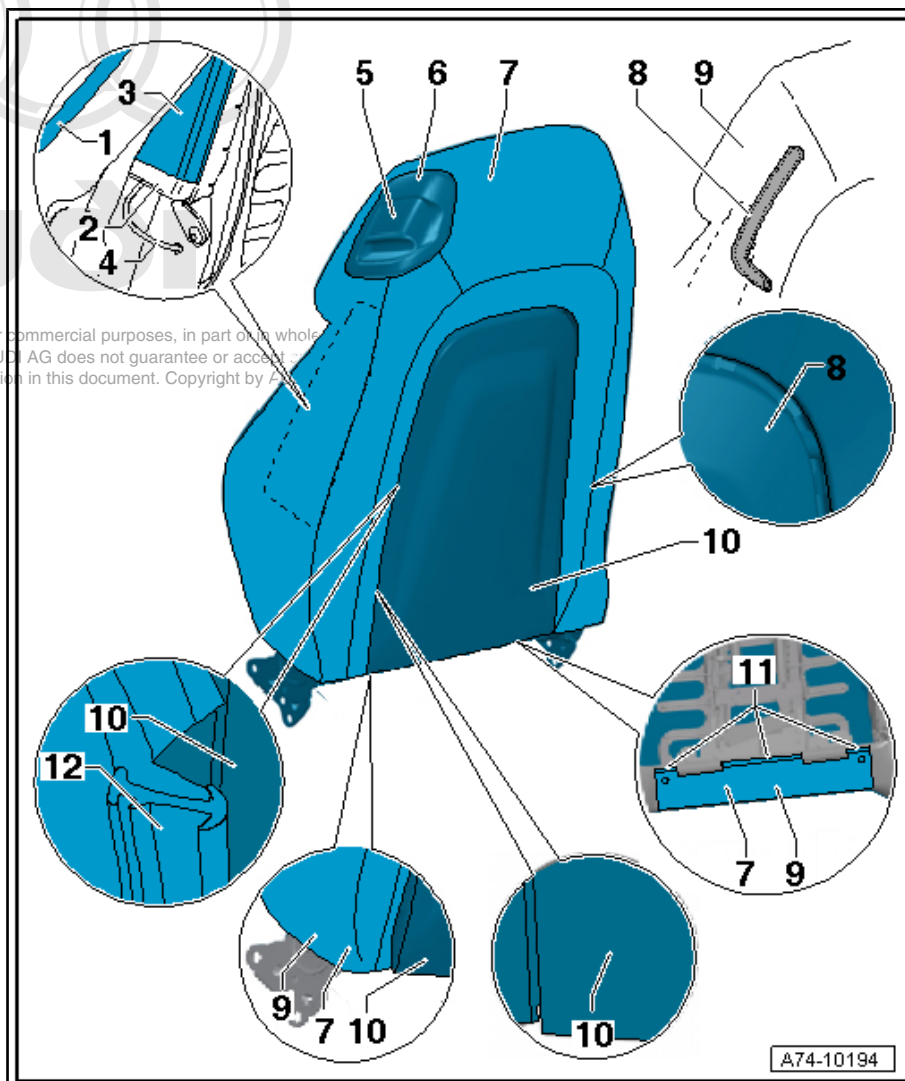
- ◆ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 302](#)

11 - Fastening strip

- 3x

12 - Fastening strip

- All-round

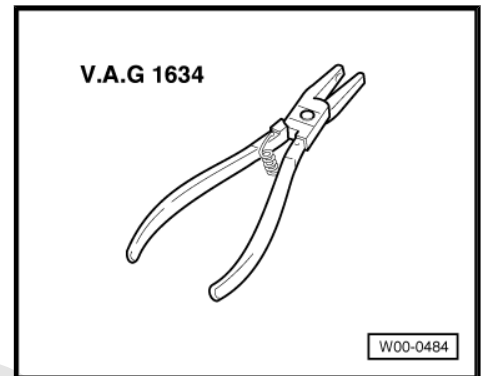


- For attaching backrest cover to backrest cover panel

1.5 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Upholstery clip pliers -V.A.G 1634-



Removing



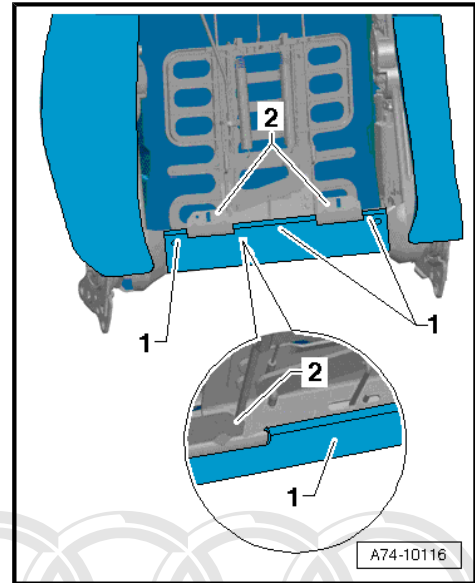
WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 42](#).*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Remove backrest:
 - ◆ Front seat with manual adjustment ⇒ [page 262](#)
 - ◆ Front seat with electric adjustment ⇒ [page 298](#)
- Remove head restraint:
 - ◆ Front seat with manual adjustment ⇒ [page 321](#)
 - ◆ Front seat with electric adjustment ⇒ [page 321](#)
- Remove backrest cover panel:
 - ◆ Front seat with manual adjustment ⇒ [page 302](#)
 - ◆ Front seat with electric adjustment ⇒ [page 302](#)

- Disengage lower fastening strips -1- (3x) at backrest frame -2-.
- Remove side airbag => [page 100](#) .
- Take airbag out of pouch and re-engage airbag in backrest frame.



- Vehicles from 04.2008 onwards: Unfasten clip -4- and pull lug -3- on backrest cover -2- through recess in backrest padding -1-.
- Detach cover with padding from backrest frame.

Installing

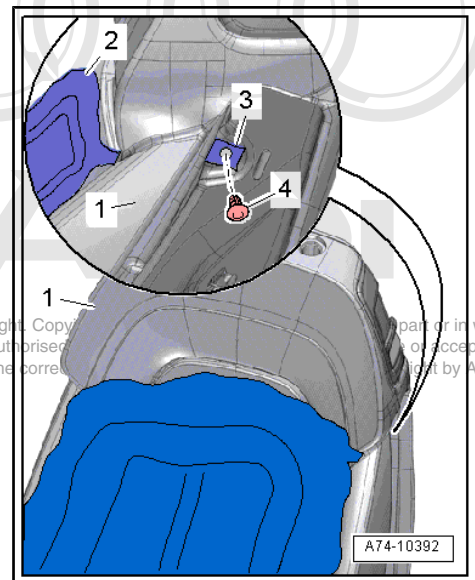
Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:



WARNING

- ◆ **Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components** => [page 42](#) .
- ◆ **Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.**

Protected by copyright. Copying, reproduction, distribution, or use in any form or by any means, without the prior written permission of Audi AG, is not permitted. Audi AG accepts no liability for errors or omissions.



- Make sure fastening strips engage properly and that there are no creases in cover.

- Vehicles from 04.2008 onwards: Pull lug -3- on backrest cover -2- through recess in backrest padding -1- and secure to backrest frame with new clip -4-.

i Note

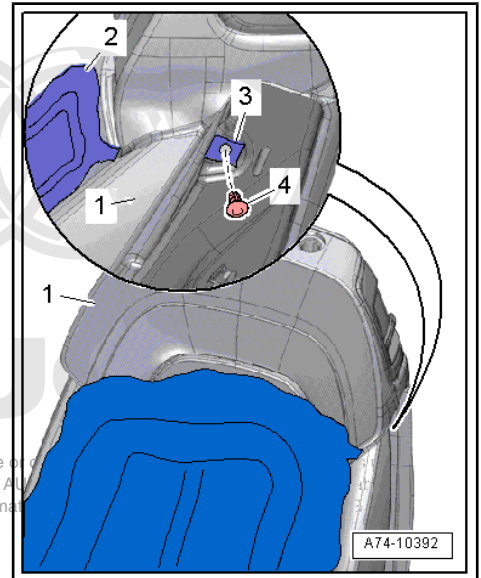
Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

- Switch on ignition.



WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

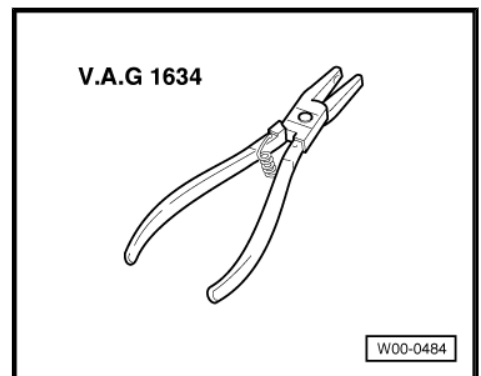


- Connect battery earth wire with ignition switched on ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 .
- If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following the installation, the fault memory must be interrogated, erased and interrogated again ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B- .

1.6 Detaching seat cover from padding (backrest)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Upholstery clip pliers -V.A.G 1634-





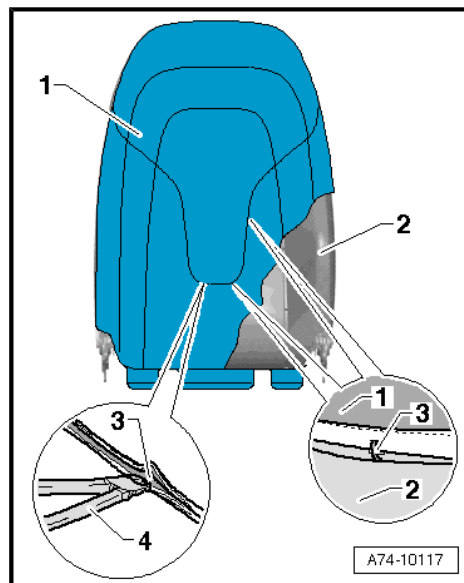
Removing

- Detach cover and padding from backrest => [page 407](#) .
- Detach cover -1- as far as possible from padding -2-.
- Use pliers -4- to pinch off upholstery clips -3-.
- Detach seat cover -1- from padding -2-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

- Use upholstery clip pliers -V.A.G 1634- to install new upholstery clips.



1.7 Overview of seat heating element

1 - Padding

- For seat pan

2 - Wire

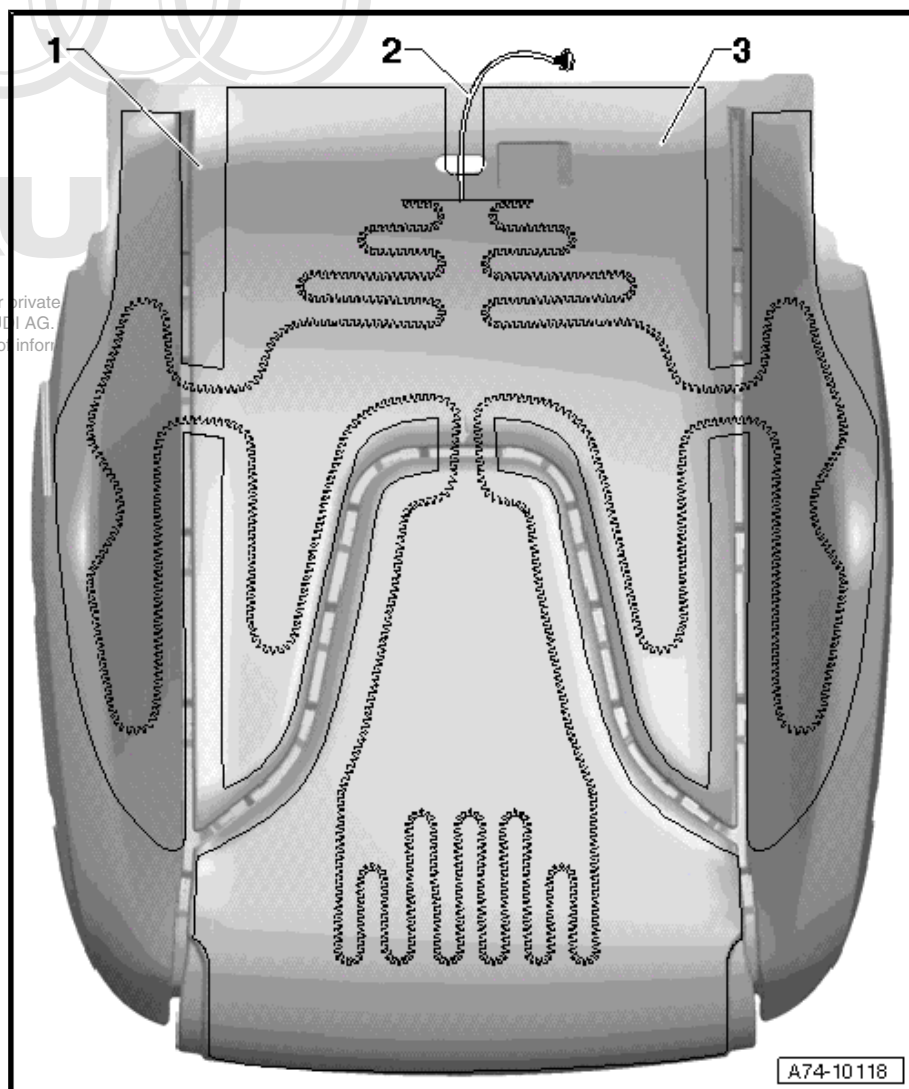
- Permanently connected to seat heating element

3 - Seat heating element

- Bonded to padding

- Removing and installing => [page 411](#)

Protected by copyright. Copying or private use without express authorisation by AUDI AG. with respect to the correctness of information.



1.8 Removing and installing seat heating element

Removing

- Remove seat pan cover and padding ⇒ [page 401](#) .
- Detach cover from padding ⇒ [page 404](#) .
- Cut wire -2- off old seat heating element -3-.

Note

Leave old seat heating element on padding -1- and cover it with new seat heating element.

Installing

- Align new seat heating element -3- on padding -1-.
- Pull off protective film and attach new seat heating element -3- onto padding -1- and old seat heating element.

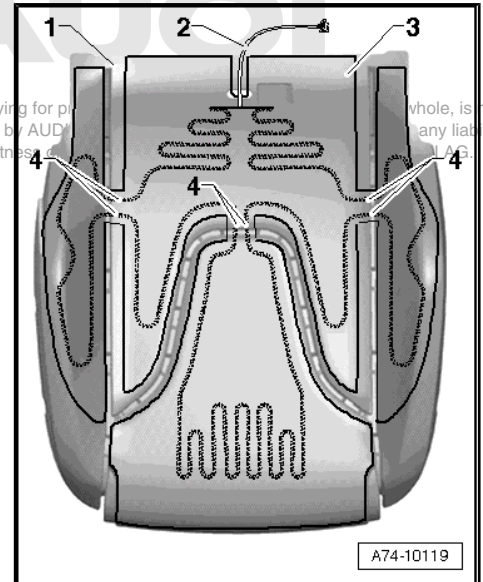


Caution

Take care to attach the new seat heating element in such a way that it covers the old seat heating element exactly.

- Route connecting wires at locations -4- in bottom of gaps, avoiding crossover.

Perform remaining installation in reverse order of removal.



1.9 Overview of backrest heating element

1 - Padding

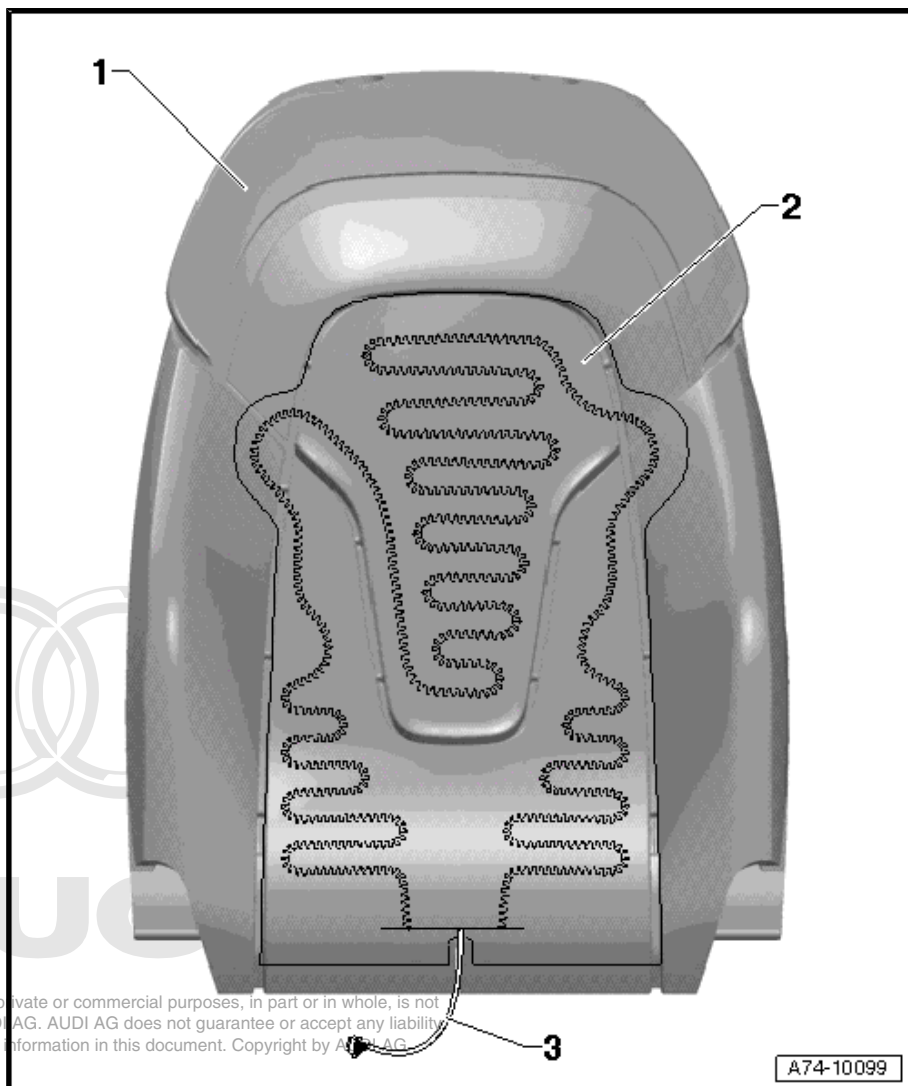
- For backrest

2 - Backrest heating element

- Bonded to padding
- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 412](#)

3 - Wire

- Permanently connected to seat heating element



1.10 Removing and installing backrest heating element

Removing

- Remove backrest cover and padding ⇒ [page 407](#) .
- Separate cover from padding ⇒ [page 409](#) .

- Cut wire -3- off old backrest heating element -2-.

Note

Leave old backrest heating element on padding -1- and cover it with new backrest heating element.

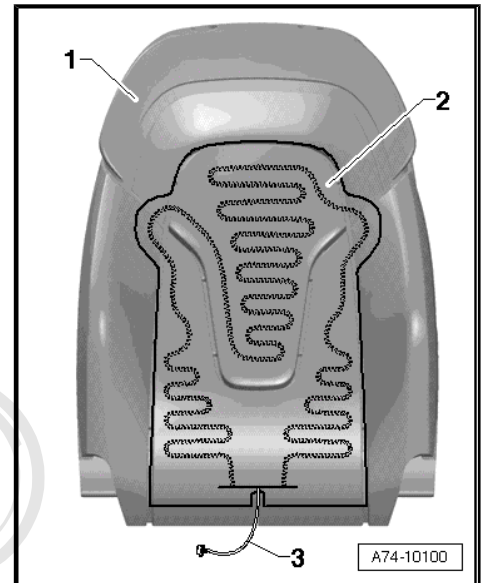
Installing

- Align new backrest heating element -2- on padding -1-.
- Pull off protective film and attach new backrest heating element -2- onto padding -1- and old backrest heating element.



Caution

Take care to attach new backrest heating element in such a way that it covers old seat heating element exactly.



Perform remaining installation in reverse order of removal.

1.11 Exploded view of cover and padding for head restraint

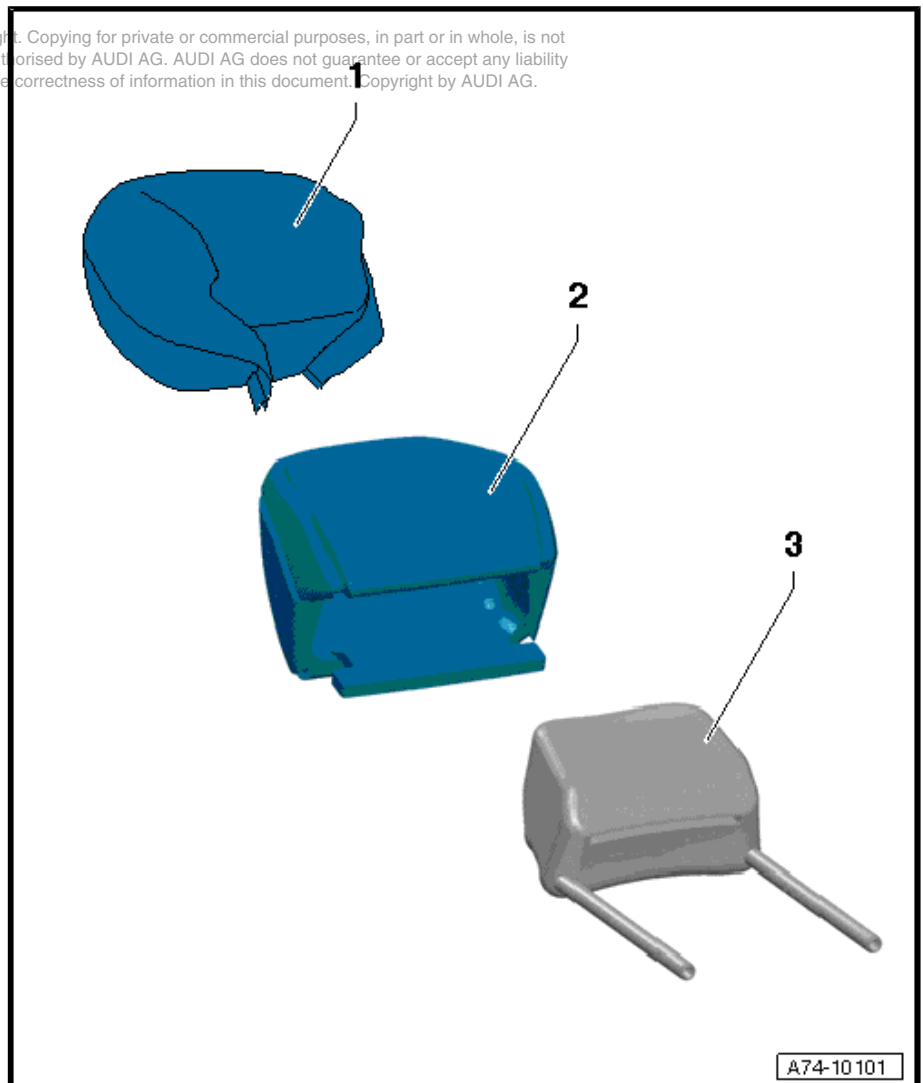
1 - Cover

- Removing and installing
 => [page 414](#)

2 - Padding

- Removing and installing
 => [page 414](#)

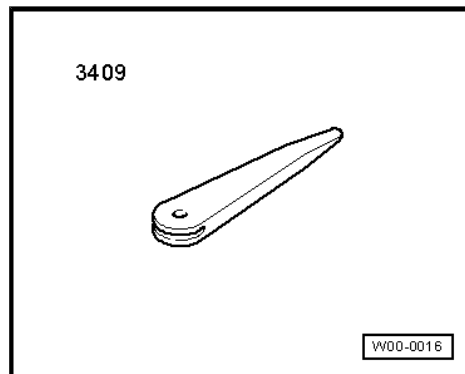
3 - Mounting bracket for head restraint



1.12 Removing and installing cover and padding for head restraint with slide-in locking mechanism

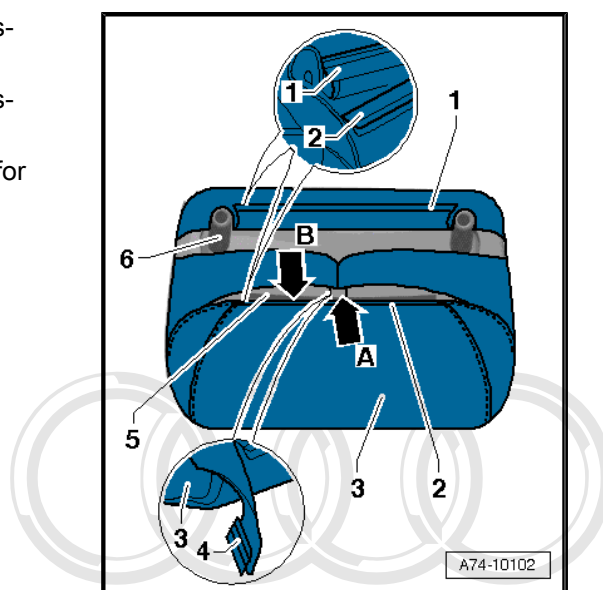
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal wedge -3409-



Removing

- Remove head restraint:
 - ◆ Front seat with manual adjustment ⇒ [page 321](#)
 - ◆ Front seat with electric adjustment ⇒ [page 321](#)
 - Use removal wedge -3409- to prise out and disengage fastening strips -1- and -2- from guide slot -arrow B-.
 - Use removal wedge -3409- to prise out and disengage fastening strips -4- from guide slot -arrow A-.
 - Detach cover -3- with padding -5- from mounting bracket for head restraint.
- 6 - Tubular guides of head restraint mounting bracket

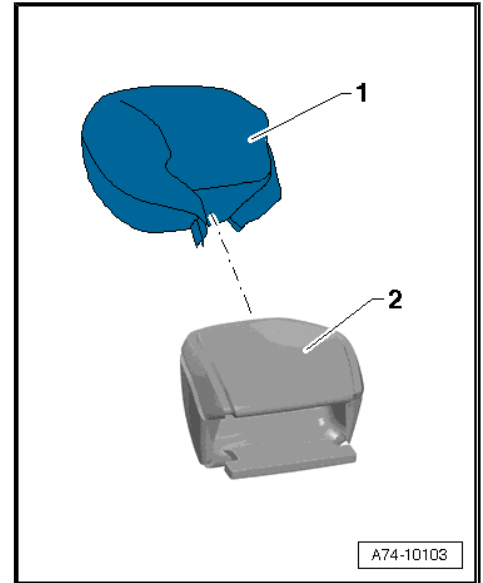


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Take padding -2- out of cover -1-.

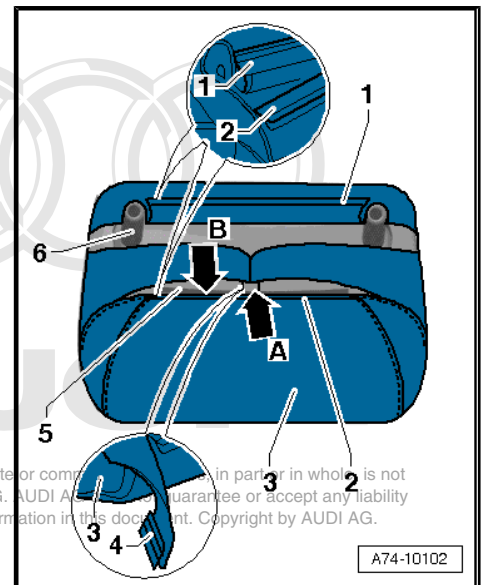
Installing

- Insert padding -2- in cover -1-, making sure that it fits correctly.
- Insert head restraint mounting bracket in padding with cover.



- Press fastening strips -4- firmly into guide slot -arrow A- and check by pulling.
- Press fastening strips -1- and -2- firmly into guide slot -arrow B- and check by pulling.
- Make sure cover is positioned on padding without creases or seam marks.

Perform remaining installation in reverse order of removal.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial use in part or in whole is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2 Covers and padding on front bucket seat

2.1 Removing and installing seat pan cover and padding

1 - Seat pan

- Renew seat pan if threads have been damaged or torn out.
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 369](#)

2 - Seat pan padding

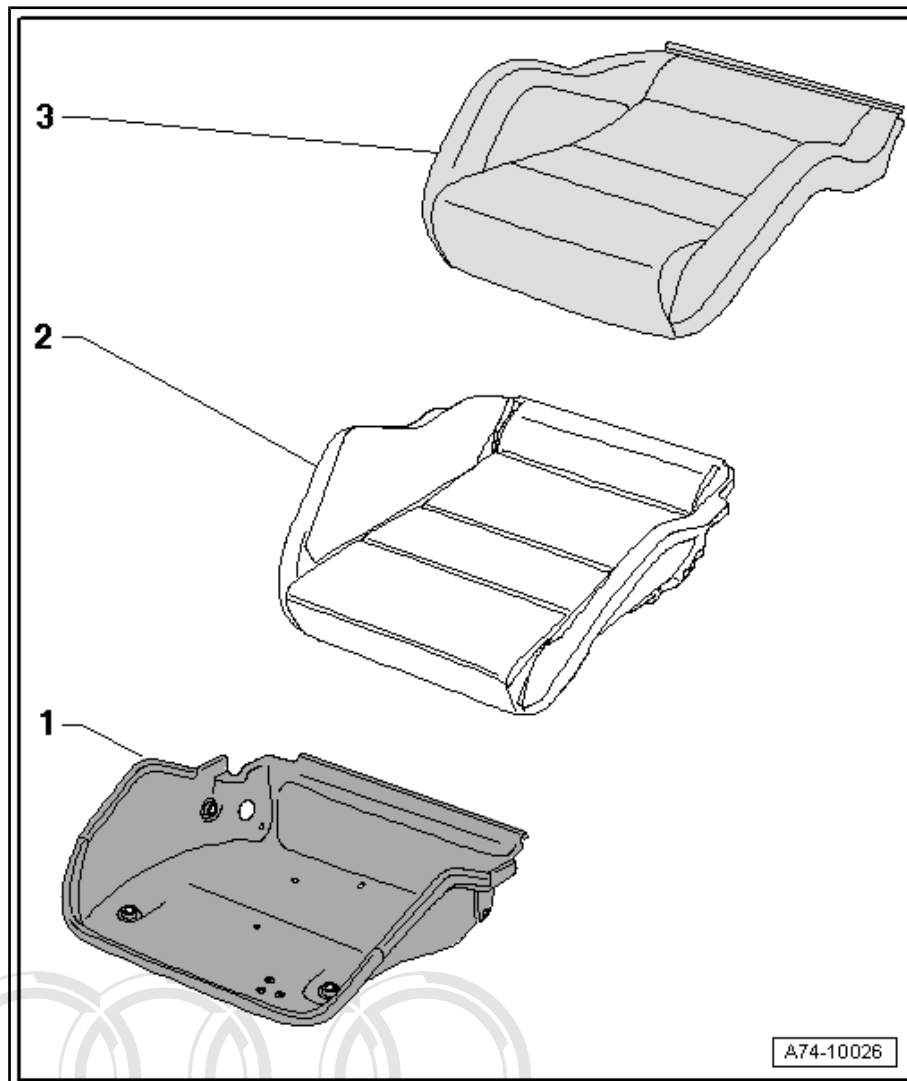
3 - Seat pan cover

Removing

- Remove seat ⇒ [page 363](#).
- Remove seat pan ⇒ [page 369](#).
- Detach Velcro joints (left and right) at rear of seat cover.
- Prise fastening strip out of guide on seat pan -1- all around edge of seat cover -3-.
- Carefully detach seams of seat pan cover from Velcro joint on seat pan padding -2-.
- Remove seat cover.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

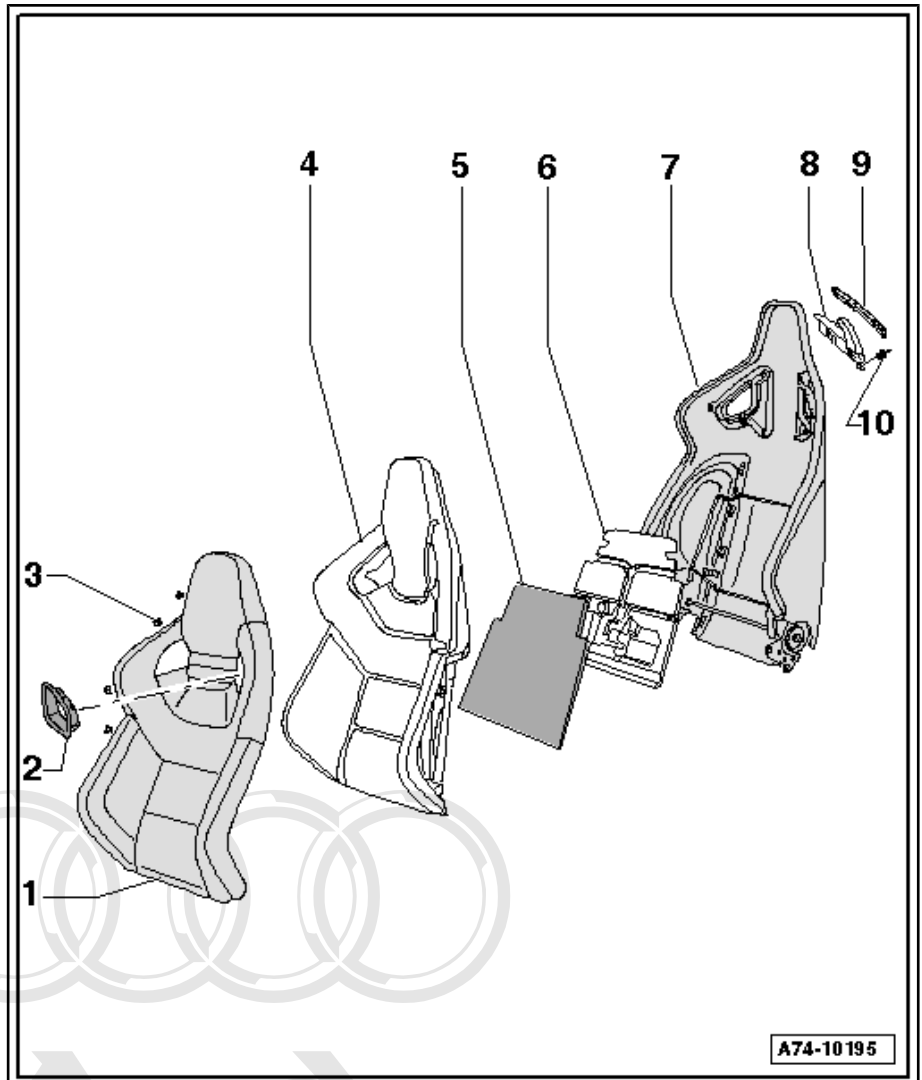


2.2 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding

1 - Backrest cover

Removing

- Remove seat
 ⇒ [page 363](#) .
- Remove backrest
 ⇒ [page 369](#) .
- Remove both outer parts of belt guide -2-
 ⇒ [page 375](#) .
- Prise off cover from belt guide, drill out pop rivet with \varnothing 5.0 mm bit and detach belt guide
 ⇒ [page 418](#) .
- Prise fastening strip off guide on backrest -7- all around edge of backrest cover -1- ⇒ [page 419](#) .
- In bended sections, fastening strip is additionally secured with retaining clips -3-; carefully remove retaining clips.
- Carefully detach seams of backrest cover from Velcro joint on backrest padding -4-.
- Detach retaining strip at bottom of foam block -6-.
- Remove backrest cover.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2 - Outer part of belt guide

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 375](#)

3 - Retaining clips (8x)

- For fastening strip on backrest cover
- Install in bended area of backrest

4 - Backrest padding

Removing

- Remove backrest cover -1-.
- Detach backrest padding from backrest.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

5 - Felt mat

- Bonded

6 - Foam block

Removing

- Remove backrest cover -1-.
- Remove backrest padding -4-.
- Carefully separate bonding between foam block and backrest.
- Swivel foam block forwards at upper edge.
- Remove foam block.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

- If necessary, renew double-sided adhesive tape ⇒ Parts catalogue .

7 - Backrest

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 369](#)

8 - Belt guide

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 418](#)

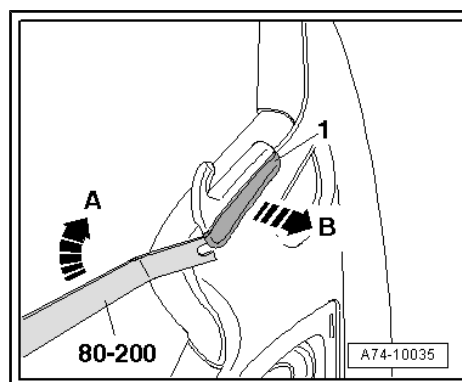
9 - Trim

- For belt guide
- Removing and installing ⇒ [Fig. „Removing and installing belt guide“ , page 418](#)

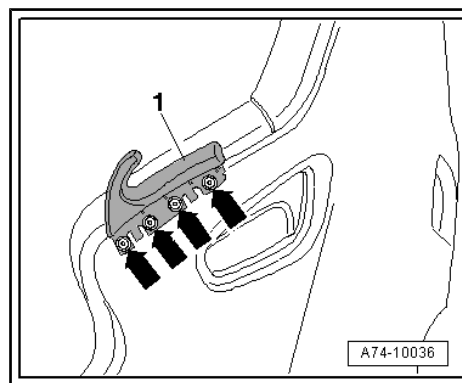
10 - Pop rivet

Removing and installing belt guide

- Using removal lever -80 - 200- prise off trim -1- at outer edge -arrow A-.
- Detach trim by pulling it downwards in direction of -arrow B-.

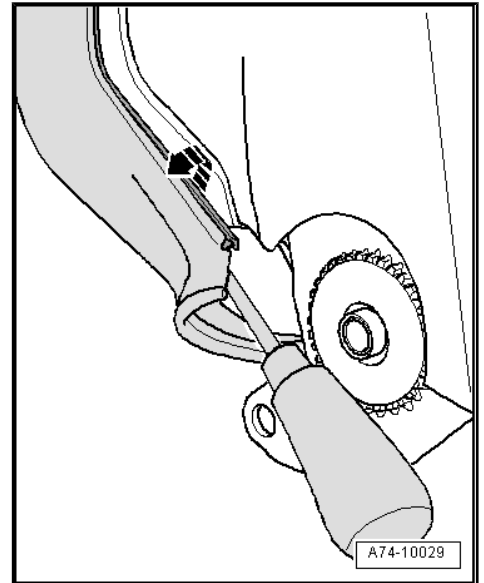


- Drill out pop rivets -arrows- using a \varnothing 5.0 mm bit.
- Detach belt guide -1- from backrest frame.



Prising out fastening strip from guide

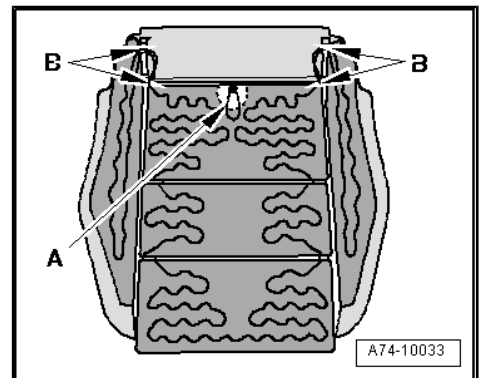
- Starting at the bottom, prise fastening strip for backrest cover out of guide on backrest -arrow- (using e.g. an awl). To do so, squeeze backrest padding slightly to slacken backrest cover.



2.3 Removing and installing seat heating element

Removing

- Remove seat ⇒ [page 363](#) .
- Remove seat pan ⇒ [page 369](#) .
- Remove seat pan cover and padding ⇒ [page 416](#) .
- Cut out area -A- from old heating element together with electrical connection wire.
- Remove old connection wire.
- Cut electrical connection wires leading to heating elements at seat bolsters at positions -B-.



Installing

- Align new heating elements on seat surface, pull off protective cover and bond new heating elements firmly onto padded surfaces (in same position as old heating elements).
 - Route connection wires to seat bolsters through slots in seat padding (avoid crossing wires).
 - Guide connection wires downwards through opening provided in seat padding.
- Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted. Audi AG accepts any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.4 Removing and installing backrest heating element

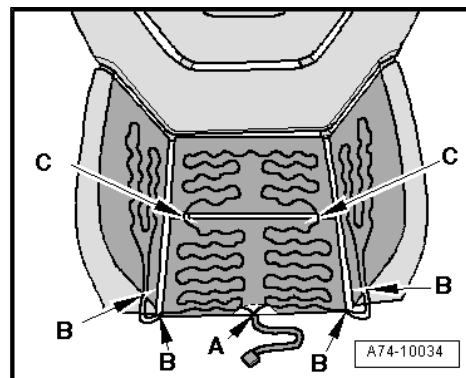
Removing

- Remove seat ⇒ [page 363](#) .
- Remove backrest ⇒ [page 369](#) .



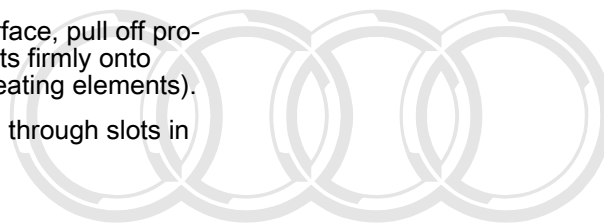
Note

- ◆ *Electrical wiring harness does not need to be detached from seat pan.*
- ◆ *Move backrest to rear and place on soft surface.*
- Remove backrest cover and padding ⇒ [page 417](#) .
- Cut out area -A- from old heating element together with electrical connection wire.
- Remove old connection wire.
- Cut electrical connection wires leading to heating elements at backrest bolsters at positions -B-.
- Cut electrical connection wires leading to upper backrest heating element at positions -C-.



Installing

- Align new heating elements on backrest surface, pull off protective cover and bond new heating elements firmly onto padded surfaces (in same position as old heating elements).
- Route connection wires to backrest bolsters through slots in seat padding (avoid crossing wires).



Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3 Covers and padding on rear seats (Coupé only)

3.1 Exploded view of cover and padding for seat bench

1 - Cover with padding

- Removing and installing
⇒ [page 421](#)

2 - Upholstery clip

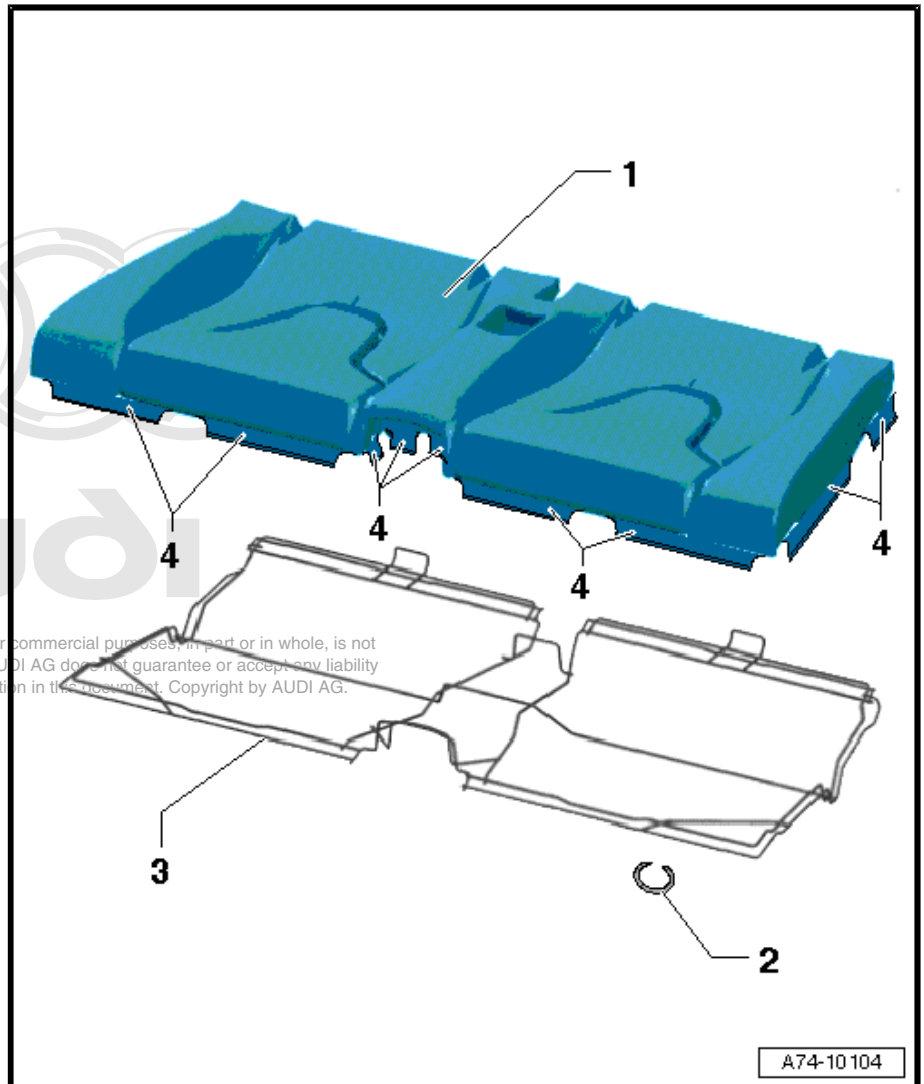
- 48x
- Renew
- Re-attach at same location



3 - Seat frame

4 - Piping

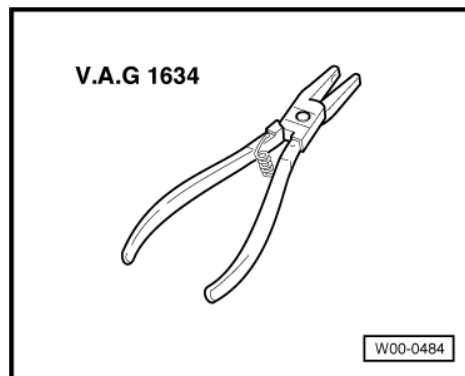
- Stitched to cover



3.2 Removing and installing cover and padding for seat bench

Special tools and workshop equipment required

◆ Upholstery clip pliers -V.A.G 1634-




Removing

- Remove seat bench => [page 383](#) .
- Cut through upholstery clips -arrows-.
- Detach cover with padding -1- from seat frame -2-.

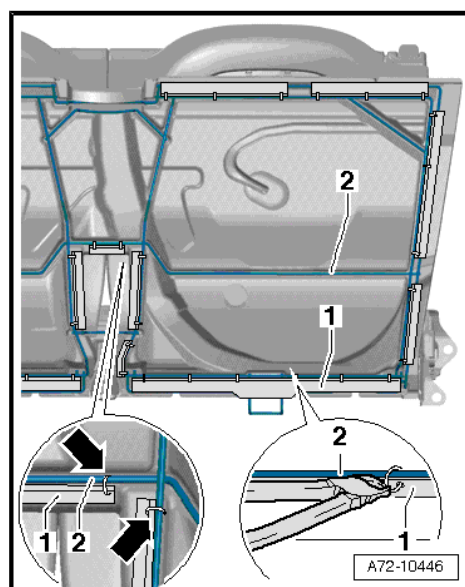
Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

 **WARNING**

After fitting, the ends of the upholstery clips must face towards the padding and must be properly closed to prevent possible injury.

- Use new upholstery clips.
- Use upholstery clip pliers -V.A.G 1634- to fasten upholstery clips.
- Fit upholstery clips in their original positions.



3.3 Detaching seat cover from padding (seat bench)

Removing

- Remove cover with padding => [page 421](#) .



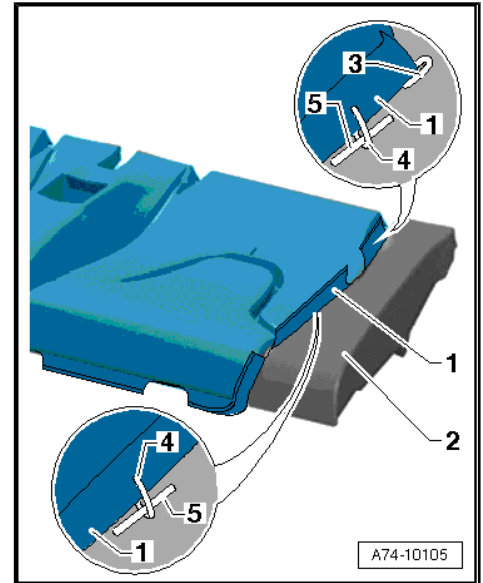
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Detach cover -1- as far as possible from padding -2-.
- 3 - Retaining wire inserted in cover
- 5 - Wire foam-fitted in padding
- Use pliers to pinch off upholstery clips -4-.
- Detach seat cover -1- from padding -2-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

- Use new upholstery clips.
- Use upholstery clip pliers -V.A.G 1634- to fasten upholstery clips.
- Fit upholstery clips in their original positions.



3.4 Exploded view of backrest cover and padding

1 - Cover with padding (right-side)

- Removing and installing
 => [page 424](#)

2 - Top Tether

- Country-specific version
- Removing and installing
 => [page 80](#)

3 - Cover with padding (left-side)

- Removing and installing
 => [page 424](#)

4 - Trim

- For release mechanism
- Removing and installing
 => [page 391](#)

5 - Fastening strip

- Stitched to front section of cover

6 - Fastening strip

- Stitched to rear section of cover

7 - Bowden cable

- For release mechanism

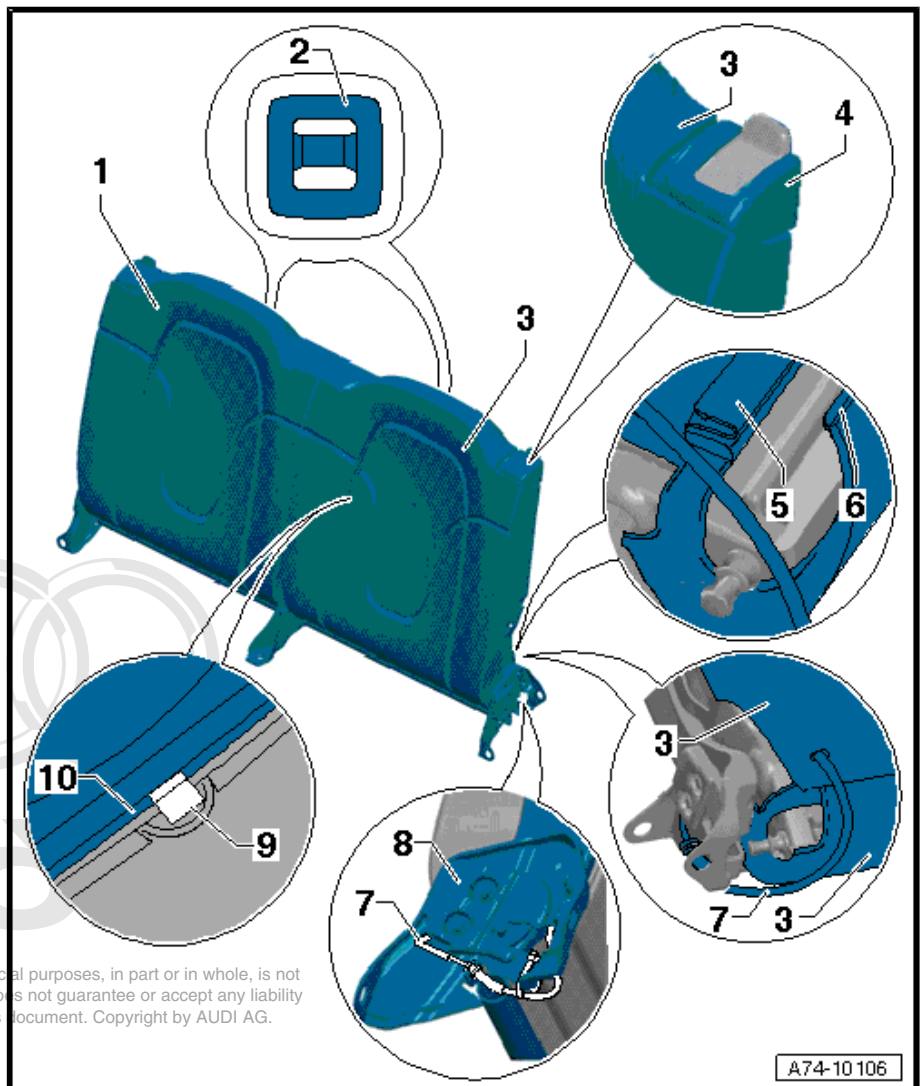
8 - Fitting

9 - Clip

- Foam-fitted in padding

10 - Fastening strip

- Stitched to cover

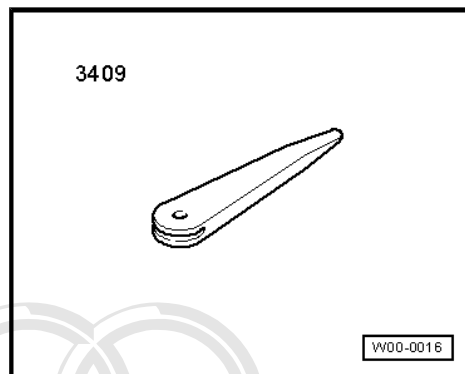


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of the information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.5 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding

Special tools and workshop equipment required

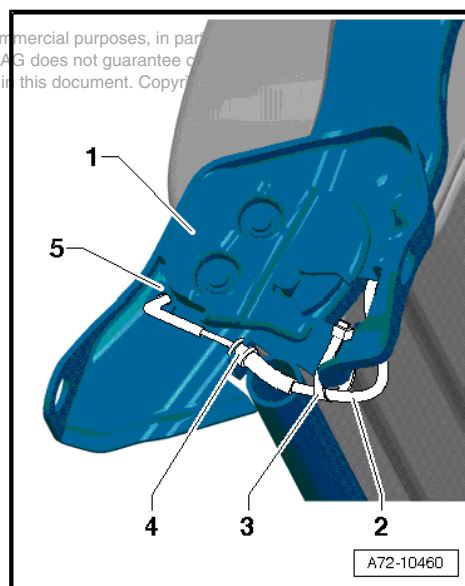
- ◆ Removal wedge -3409-



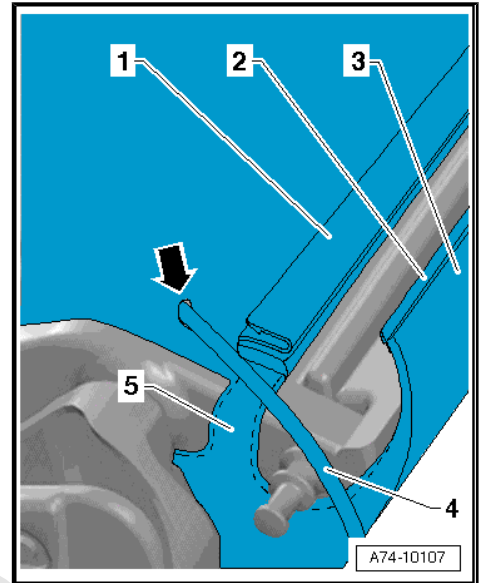
Removing

- Remove seat bench ⇒ [page 383](#) .
 - Remove backrest ⇒ [page 386](#) .
 - Remove trim for release mechanism ⇒ [page 395](#) .
 - If fitted, remove Top Tether ⇒ [page 80](#) .
 - Remove cover for centre mounting ⇒ [page 389](#) .
 - Unfasten cable tie -3-
 - Disengage Bowden cable -2- from retainer -4- and lever -5-
- 1 - Fitting
- Unfasten zip on both sides of cover.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in full, is prohibited unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee the accuracy of the information in this document. Copying with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright © 2007 Audi AG.



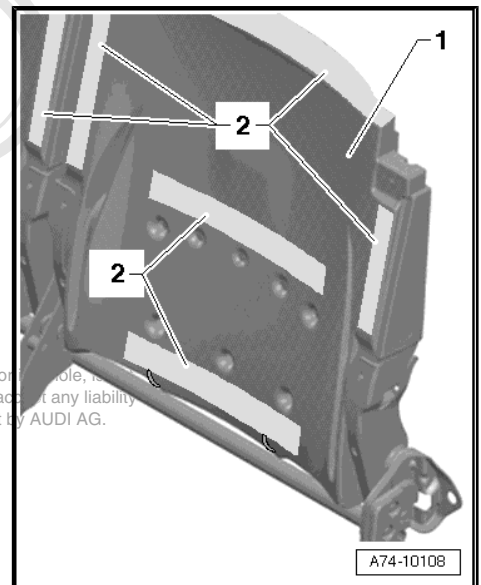
- Use removal wedge -3409- to prise out fastening strips -1- and -2-.
- Disengage lug -5-.
- Pull Bowden cable -4- out of opening -arrow- in cover -3-.
- Detach padding with cover from adhesive strip on front of backrest pan.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

- When installing a new backrest pan -1-, detach protective film from adhesive strips -2- on front of backrest pan before fitting padding.

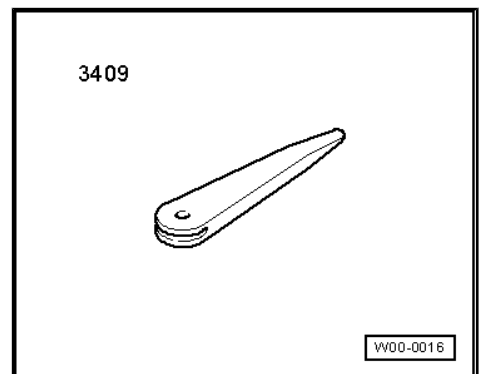


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.6 Detaching seat cover from padding (backrest)

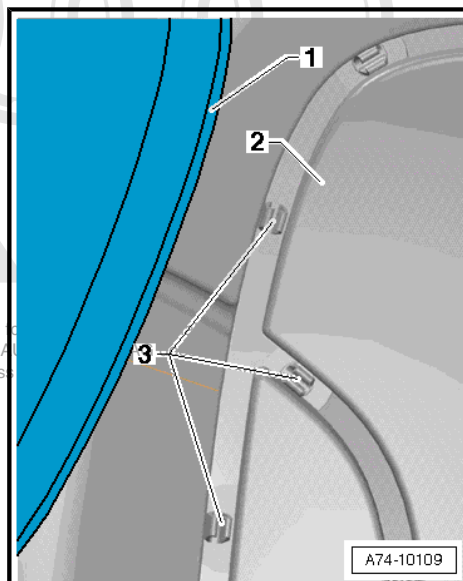
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal wedge -3409-



Removing

- Unclip fastening strip of cover -1- from clips -3- foam-fitted in padding -2-.
- Use removal wedge -3409- to unclip.
- Detach seat cover -1- from padding -2-.



Protected by copyright. Copying or reproduction is not permitted unless authorised by Audi AG. All rights reserved. with respect to the correctness of the content.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Observe the following:

- Align cover -4- with padding -1-.
- Start clipping cover -4- to padding -1- in upper section -arrow-.
- Press fastening strip -3- into clips -2-.
- Make sure clip -2- and fastening strip -3- engage properly.

